



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

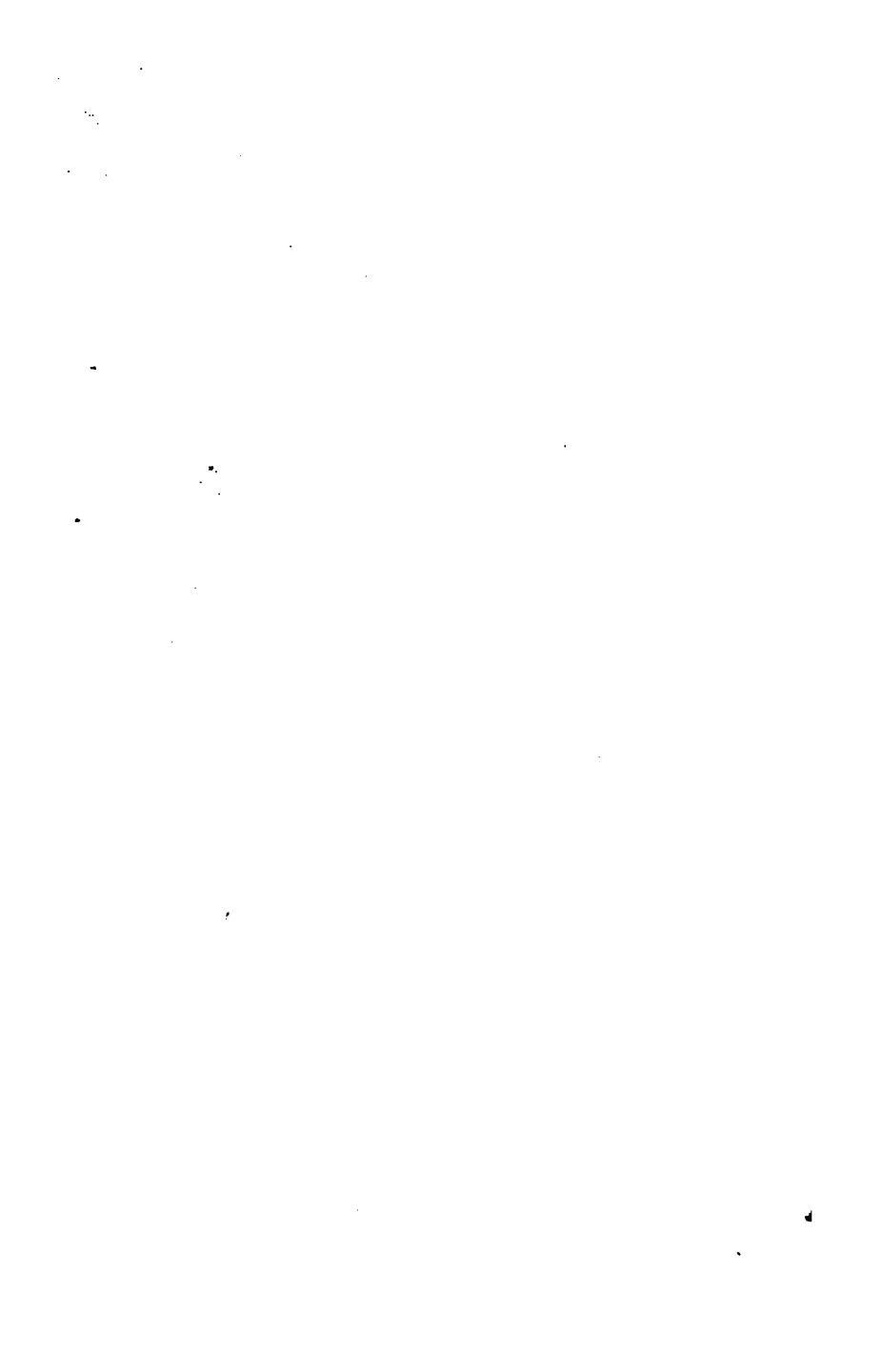
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





600093527W









A NEW METHOD  
OF  
LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK  
A LANGUAGE IN SIX MONTHS,

ADAPTED TO  
  
THE GERMAN:  
  
FOR  
  
THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE TEACHERS.

BY  
  
H. G. OLLENDORFF, PH. DR.  
  
PROFESSOR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE.

NEW EDITION,  
  
CAREFULLY REVISED AND CORRECTED.



London:  
WHITTAKER & CO., AVE MARIA LANE;  
DULAU & CO., SOHO SQUARE;  
Paris:  
AT THE AUTHOR'S, 28 BIS, RUE DE RICHELIEU.  
1871.

[TRANSLATION RESERVED.]

303. P. 63.

L'auteur et les éditeurs de cet ouvrage se réservent le droit de le traduire ou de le faire traduire en toutes les langues. Ils poursuivront, en vertu des lois, décrets et traités internationaux, toutes contrefaçons ou toutes traductions faites au mépris de leurs droits.

Le dépôt légal de ce volume a été fait à Paris, au Ministère de l'Intérieur, à Leipzig à la Direction royale du Cercle, dans le cours du mois d'Avril 1855 ; et toutes les formalités prescrites par les traités seront remplies dans les divers Etats avec lesquels l'Angleterre, la France, la Prusse, la Saxe et la Belgique ont conclu des conventions littéraires.

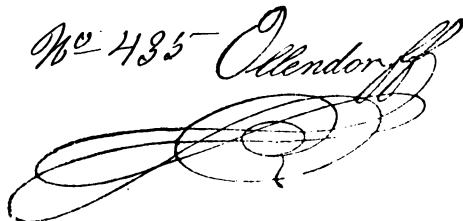
---

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL.

---

*Each copy has its number and the author's signature.*

No 435 Clendorn



TO

**CAPTAIN BASIL HALL, R.N.**

---

**SIR,**

I should consider myself unworthy of your patronage, did I not dedicate this work to you.

Originally destined for the English press, it would have long remained in manuscript, had not you, whose penetration immediately saw of what advantage a work like this would be towards the study of foreign literature in England, recommended it to the public.

As this system of teaching a language exists in nature, I have no other merit but that of having discovered and adapted it to several languages (the French and German part of it being not less profitable to those of the English who often study German through the medium of the French language); but who does not know how difficult it is for

new systems, however good and useful, to make their way to public approbation? To you, therefore, I owe not only its introduction into England, but also some portion of its immense success on the Continent.

The uniform kindness with which you have favoured me, ever since I had the good fortune to become acquainted with you, makes me hope you will accept the dedication of this, the English and German part of my work.

I am, with the most sincere esteem,

Your most obliged, most grateful,

and most obedient Servant,

THE AUTHOR.

*London, 21st April, 1838.*

## Der fluge Staar.

Ein durstiger Staar fand eine Flasche mit Wasser. Er versuchte zu trinken; aber da das Wasser nur bis an den Hals der Flasche ging, so reichte sein Schnabel nicht so weit.

Darauf pickte er von außen in die Flasche, und suchte ein Loch hinein zu hacken. Allein die Mühe war vergebens, denn das Glas war zu hart.

Nun bemühte er sich, die Flasche umzuwerfen. Dies wollte ihm auch nicht gelingen, sie war zu schwer.

Endlich kam er auf einen Einfall, der ihm glückte. Er warf kleine Steine hinein. Dadurch machte er, daß das Wasser immer höher stieg, und er es endlich bequem mit dem Schnabel erreichen konnte.

•   •   •

Geschicklichkeit geht über Stärke; und Geduld und Nachdenken machen Vieles möglich, was im Anfange fast unmöglich scheint.

---

## THE SEA-COMPASS.

“How is the wind, Jack?” asked the captain of a ship, addressing the steersman. “North-east-by-North, sir,” was the instantaneous answer of the tar. A jocular monk, who was a passenger, drew near the sailor. “My son,” said he to him, “I heard thee swear like a demon during the storm; dost thou know thy prayers as well as thy sea-compass?” “No,” replied Jack, “for I can tell you, father, that I know my sea-compass a great deal better than even *you* know your prayers.”—“Thou art joking, son.”—“Quite in earnest, father.”—Upon this, our tar began thus: “North—north-west-by-North—North-north-west,” and so on, till he had gone round and got to the North

again. "Now, father," said Jack, "'tis your turn." The monk recited his *pater noster* in a very ready manner. "That is clever," observed the son of Neptune; "'tis mine now." Then he went on, "North—north-east by North—North-north-east, &c.," till he had come to the word again. "Well, father," said he with a grin, "give us your prayer backwards."—"Backwards! I can't, boy: I have never learnt it but in one way; it is not necessary." "Then," observed the triumphant sailor, "I know my sea-compass better than you know your prayers, for I can tell it in a thousand ways."

\* \* \*

Jack has just told us how a language ought to be learnt and known.

## P R E F A C E.

---

My system of acquiring a living language is founded on the principle, that each question contains nearly the answer which one ought or which one wishes to make to it. The slight difference between the question and the answer is always explained before the question: so that the learner does not find it in the least difficult, either to answer it, or to make similar questions for himself. Again, the question being the same as the answer, as soon as the master pronounces it, it strikes the pupil's ear, and is therefore easily reproduced by his speaking organs. This principle is so evident, that it is impossible to open the book without being struck by it.

Neither the professor nor his pupils lose an instant of their time. When the professor reads the lesson the pupil answers; when he examines the lesson written by the pupil, he speaks again and the pupil answers; also when he examines the exercise which the pupil has translated, he speaks and the pupil answers; thus both are, as it were, continually kept in exercise.



The phrases are so arranged that, from the beginning to the end of the method, the pupil's curiosity is excited by the want of a word or an expression : this word or expression is always given in the following lesson, but in such a manner as to create a desire for others that render the phrase still more complete. Hence, from one end of the book to the other, the pupil's attention is continually kept alive, till at last he has acquired a thorough knowledge of the language which he is studying.

# PREFACE

TO THE

SECOND AND THE FOLLOWING EDITIONS.

---

ENCOURAGED by the favourable reception of the precedent editions of this work, I have considered it as a duty not to publish this new edition till after I had revised it with the strictest attention, and corrected several errors which had crept into the former editions. I have neglected nothing to make it more useful to the pupils, and more worthy of the attention of teachers, and have therefore reason to hope that this work, by rendering the German language more easy, will cause it to be cultivated with more zeal and success in England.

As in the translations that have been made of my French edition, the rules are adapted to the French and not the English language, it will at once strike the reader that they can be of no avail whatever to the English student. As to the spurious editions of my works, after having carefully examined all of them, I am bound to state, that they are bad, incorrect, and incomplete, and so far from assisting the learner, they are calculated to make him adopt erroneous principles of German. They have, in fact, nothing in common with my works, but the titles; and any one possessing a knowledge of German, will, in looking into them, soon discover that they are so many impositions. Each copy of the only genuine edition has its number and my signature.

28 bis, rue de Richelieu,  
Paris, April, 1855.

# CONTENTS.

## FIRST MONTH.

LESSON	PAGE	LESSON	PAGE
1. 2. OF WRITING.		14. RELATIVE and DETERMINA-	
3. OF READING—Alphabet.—		TIVE PRONOUNS .....	24
Vowels and Consonants....	1	15. Declension of MASCULINE	
4. Declension of the ARTICLE		and NEUTER SUBSTANTIVES .	27
and POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.	5	16. THE PLURAL .....	30
5. The same with an Adjective	7	17. Ditto .....	33
6. Pronoun <i>it</i> .—Adjectives end-		18. Adjectives without an Article	35
ing in <i>en</i> , <i>ern</i> .....	9	19. No, none, <i>kein</i> .....	37
7. Anything, nothing.—The		20. INDEFINITE ARTICLE— <i>ein</i> ,	
Genitive .....	11	<i>a</i> , <i>an</i> .—Rules on ADJECTIVES	39
8. Ditto. What? That, the one	13	21. How much? &c.— <i>Our</i> ....	43
9. ABSOLUTE POSSESSIVE PRO-		22. Much, enough, little .....	46
NOUNS .....	14	23. A few; other.—Ordinal	
10. Substantives ending in <i>e</i> , &c.	16	Numbers .....	49
11. <i>Wer</i> ? who? <i>Er</i> , he, &c. ..	18	24. Both, still, yet, no more ...	51
12. <i>Hie</i> .—Somebody, nobody, &c.	20	25. Several, quite, more, than,	
13. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS	22	less .....	55

## SECOND MONTH.

26. VERBS.—The INFINITIVE..	58	38. Termination <i>ist</i> .—To wish,	
27. COMPOUND VERBS.....	61	listen, &c. <i>was</i> , rel. pronoun.	104
28. To be at; to go to— <i>bei</i> , <i>zu</i>	66	39. To wet, show, intend, know,	
29. Where?—there—when? ..	69	swim, &c. ....	108
30. Declension of PERSONAL		40. To intend, receive, guide, &c.	112
PRONOUNS.....	72	41. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	115
31. Declension of INTERROGA-		42. To begin, finish, &c. Omi-	
TIVE PRONOUNS.—Contrac-		sion of the particle <i>zu</i> .....	120
tions .....	77	43. PAST PARTICIPLE: <i>seyn</i> , to be	123
32. Prepositions <i>auf</i> , upon, to;		44. Ditto— <i>haben</i> , to have ....	126
<i>an</i> , at, to .....	81	45. Ditto of Irregular Verbs ..	131
33. <i>lassen</i> , to let; <i>müssen</i> , must	85	46. Ditto.—NEUTER VERBS ..	135
34. As far as.—Expressions re-		47. Inseparable Particles ....	139
lative to time.....	88	48. <i>Daß</i> , to it. Almost, about.	
35. Of time. To tell.—To want,		—Irregular Verbs.....	143
<i>nöthig haben</i> , benöthigt <i>seyn</i> .	92	49. Why and because.—Of Con-	
36. PRESENT TENSE .....	96	junctions.—How long, during	147
37. The pain, ache, &c.—Sepa-		50. To live, &c. Till.—Indef.	
rable Particles .....	100	pron. man.—Then.....	152

# THIRD MONTH.

LESSON	PAGE	LESSON	PAGE
51. All—to dye.—Declension of Names of Countries .....	157	64. On striking, shooting, &c. . .	217
52. Various Adverbsexemplified	161	65. To cast, draw, cause, hurt, &c.	220
53. That, daß. Must, müssen, sollen .....	165	66. To spend time, miss, hear, assure, happen, &c. ....	223
54. To pay, ask, demand, &c.—Compound Adverbs .....	169	67. Of time, weights, and measures, &c. ....	227
55. On dining, &c. Diminutives	174	68. To spend, serve, spoil, dress, &c. ....	232
56. To perceive, like, &c.—If, wenn. Of the weather .....	179	69. To trust, pity, take care, &c.	236
57. PASSIVE VERBS .....	185	70. Each, every; near. To fall, &c.	239
58. IMPERSONAL VERBS .....	189	71. Far—to like better—than.—Quick, &c.—so .....	243
59. 60. IMPERFECT and PERFECT TENSES .....	195	72. REFLECTIVE VERBS .....	247
61. Werden, to be, become ....	203	73. To take a walk, to teach, remember, &c. ....	255
62. RELATIVE PRONOUNS ....	207	74. To make use of, approach, be cold, &c. ....	260
63. To forget, belong, suit, &c.—Conjunctions which do not change the place of the verb	211	75. To shave, dress, awake, ascend, behave, &c. ....	263

# FOURTH MONTH.

76. To hire, part with, change, mix, &c. ....	267	90. PRESENT PARTICIPLE, &c. .	330
77. To find one's self (do), stay, earn, split, hang, &c. ....	271	91. Towards, against—self,—again—to run away, &c. ....	337
78. To doubt, agree, observe, expect, get, &c. ....	274	92. THE SUBJUNCTIVE.—Conditional or Potential Tenses..	342
79. PLUPERFECT.—To complain, be glad, sorry, &c. ....	277	93. On the Subjunctive .....	349
80. 81. FEMININE DECLENSIONS	281	94. Future of Subjunctive, &c.	356
82. To march, attract, meddle, repeat, &c.—Prepositions....	293	95. Position of the Adjective.—THE IMPERATIVE .....	361
83. FUTURE TENSE .....	298	96. To be a judge of, manage, forbid, lower, &c. ....	367
84. PAST or COMPOUND INFINITIVE and FUTURE .....	302	97. To grow, shelter, pretend, look upon, &c. Adjectives used substantively, &c. ....	372
85. Of diseases.—To die, sell, open, shut, put, &c. ....	307	98. Prepositions.—To manage, take care, fear, be born, be accustomed, &c. ....	379
86. Use or profit.—Declension of Names of Persons .....	311	99. To marry, frighten, depend on, blame, jest, stop, &c.—Expressions relative to a watch .	384
87. To cry, help, happen, pour, meet with .....	315	100. On asking one's way, &c. Prepositions.—To last, play, blow, suspect, think, &c. ....	390
88. Apposition of Cases, &c. ....	320		
89. To get into a scrape, appear, visit, experience, spring, &c.	325		

# FIFTH MONTH.

101. THE CONJUNCTIONS exemplified.—Prepositions .....	396	105. General Remarks on German Construction.—Recapitulation of Rules of Syntax.—Transposition of the subject after its verb .....	423
102. The ADVERB.—The Tenses	403		
103. Idioms—to put, set, &c. ....	411		
104. Idioms .....	418		

SIXTH MONTH.

APPENDIX.

	PAGE		PAGE
Numbers .....	442	The Government of Verbs ....	461
Irregular Verbs .....	448	Prepositions .....	473

# OF GERMAN WRITING.

*German letters being in many respects different from those used in the English language, we have deemed it expedient to make them the subject of a thorough investigation previous to entering upon that of grammar.*

*German writing should be taught in two lessons in the first the learner will perfect himself in the formation of the small letters: in the second he will perfect himself in the formation of the capitals and in the joining of words*

## 1<sup>ST</sup> LESSON.

### OF SMALL LETTERS.

*The learner will take ruled paper as below and exercise himself in the formation of the first or principal stroke, by the help of which he will form by degrees all the other letters.*

*First or principal stroke: A'. From this stroke will be formed A' e. By*

*adding to A' another stroke will be formed B' a viz 1<sup>st</sup> A' 2<sup>nd</sup> B' 3<sup>rd</sup> B'.*

*B' c' h is formed of the first stroke. Begin the loop or upper part of h*

*by the up stroke which is drawn from the line draw it down to the thick*

*part of the first or principal stroke and finish the letter by adding to it the*

*last part of the letter A', thus 1<sup>st</sup> A' 2<sup>nd</sup> A'.*

*A' e is simply the first or principal stroke to which is added a small up stroke.*

*A' d again is the first or principal stroke to which is added a long up*

*stroke terminated at the top by a crotchet, thus: 1<sup>st</sup> A' 2<sup>nd</sup> A'.*

*A' e is formed of a stroke and a half viz 1<sup>st</sup> A' 2<sup>nd</sup> h.*

*The learner should be particular in observing that every stroke ought to be drawn from the line*

*The teacher should write the letters successively, carefully analysing them to the learners who should write them immediately after him.*

*To convince his pupils of the accuracy of this principle the teacher need only in the first place form the letter A' and afterwards add the loop which forms the upper part of A' but he should be careful in making his pupils form it without taking the pen from the paper*

*When A' is not joined to another consonant as it is in A' or A' or when it is repeated as in the *Wasser*, it is generally surmounted by a small crotchet nearly like an English c.*



*W* *f* is formed of the first stroke after which is drawn the up-stroke which describes the letter: and to which is added a second regular stroke: thus: 1<sup>st</sup> *A*. 2<sup>d</sup> *f*. 3<sup>d</sup> *W*.

**Observation.** There is another kind of *f* which presents no difficulty in its formation on account of its near resemblance to the letter *f* in English: but it should be observed that this letter must be intersected by the first or principal stroke without its first up-stroke: viz: 1<sup>st</sup> *f*. 2<sup>d</sup> *f*.

*g* is formed of *x* with the addition of *j*: thus: 1<sup>st</sup> *x*. 2<sup>d</sup> *g*.

*h* is formed of the first or principal stroke preceded by a loop similar to that of *k* and terminated by another loop reversed: as: 1<sup>st</sup> *k*. 2<sup>d</sup> *h*.

This letter may be formed still more simply and then it is like the letter *f* in English: thus: *f*.

*i* is only *x* with a dot over it.

*j* is the second part of *g* with a dot over it.

*k* is formed of the upper part of *f* to which is added a kind of loop in drawing down which the body of the letter is intersected by a first or principal stroke: as: 1<sup>st</sup> *k*. 2<sup>d</sup> *k*. 3<sup>d</sup> *k*.

*l* is formed like *k* with the omission of the small looped dot at the extremity.

*m* consists of three regular strokes.

*n* is composed of two strokes.

*o* is, as has been shown above, the first part of the letter *u*.

*p* is a regular stroke intersected by a thin circular one terminating like the tail of *j*: thus: 1<sup>st</sup> *x*. 2<sup>d</sup> *p*. 3<sup>d</sup> *p*.

*q* is formed like *p*, except that, instead of being round below the line, it terminates in a sharp point with an up-stroke towards the line: thus: 1<sup>st</sup>

*q*. 2<sup>d</sup> *q*.

<sup>12</sup> Here again the accuracy of the principle may be demonstrated by drawing first two strokes or *W*, and then adding the up stroke: thus: 1<sup>st</sup> *W*. 2<sup>d</sup> *W*. but taking care to make the leaves form the letter at once.

<sup>(2)</sup> See note 3 page 1. and the note above.





*N* (r) of which three other letters of the alphabet are formed is the most difficult of all; the learner should therefore carefully study its formation.

He must in the first place trace the first or principal stroke, taking care to let it terminate in a sharp point on the line thus: *N* then by tracing this little figure *z* he will form *N*; and will then only have to add half a stroke to form *N*; thus: 1<sup>st</sup> *N*; 2<sup>d</sup> *N*; 3<sup>d</sup> *N*.

*N* (s) is formed of the first stroke and an up-stroke somewhat similar to that of *N*, thus: 1<sup>st</sup> *N*; 2<sup>d</sup> *N*.

The second kind of *N* (s) is formed like the second kind of *N*, with the omission however of the stroke which intersects that letter.

The same letter when at the end of a syllable (*N*), is formed of a regular stroke slightly rounded, then drawn up and surmounted by a little crotchet, thus: 1<sup>st</sup> *N*; 2<sup>d</sup> *N*; 3<sup>d</sup> *N*.

*N* (t) is the first part of *N* and, like that letter, intersected by the regular stroke, thus: 1<sup>st</sup> *N*; 2<sup>d</sup> *N*.

*N* (u) is formed of two regular strokes surmounted by a small figure similar to an English *c*.

*N* (v) is formed like *N*, only instead of adding half a stroke at the end, you close it towards the bottom, thus: 1<sup>st</sup> *N*; 2<sup>d</sup> *N*; 3<sup>d</sup> *N*.

*N* (w) is nothing but *N*, preceded by a principal stroke, thus: 1<sup>st</sup> *N*; 2<sup>d</sup> *N*.

*N* (x) is formed like *N*, only the tail is turned the contrary way and rounded towards the bottom, thus: 1<sup>st</sup> *N*; 2<sup>d</sup> *N*.

<sup>(1)</sup> It may be observed that *N* forms nearly an *N* reversed.

<sup>(2)</sup> This letter bears much resemblance to the Greek sigma (*σ*).

<sup>(3)</sup> It would not be amiss to bear in mind that the stroke of the letters *N*, *N*, *N*, *N*, *N*, might slope a little to the left, as *N*, *N*, *N*, *N*, *N*, whilst in the other letters on the contrary the stroke ought to incline to the right as we have already shown. But this is not absolutely necessary to constitute a good hand.
























# OF CAPITAL LETTERS.




The large letters in German Writing will present no difficulty to the English learners; for as the small letters differ by their square form from the Common Roman letters, so the large letters resemble them from their round form. Besides this, nearly all those, with which the latter is not the case, fall within the principle of formation of the small letters.




First or principal stroke of the large or capital letters:  This stroke forms the basis of most of the large letters. Second stroke:  Join these two strokes, and you will have nearly this letter:  (C). With this letter:  O is formed, by closing the circle. Add to  a round stroke and you will have:  A, thus: 1<sup>st</sup>  S; 2<sup>d</sup>  L; 3<sup>rd</sup>  E; 4<sup>th</sup>  H. (H).




 B is formed of the first and second strokes, with this difference that the first is preceded by a circular stroke intersecting the body of the letter and that the second is turned off in a dot as in  X, thus: 1<sup>st</sup>  F; 2<sup>d</sup>  G.






 V is the letter from which we started in our demonstration. It is the 1<sup>st</sup> part of  U, except a crotchet which surmounts it and a fine perpendicular up-stroke down in front without being attached to the letter.






 D is formed of the second stroke followed by a semicircle brought round at the top into a knot. 2



 E begins with a circular stroke similar to the upper part of  X and terminating like an English  C below the line. It is then intersected by a curved stroke, similar

to that in:  F, thus: 1<sup>st</sup>  G; 2<sup>d</sup>  H.

 I is the first or principal stroke terminated by a dot and surmounted by a small crotchet, the body of the letter is intersected by a horizontal line, thus: 1<sup>st</sup>  J; 2<sup>d</sup>  K.

 L is formed of  U, as  Y is of  W, thus: 1<sup>st</sup>  M; 2<sup>d</sup>  N.

 O is composed of the first stroke with the addition of this figure:  similar in analogy to  Y, viz: 1<sup>st</sup>  S; 2<sup>d</sup>  T.

(1) It will be observed that there is analogy in the formation of  U and  W.

(2) This letter bears much resemblance to the small Greek beta ( $\beta$ )



*I* is formed of the first stroke provided by a species of crotchet and intersected by a horizontal stroke like *J*. In every other respect it is like the English *J*, with the exception of the middle stroke.

*J* is nothing else than an *I* extended below the line and drawn up to it again. *K* is formed of the first stroke, to which is added this figure: *2*.

surmounted by a crotchet, thus: 1<sup>st</sup> *I*; 2<sup>d</sup> *K*.

*L* is nothing but *L* without being turned off in a dot as that letter is.

*M* is different in formation from the letters hitherto demonstrated. Therefore it is important that this letter should be analyzed, and more particularly because the first stroke of which it is composed, is used in the formation of several others. This first stroke is:

which is repeated thus: *M*. To the latter figure the following is added: *1* which resembles the french *ç*, thus: 1<sup>st</sup> *I*; 2<sup>d</sup> *M*; 3<sup>rd</sup> *M*.

*N* is only the first and last stroke of *M*, viz: 1<sup>st</sup> *I*; 2<sup>d</sup> *N*.

*O* is, as we have already shown, the first part of *L*.

*P* is formed of the first stroke of *M*, carried below the line; then the pen is drawn up the same stroke, and the letter is terminated by the same figure as *K*, only made a little larger, thus: 1<sup>st</sup> *I*; 2<sup>d</sup> *P*; 3<sup>rd</sup> *P*.

*Q* is the letter *L* intersected in the lower part by a round stroke, thus: 1<sup>st</sup> *L*; 2<sup>nd</sup> *Q*.

Observation. there is another kind of *Q* which comes under the same principle of formation as *J*.

*R* is formed of the first stroke of *M*, to which is added a circular stroke closed, and another open at the bottom, as in the letter *R* in English: thus: 1<sup>st</sup> *I*; 2<sup>nd</sup> *P*; 3<sup>rd</sup> *R*.

(1) For print, the Germans have but one Capital letter for the Vowel *i* and the Consonant *j*.





*I* (*I*) is nothing but the first stroke of *M*, with the first part of the third, viz: 1<sup>st</sup> *I*; 2<sup>d</sup> *I*.

*Y* (*Y*) is formed of the upper part of *F*, and *K*, thus: 1<sup>st</sup> *Y*; 2<sup>d</sup> *Y*.

*V* (*V*) is composed of the first stroke of *M*; but inverted, that is, drawn to the right & terminated as *V*, viz: 1<sup>st</sup> *V*; 2<sup>d</sup> *V*.

*W* (*W*) is formed of the first stroke of *M* beneath which are described two circular strokes or loops, one to the left, and the other to the right; a round up-stroke is then drawn, closing as in *W* of which the present letters follows the principle thus: 1<sup>st</sup> *W*; 2<sup>d</sup> *W*; 3<sup>d</sup> *W*.

*W* (*W*) is formed on the same principle as *W*, but is preceded by the first stroke of *M*, thus: 1<sup>st</sup> *W*; 2<sup>d</sup> *W*.

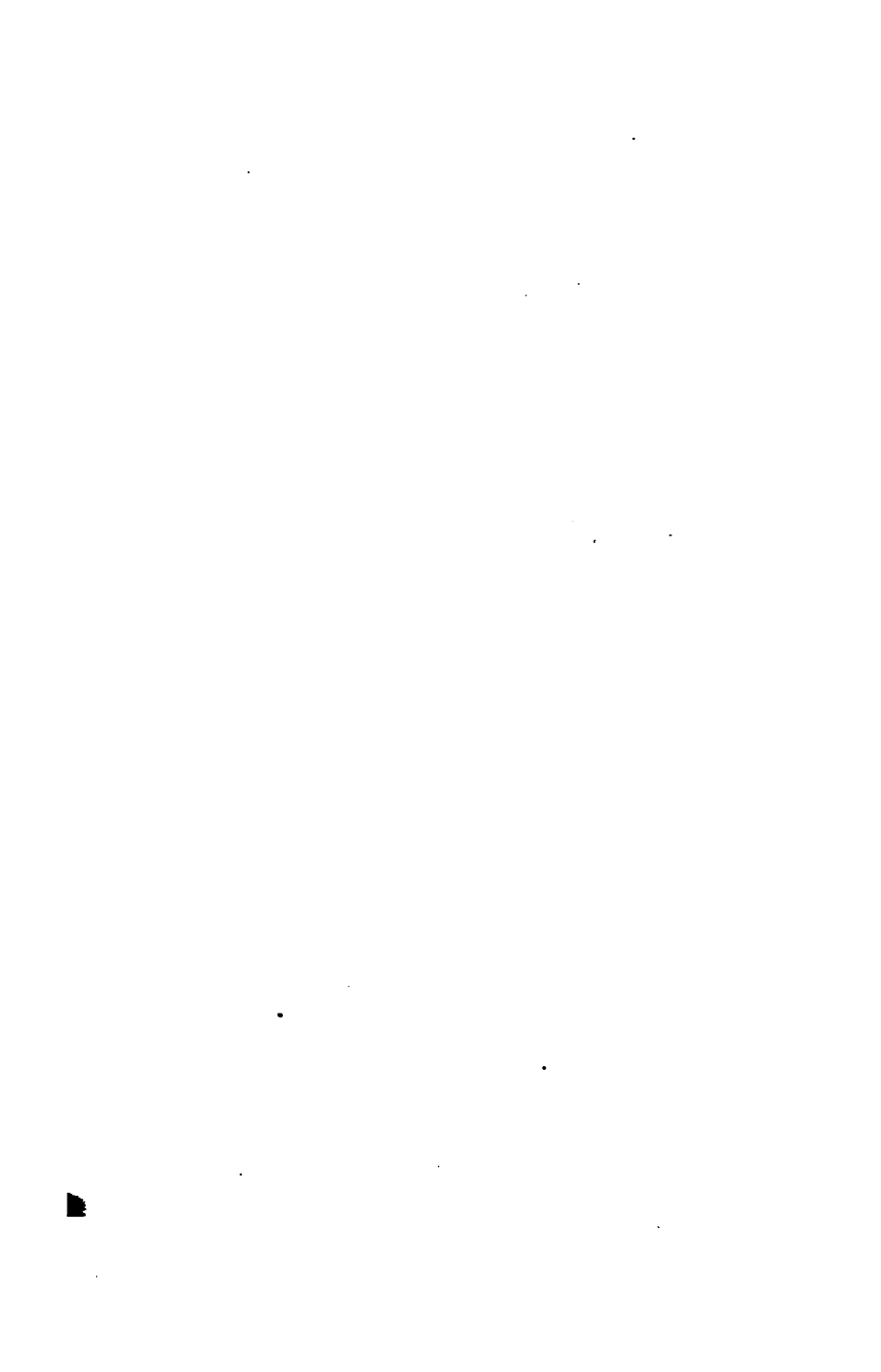
*X* (*X*) is formed like the English *X*, if it be decomposed, it will be found to consist of the first stroke of *M*, thus: 1<sup>st</sup> *X*; 2<sup>d</sup> *X*.

*Y* (*Y*) is simply *W*, prolonged below the line and drawn up again, thus 1<sup>st</sup> *Y*; 2<sup>d</sup> *Y*.

*Z* (*Z*) is formed like *Z*, only more round. In Capital letters there is but one double consonant which is: *Sc* (*Sc*) and that is abridged by joining it, thus: 1<sup>st</sup> *Sc*; 2<sup>d</sup> *Sc*.

Having analyzed to the Learners the Capital Letters, the teacher should make them write the whole Alphabet through, according to the following examples, and as he did for the small letters.

*A*. *B*. *C*. *D*. *E*. *F*. *G*. *H*.  
*I*. *J*. *K*. *L*. *M*. *N*. *O*. *P*.  
*Q*. *R*. *S*. *T*. *U*. *V*. *W*. *X*.  
*Y*. *Z*. *Sc*.







# THIRD LESSON<sup>1</sup>.

## Dritte Section.

### OF READING.

In German every letter is pronounced. Hence it follows that foreigners are able to read the language with greater facility: reading is acquired in one lesson.

#### PRINTED LETTERS OF THE GERMAN ALPHABET.

There are in German, as in English, twenty-six letters, of which we give: *The Figures,* *The Pronunciation,* *The Power.*

#### CAPITALS. SMALL LETTERS.

A,	a,	ah,	a,
B,	b,	bay,	b,
C,	c,	tsay,	c,
D,	d,	day,	d,
E,	e,	a,	e,
F,	f,	ef,	f,
G,	g,	yay,	g,
H,	h,	hah,	h,
I,	i,	e,	i,
J <sup>2</sup> ,	j,	yot,	j,
K,	k,	kah,	k,
L,	l,	el,	l,
M,	m,	em,	m,
N,	n,	en,	n,
O,	o,	o,	o,
P,	p,	pay,	p,
Q,	q,	koo,	q,
R,	r,	err,	r,
S,	s (ß),	ess,	s,
T,	t,	tay,	t,
U,	u,	oo,	u,
V,	v,	fow,	v,
W,	w,	vay,	w,
X,	x,	iks,	x,
Y,	y,	ypsilon,	y,
Z,	z,	tset,	z,

Most of the German letters being pronounced as in English, we shall only present those that follow a different pronunciation.

<sup>1</sup> The first two Lessons treat of writing.

<sup>2</sup> In print, the Germans have but one capital letter for the vowel i and the consonant j.

**FIGURATIVE TABLE OF THOSE VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS OF WHICH  
THE PRONUNCIATION IS NOT THE SAME AS IN ENGLISH.**

FIGURES.	NAME.	ARE	IN	GERMAN	EXAMPLES.
		AS	THE ENGLISH WORDS :		
â,	ah-a,	a,	made,	Väter,	fathers.
ô,	o-a,	i,	bird <sup>3</sup> ,	Löwe,	lion.
û,	oo-a <sup>4</sup> ,	î,	—	Glück,	happiness.
ie <sup>4</sup> ,	e-a,	ia,	field,	Wiese,	meadow.
ei,	a-e,	} I.	i,	Weise,	manner.
ey,	a-ypailon,			seyn,	to be.
ai,	ah-e,			Kaiser,	emperor.
âu,	ah-a-oo,	} oy,	boy <sup>7</sup> ,	Bäume,	trees.
eu,	a-oo,			Leute,	people.
au,	ah-oo,	ou,	house,	Haus,	house.
u,	oo,	oo,	boot,	gut,	good.

Of the simple and compound consonants the following differ in their pronunciation from the English consonants :

**Ç.**

Ç, before a, o, u, before a consonant, or at the end of a syllable, has the sound of *k*. Ex. Çato, Cato; Contrab, Conrad; Çur, cure; Çredit, credit; Çpectafel, noise. Before the other vowels the letter *c* is pronounced like *ts*. Ex. Çäfar, Cæsar; Çicero, Cicero; Çeres Ceres.

<sup>3</sup> The English word *bird* does not quite answer to the sound of this vowel; it has rather the sound of *eu* in the French words: *feu, cœur, fleur, jeune, peu*.

<sup>4</sup> We have preferred thus naming these letters in order to be able to designate them with more facility; but we much approve of the new system, which substitutes in their place the simple intonation of sounds.

<sup>5</sup> There is no sound corresponding to this vowel in English, and in order to learn it well, the pupils must hear it pronounced; it answers to the sound of *u* in the French words: *but; nû, vertu*.

<sup>6</sup> The disposition, which we have adopted, of placing analogous sounds together, will facilitate to learners the study of the pronunciation. There are even some provinces in Germany where *â* and *ô* are both pronounced *a*; *û* and *ie*, *e*; *ei* or *ey*, *eu* and *âu*, *I*.

<sup>7</sup> We have only been able to indicate the sounds of the two diphthongs *âu* and *eu* approximatively; their pronunciation is not quite the same, and in order to become familiar with them, the pupils must hear *their master pronounce them*.

## Ch.

Ch, which is called *tsay-hah*, is pronounced like *k*: 1. when at the beginning of a word; Ex. Chor, choir; Chronik, chronicle; Christ, Christian; 2. when followed by *f* or *s*; Ex. Büchse, box; Wachse, wax. In words derived from the French, it preserves the French sound. Ex. Charlatan, quack. This consonant, when preceded by *a*, *o*, *u*, is pronounced from the throat. Ex. Bach, rivulet; Loch, hole; Buch, book; Sprache, language. Placed any where else, it is articulated with a less guttural sound. Ex. Bücher, books; Blech, iron plate; ich, I; Gesicht, face.

## G.

G, at the beginning of a syllable has a hard sound, as in the English word *go*. Ex. Gabe, gift; Gott, God; gut, good; Gift, poison. When at the end of a syllable, it has a middle sound between those of the guttural *ch* and *k*. Ex. Tag, day; möglich, possible; klug, prudent; Essig, vinegar; ewig, eternal. In words borrowed from the French, *g* is pronounced as in French. Ex. Loge, box (in a theatre); Genie, genius.

The pronunciation of *g* cannot be properly acquired unless from the professor's own lips; he must therefore make his pupils pronounce the following words:

Sage, tradition.

Falg, tallow.

Berg, mountain.

Zwerg, dwarf.

Leugnen, to deny.

Sieg, victory.

Fähigkeit, capacity.

Möglichkeit, possibility.

Magd, maid-servant.

Mägde, maid-servants

Müßiggänger, idler.

Bögling, pupil.

Angst, anguish.

Länge, length.

Menge, quantity.

Gesang, singing.

Klang, sound.

Ring, ring.

Jungfrau, virgin.

Junggesell, bachelor.

## h.

The letter *h* is aspirated at the beginning of a syllable. Ex. Hand, hand; Held, hero; Hut, hat. It is mute in the middle and at the end of a syllable, and then it lengthens the vowel that precedes or follows it. Ex. Hahn, rooster; Hohn, mockery; Lohn, reward; lehren, to teach; Thaler, crown (coin); Kuh, cow; Thäne, tear; thun, to do.

## J.

J (yot) has the sound of *y* in the English word *you*. Ex. Jagd chase; Jäger, hunter; jeder, each; jetzt, at present.



## D.

**D** is always followed by *u*, and in combination with that letter pronounced like *tv* in English. Ex. *Dual*, torment; *Duelle*, source.

## S.

**S** has the pronunciation of *s* in English. Ex. *Same*, seed; *Seele*, soul; *Person*, person.

## Sch.

**Sch** is pronounced like *sh* in English. Ex. *Schaf*, sheep; *Schild* shield.

## Ss.

**Ss** is pronounced like *ss* in English. Ex. *Saß*, hatred; *weiß*, white. This double consonant is compounded of *ſ* and *ß*, and is called *ess-tset*.

## Tß.

**Tß** is compounded of *t* and *ß*, and has the sound of these two consonants combined. Ex. *Schaß*, treasure; *Puß*, finery.

## F.

**F** is sounded like *f*. Ex. *Vater*, father; *Vormund*, tutor; *Volk*, people.

## W.

**W** is pronounced like an English *v* and not like *w*. Ex. *Wald*, forest; *Wiese*, meadow.

## Z.

**Z** has the pronunciation of *ts*. Ex. *Zahn*, tooth; *Zelt*, tent.

## EXPLANATION OF SOME SIGNS USED IN THIS BOOK.

Expressions which vary either in their construction or idiom from the English are marked thus: †.

A hand () denotes a rule of syntax or construction

FOURTH LESSON<sup>1</sup>.

## Vierte Section.

		<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
NOMINATIVE,	the.	NOM. der.	das.
GENITIVE,	of the.	GEN. des.	des.
DATIVE,	to the.	DAT. dem.	dem.
ACCUSATIVE,	the.	ACC. den.	das.

Have you?

Yes, Sir, I have.

Have you the hat?

Yes, Sir, I have the hat.

The ribbon.

the salt,

the table,

the sugar,

the paper,

Haben Sie?

Ja, mein Herr, ich habe.

Haben Sie den Hut?

Ja, mein Herr, ich habe den Hut.

das Band;

das Salz;

den Tisch;

den Zucker;

das Papier.

*Obs.* The Germans begin all substantives with a capital letter.

		<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
NOM.	my.	NOM. mein.	mein.
GEN.	of my.	GEN. meines.	meines.
DAT.	to my.	DAT. meinem.	meinem.
ACC.	my.	ACC. meinen.	mein.

*Ihr, you*<sup>2</sup> is declined like *mein*. Example:

		<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
NOM.	your.	NOM. Ihr.	Ihr <sup>2</sup> .
GEN.	of your.	GEN. Ihres.	Ihres.
DAT.	to your.	DAT. Ihrem.	Ihrem.
ACC.	your.	ACC. Ihren.	Ihr.

<sup>1</sup> TO PROFESSORS.—Each lesson should be dictated to the pupils, who should pronounce each word as soon as dictated. The professor should also exercise his pupils by putting the questions to them in various ways. Each lesson, except the fourth, includes three operations: the teacher, in the first place, looks over the exercises of the most attentive of his pupils, putting to them the questions contained in the printed exercises; he then dictates to them the next lesson; and lastly puts fresh questions to them on all the preceding lessons. The teacher may divide one lesson into two, or two into three, or even make two into one, according to the degree of intelligence of his pupils.

<sup>2</sup> *Ihr* with a small letter signifies *their*, and has the same declension as *Ihr, your*.

Have you my hat?  
Yes, Sir, I have your hat.

Have you my ribbon?  
I have your ribbon.

Haben Sie meinen Hut?  
Ja, mein Herr, ich habe Ihren  
Hut.  
Haben Sie mein Band?  
Ich habe Ihr Band.

### EXERCISE.

#### 1.

Have you the salt?—Yes, Sir, I have the salt.—Have you your salt?—I have my salt.—Have you the table?—I have the table.—Have you my table?—I have your table.—Have you the sugar?—I have the sugar.—Have you your sugar?—I have my sugar.—Have you the paper?—I have the paper.—Have you my paper?—I have your paper<sup>3</sup>.

---

<sup>3</sup> Pupils desirous of making rapid progress, may compose a great many phrases in addition to those we have given them in the exercises; but they must pronounce them aloud, as they write them. They should also make separate lists of such substantives, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs, as they meet with in the course of the lessons, in order to be able to find those words more easily, when they require to refer to them in writing their lessons.

## FIFTH LESSON.

## Fünfte Section.

*Welcher, which, has the same declension as der.*

Which.	{	Masc.	Neut.
		Nom. welcher.	welches.
		Acc. welchen.	welches.

*Declension of an Adjective preceded by the Definite Article, or a word which has the same termination <sup>1</sup>.*

	Masc.	Neut.
NOM. the good.	Nom. der gute.	das gute.
GEN. of the good.	GEN. des guten.	des guten.
DAT. to the good.	DAT. dem guten.	dem guten.
ACC. the good.	ACC. den guten.	das gute.

*Observation.* Adjectives vary in their declension when preceded by: *mein, my; Ihr, your; or by one of the following words; ein, a; kein, no, none; Dein, thy; sein, his; ihr, her; unser, our; Euer, your.* Example.

	Masc.	Neut.
NOM. my good.	N. mein guter.	mein gutes.
GEN. of my good.	G. meines guten.	meines guten.
DAT. to my good.	D. meinem guten.	meinem guten.
ACC. my good.	A. meinen guten.	mein gutes.

Good,	gut;
bad,	schlecht;
beautiful or fine.	schön;
ugly,	häßlich;
great, big, or large,	groß.

Have you the good sugar?	Haben Sie den guten Zucker?
Yes, Sir, I have the good sugar.	Ja, mein Herr, ich habe den guten Zucker.
Have you the fine ribbon?	Haben Sie das schöne Band?
I have the fine ribbon.	Ich habe das schöne Band.
Which hat have you?	Welchen Hut haben Sie?
I have my ugly hat.	Ich habe meinen häßlichen Hut.
Which ribbon have you?	Welches Band haben Sie?
I have your fine ribbon.	Ich habe Ihr schönes Band.

<sup>1</sup> As *dieser, this; jener, that, &c.*

## EXERCISE.

2.

Have you the fine hat?—Yes, Sir, I have the fine hat.—Have you my bad hat?—I have your bad hat.—Have you the good salt?—I have the bad salt.—Have you your good salt?—I have my good salt.—Which salt have you?—I have your good salt.—Which sugar have you?—I have my good sugar.—Have you my good sugar?—I have your good sugar.—Which table have you?—I have the fine table.—Have you my fine table?—I have your fine table.—Which paper have you?—I have the bad paper.—Have you my ugly paper?—I have your ugly paper.—Which bad hat have you?—I have my bad hat.—Which fine ribbon have you?—I have your fine ribbon.

# SIXTH LESSON.

## Sechste Lektion.

It.	{	Masc.		Neut.
		Nom.	er.	es.
		Acc.	ihn.	es.
<hr/>				
<i>Not.</i>		<i>Nicht.</i>		
I have <i>not</i> .		Ich habe nicht.		
No, Sir.		Nein, mein Herr.		
Have you the table?		Haben Sie den Tisch?		
No, Sir, I have it <i>not</i> .		Nein, mein Herr, ich habe ihn nicht.		
Have you the paper?		Haben Sie das Papier?		
No, Sir, I have it <i>not</i> .		Nein, mein Herr, ich habe es nicht.		

The stone,	der Stein ;
the cloth,	das Tuch ;
the wood,	das Holz ;
the leather,	das Leder ;
the lead,	das Blei ;
the gold,	das Gold.

*Obs.* En and ern are used to form adjectives, and denote the materials of anything. (See *Obs. A. B.* page 27, Method, Part II.)

<i>Of,</i>	<i>von ;</i>
golden or of gold,	golden ;
leaden — of lead,	bleiern ;
stone — of stone,	steinern ;
pretty,	hübsch (artig) ;
leathern,	lebern.

Have you the paper hat?	Haben Sie den papierenen Hut?
I have it <i>not</i> .	Ich habe ihn nicht.
The wooden table,	den hölzernen Tisch ;
the horse of stone,	das steinerne Pferd ;
the coat,	den Rock (das Kleid) ;
the horse,	das Pferd ;
the dog,	den Hund ;
the shoe,	den Schuh ;
the thread,	den Faden ;
the stocking.	den Strumpf ;
the thread stocking,	den zwirnenen Strumpf, den Zwirn-
	strumpf, den fadenen Strumpf ;
the candlestick,	den Leuchter ;
the golden ribbon.	das goldene Band.

## EXERCISE.

## 3.

Have you the wooden table?—No, Sir, I have it not.—Which table have you?—I have the stone table.—Have you my golden candlestick?—I have it not.—Which stocking have you?—I have the thread (fäden) stocking.—Have you my thread stocking?—I have not your thread stocking.—Which coat have you?—I have my cloth (tuch) coat.—Which horse have you?—I have the wooden horse.—Have you my leathern shoe?—I have it not.—Have you the leaden horse?—I have it not.—Have you your good wooden horse?—I have it not.—Which wood have you?—I have your good wood.—Have you my good gold?—I have it not.—Which gold have you?—I have the good gold.—Which stone have you?—I have your fine stone.—Which ribbon have you?—I have your golden ribbon.—Have you my fine dog?—I have it.—Have you my ugly horse?—I have it **not**.

## SEVENTH LESSON

## Siebente Section.

The chest, the trunk,	den Koffer ;
the button,	den Knopf ;
the money,	das Geld.

<i>Anything, something,</i>	Etwas.
<i>Not anything, nothing,</i>	Nichts.
Have you anything ?	Haben Sie Etwas.
I have nothing.	Ich habe Nichts.
The cheese,	den Käse ;
the old bread,	das alte Brod ;
the pretty dog,	den hübschen (artigen) Hund ;
the silver (metal),	das Silber ;
the silver ribbon,	das silberne Band.

Are you hungry ?	{ Sind Sie hungrig ?
	{ † Haben Sie Hunger ?
I am hungry.	{ Ich bin hungrig.
	{ † Ich habe Hunger.
Are you thirsty ?	{ Sind Sie durstig ?
	{ † Haben Sie Durst ?
I am thirsty.	{ Ich bin durstig.
	{ † Ich habe Durst.
Are you sleepy ?	Sind Sie schläferig ?
I am sleepy.	Ich bin schläferig ?
Are you tired ?	Sind Sie müde ?
I am not tired.	Ich bin nicht müde.

Of the (genitive).	{ Masc. } des.
	{ Neut. }

*Obs.* Nouns of the masculine or neuter gender take *s* or *es* in the genitive case singular.

<sup>1</sup> As in French: *Avez-vous faim ?*

<sup>2</sup> — — *Avez-vous soif ?*



The tailor's, or of the tailor,	des Schneiders ;
the dog's, or of the dog,	des Hundes ;
the baker's, or of the baker,	des Bäckers ;
the neighbour's, or of the neighbour,	des Nachbars ;
of the salt,	des Salzes.

The baker's dog,	{ der Hund des Bäckers, des Bäckers Hund.
The tailor's coat,	{ der Rock des Schneiders, des Schneiders Rock <sup>3</sup> .

## EXERCISE.

## 4.

Have you the leathern trunk?—I have not the leathern trunk.  
 Have you my pretty trunk?—I have not your pretty trunk.—  
 Which trunk have you?—I have the wooden trunk.—Have you  
 my old button?—I have it not.—Which money have you?—I  
 have the good money.—Which cheese have you?—I have the old  
 cheese.—Have you anything?—I have something.—Have you  
 my large dog?—I have it not.—Have you your good gold?—I  
 have it.—Which dog have you?—I have the tailor's dog.—Have  
 you the neighbour's large dog?—I have it not.—Have you the  
 dog's golden ribbon?—No, Sir, I have it not.—Which coat have  
 you?—I have the tailor's good coat.—Have you the neighbour's  
 good bread?—I have it not.—Have you my tailor's golden rib-  
 bon?—I have it.—Have you my pretty dog's ribbon?—I have  
 it not.—Have you the good baker's good horse?—I have it.—  
 Have you the good tailor's horse?—I have it not.—Are you  
 hungry?—I am hungry.—Are you sleepy?—I am not sleepy.—  
 Which candlestick have you?—I have the golden candlestick of  
 my good baker.

---

<sup>3</sup> The first of these two expressions is more usual, the latter is pre-  
 ferred in poetry. (See page 11, Method, Part II.)

## EIGHTH LESSON.

## Achte Section.

<i>Anything or something good,</i>	etwas Gutes.
<i>Nothing or not anything bad,</i>	nichts Schlechtes
Have you anything good?	Haben Sie etwas Gutes?
I have nothing bad.	Ich habe nichts Schlechtes.

<i>What?</i>	Was?
What have you?	Was haben Sie?
What have you good?	Was haben Sie Gutes?
I have the good bread.	Ich habe das gute Brod.

<i>That or the one.</i>	{ Masc. den. Neut. das.
The neighbour's, or that of the neighbour.	den des Nachbars.
The tailor's, or that of the tailor.	das des Schneiders.

<i>Or.</i>	Oder.
The book,	das Buch.
Have you my book or that of the neighbour?	Haben Sie mein Buch oder das des Nachbars?
I have that of the neighbour.	Ich habe das des Nachbars.
Have you your hat or the baker's?	Haben Sie Ihren Hut oder den des Bäckers?

## EXERCISE.

5.

Have you my book?—I have it not.—Which book have you?—I have my good book.—Have you anything ugly?—I have nothing ugly. I have something pretty.—Which table have you? I have the baker's.—Have you the baker's dog or the neighbour's?—I have the neighbour's.—What have you?—I have nothing.—Have you the good or bad sugar?—I have the good.—Have you the neighbour's good or bad horse?—I have the good (one<sup>1</sup>).—Have you the golden or the silver candlestick?—I have the silver candlestick.—Have you my neighbour's paper or that of my tailor?—I have that of your tailor.—Are you hungry or thirsty?—I am hungry.—Are you sleepy or tired?—I am tired.—What have you pretty?—I have nothing pretty.—Have you the leather shoe?—I have it not.

<sup>1</sup> Words in the exercises between parentheses are not to be translated.

## NINTH LESSON.

## Neunte Section.

Have you my coat or the tailor's?	Haben Sie meinen Rock oder den des Schneiders?
I have yours.	Ich habe den Ihrigen.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Mine.</i>	NOM. der meinige.	das meinige.
	ACC. den meinigen.	das meinige.
<i>Yours.</i>	NOM. der Ihrige.	das Ihrige.
	ACC. den Ihrigen.	das Ihrige.

Absolute possessive pronouns, as: *der meinige, mine; der Ihrige, yours; der seinige, his, &c.*, are declined like adjectives preceded by the definite article. (See Lesson V.)

*Obs.* When the conjunctive possessive pronouns: *mein, my; Ihr, your; sein, his, &c.*, are used for the absolute possessive pronouns: *der meinige, mine; der Ihrige, yours, &c.*, they terminate in the masculine in *er* and in the neuter in *es*. **Ex.:**

Is this your hat?	Ist das Ihr Hut?
No, Sir, it is not mine, but yours.	Nein, mein Herr, es ist nicht meiner, sondern Ihrer.
Is this my book?	Ist das mein Buch?
No, it is not yours, but mine.	Nein, es ist nicht Ihres, sondern meines.

The man,	{ der Mann (vir);
the stick,	{ der Mensch (gen. en, homo);
my brother,	der Stocf;
the shoemaker,	mein Bruder;
the merchant,	der Schuhmacher;
the friend,	der Kaufmann;
Have you the merchant's stick or yours?	der Freund.
	Haben Sie den Stocf des Kaufmanns oder den Ihrigen?

<i>Neither.</i>	Weber.
<i>Nor.</i>	Noch.
I have neither the merchant's stick nor mine.	Ich habe weder den Stocf des Kaufmanns noch den meinigen.

Are you hungry or thirsty?	{ Haben Sie Hunger oder Durst?
	{ Sind Sie hungrig oder durstig?
I am neither hungry nor thirsty.	{ Ich habe weder Hunger noch Durst.
	{ Ich bin weder hungrig noch durstig.

## EXERCISE.

## 6.

Have you your cloth or mine?—I have neither yours nor mine.—I have neither my bread nor the tailor's.—Have you my stick or yours?—I have mine.—Have you the shoemaker's shoe or the merchant's?—I have neither the shoemaker's nor the merchant's.—Have you my brother's coat?—I have it not.—Which paper have you?—I have your friend's.—Have you my dog or my friend's?—I have your friend's.—Have you my thread stocking or my brother's?—I have neither yours nor your brother's.—Have you my good baker's good bread or that of my friend?—I have neither your good baker's nor that of your friend.—Which bread have you?—I have mine.—Which ribbon have you?—I have yours.—Have you the good or the bad cheese?—I have neither the good nor the bad.—Have you anything?—I have nothing.—Have you my pretty or my ugly dog?—I have neither your pretty nor your ugly dog.—Have you my friend's stick?—I have it not.—Are you sleepy or hungry?—I am neither sleepy nor hungry.—Have you the good or the bad salt?—I have neither the good nor the bad.—Have you my horse or the man's?—I have neither yours nor the man's.—What have you?—I have nothing fine.—Are you tired?—I am not tired.

## TENTH LESSON.

## Zehnte Lektion.

The cork,  
the corkscrew,  
the umbrella,  
the boy,

der Pfropf (Pfropfen);  
der Pfropfzieher (Pfropfenzieher);  
der Regenschirm;  
der Knabe (gen. n).

*Obs.* All masculine substantives ending in *e*, take *n* in the genitive case singular, and keep this termination in all the cases of the singular and plural.

The Frenchman,  
the carpenter,  
the hammer,  
the iron,  
iron or of iron,  
the nail,  
the pencil,  
the thimble,  
the coffee,  
the honey,  
the biscuit,

der Franzose (gen. n);  
der Zimmermann;  
der Hammer;  
das Eisen;  
eisern (adjective);  
der Nagel;  
der Bleistift;  
der Fingerhut;  
der Kaffee;  
der Honig;  
der Zwieback.

Have I?

You have.

What have I?

You have the carpenter's hammer.

Have I the nail?

You have it.

Have I the bread?

You have it.

I am right.

I am wrong.

Am I right?

Habe ich?

Sie haben.

Was habe ich?

Sie haben den Hammer des Zimmermanns.

Habe ich den Nagel?

Sie haben ihn.

Habe ich das Brod?

Sie haben es.

† Ich habe Recht.

† Ich habe Unrecht.

† Habe ich Recht.

## EXERCISE.

## 7.

I have neither the baker's dog nor that of my friend.—Are you sleepy?—I am not sleepy. I am hungry.—You are not hungry.—Have I the cork?—No, Sir, you have it not.—Have I the carpenter's wood?—You have it not.—Have I the Frenchman's good umbrella?—You have it.—Have I the carpenter's iron nail or yours?—You have mine.—You have neither the carpenter's nor mine.—Which pencil have I?—You have that of the Frenchman.—Have I your thimble or that of the tailor?—You have neither mine nor that of the tailor.—Which umbrella have I?—You have my good umbrella.—Have I the Frenchman's good honey?—You have it not.—Which biscuit have I?—You have that of my good neighbour.—Have you my coffee or that of my boy?—I have that of your good boy.—Have you your cork or mine?—I have neither yours nor mine.—What have you?—I have my good brother's good pencil.—Am I right?—You are right.—Am I wrong?—You are not wrong.—Am I right or wrong?—You are neither right nor wrong.—You are hungry.—You are not sleepy.—You are neither hungry nor thirsty.—You have neither the good coffee nor the good sugar.—What have I?—You have nothing.

## ELEVENTH LESSON.

## Elfte Section.

Have I the iron or the golden nail?

You have neither the iron nor the golden nail.

The sheep,  
the ram,  
the chicken (the hen),  
the ship,  
the bag (the sack),  
the young man,  
the youth,

Habe ich den eisernen oder den goldenen Nagel?

Sie haben weder den eisernen noch den goldenen Nagel.

das Schaf;  
der Hammel (der Schöps);  
das Huhn;  
das Schiff;  
der Sack;  
der junge Mensch (gen. en);  
der Jüngling.

*Who?*

*Who has?*

Who has the trunk?

The man has the trunk.

The man has *not* the trunk.

Who has it?

The young man has it.

The young man has it *not*.

*Wer?*

*Wer hat?*

Wer hat den Koffer?

Der Mann hat den Koffer.

Der Mann hat den Koffer nicht.

Wer hat ihn?

Der junge Mensch hat ihn.

Der junge Mensch hat ihn nicht.

*He has.*

He has the knife.

He has *not* the knife.

He has it.

Has the man?

Has the painter?

Has the friend?

Has the boy the carpenter's hammer?

He has it.

Has the youth it?

Is he thirsty?

He is thirsty.

Is he tired?

He is *not* tired.

Er hat.

Er hat das Messer.

Er hat das Messer nicht.

Er hat es.

Hat der Mann?

Hat der Maler?

Hat der Freund?

Hat der Knabe den Hammer des Zimmermanns?

Er hat ihn.

Hat ihn der Jüngling?

Ist er durstig? (Hat er Durst?)

Er ist durstig. (Er hat Durst.)

Ist er müde?

Er ist nicht müde.

## EXERCISES.

## 8.

Is he thirsty or hungry?—He is neither thirsty nor hungry.—Has the friend my hat?—He has it.—He has it not.—Who has my sheep?—Your friend has it.—Who has my large sack?—The baker has it.—Has the youth my book?—He has it not?—What has he?—He has nothing.—Has he the hammer or the nail?—He has neither the hammer nor the nail.—Has he my umbrella or my stick?—He has neither your umbrella nor your stick.—Has he my coffee or my sugar?—He has neither your coffee nor your sugar; he has your honey.—Has he my brother's biscuit or that of the Frenchman?—He has neither your brother's nor that of the Frenchman; he has that of the good boy.—Which ship has he?—He has my good ship.—Has he the old sheep or the ram?

## 9.

Has the young man my knife or that of the painter?—He has neither yours nor that of the painter.—Who has my brother's fine dog?—Your friend has it.—What has my friend?—He has the baker's good bread.—He has the good neighbour's good chicken.—What have you?—I have nothing.—Have you my bag or yours?—I have that of your friend.—Have I your good knife?—You have it.—You have it not.—Has the youth it (fat es)?—He has it not.—What has he?—He has something good.—He has nothing bad.—Has he anything?—He has nothing.—Is he sleepy?—He is not sleepy. He is hungry.—Who is hungry?—The young man is hungry.—Your friend is hungry.—Your brother's boy is hungry.—My shoemaker's brother is hungry.—My good tailor's boy is thirsty.—Which man has my book?—The big (groß) man has it.—Which man has my horse?—Your friend has it.—He has your good cheese.—Has he it?—Yes, Sir, he has it.



## TWELFTH LESSON.

## Zwölfte Section.

The peasant,	der Bauer (gen. n) ;
the ox,	der Ochse ;
the cook,	der Koch ;
the bird,	der Vogel.

His.	Masc.		Neut.
	Nom.	sein,	sein.
	Acc.	seinen,	sein.

*Obs. A.* The conjunctive possessive pronoun *sein* is declined like *mein* and *Ihr*. (See Lessons IV. and V.)

The servant,	der Bediente ;
the broom,	der Besen.
Has the servant his broom ?	Hat der Bediente seinen Besen ?
His eye,	sein Auge ;
his foot,	seinen Fuß ;
his rice,	seinen Reis.
Has the cook his chicken or that	Hat der Koch sein Huhn oder das
of the peasant ?	des Bauern ?
He has his own.	Er hat das seinige.

	Masc.		Neut.
	Nom.	der seinige.	das seinige.
	Acc.	den seinigen.	das seinige.
His or <i>his own</i> (absolute possessive pronoun).			
Has the servant his trunk or mine ?	Hat der Bediente seinen Koffer		
	oder den meinigen ?		
He has his own.	Er hat den seinigen.		
Have you your shoe or his ?	Haben Sie Ihren Schuh oder den		
	seinigen ?		
I have his.	Ich habe den seinigen.		
Somebody or anybody, some one or any one (indefinite pronoun).	NOM.	Jemand.	
	GEN.	Jemandes.	
	DAT.	Jemandem.	
	ACC.	Jemanden.	
Has anybody my hat ?	Hat Jemand meinen Hut ?		
Somebody has it.	Jemand hat ihn.		
	Es hat ihn Jemand.		

Who has my stick ?  
Nobody has it.

Wer hat meinen Stod ?  
Niemand hat ihn.

No one, nobody or not anybody. | Niemand.

*Obs. B.* Niemand is declined exactly like Jemand.

Who has my ribbon ?  
Nobody has it.  
Nobody has his broom.

Wer hat mein Band ?  
Niemand hat es.  
Niemand hat seinen Besen.

## EXERCISES.

### 10.

Have you the ox of the peasant or that of the cook ?—I have neither that of the peasant nor that of the cook.—Has the peasant his rice ?—He has it.—Have you it ?—I have it not.—Has his boy the servant's broom ?—He has it.—Who has the boy's pencil ?—Nobody has it.—Has your brother my stick or that of the painter ?—He has neither yours nor that of the painter ; he has his own.—Has he the good or bad money ?—He has neither the good nor the bad.—Has he the wooden or the leaden horse ?—He has neither the wooden nor the leaden horse.—What has he good ?—He has my good honey.—Has my neighbour's boy my book ?—He has it not.—Which book has he ? He has his fine book.—Has he my book or his own ?—He has his own.—Who has my gold button ?—Nobody has it.—Has any body my thread stocking ?—Nobody has it.

### 11.

Which ship has the merchant ?—He has his own.—Which horse has my friend ?—He has mine.—Has he his dog ?—He has it not.—Who has his dog ?—Nobody has it.—Who has my brother's umbrella ?—Somebody has it.—Which broom has the servant ?—He has his own.—Is anybody hungry ?—Nobody is hungry.—Is anybody sleepy ?—Nobody is sleepy.—Is any one tired ?—No one is tired.—Who is right ?—Nobody is right.—Have I his biscuit ?—You have it not.—Have I his good brother's ox ?—You have it not.—Which chicken have I ?—You have his.—Is anybody wrong ?—Nobody is wrong.

## THIRTEENTH LESSON.

## Dreizehnte Section.

---

The sailor,	der Matrose, der Bootsknecht ;
the chair,	der Stuhl ;
the looking-glass,	der Spiegel ;
the candle,	das Licht ;
the tree,	der Baum ;
the garden,	der Garten ;
the foreigner,	der Fremde ;
the glove,	der Handschuh.

---

This ass,	dieser Esel ;
that hay,	dieses (dieß) Heu.

---

The grain,	das Korn ;
the corn,	das Getreide

---

This man,	dieser Mann ;
that man,	jener Mann ;
this book,	dieses (dieß <sup>1</sup> ) Buch ;
that book,	jenes Buch.

---

	N. G. D. A.
This or this one.	<i>Masc.</i> dieser—es—em—en.
That or that one.	<i>Neut.</i> jenes—es—em—es.

*Obs.* It will be perceived that *dieser* and *jener* are declined exactly like the definite article. (See Lesson IV.) The English almost always use *that* when the Germans use *dieses*. In German *jener* is only employed when it relates to a person or a thing spoken of before, or to make an immediate comparison between two things or persons. Therefore, whenever this is not the case, the English *that* must be translated by *dieser*.

Have you this hat or that one? | Haben Sie diesen oder jenen Hut?

---

<sup>1</sup> *Dieß* or *dieß* is often used for *dieses* in the nominative and accusative neuter, particularly when it is not followed by a substantive, and when it represents a whole sentence, as will be seen hereafter.

## But. | Aber, sondern.

*Obs.* Aber is used after affirmative or negative propositions; sondern is only used after negative propositions.

I have not this, but that one.  
Has the neighbour this book or  
that one?

He has this, but not that one.  
Have you this looking-glass or  
that one?

I have neither this nor that one.

That ox,  
the letter,  
the note,  
the horse-shoe,

Ich habe nicht diesen, sondern jenen.  
Hat der Nachbar dieses oder jenes  
Buch?

Er hat dieses, aber nicht jenes.  
Haben Sie diesen oder jenen Spiegel?

Ich habe weder diesen noch jenen.  
dieser Ochse;  
der Brief;  
der Zettel (das Billet);  
das Hufeisen.

## EXERCISE.

## 12.

Which hay has the foreigner?—He has that of the peasant.—Has that sailor my looking-glass?—He has it not.—Have you this candle or that one?—I have this one.—Have you the hay of my garden or that of yours?—I have neither that of your garden nor that of mine, but that of the foreigner.—Which glove have you?—I have his glove.—Which chair has the foreigner?—He has his own.—Who has my good candle?—This man has it.—Who has that looking-glass?—That foreigner has it.—What has your servant (S<sup>hr</sup> Bedienter)?—He has the tree of this garden.—Has he that man's book?—He has not the book of that man, but that of this boy.—Which ox has this peasant?—He has that of your neighbour.—Have I your letter or his?—You have neither mine nor his, but that of your friend.—Have you this horse's hay?—I have not its hay, but its shoe.—Has your brother my note or his own?—He has that of the sailor.—Has this foreigner my glove or his own?—He has neither yours nor his own, but that of his friend.—Are you hungry or thirsty?—I am neither hungry nor thirsty, but sleepy.—Is he sleepy or hungry?—He is neither sleepy nor hungry, but tired.—Am I right or wrong?—You are neither right nor wrong, but your good boy is wrong.—Have I the good or the bad knife?—You have neither the good nor the bad, but the ugly (one).—What have I?—You have nothing good but something bad.—Who has my ass?—The peasant has it.

## FOURTEENTH LESSON.

## Vierzehnte Section.

<i>That</i> or <i>which</i> (relative pronoun).	{	N.	G.	D.	A.
		<i>Masc.</i>	welcher	es	em—en.
		<i>Neut.</i>	welches	es	em—es.

*Obs. A.* It will be perceived that the relative pronoun *welcher* is declined like the definite article, which may be substituted for it; but then the masculine and neuter of the genitive case is *dessen* instead of *des*. *Welcher* is never used in the genitive case.

Have you the hat, which my brother has?	Haben Sie den Hut, welchen mein Bruder hat?
I have not the hat, which your brother has.	Ich habe nicht den Hut, welchen Ihr Bruder hat.
Have you the horse, which I have?	Haben Sie das Pferd, welches ich habe?
I have the horse, which you have.	Ich habe das Pferd, welches Sie haben.

<i>That</i> or <i>the one</i> (determinative pronoun).	{	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
		NOM.	derjenige. dasjenige.
		GEN.	desjenigen. desjenigen.
		DAT.	demjenigen. demjenigen.
		ACC.	denjenigen. dasjenige.

*Obs. B.* *Derjenige* is always used with a relative pronoun, to determine the person or thing to which that pronoun relates. It is compounded of the definite article and *jenig*, and declined like an adjective preceded by this article. The article alone may also be substituted in its stead, but must then undergo the modification pointed out in the foregoing observation, as will be seen hereafter.

I have that, or the one which you have.	{	Ich habe denjenigen, welchen Sie haben.
		Ich habe den, welchen Sie haben.

You have that which I have.	{	Sie haben dasjenige, welches ich habe.
		Sie haben das, welches ich habe.

		<i>Masculine.</i>	
<i>That which or the one which.</i>	{	Nom.	derjenige, welcher.
		Acc.	denjenigen, welchen.
		<i>Neuter.</i>	
		Nom.	dasjenige, welches.
		Acc.	dasjenige, welches.
Which carriage have you ?		Welchen Wagen haben Sie ?	
I have that which your friend has.		Ich habe den (denjenigen), welchen Ihr Freund hat.	
The carriage,		der Wagen ;	
the house,		das Haus.	

<i>The same.</i>	{	Masc.	derselbe (der nämliche).
		Neut.	daselbe (das nämliche).

*Obs. C.* Derselbe, the same, is compounded of the definite article and *selb*, and is declined like *derjenige*. It is frequently used instead of the personal pronoun of the third person, to avoid repetition, and to make the sentence more perspicuous.

Have you the same stick, which I have ?	{	Haben Sie denselben (den nämlichen) Stock, den ich habe ?	
I have the same.		Ich habe denselben (den nämlichen).	
Has that man the same cloth, which you have ?		Hat dieser Mann daselbe (das nämliche) Tuch, welches (das) Sie haben ?	
He has not the same.		Er hat nicht daselbe (das nämliche).	
Has he (that is, has the same man) my glove ?		Hat derselbe meinen Handschuh ?	
He has it not.		Er hat ihn (denselben) nicht.	

## EXERCISE.

## 13.

Have you the garden, which I have ?—I have not the one that you have.—Which looking-glass have you ?—I have the one which your brother has.—Has he the book that your friend has ?—He has not the one which my friend has.—Which candle has he ?—He has that of his neighbour.—He has the one that I have.—Has he this tree or that one ?—He has neither this nor that, but the one which I have.—Which ass has the man ?—He has the one that his boy has.—Has the stranger your chair or mine ?—He has neither yours nor mine ; but he has his friend's good chair.—Have you the glove which I have, or the one that my

tailor has?—I have neither the one which you have, nor the one which your tailor has, but my own.—Has your shoemaker my fine shoe, or that of his boy?—He has neither yours nor that of his boy, but that of the good stranger.—Which house has the baker?—He has neither yours nor mine, but that of his good brother.—Which carriage have I?—Have I mine or that of the peasant?—You have neither yours nor that of the peasant; you have the one which I have?—Have you my fine carriage?—I have it not; but the Frenchman has it.—What has the Frenchman?—He has nothing.—What has the shoemaker?—He has something fine.—What has he fine?—He has his fine shoe.—Is the shoemaker right?—He is not wrong; but his neighbour, the baker, is right.—Is your horse hungry?—It (Es) is not hungry, but thirsty.—Have you my ass's hay or yours?—I have that which my brother has.—Has your friend the same horse that my brother has?—He has not the same horse, but the same coat.—Has he (hat derselbe) my umbrella?—He has it not.

## FIFTEENTH LESSON.

## Fünfzehnte Section.

*Declension of Masculine and Neuter Substantives.*

## I. SINGULAR.

*Rules.*

1. Substantives of the masculine and neuter gender take *es* or *s* in the genitive case singular: those ending in *s*, *f*, *z*, *g*, take *es*; all others, particularly those ending in *el*, *en*, *er*, *den*, and *lein*, take *s*.

2. All masculine substantives which end in *e* in the nominative singular take *n* in the other cases of the singular and plural<sup>1</sup>, and do not soften the radical vowel.

## II. PLURAL.

*Rules.*

1. All substantives, without exception, take *n* in the dative case of the plural, if they have not one in the nominative.

2. All masculine and neuter substantives ending in *el*, *en*, *er*<sup>2</sup>, as also diminutives in *den* and *lein*, have the same termination in the plural as in the singular.

3. In all cases of the plural, masculine substantives take *e*, and neuter substantives *er*; and soften the radical vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*.

4. In words of the neuter gender ending in *el*, *en*, *er*, the radical vowel is not softened in the plural, except in *das Kloster*, the convent: plur. *die Klöster*<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Except *der Käse*, the cheese; gen. *des Käses*; plur. *die Käse*.

<sup>2</sup> These three terminations exactly correspond in pronunciation to the English word *Eleanor*. (See pages 3, 4, Method, Part II.)

<sup>3</sup> The declension of those substantives which deviate from these rules will be separately noted\*.

\* For further details see my complete treatise upon the declension of substantives in "Introductory Book to the Method."



The hats,	die Hüte ;
the buttons,	die Knöpfe ;
the tables,	die Tische ;
the houses,	die Häuser <sup>4</sup> ;
the ribbons,	die Bänder.

The threads,	die Fäden ;
the tailors,	die Schneider ;
the notes,	die Zettel, die Billette.

The boys,	die Knaben ;
the Frenchmen,	die Franzosen ;
men or the men,	die Menschen.

*Declension of Adjectives preceded by the definite article in the plural.*

		For all Genders.
NOM.	the good.	NOM. die guten.
GEN.	of the good.	GEN. der guten.
DAT.	to the good.	DAT. den guten.
ACC.	the good.	ACC. die guten.

The good boys.	Die guten Knaben.
The ugly dogs.	Die hässlichen Hunde <sup>5</sup> .

*Obs.* Adjectives preceded in the plural by a possessive pronoun have the same declension as with the definite article.

		For all Genders.
<i>My good (plural).</i>	{	NOM. meine guten.
		GEN. meiner guten.
		DAT. meinen guten.
		ACC. meine guten.

Have you my good books ?	Haben Sie meine guten Bücher ?
I have your good books.	Ich habe Ihre guten Bücher.

<sup>4</sup> It must be observed that in the diphthong au, a is softened. In the diphthong eu, u is not softened, as: der Freund, the friend; plur. die Freunde, the friends.

<sup>5</sup> The word Hund, dog, does not soften the vowel u in the plural.

## A TABLE

### OF THE DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES <sup>6</sup>.

	<i>Subst. Masculine.</i>		<i>Subst. Feminine.</i>		<i>Subst. Neuter.</i>	
SINGULAR.	N.		N.		N.	
	G.	ē or eē.	G.	invariable.	G.	ē or eē.
	D.	or e.	D.		D.	or e.
	A.		A.		A.	
PLURAL.	N.	e.	N.		N.	er.
	G.	e.	G.	en or n.	G.	er.
	D.	en or n.	D.		D.	ern.
	A.	e.	A.		A.	er.

### EXERCISE.

14.

Have you the tables?—Yes, Sir, I have the tables.—Have you my tables?—No, Sir, I have not your tables.—Have I your buttons?—You have my buttons.—Have I your fine houses?—You have my fine houses.—Has the tailor the buttons?—He has not the buttons, but the threads.—Has your tailor my good buttons?—My tailor has your good gold buttons.—What has the boy?—He has the gold threads.—Has he my gold or my silver threads?—He has neither your gold nor your silver threads.—Has the Frenchman the fine houses or the good notes?—He has neither the fine houses nor the good notes.—What has he?—He has his good friends.—Has this man my fine umbrellas?—He has not your fine umbrellas, but your good coats.—Has any one my good letters?—No one has your good letters.—Has the tailor's son (*der Sohn*) my good knives or my good thimbles?—He has neither your good knives nor your good thimbles, but the ugly coats of the stranger's big (*groß*) boys.—Have I your friend's good ribbons?—You have not my friend's good ribbons, but my neighbour's fine carriage.—Has your friend the shoemaker's pretty sticks, or my good tailor's pretty dogs?—My friend has my good shoemaker's fine books; but he has neither the shoemaker's pretty sticks nor your good tailor's pretty dogs.—Is your neighbour right or wrong?—He is neither right nor wrong.—Is he thirsty or hungry?—He is neither thirsty nor hungry.

---

<sup>6</sup> See "Introductory Book to the Method," containing a definition of all the German Declensions, and rules on the gender of substantives.

## SIXTEENTH LESSON

## Sechzehnte Section.

The Englishman,	der Engländer ;
the German,	der Deutsche ;
the Turk,	der Türke ;
the small books,	die kleinen Bücher ;
the large horses,	die großen Pferde.

Have the English the fine hats of the French ?	Haben die Engländer die schönen Hüte der Franzosen ?
---	---

<i>Those.</i>	<i>For all Genders.</i>	
	NOM.	diejenigen or die.
	GEN.	derjenigen — derer.
	DAT.	denjenigen — denen.
	ACC.	diejenigen — die.

*Obs. A.* When the definite article is substituted for *derjenige*, its genitive plural is *derer*, and its dative plur. *denen*. (See also Lesson XIV. *Obs. B.*)

Have you the books which the men have ?	Haben Sie die Bücher, welche die Männer haben ?
I have not those which the men have ; but I have those which you have.	Ich habe nicht diejenigen (die), welche die Männer haben ; aber ich habe die (diejenigen), welche Sie haben.

<i>The same.</i>	<i>For all Genders.</i>	
	Dieselben <sup>1</sup> (die nämlichen. See Lesson XIV. <i>Obs. C.</i> )	
Have you the same books, which I have ?	Haben Sie dieselben Bücher, die ich habe ?	
I have the same.	Ich habe dieselben.	

The Italian, the Italians, the Spaniard, the Spaniards,	der Italiener, die Italiener ; der Spanier, die Spanier <sup>2</sup> .
--	---

<sup>1</sup> Dieselben is declined like diejenigen.

<sup>2</sup> Nouns derived from foreign languages do not soften the radical vowel in the plural. (See the declension of words derived from foreign languages, *Introductory Book*, pages 27, 28.)

	<i>For all Genders.</i>	
<i>Which</i> (plur.).	NOM.	welche or die.
	GEN.	welcher — deren.
	DAT.	welchen — denen.
	ACC.	welche — die.

*Obs. B.* When the definite article stands for *welcher*, its genitive case plural is not *derer*, but *deren*. (See Lesson XIV. *Obs. A.*). The genitives *dessen*, *deren*, are preferable to the genitives *welches*, *welcher*, being more easily distinguished from the nominative.

	<i>For all Genders.</i>			
	N.	G.	D.	A.
<i>These.</i>	diese,	dieser,	diesen,	diese.
<i>Those.</i>	jene,	jener,	jenen,	jene.

*Obs. C.* The definite article may be used instead of these pronouns. Before a noun it follows the regular declension; but when alone, it undergoes the same changes as when substituted for *derjenige*. (See *Obs. A.* above.) The pronoun *der*, *daß*, is distinguished from the article *der*, *daß*, by a stress in the pronunciation. As an article, it throws the tonic accent on the word which immediately follows.

Which books have you?	Welche Bücher haben Sie?
Have you these books or those?	haben Sie diese oder jene Bücher?
I have neither these nor those.	Ich habe weder diese noch jene.
I have neither the one nor the other.	
I have neither the latter nor the former <sup>3</sup> .	
I have neither those of the Spaniards nor those of the Turks.	Ich habe weder die der Spanier noch die der Türken.

## EXERCISES.

### 15.

Have you these horses or those?—I have not these, but those.—Have you the coats of the French, or those of the English?—I have not those of the French, but those of the English.—Have you the pretty sheep (*daß* *Schaf* takes *e*, and is not softened in the plural) of the Turks or those of the Spaniards?—I have neither those of the Turks nor those of the Spaniards, but those of my brother.—Has your brother the fine asses of the Spaniards or those of the Italians?—He has neither those of the Spaniards nor

<sup>3</sup> The English phrases *the former* and *the latter*, *the one* and *the other*, are generally expressed in German by *dieser*, plur. *diese*, and *jener*, plur. *jene*, but in an inverted order, *dieser* referring to the latter and *jener* to the former.

those of the Italians, but he has the fine asses of the French.—Which oxen has your brother?—He has those of the Germans.—Has your friend my large letters or those of the Germans?—He has neither the one nor the other (See Note 3, Lesson XVI.).—Which letters has he?—He has the small letters which you have.—Have I these houses or those?—You have neither these nor those.—Which houses have I?—You have those of the English.—Has any one the tall tailor's gold buttons?—Nobody has the tailor's gold buttons, but somebody has those of your friend.

## 16.

Have I the notes of the foreigners or those of my boy?—You have neither those of the foreigners nor those of your boy, but those of the great Turks.—Has the Turk my fine horse?—He has it not.—Which horse has he?—He has his own.—Has your neighbour my chicken or my sheep?—My neighbour has neither your chicken nor your sheep.—What has he?—He has nothing good.—Have you nothing fine?—I have nothing fine.—Are you tired?—I am not tired.—Which rice has your friend?—He has that of his merchant.—Which sugar has he?—He has that which I have.—Has he your merchant's good coffee or that of mine?—He has neither that of yours nor that of mine; he has his own.—Which ships (*das Schiff* forms its plural in *e*) has the Frenchman?—He has the ships of the English.—Which houses has the Spaniard?—He has the same which you have.—Has he my good knives?—He has your good knives.—Has he the thread stockings which I have?—He has not the same that you have, but those of his brother.

## SEVENTEENTH LESSON.

## Siebzehnte Lektion.

The glass,	das Glas ;
the comb,	der Kamm.
Have you my small combs ?	Haben Sie meine kleinen Kämme ?
I have them.	Ich habe sie.

*Them,* | *sie* (after the verb).

*Plural for all Genders.*

	N.	G.	D.	A.
<i>My</i> (plural),	meine	meiner	meinen	meine.
<i>Your,</i> —	Ihre	Ihrer	Ihren	Ihre.
<i>His,</i> —	seine	seiner	seinen	seine.
<i>Their,</i> —	ihre	ihrer	ihren	ihre.

Have you my fine glass ?	Haben Sie mein schönes Glas ?
Has he my fine glasses ?	Hat er meine schönen Gläser ?
He has them.	Er hat sie.
The man has them.	Der Mann hat sie.
He has them <i>not</i> .	Er hat sie nicht.
The men have them.	Die Männer haben sie.
Have the men them ?	Haben sie die Männer ?

Have you my chairs or his ?	Haben Sie meine Stühle oder die seinigen ? (See Lesson IX.)
I have neither yours nor his.	Ich habe weder die Ihrigen noch die seinigen.
Which chairs have you ?	Welche Stühle haben Sie ?
I have mine.	Ich habe die meinigen.

Some or any sugar,	Zucker ;
Some or any bread,	Brod ;
Some or any salt,	Salz.

*Rule.* *Some or any* before a noun is not expressed in German.

## EXERCISE.

17.

Have you my good combs ?—I have them.—Have you the good horses of the English ?—I have them not.—Which brooms have you ?—I have those of the foreigners.—Have you my coats

or those of my friends?—I have neither yours nor those of your friends.—Have you mine or his?—I have his.—Has the Italian the good cheeses which you have?—He has not those which I have, but those which you have.—Has your boy my good pencils?—He has them.—Has he the carpenter's nails?—He has them not.—What has he?—He has his iron nails.—Has anybody the thimbles of the tailors?—Nobody has them.—Who has the ships of the Spaniards?—The English have them.—Have the English these ships or those?—The English have their ships.—Have your brothers my knives or theirs?—My brothers have neither your knives nor theirs.—Have I your chickens or those of your cooks?—You have neither mine nor those of my cooks.—Which chickens have I?—You have those of the good peasant.—Who has my oxen?—Your servants have them.—Have the Germans them?—The Germans have them not, but the Turks have them.—Who has my wooden table?—Your boys have it.—Who has my good bread?—Your friends have it.

## EIGHTEENTH LESSON.

## Achtzehnte Section.

*Declension of Adjectives without an Article.*

**Rule.** An adjective, not preceded by an article, takes the same termination as the definite article, except in the genitive singular, masculine and neuter, which then ends in *en* instead of *es*<sup>1</sup>.

	Masc.	Neut.
Good wine or some good wine, &c.	NOM. guter Wein.	gutes Salz.
	GEN. guten Weines.	guten Salzes.
	DAT. gutem Weine.	gutem Salze.
	ACC. guten Wein.	gutes Salz.
<i>Plural for all Genders.</i>		
Good or some good, &c. (plural.)	N. gute,	G. guter, D. guten, A. gute.
Some good cheese, some good bread,	guter Käse ;	
	gutes Brod.	

*Singular.*

<i>Some of it, any of it, of it.</i>	Masc. welchen, dessen, desselben.
	Neut. welches, dessen, desselben.
<i>Some of them, any of them, of them.</i>	Plural for all Genders.
	welche, deren, derselben.

**Obs.** The pronoun *some* or *any*, when taken in a partitive sense, is expressed by *welch*. *Of him, of it, of them, &c.* when governed by a substantive, an adjective, or a verb requiring in German the genitive, are expressed by the genitive of the personal pronouns, if relating to a person; and if to a thing, by the genitives *dessen, desselben, deren, derselben*, which may sometimes be omitted<sup>2</sup>.

Have you any wine?	Haben Sie Wein?
I have some.	Ich habe welchen.
Have you any water?	Haben Sie Wasser?
I have some.	Ich habe welches.
Have you any good wine?	Haben Sie guten Wein?

<sup>1</sup> Except also in the nominative and accusative singular of the neuter, in which it changes *as* into *es*.

<sup>2</sup> *Dessen* and *deren* are generally used with *viel, wenig, and genug*; *deren* also with a cardinal number; but they are not frequently employed with *einige, etliche, verschiednen, mehre, or mehrere*.



I have some.	Ich habe welchen.
Have I any good cloth?	Habe ich gutes Tuch?
You have some.	Sie haben welches.
Have you any shoes?	Haben Sie Schuhe?
I have some.	Ich habe welche.
Have you good or bad horses?	Haben Sie gute oder schlechte Pferde?
I have some good ones.	Ich habe gute.
Have you good or bad wine?	Haben Sie guten oder schlechten Wein?
I have some good.	Ich habe guten.
Have you good or bad water?	Haben Sie gutes oder schlechtes Wasser?
I have some good.	Ich habe gutes.

## EXERCISE.

## 18.

Have you any sugar?—I have some.—Have you any good coffee?—I have some.—Have you any salt?—I have some.—Have I any good salt?—You have some.—Have I any shoes?—You have some.—Have I any pretty dogs?—You have some.—Has the man any good honey?—He has some.—What has the man?—He has some good bread.—What has the shoemaker?—He has some pretty shoes.—Has the sailor any biscuits (Zwieback does not soften in the plural)?—He has some.—Has your friend any good pencils?—He has some.—Have you good or bad coffee?—I have some good.—Have you good or bad wood.—I have some good?—Have I good or bad oxen?—You have some bad (ones).—Has your brother good or bad cheese?—He has neither good nor bad.—What has he good?—He has some good friends.—Who has some cloth?—My neighbour has some.—Who has some money?—The French have some.—Who has some gold?—The English have some.—Who has some good horses?—The Germans have some.—Who has some good hay?—This ass has some.—Who has some good bread?—That Spaniard has some.—Who has some good books?—These Frenchmen have some.—Who has some good ships?—Those Englishmen have some.—Has anybody wine?—Nobody has any.—Has the Italian fine or ugly horses?—He has some ugly (ones).—Have you wooden or stone tables?—I have neither wooden nor stone (ones).—Has your boy the fine books of mine?—He has not those of your boy, but his own.—Has he any good thread stockings?—He has some.—What has the Turk?—He has nothing.

## NINETEENTH LESSON.

## Neunzehnte Section.

<i>No, none, not a, or not any.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>			
	N.	G.	D.	A.
	{ <i>Masc.</i> kein, keines, keinem, keinen. <i>Neut.</i> kein, keines, keinem, kein.			

*Obs. A.* The word *kein* has this declension when, like *no* in English, it is followed by a substantive; but when the substantive is understood as with *none* in English, it forms its nominative masculine in *er*, and its nominative and accusative neuter in *es* or *s*.

Have you any wine?	Haben Sie Wein?
I have none.	Ich habe keinen.
Have you no bread?	Haben Sie kein Brod?
I have not any.	Ich habe keines (keins).

*Obs. B.* It will be observed that *any* is expressed by *kein*, when accompanied by a negation.

<i>No, none, or not any (plural).</i>	<i>Plural for all Genders.</i>			
	N.	G.	D.	A.
	{ keine, keiner, keinen, keine.			

Have you no shoes?	Haben Sie keine Schuhe?
I have none.	Ich habe keine.
Have you any?	Haben Sie welche?
I have not any.	Ich habe keine.
Has the man any?	Hat der Mann welche?
He has none.	Er hat keine.
Has he any good books?	Hat er gute Bücher?
He has some.	Er hat welche.

The American,	der Amerikaner;
the Irishman,	der Irländer;
the Scotchman,	der Schottländer (Schotte);
the Dutchman,	der Holländer;
the Russian,	der Russe.

*Rule.* Compound words in *mann* change in the plural this termination into *leute*. *Ex.*

The merchants,	die Kaufleute;
the carpenters,	die Zimmerleute.

## EXERCISE.

## 19.

Has the American good money?—He has some.—Have the Dutch good cheese?—Yes, Sir, the Dutch have some.—Has the Russian no cheese?—He has none.—Have you good stockings?—I have some.—Have you good or bad honey?—I have some good.—Have you some good coffee?—I have none.—Have you some bad coffee?—I have some.—Has the Irishman good wine?—He has none.—Has he good water?—He has some.—Has the Scotchman some good salt?—He has none.—What has the Dutchman?—He has good ships.—Have I some bread?—You have none.—Have I some good friends?—You have none.—Who has good friends?—The Frenchman has some.—Has your servant (Syr Sebienter) any coats or brooms?—He has some good brooms, but no coats.—Has any one hay?—Some one has some.—Who has some?—My servant has some.—Has this man any bread?—He has none.—Who has good shoes?—My good shoemaker has some.—Have you the good hats of the Russians, or those of the Dutch?—I have neither those of the Russians nor those of the Dutch. I have those of the Irish.—Which sacks has your friend?—He has the good sacks of the merchants.—Has your boy the good hammers of the carpenters?—No, Sir, he has them not.—Has this little boy some sugar?—He has none.—Has the brother of your friend good combs?—The brother of my friend has none, but I have some.—Who has good wooden chairs?—Nobody has any.

# TWENTIETH LESSON.

## Zwanzigste Section.

The hatter.	der Hutmacher ;
The joiner,	der Tischler (Schreiner).

	Masc.	Neut.
A or an (one).	NOM. ein.	ein.
	GEN. eines.	eines.
	DAT. einem.	einem.
	ACC. einen.	ein.

*Obs. A.* When a substantive is understood, ein like kein, takes er in the nominative masculine, and es or   in the nominative and accusative neuter. (See preceding Lesson.)

Have you a looking-glass ?	haben Sie einen Spiegel ?
I have one.	Ich habe einen.
Have you a book ?	haben Sie ein Buch ?
I have one,	Ich habe eins (eines)
I have none.	Ich habe keins (keines).

*Obs. B.* Neither the indefinite article nor kein is ever accompanied by welcher, dessen, or deren.

And. | Und.

*Declension of an Adjective preceded by the indefinite article or a possessive pronoun in the singular. (See Obs. in Lessons V. and XV.)*

	Masc.	Neut.
A good.	NOM. ein guter.	ein gutes.
	GEN. eines guten.	eines guten.
	DAT. einem guten.	einem guten.
	ACC. einen guten.	ein gutes.

Have you a good round hat ?	haben Sie einen guten runden Hut ?
I have one.	Ich habe einen.
Has he a beautiful house ?	hat er ein sch�nes Haus ?
He has one.	Er hat eins (eines).
He has none	Er hat keins (keines).

I have two of them.

He has three.

You have four.

Have you five good horses?

I have six.

I have six good and seven bad ones.

Ich habe deren zwei. (See *Obs.*  
Lesson XVIII.)

Er hat deren drei.

Sie haben deren vier.

Haben Sie fünf gute Pferde?

Ich habe deren sechs.

Ich habe sechs gute und sieben schlechte.

### *Recapitulation of the Rules relative to the declension of Adjectives.*

We have shown in the foregoing lessons that in German as in English, the adjective always precedes the substantive. When two or more adjectives are before the same noun, they all follow the same declension. Adjectives are not declined when they are not accompanied by a substantive expressed or understood, i. e. when they form the predicate of a proposition. Ex. Ihr Hut ist schön, your hat is beautiful; mein Band ist schön, my ribbon is beautiful; Ihre Hüte sind schön, your hats are beautiful.

When followed by a substantive expressed or understood, the adjective is declined, and assumes three different forms, viz.

1st, Before a substantive without an article preceding, it takes the same termination as the definite article, except in the genitive case singular masculine and neuter, in which it adds *en* instead of *es*<sup>1</sup>.

2d, When it follows the definite article or a word of the same termination it adds *en* in all cases, except in the nominative singular of all genders, and the accusative singular feminine and neuter, in which it adds *e*.

3d, When preceded by the indefinite article, or a possessive pronoun, it adds *er* in the nominative masculine, *e* in the nominative and accusative feminine, *es* in the nominative and accusative neuter, and *en* in the other cases.

All participles partake of the nature of adjectives, and are subject to the same laws.

---

<sup>1</sup> Except also in the nominative and accusative singular of the neuter, in which it changes *aß* into *es*.

## A TABLE

## OF THE DECLENSION OF GERMAN ADJECTIVES.

I. The adjective without an article before a substantive.				II. The adjective preceded by the definite article.			III. The adjective preceded by the inde- finite article.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
SINGULAR.	NOM.	er	e	eß	e	e	e	er	e	eß
	GEN.	en	er	en	en	en	en	en	en	en
	DAT.	em	er	em	en	en	en	en	en	en
	ACC.	en	e	eß	en	e	e	en	e	eß
PLURAL.	NOM.	e	For all genders.		en	For all genders.				
	GEN.	er			en					
	DAT.	en			en					
	ACC.	e			en					

*Obs. A.* The adjective is declined in the same manner when taken substantively.

*B.* Adjectives preceded by the words: *alle*, all; *einige*, *etliche*, some, sundry; *gewisse*, certain; *keine*, none; *manche*, several; *mehrere*, many, several; *solche*, such; *verschiedene*, various; *viele*, many; *welche*, which; *wenige*, few, lose the letter *n* in the nominative and accusative plural; but they keep that termination when preceded by a possessive pronoun in the plural<sup>2</sup>.

*C.* Adjectives ending in *el*, *en*, *er*, for the sake of euphony often reject the letter *e* which precedes those three consonants. *Ex.* instead of *ebeler*, *goldener*, *theurer*, we say: *ebler*, *goldner*, *theurer*.

## EXERCISE.

## 20.

Have you a good servant?—I have one.—Has your hatmaker a beautiful house?—He has two of them.—Have I a pretty gold ribbon?—You have one.—What has the joiner?—He has beautiful tables.—Has he a beautiful round (*rund*) table?—He has one.—Has the baker a large looking-glass?—He has one.—Has the Scotchman the friends that I have?—He has not the same that

<sup>2</sup> Most modern authors frequently reject this distinction, and form all the cases of the plural in *en*

you have, but he has good friends.—Has he your good books?—He has them.—Have I their good hammers?—You have them not, but you have your good iron nails.—Has that hatter my good hat?—He has not yours, but his own.—Have I my good shoes?—You have not yours; you have his.—Who has mine?—Somebody has them.—Has any body two letters?—The brother of my neighbour has three.—Has your cook two sheep (plur. *Schafe*)?—He has four.—Has he six good chickens?—He has three good and seven bad.—Has the merchant good wine?—He has some.—Has the tailor good coats?—He has none.—Has the baker good bread?—He has some.—What has the carpenter?—He has good nails.—What has your merchant?—He has good pencils, good coffee, good honey, and good biscuits (plur. *Bröckchen*).—Who has good iron?—My good friend has some.—Am I right or wrong?—You are wrong.—Is any body sleepy?—The shoemaker is sleepy and thirsty.—Is he tired?—He is not tired.—Has your servant the glasses of our (*unserer*, see the next Lesson) friends?—He has not those of your friends, but those of his great merchants.—Has he my wooden chair?—He has not yours, but that of his boy.—Are you thirsty?—I am not thirsty, but very hungry (*großen Hunger*<sup>3</sup>).

---

<sup>3</sup> Besides these exercises learners should decline a good many substantives with all sorts of adjectives and pronouns. For the choice of substantives see "Introductory Book to the Method," and for adjectives, Lesson XLI.

# TWENTY-FIRST LESSON.

## Ein und zwanzigste Section.

*How much? How many?*

How many hats?

How many knives?

How much bread?

Wieviel<sup>1</sup>?

Wieviel Hüte?

Wieviel Messer?

Wieviel Brod?

*Only, but.*

How many tables have you?

I have only two.

How many knives have you?

I have but one good one.

Nur.

Wieviel Tische haben Sie?

Ich habe deren nur zwei. (See

Obs. Lesson XVIII.)

Wieviel Messer haben Sie?

Ich habe nur ein gutes.

Eight,

nine,

ten,

acht;

neun;

zehn.

*What (designating the nature  
or kind of a thing),*

*Masc.*

*Neut.*

Nom. was für ein. was für ein.

Acc. was für einen. was für ein.

*Plural for all Genders.*

Was für.

What table have you?

I have a wooden table<sup>2</sup>.

What tables has he?

He has stone tables.

What book has your friend?

He has a pretty book.

What paper have you?

I have some fine paper.

Was für einen Tisch haben Sie?

Ich habe einen hölzernen Tisch.

Was für Tische hat er?

Er hat steinerne Tische.

Was für ein Buch hat Ihr Freund?

Er hat ein hübsches Buch.

Was für<sup>3</sup> Papier haben Sie?

Ich habe schönes Papier.

<sup>1</sup> Cardinal numbers are used to answer the question *wieviel?* how many?

<sup>2</sup> The pupils will take care not to answer here with the definite article.

<sup>3</sup> The indefinite article is never placed before collective words, such as: *Papier*, paper; *Wein*, wine; *Zucker*, sugar, &c.



What sugar has he?  
He has some good sugar.

Was für Zucker hat er?  
Er hat guten Zucker.

		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Our.</i>	{	NOM. unser.	unser.
		GEN. unseres.	unseres.
		DAT. unserem.	unserem.
		ACC. unseren.	unser.

		<i>Plural for all Genders.</i>			
<i>Our (plural).</i>	{	N.	G.	D.	A.
		unsere,	unserer,	unseren,	unsere.

*Ours* (singular and plural). | Der (das) unsrige; die unsrigen.

*Obs.* When a consonant l, m, n or r, stands between two e's, one of them is omitted to avoid too soft a pronunciation (see *Obs. C. Lesson XX.*), except when this letter is necessary to the termination of the word or the indication of the case. Thus we frequently say, unser, unserm, unsre, Eures<sup>4</sup>, Eurem, Eure, &c., instead of unseres, unserem, unsere, Eueres, Euerem, Euerer, &c.

## EXERCISES.

### 21.

How many friends have you?—I have two good friends.—Have you eight good trunks?—I have nine.—Has your friend ten good brooms?—He has only three.—Has he two good ships?—He has only one.—How many hammers has the carpenter?—He has only four.—How many shoes has the shoemaker?—He has ten.—Has the young man ten good books?—He has only five.—Has the painter seven good umbrellas?—He has not seven, but one.—How many corks (Korken) does not soften in the plur.; have I?—You have only three.—Has your neighbour our good bread?—He has not ours, but that of his brother.—Has our horse any hay?—It (es) has some.—Has the friend of our tailor good buttons?—He has some.—Has he gold buttons?—He has no gold (buttons), but silver (ones).—How many oxen has our brother?—He has no oxen.—How many coats has the young man of our neighbours (plur. Nachbarn)?—The young man of our neighbours has only one good coat, but that of your friends has three of them.—Has he our good rams?—He has them.—Have I his?—You have not his, but ours.—How many good rams have I?—You have nine.

<sup>4</sup> *Euer*, your, is in fact the second person of the possessive pronoun. *Ihr* is the third person, used generally out of politeness, and for that *ou* written with a capital letter. (See Lessons IV. and XVII.)

## 22.

Who has our silver candlesticks?—Our merchant's boy has them.—Has he our large birds?—He has not ours, but those of the great Irishman.—Has the Italian great eyes (*daß Xuge* takes n in the plur. and is not softened)?—He has great eyes and great feet.—Who has great thread stockings?—The Spaniard has some.—Has he any cheese?—He has none.—Has he corn?—He has some.—What kind of corn has he?—He has good corn.—What kind of rice has our cook?—He has good rice.—What kind of pencils has our merchant?—He has good pencils.—Has our oaker good bread?—He has good bread and good wine.

## 23.

Who is thirsty?—Nobody is thirsty; but the friend of our neighbour is sleepy.—Who has our iron knives?—The Scotchman has them.—Has he them?—He has them.—What kind of friends have you?—I have good friends.—Is the friend of our Englishmen right?—He is neither right nor wrong.—Has he good little birds, and good little sheep? (plur. *Schafe*)?—He has neither birds nor sheep.—What has the Italian?—He has nothing.—Has our tailor's boy anything beautiful?—He has nothing beautiful, but something ugly.—What has he ugly?—He has an ugly dog.—Has he an ugly horse?—He has no horse.—What has our young friend?—He has nothing.—Has he a good book?—He has one.—Has he good salt?—He has none.

## TWENTY-SECOND LESSON.

### Zwei und zwanzigste Lektion.

<i>Much, many, a good deal of.</i>	<i>Viel.</i>
Much wine.	Viel Wein.
Much money.	Viel Geld.

*Obs. A.* When *viel* is preceded by an article, pronoun, or preposition, or when it stands alone and is used substantively, it is declined like an adjective; otherwise it is indeclinable.

Have you much good wine?	Haben Sie viel guten Wein?
I have a good deal.	Ich habe dessen viel. (See <i>Obs.</i> Lesson XVIII.)
Have you much money?	Haben Sie viel Geld?
I have a good deal.	Ich habe dessen viel.

<i>Too much.</i>	<i>Zu viel.</i>
You have too much wine.	Sie haben zu viel Wein.

<i>We.</i>	<i>Wir.</i>
We have.	Wir haben.
We have not.	Wir haben nicht.
We have little or not much money.	Wir haben nicht viel Geld.

<i>Enough.</i>	<i>Genug.</i>
Enough money.	Geld genug.
Knives enough.	Messer genug.

*Obs. B.* Genug is never put before the substantive.

<i>Little.</i>	<i>Wenig.</i>
----------------	---------------

*Obs. C.* Our remark on *viel* applies equally to *wenig*. But these two words are declined, when they relate to several distinct things or anything that may be counted, as will be seen hereafter.

<i>But little, only a little (not much).</i>	<i>Nur wenig (nicht viel).</i>
Have you enough wine?	Haben Sie Wein genug?
I have only a little, but enough.	Ich habe dessen nur wenig, aber genug. (See <i>Obs.</i> Lesson XVIII)

<i>A little.</i>		Ein wenig.
A little wine.		Ein wenig Wein.
A little salt.		Ein wenig Salz.
<i>Courage.</i>		der Muth.
You have but little courage.		Sie haben nicht viel Muth.
We have few friends.		Wir haben wenig Freunde.
<i>Of them (relative to persons).</i>		Ihrer. (gen. of the personal pronoun <i>he, they</i> ; See <i>Obs. Lesson XVIII.</i> )
Have you many friends?		Haben Sie viel Freunde?
We have but few.		Wir haben ihrer nur wenig. (See <i>Obs. C. above.</i> )
You have but little money.		Sie haben nicht viel Geld.
Has the foreigner much money?		Hat der Fremde viel Geld?
He has but little.		Er hat dessen nur wenig.

## EXERCISES.

## 24.

Have you much coffee?—I have only a little.—Has your friend much water?—He has a great deal.—Has the foreigner much corn?—He has not much.—What has the American?—He has much sugar.—What has the Russian?—He has much salt.—Have we much rice?—We have but little.—What have we?—We have much wine, much water and many friends.—Have we much gold?—We have only a little, but enough.—Have you many boys?—We have only a few.—Has our neighbour much hay?—He has enough.—Has the Dutchman much cheese?—He has a great deal.—Has this man courage?—He has none.—Has that foreigner money?—He has not a great deal, but enough.—Has the painter's boy candles (plur. *lichte*)?—He has some.

## 25.

Have we good letters?—We have some.—We have none.—Has the joiner good bread?—He has some.—He has none.—Has he good honey?—He has none.—Has the Englishman a good horse?—He has one.—What have we?—We have good horses.—Who has a beautiful house?—The German has one.—Has the Italian many pretty looking-glasses?—He has a great many; but he has only a little corn.—Has my good neighbour the same horse which you have?—He has not the same horse, but the same carriage.—Has the Turk the same ships that we have?—He has not the same, he has those of the Russians.

## 26.

How many servants have we?—We have only one, but our brothers have three of them.—What knives have you?—We have iron knives.—What bag has the peasant?—He has a thread (leinen) bag.—Has the young man our long (groß) letters?—He has them not.—Who has our pretty notes?—The father (der Vater) of the sailor has them.—Has the carpenter his nails?—The carpenter has his iron nails, and the hatmaker his paper hats.—Has the painter beautiful gardens?—He has some, but his brother has none.—Have you many glasses?—We have only a few.—Have you enough wine?—We have enough of it.—Has anybody my brooms?—Nobody has them.—Has the friend of your hatmaker our combs or yours?—He has neither yours nor ours; he has his.—Has your boy my note or yours?—He has that of his brother.—Have you my stick?—I have not yours, but that of the merchant.—Have you my gloves (plur. Handschuhe)?—I have not yours, but those of my good neighbour.

# TWENTY-THIRD LESSON.

## Drei und zwanzigste Section.

The pepper,	der Pfeffer;
the meat,	das Fleisch;
the vinegar,	der Essig;
the beer,	das Bier.

A few books.	NOM. einige (etliche) Bücher.
	GEN. einiger (etlicher) Bücher.
	DAT. einigen (etlichen) Büchern.
	ACC. einige (etliche) Bücher.

*A few.* | Einige, etliche.

Have you a few books?	Haben Sie einige Bücher?
I have a few.	Ich habe einige.
He has a few.	Er hat etliche.
I have only a few knives.	Ich habe nur einige Messer.
You have only a few.	Sie haben nur einige.

The florin,	der Gulden (is not softened in
	the plur.);
the kreutzer (a coin),	der Kreuzer.

*Other.* | *Andere* (is declined like an adjective).

<i>The other.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
	NOM. der andere.	das andere.
	GEN. des andern.	des andern.
	DAT. dem andern.	dem andern.
	ACC. den andern.	das andere.

<i>The others.</i>	<i>Plural for all Genders.</i>	
	N. die andern.	D. den andern.
	G. der andern.	A. die andern.
	(See <i>Obs.</i> Lesson XXI.)	

Another,	ein Anderer;
another horse,	ein anderes Pferd;
other horses.	andere Pferde.

Have you another horse?  
I have another.

Haben Sie ein anderes Pferd?  
Ich habe ein anderes.

No other.	{	Masc.	keinen andern.
		Neut.	kein anderes.

No others.		keine andere (See <i>Obs. B</i> Lesson XX).

I have no other horse.  
I have no other.  
Have you other horses?  
I have some others.  
I have no others.

Ich habe kein anderes Pferd.  
Ich habe kein anderes.  
Haben Sie andere Pferde?  
Ich habe andere.  
Ich habe keine andere.

The shirt,		das Hemd (plur. en);	
the leg,		das Bein (plur. e);	
the head,		der Kopf;	
the arm,		der Arm (is not softened in the plur.);	
the heart,		das Herz <sup>1</sup> ;	
the month,		der Monat (is not softened in the plur.);	
the work,		das Werk (plur. e);	
the volume,		der Band;	
the crown (money),		der Thaler (is not softened in the plur.)	

What day of the month? | der (das) wievielfte?

*Obs.* Ordinal numbers are used in replying to the question *der* or *das* wievielfte? What day of the month? These numbers are declined like adjectives. They are formed of the cardinal numbers by adding *t* as far as twenty, and *ft* from twenty to the last, with the exception of *erst*, first, and *dritt*, third, which are irregular. (See Method, Part II. pp. 37, 38.) *Ex.*

The first,		der or das erste;
the second,		der zweite;
the third,		der dritte;
the fourth,		der vierte;
the fifth,		der fünfte;

<sup>1</sup> Das Herz, the heart, takes *ens* in the genitive and *en* in the dative case singular; in the plural it takes *en* in all the cases. (See *Introductory Book to the Method.*)

the sixth,	der or das sechste ;
the seventh,	der siebente ;
the eighth,	der achte ;
the ninth,	der neunte ;
the tenth,	der zehnte ;
the eleventh,	der elfte ;
the twentieth,	der zwanzigste ;
the twenty-first, &c.	der ein und zwanzigste, &c. <sup>2</sup>

Have you the first or second book ?	Haben Sie das erste oder das zweite Buch ?
I have the third.	Ich habe das dritte.
Which volume have you ?	Welchen Band haben Sie ?
I have the fifth.	Ich habe den fünften.

## EXERCISES.

27.

Have you a few knives ?—I have a few.—Have you many rams ?—I have only a few.—Has the friend of the great painter many looking-glasses ?—He has only a few.—Have you a few florins ?—I have a few.—How many florins have you ?—I have ten.—How many kreutzers has your servant ?—He has not many, he has only two.—Have the men the beautiful glasses of the Italians ?—The men have them not, but we have them.—What have we ?—We have much money.—Have you the carriage of the Dutchman or that of the German ?—I have neither the one, nor the other.—Has the peasant's boy the fine or the ugly letter ?—He has neither the one nor the other.—Has he the gloves of the merchant or those of his brother ?—He has neither the one nor the other.—Which gloves has he ?—He has his own.—Have we the horses of the English or those of the Germans ?—We have neither the one nor the other.—Have we the umbrellas of the Spaniards ?—We have them not ; the Americans have them.—Have you much pepper ?—I have only a little, but enough.—Have you much vinegar ?—I have only a little.—Have the Russians much meat ?—The Russians have a great deal, but the Turks have only a little.—Have you no other pepper ?—I have no other.—Have I no other beer ?—You have no other.—Have we no other good friends ?—We have no others.—Has the sailor many shirts ?—He has not many ; he has only two.—Have you a wooden leg ?—I have not a (fein) wooden leg, but a good heart.

<sup>2</sup> Henceforth the learners should write the date before their task.  
Ex. London, den funfzehnten Juli, ein tausend acht hundert ein und vierzig, London, 15th July, 1841.



—Has this man a good head?—He has a good head and a good heart.—How many arms has that boy?—He has only one; the other is of wood (*von Holz*).—What kind of head has your boy?—He has a good head.

## 28.

Which volume have you?—I have the first.—Have you the second volume of my work?—I have it.—Have you the third or the fourth book?—I have neither the one nor the other.—Have we the fifth or sixth volumes?—We have neither the one nor the other.—Which volumes have we?—We have the seventh.—What day (*den wievierten*) of the month is it (*haben wir*)?—It is (*wir haben*) the eighth.—Is it not (*haben wir nicht*) the eleventh?—No, Sir, it is the tenth.—Have the Spaniards many crowns?—The Spaniards have only a few; but the English have a great many.—Who has our crowns?—The French have them.—Has the youth much head?—He has not much head, but much courage.—How many arms has the man?—He has two.

## 29.

Have you the crowns of the French or those of the English?—I have neither those of the French nor those of the English, but those of the Americans.—Has the German a few kreutzers?—He has a few.—Has he a few florins?—He has six of them.—Have you another stick?—I have another.—What other stick have you?—I have another iron stick.—Have you a few gold candlesticks?—We have a few.—Have these men vinegar?—These men have none, but their friends have some.—Have our boys candles?—Our boys have none, but the friends of our boys have some.—Have you some other bags?—I have no others.—Have you any other cheeses?—I have some others.—Have you other meat?—I have no other. (See Note 3, Lesson IV.)<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>3</sup> We have hitherto, intentionally, and in perfect harmony with our system, refrained from speaking of feminine nouns. They will be touched upon hereafter. (See Lesson LXXX.)

# TWENTY-FOURTH LESSON

## Vier und zwanzigste Section.

The tome (volume),	der Theil.
Have you the first or third tome of my work ?	Haben Sie den ersten oder dritten Theil meines Werks ?

Both.	Beide (is declined like an adjective).
I have both.	Ich habe beide.

*Obs.* The singular of *beide* is used only in the nominative and accusative neuter. The plural *beide* is employed when the two substantives express the same thing, or when they relate to persons, and the singular neuter *beides*, when they express two different things: as,

Have you my book or my stick ?	Haben Sie mein Buch oder meinen Stod ?
I have both.	Ich habe beides.

Still, yet, some, or any more.	Noch.
Some or any more wine.	Noch Wein.
Some or any more money.	Noch Geld.
Some or any more buttons.	Noch Knöpfe.

Have you any more wine.	Haben Sie noch Wein ?
I have some more.	Ich habe noch welchen.
Has he any more bread ?	Hat er noch Brod ?
He has some more.	Er hat noch welches.
Have I any more books ?	Habe ich noch Bücher ?
You have some more.	Sie haben noch welche.

Not any more, No more.	Kein—mehr.
I have no more wine.	Ich habe keinen Wein mehr.
Have you any more vinegar ?	Haben Sie noch Essig ?
I have no more.	Ich habe keinen mehr.
Has he any more bread ?	Hat er noch Brod ?
He has no more.	Er hat keins mehr.
I have no more dogs.	Ich habe keine Hunde mehr.
I have no more.	Ich habe keine mehr.

Not much more.	Nicht viel mehr.
Have you much more wine ?	Haben Sie noch viel Wein ?

I have not much more  
Have you many more books?  
I have not many more.

Ich habe dessen nicht viel mehr.  
Haben Sie noch viel Bücher?  
Ich habe deren nicht viel mehr.

One more book.  
One more good book.  
A few books more.  
Have we a few hats more?  
We have a few more.  
Has he a few good knives more?  
He has a few more.

Noch ein Buch.  
Noch ein gutes Buch.  
Noch einige Bücher.  
Haben wir noch einige Hüte?  
Wir haben noch einige.  
Hat er noch einige gute Messer?  
(See *Obs. B. Lesson XX.*)  
Er hat noch einige. (See *Obs. Lesson XVIII.*)

## EXERCISES.

### 30.

Which volume of his work have you?—I have the second.—How many tomes has this work?—It has three.—Have you my work, or that of my brother?—I have both (beide).—Has the foreigner my comb or my knife?—He has both (beides).—Have you our bread or our cheese?—I have both.—Have you my glass or that of my friend?—I have neither the one nor the other.—Have we any more hay?—We have some more.—Has our merchant any more pepper?—He has some more.—Has he any more candles?—He has some more.—Have you any more coffee?—We have no more coffee; but we have some more vinegar.—Has the German any more water?—He has no more water; but he has some more meat.—Have we any more gold ribbons?—We have no more gold (*Obs. B. Lesson XX.*) ribbons; but we have some more silver (ribbons).—Has our friend any more sugar?—He has no more.—Have I any more beer?—You have no more.—Has your young man any more friends?—He has no more.

### 31.

Has your brother one more horse?—He has one more.—Have you one more?—I have one more.—Has the peasant one more ox?—He has one more.—Have you a few more gardens?—We have a few more.—What have you more?—We have a few good ships (plur. Schiffe) and a few good sailors more.—Has our brother a few more friends?—He has a few more.—Have I a little more money?—You have a little more.—Have you any more courage?—I have no more.—Have you much more money?—I have much more, but my brother has no more.—Has he enough salt?—He has not enough.—Have we buttons enough?—We have not enough.—Has the good son of your good tailor buttons enough?—He has not enough.

# TWENTY-FIFTH LESSON.

## Fünf und zwanzigste Section.

Several.

Verschiedene, mehrere (are declined like adjectives, and hardly ever used in the singular). (See Obs. B. Lesson XX.)

For all Genders.

N. verschiedene. D. verschiedenen.

G. verschiedener. A. verschiedene.

The father,  
the son,  
the child,  
the captain,  
the tea,  
the cake,

der Vater;  
der Sohn;  
das Kind;  
der Hauptmann (plur. Hauptleute);  
der Thee;  
der Kuchen (is not softened in the plur.).

Several children.

Verschiedene Kinder.

As much, as many.

As much—as, as many—as.

As much bread as wine.

As many men as children.

So viel.

So viel—wie (als).

So viel Brod als Wein.

So viel Männer als Kinder.

Obs. As is rendered by als, when the word that follows as much, as many, is an objective case, and by wie when it is the subject. Ex.

As much as I.

So viel wie ich.

Have you as much gold as silver?

Haben Sie so viel Gold als Silber?

Of.

Von (preposition governing the dative).

I have as much of this as of that.

Ich habe so viel von diesem als von jenem.

Have you as many hats as coats?

Haben Sie so viel Hüte als Röcke?

I have as many of these as of those (as many of the latter as of the former).

Ich habe so viel von diesen als von jenen.

As many of the one as of the other.

So viel von den einen als von den andern.

Obs. A. When ein is used as an indefinite adjective, it is declined like other adjectives.

Quite (or just as much).

Eben so viel.

I have quite as much of this as of that.

Ich habe eben so viel von diesem als von jenem.

The enemy,	der Feind ;
the finger,	der Finger ;
the boot,	der Stiefel.

<i>More.</i>	Mehr (comparative adverb).
More bread.	Mehr Brod.
More men.	Mehr Männer.

<i>Than.</i>	Als.
--------------	------

*Obs. B.* Als is similar to *than*, and *wie* to *as*, in English.

More bread than wine.	Mehr Brod als Wein.
More men than children.	Mehr Männer als Kinder.
More of this than of that.	Mehr von diesem als von jenem.
More of the one than of the other.	Mehr von dem einen als von dem andern <sup>1</sup> .
More of these than of those.	Mehr von diesen als von jenen.
I have more of your sugar than of mine.	Ich habe mehr von Ihrem Zucker als von dem meinigen.

<i>Less (fewer).</i>	Weniger (comparative of wenig).
Less water than wine.	Weniger Wasser als Wein.

Less than I.	Weniger als ich.
— than he.	— als er.
— than you.	— als Sie.

<i>They.</i>	Sie.
<i>Than they.</i>	Als sie.
As much as you.	So viel wie Sie.
As much as he.	So viel wie er.
As much as they.	So viel wie sie.

## EXERCISES.

### 32.

Have you a coat?—I have several.—Has he a looking-glass?—He has several.—What kind of looking-glasses has he?—He has beautiful looking-glasses.—Who has my good cakes?—Several men have them.—Has your brother a child?—He has several.—Have you as much coffee as honey?—I have as much

<sup>1</sup> When collective or plural nouns, as: Wein, wine; Brod, bread, &c. are to be represented by the pronouns, dieser and jener must be used, and not ein and ander.

of the one as of the other.—Has he as much tea as beer?—He has as much of the one as of the other.—Has this man as many friends as enemies?—He has as many of the one as of the other.—Has the son of your friend as many coats as shirts?—He has as many of the one as of the other.—Have we as many boots as shoes?—We have as many of the one as of the other.

## 33.

Has your father as much gold as silver?—He has more of the latter than of the former.—Has he as much tea as coffee?—He has more of the latter than of the former.—Has the captain as many sailors as ships?—He has more of the one than of the other.—Have you as many rams as I?—I have just as many.—Has the foreigner as much courage as we?—He has quite as much.—Have we as much good as bad paper?—We have as much of the one as of the other.—Have we as much cheese as bread?—We have more of the latter than of the former.—Has your son as many cakes as books?—He has more of the latter than of the former; more of the one than of the other.

## 34.

How many children have you?—I have only one, but my brother has more than I; he has five.—Has your son as much head as mine?—He has less head than yours, but he has more courage.—My children have more courage than yours.—Have I as much money as you?—You have less than I.—Have you as many books as I?—I have less than you.—Have I as many enemies as your father?—You have fewer than he.—Have the Americans more children than we?—They have fewer than we.—Have we as many ships as the English?—We have fewer than they.—Have we fewer knives than the children of our friends?—We have fewer than they.

## 35.

Who has fewer friends than we?—Nobody has fewer.—Have you as much of my tea as of yours?—I have as much of yours as of mine.—Have I as many of your books as of mine?—You have fewer of mine than of yours.—Has the Spaniard as much of your money as of his own?—He has less of his own than of ours.—Has your baker less bread than money?—He has less of the latter than of the former.—Has our merchant fewer dogs than horses?—He has fewer of the latter than of the former; he has fewer of the one than of the other.—He has fewer horses than we, and we have less bread than he.—Have our neighbours as many carriages as we?—We have fewer than they.—We have less corn and less meat than they.—We have but little corn, but meat enough.

## SECOND MONTH.

## Zweiter Monat.

## TWENTY-SIXTH LESSON.

## Sechß und zwanzigste Section.

## OF THE INFINITIVE.

ALL German verbs form their infinitive in *en*. This termination in verbs the root of which ends in *e*l or *er*<sup>1</sup>, is contracted by throwing out the letter *e*, as *hinderen*, to prevent; *sammeln*, to collect, &c. The verbs marked with an asterisk (\*) are irregular.

<i>A wish, a mind, a desire,</i>	<i>Luft;</i>
<i>time,</i>	<i>Zeit</i> <sup>2</sup> ;
<i>to,</i>	<i>zu.</i>

*Obs.* The preposition *zu*, *to*, always stands before the infinitive. In compound verbs it is placed between the separable particle and the infinitive, as will be exemplified in future lessons.

<i>To work.</i>	<i>Arbeiten.</i>
<i>To speak.</i>	<i>Sprechen</i> *, <i>reden</i> <sup>3</sup> .
Have you a mind to work?	Haben Sie Lust zu arbeiten?
I have a mind to work.	Ich habe Lust zu arbeiten.
He has not the courage to speak.	Er hat den Muth nicht zu sprechen.


<i>To cut.</i>	<i>Schneiden</i> *.
<i>To cut it.</i>	{ <i>Masc. ihn</i> <i>Neut. es</i> } <i>schneiden</i> *.
<i>To cut them.</i>	<i>sie schneiden</i> *.

<sup>1</sup> By the root we understand that part of a verb which precedes the termination *en* of the infinitive; e. g. in the verb *loben*, to praise, *lob* is the root.

The two substantives *Luft* and *Zeit* are feminine. If they are required in a negative sense, *keine Luft*, and *nicht Zeit* must be used. Ex. *Ich habe keine Lust zu sprechen*, I have no mind to speak; *er hat nicht Zeit zu arbeiten*, he has no time to work.

<sup>3</sup> *Sprechen* is derived from *die Sprache*, the language, and signifies to produce or emit sounds in a physical manner; *reden* means to express ideas by words, from *die Rede*, the discourse.

To cut some.	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>Masc.</i> welchen, dessen, davon  <i>Neut.</i> welches, dessen, davon  <i>Plural for all Genders.</i>  welche, deren, davon schneiden. </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 4em; margin: 0 10px;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 2em;">schneiden.</div>
Has he time to cut trees? He has time to cut some.	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> Hat er Zeit Bäume zu schneiden?  Er hat Zeit welche zu schneiden. </div>
<i>To buy.</i> To buy some more.	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> Kaufen.  Noch kaufen. </div>
To buy one.	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>Masc.</i> einen  <i>Neut.</i> eins </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 2em;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">kaufen.</div> </div>
To buy two.	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> Zwei kaufen. </div>
To buy one more.	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>Masc.</i> noch einen  <i>Neut.</i> noch eins </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 2em;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">kaufen.</div> </div>
To buy two more.	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> Noch zwei kaufen. </div>

 The infinitive is always placed at the end of the phrase whether preceded by *zu* or not.

Have you a mind to buy one more horse?	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> Haben Sie Lust, noch ein Pferd zu kaufen? </div>
I have a mind to buy one more.	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> Ich habe Lust, noch eins zu kaufen. </div>
Have you a mind to buy some books?	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> Haben Sie Lust, Bücher zu kaufen? </div>
I have a mind to buy some, but I have no time.	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> Ich habe Lust, welche zu kaufen, aber ich habe nicht Zeit. </div>
Has he time to work?	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> Hat er Zeit zu arbeiten? </div>
He has time, but no mind to work.	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> Er hat Zeit, aber keine Lust zu arbeiten. </div>

## EXERCISES.

36.

Have you still a mind to buy the house of my friend?—I have still a mind to buy it, but I have no more money.—Have you time to work?—I have time but no mind to work.—Has he time to cut some sticks?—He has time to cut some.—Have you a mind to cut some bread?—I have a mind to cut some, but I have no knife.—Have you time to cut some cheese?—I have time to cut some.—Has he a desire to cut the tree?—He has a desire to cut it, but he has no time.—Has he time to cut the cloth?—He has time to cut it.—Have I time to cut the trees?—You have time to cut them.—Has the painter a mind to buy a horse?—He has a mind to buy two.—Has your captain of the navy (*Schiffscapitän*) time to speak?—He has time, but no desire to speak.



## 37.

Have you a mind to buy a carriage?—I have a mind to buy one.—Have I a mind to buy a house?—You have a mind to buy one.—Has your brother a mind to buy a great ox?—He has a mind to buy a little one.—We have a mind to buy little oxen.—How many horses have you a mind to buy?—I have a mind to buy four.—Has any one a mind to buy a broom?—This man has a mind to buy one.—What has that man a mind to buy?—He has a mind to buy a beautiful carriage, three beautiful horses, good tea, and good meat.

## 38.

Have you a desire to speak?—I have a desire, but no time to speak.—Have you the courage to cut your arm?—I have not the courage to cut it.—Am I right in speaking (*zu sprechen*)?—You are not wrong in speaking, but you are wrong in cutting (*zu schneiden*) my trees.—Has the son of your friend a desire to buy one more bird?—He has a desire to buy one more.—Have you a mind to buy one more beautiful coat?—I have a mind to buy one more.—Have we a mind to buy a few more horses?—We have a mind to buy a few more, but we have no more money. (See Lesson XXIV.)

## 39.

What have you a mind to buy?—We have a mind to buy something good, and our neighbours have a mind to buy something beautiful.—Have their children a desire to buy any birds?—Their children have no desire to buy any.—Have you the courage to buy the trunk of the captain?—I have a desire to buy it, but I have no more money.—Who has a mind to buy my beautiful dog?—Nobody has a mind to buy it.—Have you a mind to buy my beautiful birds, or those of the Frenchman?—I have a mind to buy those of the Frenchman.—Which book has he a mind to buy?—He has a mind to buy that which you have, that which your son has, and that which mine has.—Have you two horses?—I have only one, but I have a wish to buy one more.

## TWENTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

### Sieben und zwanzigste Section.

#### OF COMPOUND VERBS.

THERE are in German two kinds of compound verbs: one kind consists of a simple verb and a particle which is inseparable from it; the other of a simple verb and a particle which can be separated, either to give place to the syllable *ge* of the participle past, or to *zu*, or to be itself placed after the verb or even at the end of the phrase. We shall distinguish the separable verbs by placing *zu* between the verb and the particle <sup>1</sup>. Examples:

To break.	Verbrechen *.
To keep (to take care).	Aufbewahren (aufzubewahren).
To pick up.	Aufheben * (aufzuheben).
To mend.	Ausbessern (auszubessern).
To make a fire.	Feuer anmachen (anzumachen).

Has the tailor time to mend my coat?	Hat der Schneider Zeit, meinen Rock auszubessern?
He has time to mend it.	Er hat Zeit, ihn auszubessern <sup>2</sup> .

To wash.	Waschen *.
To burn.	Brennen * <sup>3</sup> .
	Verbrennen (to destroy by burning).
To seek, to look for.	Suchen (governs the accusative).
To warm.	Wärmen.
To make.	Machen (physically).
To do.	Thun * (morally <sup>4</sup> ).

<sup>1</sup> These verbs may likewise be distinguished by the tonic accent, which is placed on the root of the verb when the particle is inseparable, and when separable on the particle itself.

<sup>2</sup> These examples show how the separable particle gives way in the infinitive to *zu*.

<sup>3</sup> The verb *brennen* (as well as its compounds, *verbrennen*, &c.) is regular when used in an active or transitive, but irregular when in a neuter or intransitive sense. We denote such verbs by the following abbreviations: v. ac. and neut. irreg.

<sup>4</sup> The verb *machen* always relates to a determinate action, and is employed nearly as the English verb *to make*, in the sense of producing

Has the shoemaker time to make my boots ?	Hat der Schuhmacher Zeit, meine Stiefel zu machen.
He has time to make them.	Er hat Zeit, sie zu machen.

<i>To be willing, to wish.</i>	Wollen*.
Will you ?	} Wollen Sie.
Are you willing ?	
Do you wish ?	} Ich will.
I will, I am willing, I wish.	
Will he ? is he willing ? does he wish ?	} Will er ?
He will, he is willing, he wishes.	} Er will.
We will, we are willing, we wish.	} Wir wollen.
You will, you are willing, you wish.	} Ihr <sup>s</sup> wollet.
They will, they are willing, they wish.	} Sie wollen.

*Obs. A.* The particle *zu* does not precede the infinitive added to the verb *wollen*, to be willing. Ex.

Do you wish to make my fire ?	Wollen Sie mein Feuer anmachen ?
I am willing to make it.	Ich will es anmachen.
I do not wish to make it.	Ich will es nicht anmachen.
Does he wish to buy your horse ?	Will er Ihr Pferd kaufen ?
He wishes to buy it.	Er will es kaufen.

anything; the verb *thun*\* on the contrary always, like the English verb *to do*, relates to an indeterminate action, as: *Ein Kleid machen*, to make a coat; *Feuer machen*, to make a fire; *einen Gefallen thun*, to do a favour; *seine Schuldigkeit thun*, to do one's duty.

\* *Ihr*, you, is the real second person plural; but the Germans generally use *Sie*, which is the third.

## A TABLE OF COMPOUND VERBS\*.

### I. INSEPARABLE VERBS<sup>7</sup>.

These verbs are formed by prefixing one of the following unaccented particles to simple verbs: *be, emp, ent, er, ge, hinter, ver, wider, zer*. (See pages 63 et seqq. and pages 99, 100, Method, Part II.)

<b>Be</b> —bedenken *, to reflect.	<b>Hinter</b> —hintergehen *, to deceive.
<b>Emp</b> —empfehlen *, to recommend.	<b>Ver</b> —versprechen *, to promise.
<b>Ent</b> —entfliehen *, to run away.	<b>Wider</b> —widerlegen, to refute.
<b>Er</b> —erhalten *, to receive.	<b>Zer</b> —zerbrechen *, to break.
<b>Ge</b> —gestehen *, to confess.	

### II. SEPARABLE VERBS.

<b>Ab</b> —abschreiben *, to copy.	<b>Herunter</b> —herunterbringen *, to bring down.
<b>An</b> —anfangen *, to begin.	<b>Herzu</b> —herzunahen, to draw near.
<b>Auf</b> —aufheben *, to pick up.	<b>Hin</b> —hingehen *, to go thither.
<b>Aus</b> —ausgehen *, to go out.	<b>Hinauf</b> —hinauffeigen *, to ascend.
<b>Bei</b> —beistehen *, to assist.	<b>Hinaus</b> —hinauswerfen *, to throw out.
<b>Dar</b> —darstellen, to exhibit.	<b>Hinein</b> —hineingehen *, to go in.
<b>Darunter</b> —daruntermischen, to intermingle.	<b>Inne</b> —innehalten *, to stop.
<b>Davon</b> —davonkommen *, to escape.	<b>Mit</b> —mittheilen, to communicate.
<b>Durch</b> —durchreisen, to travel through.	<b>Nieder</b> —niederlegen, to lay down.
<b>Ein</b> —einschlafen *, to fall asleep.	<b>Nach</b> —nachmachen, to imitate.
<b>Fort</b> —fortfahren *, to continue.	<b>Ueber</b> —überfließen *, to overflow.
<b>Heim</b> —heingehen *, to go home.	<b>Um</b> —umwerfen *, to overturn.
<b>Heraus</b> —herauskommen *, to come out.	<b>Unter</b> —unterfinfen *, to go to the bottom.

\* Our intention, in giving tables of the most complicated grammatical parts, is not that the learners should make an immediate application of them; we only wish to give them a clear and general idea of those parts, in order to enable them to find them out more easily, as they will be in want of them in advancing by degrees. They must in their exercises employ only the words and expressions made use of in the lessons.

<sup>7</sup> We call verbs inseparable when they cannot, and separable when they can be separated.

**Voll**—vollgießen \*, to fill up.

**Vor**—vorgeben \*, to pretend.

**Voraus**—vorausagen, to foretel.

**Vorbei**—vorbeigehen \*, to pass by.

**Vorher**—vorhersehen \*, to foresee.

**Vorüber**—vorüberfahren \*, to pass by in a coach.

**Weg**—weggehen \*, to go away.

**Wieder**—wiederkommen \*, to come again.

**Zu**—zureben, to persuade.

**Zurück**—zurückkehren, to return.

**Zusammen**—zusammensetzen, to put together.

*Obs. B.* Some compound verbs are either inseparable or separable, according to their signification. We shall speak of them afterwards. (See page 102, Method, Part II.)

## EXERCISES.

### 40.

Have you a desire to keep my letter?—I have a desire to keep it.—Am I right in keeping (aufzubewahren) your money?—You are right in keeping it.—Has the tailor a desire to make my coat?—He has a desire to make it, but he has no time.—Has your tailor time to mend my coats?—He has time to mend them.—Have you the courage to burn my hat?—I have not the courage to burn it; I have a mind to keep it.—Has the shoemaker's boy a mind to mend my boots?—He has no time to mend them.—What has our friend's tailor to mend?—He has to mend our old coats.—Who has to mend our boots?—Our shoemaker has to mend them.—What has our hatmaker to do?—He has to mend your great hats.—Has your brother's joiner anything to do?—He has to mend our great tables and our little chairs.

### 41.

Do you wish to keep my twenty-seven crowns?—I wish to keep them.—Will you pick up that crown or that florin?—I will pick up both.—Do you wish to cut his finger?—I do not wish to cut it.—Does the painter wish to burn vinegar?—He wishes to burn some.—Is the peasant willing to burn his bread?—He is not willing to burn his own, but that of his neighbour.—Have you anything to do?—I have nothing to do.—Have we anything to do?—We have to warm our coffee.—Do you wish to speak?—I wish to speak.—Is your son willing to work?—He is not willing to work.

### 42.

Do you wish to buy anything?—I wish to buy something.—What do you wish to buy?—I wish to buy some good books.—What has he to buy?—He has to buy a good horse.—Will you buy this or that table?—I will buy (put the infinitive always to the end of the phrase) neither this nor that.—Which house does *your* friend wish to buy?—He wishes to buy your brother's

great house.—Is your servant willing to make my fire?—He is willing to make it.—Will your father buy these rams or these oxen?—He will buy neither the one nor the other.—Does he wish to buy my umbrella or my cane?—He wishes to buy both.

## 43.

Do you wish to make a fire?—We do not wish to make any.—What do you wish to make?—I wish to make vinegar.—Will you seek my knife?—I will seek it.—Have you to look for anything?—I have nothing to look for.—Has he time to seek my son?—He has time, but he will not seek him.—What has he to do?—He has to make a fire, to wash my thread stockings, to buy good coffee, good sugar, good water, and good meat.—Will he buy your good trunk?—He will buy it.—Will you buy my great or my little house?—I will buy neither your great nor your little house; I wish to buy that of our friend.—Will you buy my beautiful horses?—I will not buy them.

## 44.

How many rams will you buy?—I will buy twenty-two.—Does the foreigner wish to buy much corn?—He wishes to buy but little.—Do you wish to buy a great many gloves?—We wish to buy only a few; but our children wish to buy a great many.—Will they seek the same boots that we have?—They will not seek those which you have, but those which my father has.—Will you look for my coats or for those of the good Frenchman?—I will look for neither yours nor those of the good Frenchman; I will look for mine, and for those of my good son.

## TWENTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

### Acht und zwanzigste Section.

<i>To tear.</i>	Berreißen*.
<i>To go.</i>	Gehen*.

<i>At.</i>	Bei, }	prepositions governing
<i>To.</i>	Zu, }	the dative case.
<i>To be.</i>	Seyn*.	

*Rule.* The preposition *bei* signifies *with* or *at the house of*, the preposition *zu*, *to* or *to the house of*.

To be with the man or at the man's house.	Bei dem Manne seyn*.
To go to the man or to the man's house.	Zu dem Manne gehen*.
To be with his (one's) friend or at his (one's) friend's house.	Bei seinem Freunde seyn*.
To go to my father or to my father's house.	Zu meinem Vater gehen*.

To be at home.	Zu Hause seyn*.
To go home.	Nach Hause gehen*.

To be with me or at my house.	Bei mir seyn*.
To go to me or to my house.	Zu mir gehen*.
To be with him or at his house.	Bei ihm seyn*.
To go to him or to his house.	Zu ihm gehen*.
To be with us or at our house.	Bei uns seyn*.
To go to us or to our house.	Zu uns gehen*.
To be with you or at your house.	{ Bei Ihnen seyn*, bei Euch seyn*.
To go to you or to your house.	
To be with them or at their house.	Bei ihnen seyn*.
To go to them or to their house.	Zu ihnen gehen*.
To be with some one or at some one's house.	Bei Jemandem seyn*.
To go to some one or to some one's house.	Zu Jemandem gehen*.
To be with no one or at no one's house.	Bei Niemandem seyn*.
To go to no one or to no one's house.	Zu Niemandem gehen*.

<i>At whose house? With whom?</i>	Bei wem?
<i>To whose house? To whom?</i>	Zu wem?
To whom (to whose house) do you wish to go?	Zu wem wollen Sie gehen?
I wish to go to no one (to no one's house).	Ich will zu Niemandem gehen.
At whose house (with whom) is your brother?	Bei wem ist Ihr Bruder?
He is at ours (with us).	Er ist bei uns.
Is he at home?	Ist er zu Hause?
He is not at home.	Er ist nicht zu Hause.
<hr/>	
To drink.	Trinken*.
To carry (to take).	Tragen*.
To bring (to carry).	Bringen*.

## EXERCISES.

## 45.

Do you wish to tear my coat?—I do not wish to tear it.—Does your brother wish to tear my beautiful book?—He does not wish to tear it.—What does he wish to tear?—He wishes to tear your heart.—With whom is our father?—He is with his friend.—To whom do you wish to go?—I wish to go to you.—Will you go to my house?—I will not go to your's, but to my tailor's.—Does your father wish to go to his friend?—He wishes to go to him.—At whose house is your son?—He is at our house.—Do your children wish to go to our friends?—They wish to go to them.—Is the foreigner at our brother's?—He is there (*bei ihm*).—At whose house is the Englishman?—He is at yours.—Is the American at our house?—No, Sir, he is not at our house; he is at his friend's.—Is the Italian at his friends'?—He is at their house.

## 46.

Do you wish to go home?—I do not wish to go home; I wish to go to the son of my neighbour.—Is your father at home?—No, Sir, he is not at home.—With whom is he?—He is with the good children of our old neighbour.—Will you go to any one's house?—I will go to no one's house.—At whose house is your son?—He is at no one's house; he is at home.—What will he do at home?—He will drink good wine.—Will you carry my letters home?—I will carry them to my father's.—Who will carry my notes?—The young man will carry them.—Will he

<sup>1</sup> In German, as in English, no more than one negative is ever expressed, as has already been seen in many instances.



carry them to my house?—No, he will carry them to his brother's.—Is his father at home?—He is not at home; he is at the foreigner's.

## 47.

What have you to drink?—I have nothing to drink.—Has your son anything to drink?—He has good wine and good water to drink.—Will your servant carry my books to my brothers'?—He will carry them to their house.—What will you carry to my house?—I will carry to your house two chickens, three birds, good bread, and good wine (always put the infinitive to the end, and do not separate it from "to your house").—Will you carry these chairs to my house?—I will not carry these, but those.—What will the German do at home?—He will work and drink good wine.

## 48.

What have you at home?—I have nothing at home.—Have you anything good to drink at home?—I have nothing good to drink; I have only bad water.—Has the captain as much coffee as sugar at home?—He has as much of the one as of the other at home.—Will you carry as many crowns as buttons to my brother's?—I will carry to his house as many of the one as of the other.—Will you carry great glasses to my house?—I will carry some to your house.—Has the merchant a desire to buy as many oxen as rams?—He wishes to buy as many of the one as of the other.

## 49.

Has the shoemaker as many shoes as boots to mend?—He has as many of the one as of the other to mend.—Has he as much wine as water to drink?—He has as much to drink of the one as of the other.—Has the Turk a desire to break some glasses?—He has a desire to break some.—Has he a mind to drink some wine?—He has no mind to drink any.—Will you buy anything of (bei) me?—I will buy nothing of you.—Of whom (bei wem) will you buy your corn?—I will buy it of the great merchant.—Of whom will the English buy their oxen?—They will buy them of the Dutch.—Will the Spaniards buy anything?—They will buy nothing.

## TWENTY-NINTH LESSON.

### Neun und zwanzigste Section.

<i>Where?</i>	{ Wo? (an adverb of place without motion).
<i>Whither? where to?</i>	{ Wohin? (an adverb of place with motion.)

#### Rules.

1. The question *wo?* indicates rest in a place, or with any person or object whatsoever; the preposition which answers this question always governs the dative.

2. The question *wohin?* denotes motion or direction towards some place or object; when answered by one of the prepositions, *an*, *to*; *auf*, upon; *hinter*, behind; *neben*, by the side; *über*, above; *unter* under; *zwischen*, between; *vor*, before; *in*, in or into, it always requires the accusative<sup>1</sup>.

<i>There.</i>	{ Da (rest, repose).
<i>Thither.</i>	{ Hin or dahin (motion or direction).
To carry thither.	{ Hin or dahin tragen *.
To carry it thither.	{ Masc. ihn } hin or dahin { Neut. es } tragen *.
To carry some thither.	{ Masc. welchen } hin or dahin { Neut. welches } tragen *.
To carry them thither.	sie hin or dahin tragen *.

*Obs. A.* The adverb *da*, *there*, is always joined to a verb of rest, and the adverb *hin* or *dahin*, *thither*, to a verb of motion. *Hin* is used to express motion from, and *her* motion towards, the person that speaks. *Ex.* *Er ist da*, he is there; *ich will auch hin (dahin) gehen*, I will also go thither; *wollen Sie herkommen?* will you come hither?

To send.	{ Senden *.
	{ Schicken <sup>2</sup> .

<sup>1</sup> The same prepositions govern the dative when they answer the question *wo?*

<sup>2</sup> *Schicken* is used when a person is sent without any object, or with one of little importance, *senden* on the contrary always denotes a mission of importance, whence *der Gesandte*, the ambassador.

To come.	Kommen*.
To lead.	Führen.
I will send him (it) to you.	Ich will ihn (es) zu Ihnen schicken.

When?	Wann?
To-morrow.	Morgen.
To-day.	Heute.

Some where, any where.	Jrgendwo (rest).
Some whither, any whither.	Jrgendwohin (direction).
No where, not any where.	Nirgend or nirgendś.
Do you wish to go any where?	Wollen Sie irgendwohin gehen?
I do not wish to go any where.	Ich will nirgendś hingehen.

The physician,	der Arzt.
To write.	Schreiben*.
Have you to write as many letters as my father?	Haben Sie so viel Briefe zu schreiben, wie mein Vater?

*Obs. B.* Where the verb stands at the end of a phrase, the word *wie*, *as*, or *als*, *than*, is placed with its nominative after the verb.

I have to write more (i. e. letters) than he.	Ich habe deren mehr zu schreiben, als er.
---	---

## EXERCISES.

## 50.

Where is your brother?—He is at home.—Whither do you wish to go?—I wish to go home.—Whither does your father wish to go?—He wishes to go to your house.—Whither will you carry this letter?—I will carry it to my neighbour's.—Is your son at home?—He is there.—Whither will the shoemaker carry my boots?—He will carry them to your house.—Will he carry them home?—He will carry them thither.—Will you send good sugar home?—I will send some thither.—Will the baker send good bread home?—He will send some thither.—Will you come to me?—I will come to you.—Whither do you wish to go?—I wish to go to the good French.—Will the good Italians go to our house?—They will go no whither.—Will you take (führen) your son to my house?—I will not take him to your house, but to the captain's.—When will you take him to the captain's?—I will take him thither (zu ihm) to-morrow.

## 51.

Will you go anywhere?—I will go nowhere.—Will your good son go to any one?—He will go to no one.—When will you take (führen) your young man to the painter?—I will take him thither (zu ihm) to-day.—Where will he carry these birds to?

—He will carry them nowhither.—Will you take the physician to this man?—I will take him there (au ihm).—When will you take him there?—I will take him there to-day.—Will the physicians come to your good brother?—They will not come to him.—Will you send me a servant?—I will send you none.—Will you send a child to the physician?—I will send one to him.—With whom is the physician?—He is with nobody.—Do you wish to go any whither?—I wish to go to the good Americans'.—Has he time to come to my house?—He has no time to come there.—Will the captain write one more letter?—He will write one more.—Will you write a note?—I will write one.—Has your friend a mind to write as many letters as I?—He has a mind to write quite as many.

## 52.

Have you many letters to write?—I have only a few to write.—How many letters has our old neighbour to write?—He has as many to write as you.—Who has long letters to write?—The youth has some to write.—How many more letters has he to write?—He has six more to write.—How many has he to send?—He has twenty to send.—Has he as many letters to send as his father?—He has fewer to send.—Has the hatmaker some more hats to send?—He has no more to send.—Has your son the courage to write a long letter?—He has the courage to write one.—Will he write as many letters as mine?—He will write quite as many.—Will you buy as many carriages as horses?—I will buy more of the latter than of the former.

## THIRTIETH LESSON.

## Dreißigste Section.

<i>In order to (conjunction).</i>	um—zu.
<i>To see.</i>	Sehen*.

*Obs. A.* The conjunctive expression *in order to*, preceding the infinitive, is translated into German by *um zu*. When the sentence is short, *um*, *in order*, may be left out.

I will go to my brother in order to see him.	Ich will zu meinem Bruder gehen, um ihn zu sehen.
I have no money (in order) to buy bread.	Ich habe kein Geld, (um) Brod zu kaufen.
Has your brother a knife (in order) to cut his bread?	Hat Ihr Bruder ein Messer, (um) sein Brod zu schneiden?
He has one to cut it.	Er hat eins, um es zu schneiden.

<i>To sweep.</i>	Auskehren (auszulehren).
<i>To kill.</i>	Töbten
<i>To slaughter.</i>	Schlachten } <sup>1</sup> .
<i>To salt.</i>	Salzen,
<i>To be able.</i>	Können*.

I can (am able) —he can (is able).	Ich kann —er kann.
We can (are able)—they can (are able).	Wir können—sie können.
You can (are able).	Ihr könnt (Sie können).

*Obs. B.* The particle *zu* does not precede the infinitive added to the verb *können*, to be able. (See Lesson XLII.) *Ex.*


Can you write a letter?	Können Sie einen Brief schreiben?
I can write one.	Ich kann einen schreiben.
He is able to work.	Er kann arbeiten.

		<i>Singular.</i>	
		DAT.	ACC.
<i>To me.</i>	<i>me.</i>	1st person. mir.	acc. mich.
<i>To him.</i>	<i>him.</i>	3d person. ihm.	ihn.

<sup>1</sup> Töbten means to deprive any one of life; schlachten, to slaughter, is used in speaking of animals the flesh of which is eaten. *Ex.* Seinen Feind töbten, to kill his enemy; Ochsen, Schafe schlachten, to slaughter oxen and sheep.

		<i>Plural.</i>	
		<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Acc</i>
<i>To us.</i>	<i>us.</i>	1st person. uns.	uns.
<i>To you.</i>	<i>you.</i>	2d person. { Euch (Ihnen)	Euch. (Sie <sup>2</sup> ).
<i>To them.</i>	<i>them.</i>	3d person. ihnen.	sie.

<i>To kill me.</i>	<i>Mich tödten.</i>
<i>To see me.</i>	<i>Mich sehen*.</i>
<i>To speak to me.</i>	<i>Mich (mit mir or zu mir) sprechen*</i>
<i>To speak to him.</i>	<i>Ihn (mit ihm or zu ihm) sprechen*</i>
<i>To send to him.</i>	<i>Ihm schicken.</i>
<i>To send to his house.</i>	<i>Zu ihm schicken.</i>
<i>To send him to me.</i>	<i>Ihn mir (zu mir) schicken.</i>
<i>To send him to me to-morrow.</i>	<i>Ihn mir morgen schicken (ihn morgen zu mir schicken).</i>

 In German the dative precedes the accusative; but when the accusative is a personal pronoun it precedes the dative.

		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>It to me —them to me.</i>		ihn. es mir	—sie mir.
<i>It to him —them to him.</i>		ihn. es ihm	—sie ihm.
<i>It to us —them to us.</i>		ihn. es uns	—sie uns.
<i>It to you —them to you.</i>		ihn. { es Euch es (Ihnen)	—sie Euch. sie (Ihnen).
<i>It to them —them to them.</i>		ihn. es ihnen	—sie ihnen.

<i>When will you send me the hat?</i>	<i>Wann wollen Sie mir den Hut schicken?</i>
<i>I will send it you to-morrow.</i>	<i>Ich will ihn Ihnen morgen schicken.</i>

		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Some to me.</i>	† mir	welchen.	welches.	mir welche.
<i>Some to him.</i>	† ihm	welchen.	welches.	ihm welche.
<i>Some to us.</i>	† uns	welchen.	welches.	uns welche.
<i>Some to you.</i>	† { Euch Ihnen	welchen.	welches.	{ Euch welche. Ihnen welche.
<i>Some to them.</i>	† ihnen	welchen.	welches.	ihnen welche.

<sup>2</sup> See note, Lesson XXXIII.

<sup>3</sup> See note<sup>1</sup>, Lesson XLV, and page 142, Method, Part II.

To give.	Geben*.
To lend.	Leihen*.
To give me.	Mir geben*.
To lend me.	Mir leihen*.

Are you willing to lend me some money?	Wollen Sie mir Geld leihen?
I am willing to lend you some.	Ich will Ihnen welches leihen.

## A TABLE OF THE DECLENSION OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS

		FIRST PERSON.		SECOND PERSON.	
SINGULAR.	NOM.	ich,	I.	du,	thou.
	GEN.	meiner (mein <sup>3</sup> ),	of me.	deiner (dein),	of thee.
	DAT.	mir,	to me.	dir,	to thee.
	ACC.	mich,	me.	dich,	thee.
PLURAL.	NOM.	wir,	we.	ihr,	you.
	GEN.	unser,	of us.	euer,	of you.
	DAT.	uns,	to us.	euch,	to you.
	ACC.	uns,	us.	euch,	you.
THIRD PERSON.					
		Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	
SINGULAR.	NOM.	er, he.	sie, she.	es,	it.
	GEN.	seiner (sein), of him.	ihrer, of her.	seiner (sein),	of it.
	DAT.	ihm, to him.	ihr, to her.	ihm,	to it.
	ACC.	ihn, him.	sie, her.	es,	it
For all Genders.					
PLURAL.	NOM.	sie,	they.		
	GEN.	ihrer,	of them.		
	DAT.	ihnen,	to them.		
	ACC.	sie,	them.		

\* *Mein, dein, sein*, as genitives singular, for *meiner, deiner, seiner*, are used only in familiar discourse and in poetry. Ex. *Vergiß mein nicht*, forget me not.

## EXERCISES.

53.

Has the carpenter money to buy a hammer?—He has some to buy one.—Has the captain money to buy a ship?—He has some to buy one.—Has the peasant money to buy sheep (*das Schaf* adds *e* and is not softened in the plural)?—He has none to buy any.—Have you time to see my father?—I have no time to see him.—Does your father wish to see me?—He does not wish to see you.—Has the servant a broom to sweep the house?—He has one to sweep it.—Is he willing to sweep it?—He is willing to sweep it.—Have I salt enough to salt my meat?—You have not enough of it to salt it.—Will your friend come to my house in order to see me?—He will neither come to your house nor see you.—Has our neighbour a desire to kill his horse?—He has no desire to kill it.—Will you kill your friends?—I will kill only my enemies.

54.

Can you cut me some bread?—I can cut you some.—Have you a knife to cut me some?—I have one.—Can you wash your gloves?—I can wash them, but I have no wish to do it.—Can the tailor make me a coat?—He can make you one.—Will you speak to the physician?—I will speak to him.—Does your son wish to see me in order to speak to me?—He wishes to see you, in order to give you a crown.—Does he wish to kill me?—He does not wish to kill you; he only wishes to see you.—Does the son of our old friend wish to kill an ox?—He wishes to kill two.—How much money can you send me?—I can send you thirty crowns.—Will you send me my letter?—I will send it to you.—Will you send the shoemaker anything?—I will send him my boots.—Will you send him your coats?—No, I will send them to my tailor.—Can the tailor send me my coat?—He cannot send it you.—Are your children able to write letters?—They are able to write some.

55.

Have you a glass to drink your wine?—I have one, but I have no wine; I have only water.—Will you give me money to buy some?—I will give you some, but I have only a little.—Will you give me that which you have?—I will give it you.—Can you drink as much wine as water?—I can drink as much of the one as of the other.—Has our poor neighbour any wood to make a fire?—He has some to make one, but he has no money to buy bread and meat.—Are you willing to lend him some?—I am willing to lend him *some*.—Do you wish to speak to the German?—*I wish to speak to him*.—Where is he?—He is with the son of



the captain.—Does the German wish to speak to me?—He wishes to speak to you.—Does he wish to speak to my brother or to yours?—He wishes to speak to both.—Can the children of our tailor work?—They can work, but they will not.

## 56.

Do you wish to speak to the children of your shoemaker?—I wish to speak to them.—What will you give them?—I will give them great cakes.—Will you lend them anything?—I have nothing to lend them.—Has the cook some more salt to salt the meat?—He has a little more.—Has he some more rice?—He has a great deal more.—Will he give me some?—He will give you some.—Will he give some to my poor children?—He will give them some.—Will he kill this or that hen?—He will kill neither this nor that.—Which ram will he kill?—He will kill that of the good peasant.—Will he kill this or that ox?—He will kill both.—Who will send us biscuits?—The baker will send you some.—Have you anything good to give me?—I have nothing good to give you.

## THIRTY-FIRST LESSON.

Ein und dreißigste Lektion.

<i>To whom?</i>	Wem? (A question followed by the dative.)
<i>Whom?</i>	For persons: Wen? } (Questions followed by the accus.)
<i>What?</i>	For things: Was? }

*Declension of the interrogative pronoun Wer? Who?*

			Masc. and Fem. Neut.
NOM.	Who?	what?	N. wer? was?
GEN.	whose?		G. wessen?
DAT.	to whom?	to what?	D. wem? { an was? woran? worauf? wozu?
ACC.	whom?	what?	A. wen? was?

Wer, who, has no plural, and relates only to persons, without distinction of sex, as who in English. It may be used instead of derjenige, welcher, he who.

Was, which, has no plural and always relates to a thing. It often stands for derjenige, welches, or das, welches, that which.

<i>To answer.</i>	Antworten <sup>1</sup> .
To answer the man.	Dem Manne antworten.
To answer the men.	Den Männern antworten.
To answer a letter.	Auf einen Brief antworten or einen Brief beantworten.

<i>To it.</i>	Darauf.
To answer it.	Darauf antworten or ihn (es) beantworten.

*Obs. A.* The demonstrative local adverbs, da, there; hier, here; wo, where; are usually employed instead of demonstrative pronouns, and

<sup>1</sup> The verb Antworten is inseparable, although the accent rests upon the particle ant; it governs the accusative with the preposition auf, to. Beantworten, to answer, governs the accusative without a preposition. (See pages 135, 136, and note <sup>12</sup>, p. 138, Method, Part II.)

connected with the preposition which the verb requires. If the preposition begins with a vowel, the letter *r* is added to the words *da* and *wo*; for the sake of euphony.

<i>In.</i>	<i>In</i> (governs the dat. and acc.).
<i>In the.</i>	<i>In dem</i> (im, rest <sup>2</sup> ).
<i>Into the</i> (masc. sing.).	<i>In den</i> (motion).
<i>In the</i> (plur.).	<i>In den</i> (rest).
<i>Into the</i> (plur.).	<i>In die</i> (motion).
To go into the garden.	<i>In den Garten gehen</i> *.
To be in the garden.	<i>In dem (im) Garten seyn</i> *.
To go into the gardens.	<i>In die Gärten gehen</i> *.
To be in the gardens.	<i>In den Gärten seyn</i> *.

*Obs. B.* The rapidity of pronunciation has led to a contraction of the last letter of the definite article with certain prepositions which precede it; thus *beim* is often said instead of *bei dem*, *im* instead of *in dem*, *ins* in the accusative neuter instead of *in das*.

According to this contraction we may say or write :

<i>Am</i> , near the,	<i>for an dem.</i>	<i>Fürs</i> , for the,	<i>for für das.</i>
<i>Ans</i> , to the, against		<i>Im</i> , in the,	— <i>in dem.</i>
the,	— <i>an das.</i>	<i>Ins</i> , into the,	— <i>in das.</i>
<i>Aufs</i> , upon the,	— <i>auf das.</i>	<i>Vom</i> , from the,	— <i>von dem.</i>
<i>Beim</i> , at the,	— <i>bei dem.</i>	<i>Zum</i> , to the,	— <i>zu dem.</i>
<i>Durchs</i> , through the,	— <i>durch das.</i>	<i>Zur</i> , to the,	— <i>zu der.</i>

(See page 253, Method, Part II.)

The theatre,	<i>das Theater</i> ;
the forest, the wood,	<i>der Wald</i> (plur. <i>die Wälder</i> ) ;
the warehouse,	<i>das Waarenlager</i> (is not softened in the plur.) ;
the storehouse,	<i>das Vorrathshaus</i> ?
the magazine,	<i>das Magazin</i> (plur. <i>e</i> ) ;
the provision, store,	<i>der Vorrath</i> ;
the room, the chamber,	<i>das Zimmer</i> ;
the butcher,	<i>der Fleischer</i> ( <i>der Metzger</i> ).

<sup>2</sup> The preposition *in* is used when the place in which a person is, or towards which the motion is directed, is closed, or conceived to be so. It is followed by the dative to the question *wo*, and the accusative to the question *wohin*. (See *Obs. B.* page 189, and pages 192, 193, Method, Part II.)

<sup>3</sup> In compound words the last only is softened. Ex. *das Vorrathshaus*, the storehouse; plur. *die Vorrathshäuser*. (See *Obs. A.* page 9, Method, Part II.)

*To go into.*

*To be in it, or there.*

Do you wish to go to the theatre?

I wish to go thither.

Is your brother in the theatre?

He is there.

Hinein gehen\*.

Darin seyn\*.

Wollen Sie ins Theater gehen?

Ich will hinein gehen.

Ist Ihr Bruder im Theater?

Er ist darin.

*Obs. C.* The above examples show how *darin* expresses rest in, and *hinein* motion towards, the interior of a closed place.

## EXERCISES.

57.

Will you answer your friend?—I will answer him.—But whom will you answer?—I will answer my good father.—Will you not answer your good friends?—I will answer them.—Who will answer me?—The Russian wishes to answer you, but he cannot.—Will the Russian write me a letter?—He will write you one.—Can the Spaniards answer us?—They cannot answer us, but we can answer them.—What has the Englishman to do?—He has to answer a letter.—Which letter has he to answer?—He has to answer that of the good Frenchman.—Have I to answer a letter?—You have not to answer a letter, but a note.—Which note have I to answer?—You have to answer that of the great captain.

58.

Have we to answer the letters of the great merchants?—We have to answer them.—Will you answer the note of your tailor?—I will answer it.—Will any one answer my great letter?—No one will answer it.—Will your father answer this or that note?—He will answer neither this nor that.—Which notes will he answer?—He will answer only those of his good friends.—Will he answer me my letter?—He will answer it you.—Will your father go anywhere?—He will go nowhere.—Where is your brother?—He is in the garden of our friend.—Where is the Englishman?—He is in his little garden.—Where do we wish to go to?—We wish to go into the garden of the French.—Where is your son?—He is in his room.—Will he go to the magazine?—He will go thither.—Will you go to the great theatre?—I will not go thither, but my son has a mind to go thither.—Where is the Irishman?—He is in the theatre?—Is the American in the forest?—He is there.

59.

Will you come to me in order to go to the forest?—I have no wish to go to the forest.—To which theatre do you wish to go?—I wish to go to the great theatre.—Will you go into my gar-

den, or into that of the Dutchman ?—I will go neither into yours nor into that of the Dutchman ; I will go into the gardens of the French.—Will you go into those of the Germans ?—I will not go thither (hinein).—Have the Americans great warehouses ?—They have some.—Have the English great stores ?—They have some.—Have the Germans as many warehouses as stores ?—They have as many of the latter as of the former.—Will you see our great stores ?—I will go into your warehouses in order to see them.—Have you much hay in your storehouses ?—We have a great deal, but we have not enough corn.—Do you wish to buy some ?—We wish to buy some.—Have we as much corn as wine in our storehouses ?—We have as much of the one as of the other.—Have the English as much cloth as paper in their warehouses ?—They have more of the one than of the other in them (darin).—Has your father time to write me a letter ?—He wishes to write you one, but he has no time to-day.—When will he answer that of my brother ?—He will answer it to-morrow.—Will you come to my house in order to see my great warehouses ?—I cannot come to your house to-day ; I have letters to write

## THIRTY-SECOND LESSON

## Zwei und dreißigste Section.

<i>Upon.</i>	Auf (governs the dat. and acc.)
<i>Upon the.</i>	{ Auf dem (repose <sup>1</sup> ). Auf den, daß, (action).
The market,	der Markt;
the ball,	der Ball;
the country,	das Land;
the place (the square),	der Platz;
the field,	das Feld.
<hr/>	
To be at the market.	Auf dem Markte <sup>2</sup> seyn*.
To go to the market.	Auf den Markt gehen*.
To be at the ball.	Auf dem Balle seyn*
To go to the ball.	Auf den Ball gehen*.
To be in the country.	Auf dem Lande seyn*.
To go into the country.	Auf das Land gehen*.
To be at the place (in the square).	Auf dem Platze seyn*.
To go to the place.	Auf den Platz gehen*.
To be in the field.	Auf dem Felde seyn*.
To go into the field.	Auf das Feld gehen*.
<hr/>	
<i>At.</i>	An (dat. and acc.).
<i>At the.</i>	An dem (repose <sup>3</sup> ).
<i>To the.</i>	An den, daß (action).
The window,	das Fenster.
To go to the window.	An das Fenster gehen*
To stand.	Stehen*.
To stand at the window.	An dem Fenster stehen*.

<sup>1</sup> The preposition *auf*, upon, is used when the place is not closed but open. (See *Obs. C.* page 189, and page 190, Method, Part II.)

<sup>2</sup> The genitive singular of masculine and neuter nouns sometimes terminates in *s*, and sometimes in *es* (except those in *el*, *en*, *er*, *den* and *lein* which always take *s*). These forms are equally good, but the former is more frequently used in conversation, and the latter in composition. The same distinction ought to be observed with regard to the dative singular of masculine and neuter nouns, which takes *e* when the genitive takes *es*. (See *Obs. A.* page 4, of "Introductory Book to the Method.")

<sup>3</sup> *An*, at, by, near, points out proximity to a person or a place. (See *Obs. A.* page 188, and pages 189, 190, Method, Part II.)

To write to somebody.	{ An Jemanden schreiben *.
	{ Jemandem schreiben *.
Are you willing to write to me?	{ Wollen Sie an mich schreiben?
	{ Wollen Sie mir schreiben?
I am willing to write to you.	{ Ich will an Sie schreiben.
	{ Ich will Ihnen schreiben.
I wish to write to the man.	Ich will an den Mann schreiben.

<i>To whom?</i>	An wen?
To whom do you wish to write?	An wen wollen Sie schreiben?
<i>To me, to him.</i>	An mich, an ihn.
<i>To the man.</i>	An den Mann.
I will write to him.	Sch will ihm schreiben.
<i>To whom?</i>	Wem?
<i>To me, to him.</i>	Mir, ihm.
To whom do you wish to write?	Wem wollen Sie schreiben?
To the man.	Dem Manne.

The nobleman,	der Edelmann <sup>4</sup> ;
the boatman,	der Schiffmann;
the bailiff,	der Amtmann;
people,	Leute (plur.).

## EXERCISES.

60.

Whither do you wish to go?—I wish to go to the market.—Where is your cook?—He is at the market.—Where is my brother?—He is at the ball.—Will you come to me in order to go to the ball?—I will come to you in order to go thither.—Is your father in the country?—He is there.—Do you wish to go to the country?—I do not wish to go there.—Whither does your son wish to go?—He wishes to go to the great place.—Is your friend at the great place?—He is there.—Does the Englishman wish to go into the country in order to see the fields?—He does not wish to go into the country in order to see the fields, but to see the forests, the birds, the water, and to drink tea.—Where is the son of the peasant?—He is in the field to cut some corn (cutting corn).—Does the son of the nobleman wish to go anywhere?—He does not wish to go anywhere; he is tired.—Whither does the son of the bailiff wish to carry corn?—He

<sup>4</sup> For substantives terminating in mann, see Lesson XIX.

wishes to carry some to the storehouse of your brother.—Does he wish to carry thither the wine and the meat?—He wishes to carry both thither.

## 61.

Is the friend of the Spaniard able to carry provisions?—He is able to carry some.—Whither does he wish to carry provisions?—He wishes to carry some to our storehouses.—Do you wish to buy provisions in order to carry them to our storehouses?—I wish to buy some in order to take them into the country.—Do you wish to go to the window in order to see the youth?—I have no time to go to the window.—Have you anything to do?—I have a letter to write.—To whom have you a letter to write?—I have to write one to my friend.—Do you wish to write to the bailiff?—I wish to write to him.—What do you wish to write to him?—I wish to answer him his letter.—Are you able to write as many letters as I?—I am able to write more of them than you.—Can you write to the (an die) noblemen?—I can write to them.—Have you paper to write?—I have some.—Is the bailiff able to write to anybody?—He is not able to write to anybody.

## 62.

Have you time to stand at the window?—I have no time to stand at the window.—Is your brother at home?—He is not at home.—Where is he?—He is in the country.—Has he anything to do in the country?—He has nothing to do there.—Whither do you wish to go?—I wish to go to the theatre.—Is the Turk in the theatre?—He is there.—Who is in the garden?—The children of the English and those of the Germans are there.—Where does your father wish to speak to me?—He wishes to speak to you in his room.—To whom does your brother wish to speak?—He wishes to speak to the Irishman.—Does he not wish to speak to the Scotchman?—He wishes to speak to him.—Where will he speak to him?—He will speak to him at (in) the theatre.—Does the Italian wish to speak to anybody?—He wishes to speak to the physician.—Where will he speak to him?—He will speak to him at the ball.

## 63.

Can you send me some money?—I can send you some.—How much money can you send me?—I can send you thirty-two crowns.—When will you send me that money?—I will send it you to-day.—Will you send it me into the country?—I will send it you thither.—Will you send your servant to the market?—I will send him thither.—Have you anything to buy at the market?—I have to buy good cloth, good boots, and good shoes.—What does the butcher wish to do in the country?—He wishes to buy there oxen and rams in order to kill them.—Do you wish to buy



a chicken in order to kill it?—I wish to buy one; but I have not the courage to kill it.—Does the boatman wish to kill any one?—He does not wish to kill any one.—Have you a desire to burn my letters?—I have not the courage to do it.—Will the servant seek my knife or my paper?—He will seek both.—Which knife do you wish (to have)?—I wish (to have) my large knife.—What oxen does the butcher wish to kill?—He wishes to kill large oxen.—What provisions does the merchant wish to buy?—He wishes to buy good provisions.—Where does he wish to buy them?—He wishes to buy them at the market.—To whom does he wish to send them?—He wishes to send them to our enemies.—Will you send me one more book?—I will send you several more.—Are you able to drink as much as your neighbour?—I am able to drink as much as he; but our friend, the Russian, is able to drink more than both of us (*wir beide*).—Is the Russian able to drink as much of this wine as of that?—He is able to drink as much of the one as of the other.—Have you anything good to drink?—I have nothing to drink.

## THIRTY-THIRD LESSON.

## Drei und dreißigste Section.

The corner,	der Winkel ;
the fountain (well),	der Brunnen (is not softened in the plur.) ;
the hole,	das Loch.

<i>To leave, to let.</i>	lassen*.
<i>To go for, to fetch.</i>	holen.
<i>To send for.</i>	holen lassen*. (See Obs. G page 105, Method, Part II.)
I leave — he leaves.	Ich lasse — er läßt.
We leave — they leave.	Wir lassen — sie lassen.
You leave.	Ihr laßt (Sie lassen).

*Obs. A.* The particle *zu*, does not precede the infinitive joined to the verb *lassen*. (See Lesson XLII) *Ex.*

We send for bread.	Wir lassen Brod holen.
We wish to send for wine.	Wir wollen Wein holen lassen.
To go for it, to fetch it.	Ich or es holen.
To go for some, to fetch some.	Welchen, welches holen.

<i>Thou.</i>	<i>Du</i> <sup>1</sup> .
Thou hast — thou art.	Du hast—Du bist.
Art thou fatigued?	Bist Du müde?
I am not fatigued.	Ich bin nicht müde.
Thou wilt (wishest), — thou art able (canst).	Du willst—Du kannst.

<sup>1</sup> In addressing one another, the Germans use the second person singular and third person plural. The second person singular *Du*, thou, is used: 1. in addressing the Supreme Being; 2. in sublime or serious style and in poetry; 3. it is a mark of intimacy among friends, and is employed by parents and children, brothers and sisters, husbands and wives, towards one another: in general it implies familiarity founded on affection and fondness. In polite conversation persons always address each other in the third person plural. The third person singular and second person plural also, especially the former, are frequently used towards inferiors, as servants, &c. In writing, the pronouns of address: *Du*, *Sie* and *Ihr*, have a capital initial letter.

Art thou willing to make my fire?	Willst Du mein Feuer anmachen?
I am willing to make it, but I cannot.	Ich will es anmachen, aber ich kann nicht.
Thou leavest.	Du lässest.

<i>Thy.</i>	Sing. Dein. Plur. Deine <sup>2</sup> .
<i>To be obliged (must).</i>	Müssen.*.
I must — he must.	Ich muß — er muß.
We must — they must.	Wir müssen — sie müssen.
Thou must — you must.	Du mußt — Ihr müßet or müßt (Sie müssen).

*Obs. B.* The infinitive joined to the verb müssen is not preceded by the particle zu. (See Lesson XLII.) Ex.

We must work.	Wir müssen arbeiten.
Must you write a letter to your brother?	Müssen Sie Ihrem Bruder einen Brief schreiben?
Is he obliged to go to the market?	Muß er auf den Markt gehen?
He is obliged to go thither.	Er muß dahin gehen.
What hast thou to do?	Was hast Du zu thun?
I have nothing to do.	Ich habe Nichts zu thun.
What hast thou to drink?	Was hast Du zu trinken.
I have nothing to drink.	Ich habe Nichts zu trinken.
What has the man to do?	Was hat der Mann zu thun?
He is obliged to go into the wood?	Er muß in den Wald gehen.

This evening (to-night).	{ Diesen Abend (accusative). + Heute Abend.
In the evening.	{ + Des Abends (genitive). + Am Abend.
This morning.	{ Diesen Morgen (accusative). + Heute Morgen.
In the morning.	{ + Des Morgens (genitive). + Am Morgen.

## EXERCISES.

64.

Will you go for some sugar?—I will go for some.—Son (mein Sohn), wilt thou go for some water?—Yes, father (mein Vater), I will go for some.—Whither wilt thou go?—I will go to the well in order to fetch some water.—Where is thy brother?—

Dein and Deine, thy, are declined exactly like mein and meine, my

He is at the well.—Will you send for my son?—I will send for him.—Will the captain send for my child?—He will send for him (es).—Where is he?—He is in a corner of the ship.—Can you make a hole in the (with accusative) table?—I can make one.—Art thou able to write a letter to me?—I am able to write one to you.—Must I go anywhither?—Thou must go into the garden.—Must I send for anything?—Thou must send for good wine, good cheese, and good bread.—What must I do?—You must write a long letter.—To whom must I write a long letter?—You must write one to your friend.

## 65.

What must we do?—You must go into the forest in order to cut some wood.—What has the Englishman to do?—He has nothing to do.—Has the Spaniard anything to do?—He has to work.—Where can he work?—He can work in his room and in mine.—When will you give me some money?—I will give you some this evening.—Must I come to your house?—You must come to my house.—When must I come to your house?—This morning.—Must I come to your house in the morning or in the evening?—You must come in the morning and in the evening.—Whither must I go?—You must go to the great square in order to speak to the merchants.—Where must the peasant go to?—He must go into the field in order to cut some hay.—Must I keep anything (for) you (Synen)?—You must keep (for) me (mir) my good gold and my good works.—Must the children of our friends do anything?—They must work in the morning and in the evening.—What must the tailor mend (for) you?—He must mend my old coat (for) me.—Which chicken must the cook kill?—He must kill this and that.—Must I send you these or those books?—You must send me (both) these and those.

## THIRTY-FOURTH LESSON.

## Vier und dreißigste Section.

<i>As far as.</i>	: Bis (an adverb of place).
How far?	Bis wohin. (See Lesson XXIX. Rule 2.)
As far as the corner.	Bis in den Winkel.
As far as the end of the road.	Bis an das Ende des Weges.
The end,	das Ende (has no plural);
the end (the extremity),	das Ende (plur. die Enden);
the road, the way,	der Weg.

To the bottom of the cask.	Bis auf den Boden des Fasses.
To the bottom of the well.	Bis auf den Grund des Brunnens.
To the bottom of the wells.	Bis auf den Grund der Brunnen.

The bottom,	der Boden;
the garret,	der Boden;
the ground,	der Grund;
the cask,	das Faß;
the purse,	der Beutel.

I go, am going — he goes, is going.	Ich gehe — er gehet or geht.
We go, are going—they go, are going.	Wir gehen — sie gehen.
Thou goest, art going—you go, are going.	Du gehest or gehst—Ihr gehet or geht (Sie gehen).

*All, every.* | *Alle.*

*Alle*, is declined like the definite article. It is never preceded or followed by an article, but may be so by a pronoun.

Every day.	† <i>Alle Tage.</i>
Every morning.	† <i>Alle Morgen.</i>
Every evening.	† <i>Alle Abend.</i>

<i>At.</i>	<i>Um.</i>
At what o'clock?	Um wieviel Uhr?
At what time?	Um welche Zeit?
At one o'clock?	Um eins or um ein Uhr.
<i>Half.</i>	<i>Halb.</i>
At half past three.	† Um halb vier.
At a quarter past one.	† Um ein Viertel auf zwei.
At a quarter past eleven.	† Um ein Viertel auf zwölf.
At a quarter to one.	† Um drei Viertel auf eins.
At twelve o'clock.	Um zwölf or um zwölf Uhr.
At twelve o'clock at night (mid-night).	Um Mitternacht.
The quarter,	das Viertel. (See <i>Obs. E.</i> page 37, Method, Part II.)
<i>At present, now.</i>	<i>Jetzt.</i>
<i>To go out.</i>	Ausgehen * (auszugehen).
<i>To remain, to stay.</i>	Bleiben *.
When do you wish to go out?	Wann wollen Sie ausgehen?
I wish to go out now.	Ich will jetzt ausgehen.
To remain (to stay) at home.	Zu Hause bleiben *.
<i>Here.</i>	<i>Hier.</i>
To remain here.	Hier bleiben *.
<i>There.</i>	<i>Da.</i>
To remain there.	Da bleiben *.
Are you going to your brother?	Gehen Sie zu Ihrem Bruder?
I am going to him.	Ich gehe zu ihm.
We are — they are.	Wir sind — sie sind.
You are.	Ihr seyd (Sie sind).
We have — they have.	Wir haben — sie haben.
You have.	Ihr habet or habt (Sie haben).
Are your brothers at home?	Sind Ihre Brüder zu Hause?
They are at home.	Sie sind zu Hause.
They are not at home.	Sie sind nicht zu Hause.
Are the men thirsty?	Sind die Männer durstig?

<sup>1</sup> Uhr signifies clock, watch, and not hour, which is translated by Stunde. When we say: Wieviel Uhr ist es? it means: Wieviel ist es auf der Uhr? How much is it upon the clock? For this reason we may leave out the word Uhr, when we say: um eins, um zwölf, as above.

Have your friends my books?

They have them not.

Have they time to write?

Haben Ihre Freunde meine Bücher?

Sie haben sie nicht.

Haben sie Zeit zu schreiben?

*To thee.*

*Thee.*

Dir (dative).

Dir (accusative).

*Obs.* *Do* and *am*, when used as auxiliaries, are never expressed in German. *Ex.*

Do you wish to take me to my father?

I wish to take thee to him.

Are you willing to give me a knife?

I am willing to give thee one.

Am I going to him?

Thou art not going to him, but to me.

Wollen Sie mich zu meinem Vater führen.

Ich will Dich zu ihm führen.

Wollen Sie mir ein Messer geben?

Ich will Dir eins geben.

Gehe ich zu ihm?

Du gehst nicht zu ihm, sondern zu mir.

## EXERCISES.

66.

How far do you wish to go?—I wish to go as far as the end of the forest.—How far does your brother wish to go?—He wishes to go as far as the end of that road.—How far does the wine go?—It goes to the bottom of the cask.—How far does the water go?—It goes to the bottom of the well.—Whither art thou going?—I am going to the market.—Whither are we going?—We are going into the country.—Are you going as far as the square?—I am going as far as the fountain.—When does your cook go to the market?—He goes there every morning.—Can you speak to the nobleman?—I can speak to him every day.—Can I see your father?—You can see him every evening.—At what o'clock can I see him?—You can see him every evening at eight o'clock.—Will you come to me to-day?—I cannot come to you to-day, but to-morrow.—At what o'clock will you come to-morrow?—I will come at half-past eight.—Can you not come at a quarter past eight?—I cannot.—At what o'clock does your son go to the captain?—He goes to him at a quarter before one.—At what o'clock is your friend at home?—At midnight.

67.

Have you a mind to go out?—I have no mind to go out.—When will you go out?—I will go out at half-past three.—Does your father wish to go out?—He does not wish to go out; he

wishes to remain at home.—Are you willing to remain here, my dear (lieb) friend?—I cannot remain here, I **must** go to the warehouse.—Must you go to your brother?—I must go to him.—At what o'clock must you write your letters?—I must write them at midnight.—Do you go to your neighbour in the evening or in the morning?—I go to him (both) in the evening and in the morning.—Where are you going to now?—I am going to the play.—Where are you going to to-night?—I am **going** nowhither; I must remain at home in order to write letters.—Are your brothers at home?—They are not there.—Where are they?—They are in the country.—Where are your friends going to?—They are going home.—Has your tailor as many children as your shoemaker?—He has quite as many of them (*ihret*).—Have the sons of your shoemaker as many boots as their father?—They have (*deren*) more than he.—Have the children of our hatter as much bread as wine?—They have more of the one than of the other.—Has our carpenter one more son?—He has several more.—Are the Italians thirsty?—They are thirsty and hungry.—Have they anything to do?—They have nothing to do.—Are the children of the Irish hungry or thirsty?—They are neither hungry nor thirsty, but fatigued.

## 68.

Have you time to go out?—I have no time to go out.—What have you to do at home?—I must write letters to my friends.—Must you sweep your room?—I must sweep it.—Are you obliged to lend your brothers money?—I am obliged to lend them some.—Must you go into the garden?—I must go thither.—At what o'clock must you go thither?—I must go thither at a quarter past twelve.—Are you obliged to go to my father at eleven o'clock at night (*Abends*)?—I am obliged to go to him at midnight.—Where are the brothers of our bailiff?—They are in the great forest in order to cut great trees.—Have they money to buy bread and wine?—They have some.—Are our children wrong in going (*zu gehen*) to the English?—They are not wrong in going (*zu gehen*) to them.—Must the children of the French go to the children of the English?—They must go to them.—Is the Russian right in remaining (*zu bleiben*) with the Turk?—He is not wrong in remaining with him.—Will you send for some wine and glasses?—I will neither send for wine nor for glasses; I am not thirsty.—Is thy father thirsty?—He is not thirsty.—Are you willing to give me some money in order to go for some bread?—I am willing to give you some in order to go for some bread and beer.



## THIRTY-FIFTH LESSON

## Fünf und dreißigste Section.

<i>To sell.</i>	Verkaufen.
<i>To tell, to say.</i>	Sagen.
To tell a man.	Einem Manne sagen.
The word,	das Wort ;
the favour,	der Gefallen ;
the pleasure,	das Vergnügen.
To give pleasure.	Vergnügen machen.
To do a favour.	Einen Gefallen thun *.

---

Will you tell the servant to make the fire ?	Wollen Sie dem Bedienten sagen, das Feuer anzumachen ?
I will tell him to make it.	Ich will ihm sagen, es anzumachen.
Will you tell the servant to buy a broom ?	Wollen Sie dem Bedienten sagen, einen Besen zu kaufen ?
I will tell him to buy one.	Ich will ihm sagen, einen zu kaufen.

---

<i>It is.</i>	Es ist.
<i>Late.</i>	Spät.
What o'clock is it ?	{ † Wie spät ist es ?
It is three o'clock.	{ † Wieviel Uhr ist es ?
It is twelve o'clock.	Es ist drei Uhr.
It is a quarter past twelve.	Es ist zwölf (zwölf Uhr).
It wants a quarter to six.	† Es ist ein Viertel auf eins.
It is half past one.	† Es ist drei Viertel auf sechs.
	† Es ist halb zwei. (See <i>Obs E</i> page 37, Method, Part II.)

---

<i>To be acquainted with (to know).</i>	Rennen * (governs the accus.).
To be acquainted with (to know) a man.	Einen Menschen kennen *.
Do you know (are you acquainted with) this man ?	Rennen Sie diesen Mann ?
I know him (am acquainted with him).	Ich kenne ihn.

---

<i>To want</i>	Nöthig haben * (governs the accusative).
<i>To be in want of.</i>	Bedürftigt seyn * (governs the genitive).

I want it.

I am in want of it.

Do you want this hat?

I want it.

Are you in want of this hat?

I am in want of it.

Do you want this money?

I want it.

I do not want it.

Are you in want of this money?

I am in want of it.

I am not in want of it.

I do not want any thing.

I am not in want of anything.

Do you want money?

Are you in want of money?

I want some.

I am in want of some.

I do not want any.

I am not in want of any.

Ich habe es nöthig.

Ich bin dessen benöthigt. (See Lesson XVIII.)

Haben Sie diesen Hut nöthig?

Ich habe ihn nöthig.

Sind Sie dieses Hutes benöthigt?

Ich bin dessen benöthigt.

Haben Sie dieses Geld nöthig?

Ich habe es nöthig.

Ich habe es nicht nöthig.

Sind Sie dieses Geldes benöthigt?

Ich bin dessen benöthigt.

Ich bin dessen nicht benöthigt.

} Ich habe Nichts nöthig.

} Haben Sie Geld nöthig?

} Ich habe welches nöthig.

} Ich habe keins nöthig.

*Obs. A.* *Benöthigt* seyn \*, must never be used when the noun is not preceded by a determinative word like the definite article, or a possessive or demonstrative pronoun.

*What?*

| Was?

What do you want?

What are you in want of?

} Was haben Sie nöthig?

*Obs. B.* All the cases of the personal pronouns have been more or less employed in the preceding, except the genitive which is as follows:

Of me—of thee—of him.

Of us—of you—of them.

Meiner—Deiner—seiner.

Unser—Euer (Ihrer)—ihrer (for all genders).

Is he in want of me?

He is in want of you.

Ist er meiner benöthigt?

Er ist Ihrer benöthigt. (See Lesson XVIII.)

Are you in want of these books?

I am in want of them.

Is he in want of my brothers?

He is in want of them.

Sind Sie dieser Bücher benöthigt?

Ich bin derselben benöthigt.

Ist er meiner Brüder benöthigt?

Er ist ihrer benöthigt. (See Lesson XVIII.)

## EXERCISES.

69.

Will you do me a favour?—Yes, Sir, what one (*was für einen*)?—Will you tell your brother to sell me his horse?—I will tell him to sell it you.—Will you tell my servants to sweep my large rooms?—I will tell them to sweep them.—Will you tell your son to come to my father?—I will tell him to come to him.—Have you anything to tell me?—I have nothing to tell you (put the dative before the accus.).—Have you anything to say to my father?—I have a word to say to him.—Do your brothers wish to sell their carriage?—They do not wish to sell it.—John (*Johann*)! art thou there (*da*)?—Yes, Sir, I am here (*da*).—Wilt thou go to my hatter to tell him to mend my hat?—I will go to him.—Wilt thou go to the tailor to tell him to mend my coats?—I will go to him.—Art thou willing to go to the market?—I am willing to go thither.—What has the merchant to sell?—He has beautiful leather gloves, combs, and good cloth to sell.—Has he any shirts to sell?—He has some to sell.—Does he wish to sell me his horses?—He wishes to sell them to you.

70.

Is it late?—It is not late.—What is it o'clock?—It is a quarter past twelve.—At what o'clock does your father wish to go out?—He wishes to go out at a quarter to nine.—Will he sell this or that horse?—He will sell neither this nor that.—Does he wish to buy this or that coat?—He wishes to buy both.—Has he one horse more to sell?—He has one more, but he does not wish to sell it.—Has he one more carriage to sell?—He has not one more carriage to sell; but he has a few more oxen to sell.—When will he sell them?—He will sell them to-day.—Will he sell them in the morning or in the evening?—He will sell them this evening.—At what o'clock?—At half past five.—Can you go to the baker?—I cannot go to him; it is late.—What is it o'clock?—It is midnight.—Do you wish to see that man?—I wish to see him, in order to know him.—Does your father wish to see my brothers?—He wishes to see them, in order to know them.—Does he wish to see my horse?—He wishes to see it.—At what o'clock does he wish to see it?—He wishes to see it at six o'clock.—Where does he wish to see it?—He wishes to see it in (*auf*) the great square.—Has the German much corn to sell?—He has but little to sell.—What knives has the merchant to sell?—He has good knives to sell.—How many more knives has he?—He has six more.—Has the Irishman much more wine?—He has not much more.—Hast thou wine enough to drink?—I have not much, but enough.—Art thou able to drink much wine?—I am able to drink much.—Canst thou drink some every day?—I can drink some every morning and every evening.—Can thy brother drink as much as thou?—He can drink more than I.

## 71.

What are you in want of?—I am in want of a good hat.—Are you in want of this knife?—I am in want of it.—Do you want money?—I want some.—Does your brother want pepper?—He does not want any.—Does he want some boots?—He does not want any.—What does my brother want?—He wants nothing.—Who wants some sugar?—Nobody wants any.—Does any body want money?—Nobody wants any.—Does your father want anything?—He wants nothing.—What do I want?—You want nothing.—Art thou in want of my book?—I am in want of it.—Is thy father in want of it?—He is not in want of it.—Does your friend want this stick?—He wants it.—Does he want these or those corks?—He wants neither these nor those.—Are you in want of me?—I am in want of thee.—When do you want me?—At present.—What have you to say to me?—I have a word to say to thee.—Is your son in want of us?—He is in want of you and your brothers.—Are you in want of my servants?—I am in want of them.—Does any one want my brother?—No one wants him.

## THIRTY-SIXTH LESSON.

## Sechß und dreißigste Section.

## THE PRESENT.

THERE is no distinction in German between: I love, do love, and am loving. All these present tenses are expressed by: *ich liebe*, I love.

In the regular verbs the third person singular and second person plural of the present tense indicative mode are alike, and terminate (even in most of the irregular verbs) in *et* or *t*. The first and third persons plural in all German verbs are like the infinitive.

<i>To love.</i>		<i>lieben.</i>
I	{ love, do love, am loving.	he { loves, does love, is loving. } <i>Ich liebe, er liebet or liebt.</i>
Thou	{ lovest, dost love, art loving.	you { love, do love, are loving. } <i>Du liebest or liebst, Ihr liebet or liebt (Sie lieben).</i>
We	{ love, do love, are loving.	they { love, do love, are loving. } <i>Wir lieben, sie lieben.</i>

*Obs. A.* The letter *e* is often rejected in the second and third persons singular and in the second person plural of the present tense; but never in verbs the root of which ends in: *b, t, th, ft*, or in two or more consonants, after which *t* or *ft* could not be distinctly pronounced, as in: *senden*\*, to send; *du sendest, er sendet, Ihr sendet*; *ordnen*, to set in order; *du ordnest, er ordnet, Ihr ordnet, &c.* On the other hand this contraction always takes place in verbs that end in *eln* or *ern*, as: *schmeicheln*, to flatter; *du schmeichelst, er schmeichelt, Ihr schmeichelt*; *ändern*, to alter; *du änderst, er ändert, Ihr ändert*. (See Lesson XXVI. the Infinitive.)


<i>To want.</i>	<i>Brauchen</i> (governs the accusative).
Do you want your money?	<i>Brauchen Sie Ihr Geld?</i>
I want it.	<i>Ich brauche es.</i>

<i>To set in order.</i>	<i>Ordnen.</i>
<i>To open.</i>	<i>Deffnen</i> ( <i>aufmachen, aufzumachen</i> ).
Do you open the window?	<i>Machen Sie das Fenster auf?</i>
I open it.	<i>Ich mache es auf.</i>

*Obs. B.* German verbs are generally not irregular in the present tense, but rather in the imperfect and past participle. Some however, are irregular in the second and third persons singular; and as pupils should be acquainted with all the irregularities, we shall always mark these two persons whenever they present any. Of those which we have seen already, the following are irregular in the second and third persons singular.

To give:  
 thou givest —he gives.  
 To see:  
 thou seest —he sees.  
 To speak:  
 thou speakest—he speaks.  
 To take, to carry:  
 thou carriest —he carries.  
 To wash:  
 thou wasthest —he washes.  
 To break:  
 thou breakest—he breaks.

Geben\*:  
 Du gibst —er gibt.  
 Sehen\*:  
 Du siehst —er sieht.  
 Sprechen\*:  
 Du sprichst —er spricht.  
 Tragen\*:  
 Du trägst —er trägt.  
 Waschen\*:  
 Du wäschest —er wäscht.  
 Zerbrechen\*:  
 Du zerbrichst—er zerbricht.

 Personal pronouns not standing in the nominative, take their place after the verb.

Do you love *him*?  
 I do love *him*.  
 I do not love *him*.  
 Does the servant sweep the room?

Lieben Sie *ihn*?  
 Ich liebe *ihn*.  
 Ich liebe *ihn* nicht.  
 Kehrt der Bediente das Zimmer aus?

*Obs. C.* In simple tenses, as the present or imperfect, the separable particle is always placed at the end of the sentence; unless this begins with a conjunction, a relative pronoun, or a relative adverb, in which case the particle is not separated from the verb, which then takes its place at the end.

He sweeps it.  
 Does your father go out to-day?  
 He does not go out to-day.

Er kehrt es aus.  
 Geht Ihr Vater heute aus?  
 Er geht heute nicht aus.

## EXERCISES.

72.

Do you love your brother?—I do love him.—Does your father love him?—He does not love him.—Dost thou love me, my good child?—I love thee.—Dost thou love this ugly man?—I do not love him.—Does your father want his servant?—He does want him.—Dost thou want anything?—I want nothing.—Does the servant open the window?—He does open it.—Dost thou open it?—I do not open it.—Dost thou set my books in order?—I do

set them in order.—Does the servant set our boots or our shoes in order?—He sets (both) the one and the other in order.—Do our children love us?—They do love us.—Do we love our enemies?—We do not love them.—Do you want your money?—I do want it.—Do we want our carriage?—We do want it.—Are our friends in want of their clothes (*Kleider*)?—They are in want of them.—What do you give me?—I do not give thee anything.—Do you give my brother the book?—I do give it him.—Do you give him a hat?—I do give him one.

## 73.

Dost thou see anything?—I see nothing.—Do you see my large garden?—I do see it.—Does your father see our ship?—He does not see it, but we see it.—How many ships do you see?—We see a good many; we see more than thirty of them.—Do you give me books?—I do give thee some.—Does our father give you money?—He does not give us any.—Does he give you hats?—He does not give us any.—Do you see many sailors?—We see more soldiers (*der Soldat*, plur. *en*) than sailors.—Do the soldiers see many storehouses?—They see more gardens than storehouses.—Do the English give you good cakes?—They do give us some.—Do you give me as much wine as beer?—I give thee as much of the one as of the other.—Can you give me some more cakes?—I can give thee no more; I have not many more.—Do you give me the horse which you have?—I do not give you that which I have.—Which horse do you give me?—I give you that of my brother.

## 74.

Do you speak to the neighbour?—I do speak to him.—Does he speak to you?—He does not speak to me.—Do your brothers speak to you?—They do speak to us.—When dost thou speak to thy father?—I speak to him every morning and every evening.—What dost thou carry?—I carry a book.—Where dost thou carry it to?—I carry it home.—Do you wash your stockings?—I do not wash them.—Does your brother wash as many shirts as stockings?—He washes more of the one than of the other.—Hast thou many more stockings to wash?—I have not many more to wash.—How many more shirts have your friends to wash?—They have two more to wash.—What does your servant carry?—He carries a great table.—What do these men carry?—They carry our wooden chairs.—Where do they carry them to?—They carry them into the large room of our brothers.—Do your brothers wash their stockings or ours?—They neither wash yours nor theirs; they wash those of their children.

## 75.

Dost thou not break my glass?—No, Sir, I do not break it.—Do the sons of our neighbours break our glasses?—They do

break them.—Who tears your books?—The young man tears them.—Do you not tear them?—I do not tear them.—Do the soldiers cut trees?—They do cut some.—Do you buy as many hats as gloves?—I buy more of the one than of the other.—Does your brother buy any bread?—He is obliged to buy some; he is hungry.—Do our brothers buy any wine?—They are obliged to buy some; they are thirsty.—Do you break anything?—We do not break anything.—Who breaks our chairs?—Nobody breaks them.—Dost thou buy anything?—I do not buy anything.—Who keeps (takes care of) our money?—My father keeps it.—Do your brothers take care of my books?—They do take care of them.—Dost thou take care of anything?—I do not take care of anything.

## 76.

Does the tailor mend our coats?—He does mend them.—What dost thou write?—I write a letter.—To whom dost thou write a letter?—To my father.—When does thy brother write his letters?—He writes them in the morning and in the evening.—What dost thou now?—I do nothing.—At what o'clock do you go to the theatre?—At a quarter past seven.—What o'clock is it now?—It wants a quarter to six.—At what o'clock does your cook go to the market?—He goes thither at five o'clock (put *basin* to the end).—Does he go thither in the evening?—No, he goes thither in the morning.—Do you go any whither?—I go no whither;—but my brothers go into the garden.—Dost thou drink anything?—I drink nothing; but the Italian drinks good wine and good beer.—Do you send me one more book?—I do not send you one more.—Are you answering his letter?—I am answering it.—Does he answer thine?—He does answer it.—What do you say?—I say nothing.—Must I give him money to remain here?—You must give him some to go out.—Is this man selling anything?—He is selling good cakes.—What do you sell?—I sell nothing; but my friends sell nails, knives, and horse-shoes.—What does the man say?—He says nothing.—What art thou looking for?—I am not looking for anything.

---

\*.\* We should fill volumes, were we to give all the exercises that are applicable to our lessons, and which the pupils may very easily compose by themselves. We shall therefore merely repeat what we have already mentioned at the commencement: pupils who wish to improve rapidly ought to compose a great many sentences in addition to those given; but they must pronounce them aloud. This is the only way by which they will acquire the habit of speaking fluently.



## THIRTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

## Sieben und dreißigste Section.

---

The pain,	der Schmerz (plur. en) ;
the tooth,	der Zahn ;
the ear,	das Ohr (is not softened and takes en in the plur.) ;
the neck,	der Hals ;
the ache,	das Weh (plur. e <sup>1</sup> ) ;
the evil,	das Uebel.

---

Sore (*ill, wicked*).

Bad.

Evil, *ill*.

Böse.

Schlimm.

Uebel.

Have you a sore finger ?

I have a sore finger.

Has your brother a sore foot ?

He has a sore eye.

We have sore eyes.

Haben Sie einen bösen Finger ?

Ich habe einen bösen Finger.

Hat Ihr Bruder einen bösen Fuß ?

Er hat ein böses Auge.

Wir haben böse Augen.

The head-ache,  
the tooth-ache,  
the ear-ache,  
a sore throat,  
a pain in one's back,

das Kopfsweh <sup>2</sup> ;  
das Zahnweh ;  
das Ohrenweh ;  
Halssweh ;  
Rückenschmerz.

He has the head-ache.

I have the tooth-ache.

Er hat Kopfschmerzen <sup>3</sup>.

Ich habe Zahnschmerzen.

The elbow,  
the back,  
the knee,

der Ellenbogen ;  
der Rücken ;  
das Knie <sup>4</sup>.

---

<sup>1</sup> Das Weh, the ache, is employed in the plural only to denote the pangs of childbirth.

<sup>2</sup> Compound words are of the gender of the last component which expresses the fundamental or general idea. (See my treatise on the gender of substantives in the Introductory Book to the Method.)

<sup>3</sup> Schmerz, pain, is here in the plural. In compound words Weh is employed in the singular, and Schmerz in the plural, thus: Ich habe Kopfsweh, and: Ich habe Kopfschmerzen, I have the headache.

<sup>4</sup> Das Knie, the knee, does not take an additional e in the plural and is nevertheless pronounced as if it did.

<i>To bring.</i>	Bringen*.
<i>To find.</i>	Finden*.

<i>That which (what).</i>	Was (dasjenige welches, das welches).
---------------------------	---------------------------------------

*Obs. A.* Was is often used instead of dasjenige, welches, or das, welches, that which. (See Lesson XXXI.)

Do you find what you are looking for?	Finden Sie, was Sie suchen?
I find what I am looking for.	Ich finde, was ich suche.
He does not find what he is looking for.	Er findet nicht, was er sucht.
We find what we are looking for.	Wir finden, was wir suchen.
I have what I want.	Ich habe, was ich brauche.
I mend what you mend.	Ich bessere aus, was Sie ausbessern.

*Obs. B.* Here the second member of the phrase beginning with a relative pronoun, the particle aus is not separated from its verb which is removed to the end. (See *Obs. C.* Lesson XXXVI. and Rule of Syntax, Lesson XLIX.)

<i>To read (thou readest, he reads).</i>	Lesen* (du liestest, er liest or liest).
<i>To study.</i>	Studiren.

<i>To learn.</i>	Lernen.
------------------	---------

*Obs. C.* The particle zu does not precede the infinitive joined to the verb lernen, to learn. (See Lesson XLII.) Ex.

I learn to read.	† Ich lerne lesen.
He learns to write.	† Er lernt schreiben.

French,	französisch (an adjective*);
English,	englisch;
German,	deutsch.

Do you learn German?	Lernen Sie deutsch?
I do learn it.	Ich lerne es.
I do not learn it.	Ich lerne es nicht.

\* Derived from der Franzose, the Frenchman.

## EXERCISES.

77.

Where is your father?—He is at home.—Does he not go out?—He is not able to go out; he has the head-ache.—Hast thou the head-ache?—I have not the head-ache, but the ear-ache.—What day of the month is it (*den wievielften haben wir, Lesson XXIII.*) to-day?—It is the twelfth to-day.—What day of the month is (*der wievielfte ist*) to-morrow?—To-morrow is the thirteenth.—What kind of teeth have you?—I have good teeth.—What kind of teeth has your brother?—He has bad teeth.—Has the Englishman the tooth-ache?—He has not the tooth-ache; he has a sore eye.—Has the Italian a sore eye?—He has not a sore eye, but a sore foot.—Have I a sore finger?—You have no sore finger, but a sore knee.—Will you cut me some bread?—I cannot cut you any; I have sore fingers.—Will anybody cut me some cheese?—Nobody will cut you any.—Are you looking for any one?—I am not looking for any one.—Has any one the ear-ache?—No one has the ear-ache.—What is the painter looking for?—He is not looking for anything.—Whom are you looking for?—I am looking for your son.—Who is looking for me?—No one is looking for you.—Dost thou find what thou art looking for?—I do find what I am looking for; but the captain does not find what he is looking for.

78.

Who has a sore throat?—We have sore throats.—Has any one sore eyes?—The Germans have sore eyes.—Does the tailor make my coat?—He does not make it; he has a pain in his back.—Does the shoemaker make my shoes?—He is unable to (*kann nicht*) make them; he has sore elbows.—Does the merchant bring us beautiful purses (*der Beutel*)?—He cannot go out; he has sore feet.—Does the Spaniard find the umbrella which he is looking for?—He does find it.—Do the butchers find the sheep which they are looking for?—They do find them.—Does the tailor find his thimble?—He does not find it.—Dost thou find the paper which thou art looking for?—I do not find it.—Do we find what we are looking for?—We do not find what we are looking for.—What is the nobleman doing?—He does what you are doing.—What is he doing in his room?—He is reading.

79.

Art thou reading?—I am not reading.—Do the sons of the noblemen study?—They do study.—What are they studying?—They are studying German.—Art thou studying English?—I have no time to study it.—Are the Dutch looking for this or *that ship*?—They are looking for both.—Is the servant looking

for this or that broom?—He is neither looking for this nor that.—Who is learning German?—The sons of the captains and those of the noblemen are learning it.—When does your friend study French?—He studies it in the morning.—At what o'clock does he study it?—He studies it at ten o'clock.—Does he study it every day?—He studies it every morning and every evening.—What are the children of the carpenter doing?—They are reading.—Are they reading German?—They are reading French; but we are reading English.—What books does your son read?—He reads good books.—Does he read German books?—He reads French books.—What book do you read?—I read a German book.—Do you read as much as my children?—I read more than they.—Does your father read the book which I read?—He does not read that which you read, but that which I read.—Does he read as much as I?—He reads less than you, but he learns more than you.—Do you lend me a book?—I do lend you one.—Do your friends lend you any books?—They do lend me some.

## THIRTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

## Acht und dreißigste Lektion.

Spanish, | spanisch (an adjective <sup>1</sup>).

The ending *isch* serves to form adjectives of the names of nations.  
Thus

Italian,	italienisch ;
Polish,	polnisch ;
Russian,	russisch ;
Latin,	lateinisch ;
Greek,	griechisch ;
Arabian, Arabic,	arabisch ;
Syrian, Syriac,	syrisch.

The Pole,	der Pole ;
the Roman,	der Römer ;
the Greek,	der Grieche ;
the Arab, the Arabian,	der Araber ;
the Syrian,	der Syrer.

Are you a Frenchman ?  
No, Sir, I am a German.

Sind Sie ein Franzose ?  
Nein, mein Herr, ich bin ein Deutscher.

Is he a tailor ?  
No, he is a shoemaker.  
He is a fool.

Ist er ein Schneider ?  
Nein, er ist ein Schuhmacher.  
Er ist ein Narr.

*To wish, to desire.*

The fool,  
the mouth,  
the memory,

Wünschen.  
der Narr (gen. en) ;  
der Mund (has no plur.) ;  
das Gedächtniß (plur. e).

Have you a good memory ?  
He has a little mouth.  
Your brother has blue eyes.  
Do you wish me a good morning ?  
I wish you a good evening.

Haben Sie ein gutes Gedächtniß ?  
Er hat einen kleinen Mund.  
Ihr Bruder hat blaue Augen.  
Wünschen Sie mir einen guten Morgen ?  
Ich wünsche Ihnen einen guten Abend.

<sup>1</sup> Derived from Spanien, Spain.

Blue, black,	blau; schwarz.
<i>Instead of.</i>	Anstatt zu. (See <i>Obs. A.</i> page 152, Method, Part II.)
<i>To play.</i>	Spieleu.
<i>To listen, to hear.</i>	Hören.
Instead of listening.	† Anstatt zu hören.
Do you play instead of studying?	† Spielen Sie anstatt zu studiren?
<i>Obs.</i> The preposition <i>anstatt</i> , <i>instead of</i> , requires in German <i>zu</i> before the infinitive, whilst in English it is construed with the present participle.	
I study instead of playing.	† Ich studire anstatt zu spielen.
That man speaks instead of listening.	† Dieser Mann spricht anstatt zu hören.
<hr/>	
<i>To listen to.</i>	{ Anhören (anzuhören, governs the accusative). Zuhören (zuzuhören, governs the dative).
I listen to him.	{ Ich höre ihn an. Ich höre ihm zu.
To listen to some one or something.	Auf Jemanden oder Etwas hören.
<hr/>	
<i>That which.</i>	Das, was.
Do you listen to what the man tells you?	{ Hören Sie auf das, was Ihnen der Mann sagt? Hören Sie auf das, was der Mann Ihnen sagt?
I do listen to it.	Ich höre darauf <sup>2</sup> .
He listens to what I tell him.	Er hört auf das, was ich ihm sage.
<hr/>	
<i>To correct.</i>	Verbessern, corrigiren.
<i>To take off</i> (as the hat).	Abnehmen* (abzunehmen).
<i>To take off</i> (as clothes).	Ausziehen* (auszuziehen).
<i>To take away.</i>	Begnehmen* (wegzunehmen).

<sup>2</sup> Anhören takes the person in the accusative, and zuhören in the dative. They never relate to a thing; but hören auf stands either with the person or the thing, and always requires the accusative. Ex. Ich höre ihn an or ich höre ihm zu, I listen to him; but ich höre auf das, was Sie mir sagen, I listen to what you are telling me.

*To take.*  
 Thou takest,—he takes.  
 Thou takest off thy hat.  
 Do you take off your boots?  
 We take off our coats.  
 Who takes away the chairs?  
 The servant takes them away.

*Nehmen\*.*  
 Du nimmst,—er nimmt.  
 Du nimmst Deinen Hut ab.  
 Ziehen Sie Ihre Stiefel aus?  
 Wir ziehen unsere Röcke aus.  
 Wer nimmt die Stühle weg?  
 Der Bediente nimmt sie weg.

## EXERCISES.

80.

Do you speak Spanish?—No, Sir, I speak Italian.—Who speaks Polish?—My brother speaks Polish.—Do our neighbours speak Russian?—They do not speak Russian, but Arabic.—Do you speak Arabic?—No, I speak Greek and Latin.—What knife have you?—I have an English knife.—What money have you there? Is it Italian or Spanish money?—It is Russian money.—Have you an Italian hat?—No, I have a Spanish hat.—Are you a German?—No, I am an Englishman.—Art thou a Greek?—No, I am a Spaniard.—Are these men Poles?—No, they are Russians.—Do the Russians speak Polish?—They do not speak Polish, but Latin, Greek, and Arabic.—Is your brother a merchant?—No, he is a joiner.—Are these men merchants?—No, they are carpenters.—Are we boatmen?—No, we are shoemakers.—Art thou a fool?—I am not a fool.—What is that man?—He is a tailor.—Do you wish me anything?—I wish you a good morning.—What does the young man wish me?—He wishes you a good evening.—Whither must I go?—Thou must go to our friends to wish them a good day (*Tag*).—Do your children come to me in order to wish me a good evening?—They come to you in order to wish you a good morning.

81.

Has the nobleman blue eyes?—He has black eyes and a little mouth.—Hast thou a good memory?—I have a bad memory, but much courage to learn German.—What dost thou (do) instead of playing?—I study instead of playing.—Dost thou learn instead of writing?—I write instead of learning.—What does the son of our bailiff (do)?—He goes into the garden instead of going into the field.—Do the children of our neighbours read?—They write instead of reading.—What does our cook (do)?—He makes a fire instead of going to the market.—Does your father sell his ox?—He sells his horse instead of selling his ox.—Do the physicians go out?—They remain in their rooms instead of going out.—At what o'clock does our physician come to you?—He comes every morning at a quarter to nine.—Does the son of the painter study English?—He studies Greek instead of studying

English.—Does the butcher kill oxen?—He kills sheep instead of killing oxen.—Do you listen to me?—I do listen to you.—Does your brother listen to me?—He speaks instead of listening to you.—Do you listen to what I am telling you?—I do listen to what you are telling me.

## 82.

Does the man listen to what you are telling him?—He does listen to it.—Do the children of the physician listen to what we tell them?—They do not listen to it.—Dost thou listen to what thy brother tells thee?—I do listen to it.—Do you go to the cheatre?—I am going to the storehouse instead of going to the theatre.—Are you willing to listen to me?—I am willing to listen to you, but I cannot; I have the ear-ache.—Does thy father correct my notes or thine?—He corrects neither yours nor mine.—Which notes does he correct?—He corrects those which he writes.—Does he listen to what you tell him?—He does listen to it.—Do you take off your hat in order to speak to my father?—I do take it off in order to speak to him.—Does thy brother listen to what our father tells him?—He does listen to it.—Does our servant go for some beer?—He goes for some vinegar instead of going for some beer.—Do you correct my letter?—I do not correct it; I have sore eyes.—Does the servant take off his coat in order to make a fire?—He does take it off.—Do you take off your gloves in order to give me money?—I do take them off in order to give you some.—Does he take off his shoes in order to go to your house?—He does not take them off.—Who takes away the tables and chairs?—The servants take them away.—Will you take away this glass?—I have no mind to take it away.—Is he wrong in taking off his boots?—He is right in taking them off.—Dost thou take away anything?—I do not take away anything.—Does anybody take off his hat?—Nobody takes it off.



## THIRTY-NINTH LESSON

## Neun und dreißigste Section.

<i>Wet (moist).</i>	Nass (an adjective).
<i>To wet (to moisten).</i>	Nass machen (nässen).
<i>To show.</i>	Zeigen, weisen * (govern the dative <sup>1</sup> ).
<i>To let see (expose to sight).</i>	Sehen lassen * (governs two accusative cases, one of the person and one of the object).
Do you let me see your gold ribbons?	Lassen Sie mich Ihre goldenen Bänder sehen?
I do let you see them.	Ich lasse Sie dieselben sehen.

Brandy,	Branntwein (masc.);
tobacco,	Tabak (masc.);
tobacco (for smoking),	Rauchtabak;
snuff,	Schnupftabak;
cider,	Eider (masc.);
meal (flour),	Mehl (neut.);
apples,	Äpfel (Äpfel) (plur. of der Apfel).

The gardener,	der Gärtner;
the cousin,	der Vetter;
the brother-in-law,	der Schwager;
the handkerchief,	das Tuch;
the pocket handkerchief,	das Schnupftuch;
the valet, servant,	der Diener, der Knecht <sup>2</sup> .

Do you go for your brother-in-law?	Holen Sie Ihren Schwager?
I do go for him.	Ich hole ihn.

<sup>1</sup> Zeigen expresses the mere act of showing; weisen implies showing with instruction, and is derived from the word: die Weise, the manner.

<sup>2</sup> Diener generally means servant; hence: der Kammerdiener, the valet de chambre; der Kirchenbiener, the church-minister, clergyman; Knecht points out the lowest degree of servitude, hence: der Hausknecht, the menial servant; der Stallknecht, the groom, the stable-man; der Reitknecht, the jockey.

<i>To intend (to think).</i>	<i>Gedenken.</i>
Do you intend to go to the ball this evening?	Gedenken Sie heute Abend auf den Ball zu gehen?
I do intend to go thither.	Ich gedenke hinzugehen. (See <i>Obs. A. Lesson XXIX.</i> )

<i>To know.</i>	<i>Wissen* (können*<sup>3</sup>).</i>
I know —he knows.	Ich weiß —er weiß.
We know —they know.	Wir wissen—sie wissen.
Thou knowest—you know.	Du weißt —Ihr wißet (Sie wissen).
Do you know German?	Können Sie deutsch?
I do know it.	Ich kann es.
Do you know how to read French?	} Können Sie französisch lesen?
Can you read French?	
Can you make a hat?	} Können Sie einen Hut machen?
Do you know how to make a hat?	
Can you come to me to-day?	Können Sie heute zu mir kommen?

<i>To swim.</i>	<i>Schwimmen*.</i>
Do you know how to swim?	} Können Sie schwimmen?
Can you swim?	

<i>Whither? where to?</i>	<i>Wo hin?</i>
Whither are you going?	Wo gehen Sie hin? <sup>4</sup>

## EXERCISES.

83.

Do you wish to drink brandy?—No, I wish to drink wine.—  
Do you sell brandy?—I do not sell any; but my neighbour, the merchant, sells some.—Will you fetch me some tobacco?—I will

<sup>3</sup> Wissen implies to have the knowledge of a thing, not to be ignorant of it; können signifies to be able, to have the knowledge of an art or a science. Ex. Ich weiß, was Sie sagen wollen, I know, what you wish to say. Er kann einen deutschen Brief schreiben, he knows how to write a German letter. The learner must take care not to confound wissen\*, to know, with können\*, to be able, and the latter not with kennen\*, to be acquainted. (See Lessons XXX. and XXXV., and page 107, Method, Part II.)

<sup>4</sup> Wohin, as above, may be divided into two parts, the first of which is placed in the beginning and the second at the end of the sentence. If the sentence ends with a past participle or an infinitive, hin is placed before it. (See page 167, Method, Part II.)

fetch you some ; what tobacco do you wish to have ?—I wish to have some snuff ; but my friend, the German, wishes to have some tobacco (for smoking).—Does the merchant show you cloth ?—He does not show me any.—Does your valet go for some cider ?—He does go for some.—Do you want anything else (noch Etwas) ?—I want some flour ; will you send for some (for) me ?—I will send for some (for) you.—Does your friend buy apples ?—He does buy some.—Does he buy handkerchiefs ?—He buys tobacco instead of buying handkerchiefs.—Do you show me anything ?—I show you gold and silver clothes.—Whither does your cousin go ?—He goes to the ball.—Do you go to the ball ?—I go to the theatre instead of going to the ball.—Does the gardener go into the garden ?—He goes to the market instead of going into the garden.—Do you send your servant to the shoemaker ?—I send him to the tailor instead of sending him to the shoemaker.

## 84.

Dost thou go to fetch thy father ?—I do go to fetch him.—May (tann) I go to fetch my cousin ?—You may go to fetch him.—Does your valet find the man whom he is looking for ?—He does find him.—Do your sons find the friends whom they are looking for ?—They do not find them.—When do you intend going to the ball ?—I intend going thither this evening.—Do your cousins intend to go into the country ?—They intend to go thither.—When do they intend to go thither ?—They intend to go thither to-morrow.—At what o'clock ?—At half-past nine.—What does the merchant wish to sell you ?—He wishes to sell me pocket-handkerchiefs.—Do you intend to buy some ?—I will not buy any.—Dost thou know anything ?—I do not know anything.—What does thy cousin know ?—He knows how to read and to write.—Does he know German ?—He does not know it.—Do you know Spanish ?—I do know it.—Do your brothers know Greek ?—They do not know it ; but they intend to learn it.—Do I know English ?—You do not know it ; but you intend to study it.—Do my children know how to read Italian ?—They know how to read, but not how to speak it.

## 85.

Do you intend to study Arabic ?—I intend to study Arabic and Syriac.—Does the Englishman know Polish ?—He does not know it, but he intends learning it.—Do you know how to swim ?—I do not how to swim, but how to play.—Does your cousin know how to make coats ?—He does not know how to make any ; he is no tailor.—Is he a merchant ?—He is not one.—What is he ?—He is a physician.—Whither are you going ?—I am going into my garden, in order to speak to the gardener.—What do you wish to tell him ?—I wish to tell him to open the

window of his room.—Does your gardener listen to you?—He does listen to me.—Do you wish to drink some cider?—No, I have a mind to drink some beer; have you any?—I have none; but I will send for some.—When will you send for some?—Now.—Do you send for apples?—I do send for some.—Have you a good deal of water?—I have enough to wash my feet.—Has your brother water enough?—He has only a little, but enough to moisten his pocket-handkerchief.—Do you know how to make tea?—I know how to make some.—Does your cousin listen to what you tell him?—He does listen to it.—Does he know how to swim?—He does not know how to swim.—Where is he going to?—He is going no whither; he remains at home.

## FORTIETH LESSON.

## Vierzigste Section.

<i>The intention.</i>	der Vorsatz.
<i>Intended.</i>	Gesonnen.
<i>To intend or to have the intention.</i>	Gesonnen seyn*.
I intend to go thither.	Ich bin gesonnen hinzugehen.
We have the intention to do it.	Wir sind gesonnen, es zu thun.
<hr/>	
<i>To receive.</i>	<div> <div>Erhalten* (to receive anything sent).</div> <div>Bekommen* (to receive as a present).</div> <div>Empfangen* (to welcome, to entertain).</div> </div>
Thou receivest—He receives.	<div> <div>Du erhältst. Er erhält.</div> <div>Du empfängst<sup>1</sup>. Er empfängt.</div> </div>
He receives money.	Er bekommt Geld.
He obtains the preference.	Er erhält den Vorzug.
He receives his friends.	Er empfängt seine Freunde.
Do you receive a letter to-day?	Erhalten Sie heute einen Brief?
I receive one to-morrow.	Ich erhalte morgen einen.
<hr/>	
<i>To guide (conduct, take).</i>	Führen } 2.
<i>To lead.</i>	Leiten }
I lead the horse into the stable.	Ich führe das Pferd in den Stall.
<hr/>	
The preference,	der Vorzug;
the stable,	der Stall;
blind,	blind;
sick (ill),	krank;
poor,	arm.

<sup>1</sup> The persons not mentioned follow the regular conjugation. (See Present Tense, Lesson XXXVI.)

<sup>2</sup> Führen expresses the act of conducting only; leiten means to conduct with safety. Ex. Einen Kranken führen, to conduct a sick person; ein Kind, einen Blinden leiten, to guide a child, a blind man.

<i>To extinguish.</i>	Auslöfchen (v. act. and n. nr. auszulöfchen).
<i>To light.</i>	Anzünden (anzuzünden).
<i>To set on fire.</i>	Anftecken (anzuftecken).
Does he extinguish the candle?	Löfcht er das Licht aus?
He lights it.	Er zündet es an.

---

<i>To depart, to set out.</i>	Abreifen (abzureifen).
When do you intend to depart?	Wann geben Sie abzureifen?
I intend to depart to-morrow.	Ich gebe morgen abzureifen.

## EXERCISES.

## 86.

Do your brothers intend to go into the country?—They do intend to go thither.—Do you intend to go to my cousin?—I do intend to go to him.—Dost thou intend to do anything?—I intend to do nothing.—Do you intend to go to the theatre this evening?—I do intend to go thither, but not this evening.—Dost thou receive anything?—I receive money.—From (von) whom dost thou receive some?—I receive some from my father, my brother, and my cousin.—Does your son receive books?—He does receive some.—From whom does he receive some?—He receives some from me, from his friends, and neighbours.—Does the poor man (der Arme, See *Obs. A.*, end of Lesson XX.) receive money?—He does receive some.—From whom does he receive some?—He receives some from the rich.—Dost thou receive wine?—I do not receive any.—Do I receive money?—You do not receive any.—Does your servant receive clothes (Kleider)?—He does not receive any.—Do you receive the books which our friends receive?—We do not receive the same which your friends receive; but we receive others.—Does your friend receive the letters which you write to him?—He does receive them.—Do you receive the apples which I send you?—I do not receive them.—Does the American receive as much brandy as cider?—He receives as much of the one as of the other.—Do the Scotch receive as many books as letters?—They receive as many of the one as of the other.

## 87.

Does the Englishman obtain the preference?—He does obtain it.—Does your cousin receive as much money as I?—He receives more than you.—Does the Frenchman receive his letters?—He does receive them.—When does he receive them?—He receives them in the evening.—When dost thou receive thy letters?—I receive them in the morning.—At what o'clock?—At a quarter

to ten.—Dost thou receive as many letters as I?—I receive more of them than thou.—Dost thou receive any to-day?—I receive some to-day and to-morrow.—Does your father receive as many friends as ours (as our father)?—He receives fewer of them than yours (than your father).—Does the Spaniard receive as many enemies as friends?—He receives as many of the one as of the other.—Do you receive one more crown?—I do receive one more.—Does your son receive one more book?—He does receive one more.—What does the physician receive?—He receives good tobacco, good snuff, and good pocket-handkerchiefs.—Does he receive brandy?—He does receive some.

## 88.

Does your servant receive shirts?—He does receive some.—Does he receive as many of them as my valet (does)?—He receives quite as many of them.—Do you receive anything to-day?—I receive something every day.—Dost thou conduct anybody?—I conduct nobody.—Whom do you guide?—I guide my son.—Where are you conducting him to?—I conduct him to my friends to wish them a good morning.—What is your son?—He is a physician.—Does your servant guide any one?—He guides my child.—Whom (wen) must I guide?—Thou must guide the blind. (*Obs. A., end of Lesson XX.*)—Must he conduct the sick person?—He must conduct him.—Whither must he conduct him?—He must conduct him home.—Whither is he leading your horse?—He is leading it into the stable.—Dost thou guide the child or the blind man?—I guide both.—When does the foreigner intend to depart?—He intends to depart this morning.—At what o'clock?—At half past one.—Does he not wish to remain here?—He does not (*Er will nicht*).—Do you intend to go to the theatre this evening?—I intend to go there to-morrow.—Do you depart to-day?—I depart now.—When do you intend to write to your friends?—I intend to write to them to-day.—Do your friends answer your letters?—They do answer them.—Do you extinguish the fire?—I do not extinguish it.—Does your servant light the candle?—He does light it.—Does this man intend to set your warehouse on fire?—He does intend to set it on fire (*anzufachen*).

# FORTY-FIRST LESSON.

## Ein und vierzigste Section.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

The comparative is formed by adding *er* and the superlative by adding *st* <sup>1</sup> to the simple adjective. Examples :

			POSIT.	COMP.	SUPERL.
Handsome	—	handsomer	—	handsomest.	—
Small	—	smaller	—	smallest.	—
Wild	—	wilder	—	wildest.	—
			Schön	schöner	schönst.
			Klein	kleiner	kleinst.
			Wild	wilder	wildest.

*Obs. A.* Comparative and superlative adjectives are declined like the positive. Examples :

#### COMPARATIVE.

		Masculine.	Neuter.
The handsomer table, the handsomer book, &c.	N.	der schönere Tisch,	das schönere Buch.
	G.	des schöneren Tisches,	des schöneren Buches.
	D.	dem schöneren Tische,	dem schöneren Buche.
	A.	den schöneren Tisch,	das schönere <sup>2</sup> Buch.

#### SUPERLATIVE.

		Masculine.	Neuter.
The smallest hat, the smallest book, &c.	N.	der kleinste Hut,	das kleinste Buch.
	G.	des kleinsten Hutes,	des kleinsten Buches.
	D.	dem kleinsten Hute,	dem kleinsten Buche.
	A.	den kleinsten Hut,	das kleinste Buch.

*Obs. B* The radical vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, are softened in the comparative and superlative into *ä*, *ö*, *ü* <sup>3</sup>. Examples :

	POSIT.	COMP.	SUPERL.
Old, &c.	alt	älter	ältest.
pious, &c.	fromm	frömmmer	frömmst.
young, &c.	jung	jünger	jüngst.

<sup>1</sup> In the superlative *st* is sometimes preceded by *e* when the pronunciation requires it, as : süß, sweet, süßest ; schlecht, bad, schlechtest. In the word groß, great, the superlative größest is contracted into größt, as : der größte Mann, the greatest man.

<sup>2</sup> The letter *e* which precedes or follows the consonant *r* in the comparative, is often omitted for the sake of euphony ; thus instead of : der, das schönere, des schöneren, dem schöneren, we say : der, das schönre, des schönern, dem schönern, &c. (See *Obs.* Lesson XXI.)

<sup>3</sup> On the adjectives which do not soften the radical vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, in the comparative and superlative, see *Obs. D.* hereafter.



**Obs. C.** The following adjectives, which are also used as adverbs, are irregular in the formation of their comparatives and superlatives.

	POSITIVE.	COMP.	SUPERLATIVE.
Soon,	{ Bald, der or das baldige,	eher, eher,	ehest (am ehesten <sup>4</sup> ); eheste.
Willingly.	{ Gern, der or das liebe,	lieber, liebere,	liebste (am liebsten); liebste.
Good,	{ Gut, der or das gute,	besser, bessere,	best (am besten); beste.
High,	{ Hoch <sup>5</sup> , der or das hohe,	höher, höhere,	höchst (am höchsten); höchste.
Near,	{ Nahe, der or das nahe,	näher, nähere,	nächst (am nächsten); nächste.
Much,	{ Viel, der or das viele,	mehr, mehr,	meist (am meisten); meiste.

This book is small, that is smaller, and this is the smallest of all.

This hat is large, but that is larger.

Is your book as large as mine?

It is not so large as yours.

It is larger than yours.

Dieses Buch ist klein, jenes ist kleiner, und dieses hier ist am kleinsten (das kleinste) von allen.

Dieser Hut ist groß, allein jener ist größer.

Ist Ihr Buch so groß wie das meinige?

Es ist nicht so groß als das Ihrige.

Es ist größer als das Ihrige.

*Not so large.*

Are our neighbour's children as good <sup>6</sup> as ours?

They are better than ours.

Nicht so groß.

Sind die Kinder unseres Nachbarn so artig wie die unserigen?

Sie sind artiger als die unserigen.

<sup>4</sup> When an adjective is used in the superlative degree adverbially, it is combined with a contraction of the definite article, and one of the prepositions, an, auf, zu, in, as: am wenigsten, the least; aufs höchste, at the most; zum besten, for the best; im mindesten, at least. Hence the adverbs: schönstens, in the handsomest manner; besten, in the best manner; höchstens, at the most; nächstens, next time; wenigstens, at least, &c.

<sup>5</sup> In the positive and comparative degrees the form *hoch*, not *hoch*, is used as an adjective before a noun; but as a predicate after the noun the positive is *hoch*. Ex. Der hohe Baum, the high tree; der höhere Baum, the higher tree; but dieser Baum ist hoch, this tree is high.

<sup>6</sup> In this phrase the word *artig* does not quite correspond to the English word *good*; but it does in many others, as for instance: be good! sey artig! a good child, ein artiges Kind.

*Whose?**It is.*

Whose hat is this?

It is the hat of my brother.

It is my brother's.

It is my brother's hat.

Whose hat is the finest?

That of my father is the finest.

Whose ribbon is the handsomer,  
your or mine?

Wessen? (See Lesson XXXI.)

Es ist.

Wessen Hut ist das?

Es ist der Hut meines Bruders.

Es ist meines Bruders.

Es ist meines Bruders Hut.

Wessen Hut ist der schönste?

Der meines Vaters ist der schönste.

Wessen Band ist schöner, das Ihrige  
oder das meinige?

Good, gentle, pretty,  
light, easy,  
heavy, difficult,  
great, grand (big, large),  
long,  
short,  
round,  
rich,

artig;  
leicht;  
schwer;  
groß;  
lang;  
kurz;  
rund;  
reich.

*Obs. D.* The adjectives which do not soften the radical vowels in the comparative and superlative, are:

1st, Those of which the last syllable does not belong to the primitive\* word, as: dankbar, grateful; schuldig, culpable; böshaft, malicious.  
Ex. artig, pretty; artiger, prettier; artigst, prettiest.

2d, Participles, as: lebend, refreshiug; gelobt, praised; tobend, furious; suchend, seeking, &c.

3d, Those which contain a diphthong, as: genau, exact; faul, lazy; blau, blue; grau, grey, &c.

4th, Those terminating in er, as tapfer, valiant. &c.

5th, The following:

Blas, pale;

bunt, variegated;

fahl, fallow;

\*alsch, false,

froh, joyful;

gerade, straight;

gesund, healthy;

glatt, smooth;

hohl, hollow;

hob, kind;

fahl, bald;

farg, stingy;

klar, clear;

knapp, tight;

lahm, lame;

\* The word which answers the question *wessen?* is always put in the genitive case.

\* By primitive we mean a word to which a syllable may be added in order to form another word, as *dankbar*, which is formed of the word *Dank*, thank, and the syllable *bar*. (See page 2, Method, Part II.)

loß, loose;	rund, round;	stolz, proud;
matt, wearied;	sanft, gentle;	straff, strained;
morsch, brittle;	fatt, satisfied;	stumm, dumb;
nackt, naked;	schlaff, slack;	toll, mad;
platt, flat;	schlanf, slender;	voll, full;
plump, clumsy;	starr, stiff;	zähm, tame.
roh, raw;		

*Obs. E.* In German the superlative is almost always relative, and to express the absolute superlative we use, as in English, one of the adverbs: *sehr*, very; *recht*, very; *höchst*, extremely; *ungemein*, uncommonly, &c. Ex. *Ein sehr armer Mann*, a very poor man; *ein sehr schöne Kind*, a very fine child.

*Obs. F.* *Than* after a comparative is translated by *als*. (See *Obs. B. Lesson XXV.*) To increase the force of the comparative, we use the adverbs *noch*, still, and *weit*, far. Ex. *Noch größer*, still greater; *ich bin weit glücklicher als er*, I am far happier than he.

*Obs. G.* The following adjectives have no comparative :

	POSITIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
The exterior,	der oder das äußere,	der oder das äußerste;
the interior,	der — das innere,	der — das innerste;
the posterior,	der — das hintere,	der — das hinterste;
the middle one,	der — das mittlere,	der — das mittelfste;
the superior,	der — das obere,	der — das oberste;
the inferior,	der — das untere,	der — das unterste;
the anterior,	der — das vordere,	der — das vorderste.

## EXERCISES.

89.

Is your brother taller (*groß*) than mine?—He is not so tall, but better than yours?—Is thy hat as bad as that of thy father?—It is better, but not so black as his.—Are the shirts of the Italians as white (*weiß*) as those of the Irish?—They are whiter, but not so good.—Are the sticks of our friends longer than ours?—They are not longer, but heavier.—Who have (*Wer hat*) the most beautiful gloves?—The French have them.—Whose horses are the finest?—Mine are fine, yours are finer than mine; but those of our friends are the finest of all.—Is your horse good?—It is good, but yours is better, and that of the Englishman is the best of all the horses which we know.—Have you pretty shoes?—I have very pretty (ones); but my brother has prettier (ones) than I.—From (*von*) whom does he receive them?—He receives them from his best friend.—Is your wine as good as mine?—It is better.—Does your merchant sell good handkerchiefs?—He sells *the best handkerchiefs* that I know.

## 90.

Have we more books than the French?—We have more of them than they; but the Germans have more of them than we, and the English have the most of them.—Hast thou a finer garden than that of our physician?—I have a finer (one).—Has the American a finer house than thou?—He has a finer (one).—Have we as fine children as our neighbours?—We have finer (ones).—Is your coat as long as mine?—It is shorter, but prettier than yours.—Do you soon (balb) go out?—I do not go out to-day.—When does your father go out?—He goes out at a quarter past twelve.—Is this man older than that (man)?—He is older, but that (man) is healthier (gesunder).—Which of these two children is the better?—The one who studies is better than the one who plays.—Does your servant sweep as well as mine?—He sweeps better than yours.—Does the German read as many bad books as good (ones)?—He reads more good than bad (ones).—Do the merchants sell more sugar than coffee?—They sell more of the one than of the other.—Does your shoemaker make as many boots as shoes?—He makes more of the one than of the other.

## 91.

Can you swim as well as the son of the nobleman?—I can swim better than he; but he can speak German better than I.—Does he read as well as you?—He reads better than I.—Have you the head-ache?—No, I have the ear-ache.—Does your cousin listen to what you tell him?—He does not listen to it.—Does the son of your bailiff go into the forest?—No, he remains at home; he has sore feet.—Do you learn as well as our gardener's son?—I learn better than he, but he works better than I.—Whose carriage is the finest?—Yours is very fine, but that of the captain is still finer, and ours is the finest of all.—Has any one as fine apples as we?—No one has such fine (ones). (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

# FORTY-SECOND LESSON

## Zwei und vierzigste Section.

### To begin.

Thou beginnest—he begins.  
I begin to speak.  
Does your servant sweep the  
room, which I sweep?

Anfangen \* (anzufangen).  
Du fängst an—er fängt an.  
Ich fange an zu sprechen.  
Rehrt Ihr Bedienter das Zimmer  
aus, welches ich auskehre?

### To finish, to end.

Not yet  
Already.  
Before.  
Do you speak before you listen?  
Does he go to the market before  
he writes?  
Do you take off your stockings  
before you take off your shoes?  
I take off my shoes before I take  
off my stockings.

Endigen.  
Noch nicht.  
Schon.  
Ehe (bevor).  
Sprechen Sie, ehe Sie hören?  
Geht er auf den Markt, ehe er  
schreibt?  
Ziehen Sie Ihre Strümpfe aus, ehe  
Sie Ihre Schuhe ausziehen?  
Ich ziehe meine Schuhe aus, ehe  
ich meine Strümpfe ausziehe.

*Obs. A.* These examples show that when a conjunctive word as, a conjunction, a relative pronoun, or relative adverb, begins the sentence, the separable particle is not detached from the verb which is placed at the end. (*See Lesson XXXVI. Obs. C., and Rule of Syntax, Lesson XLIX.*)

### Oft.

As often as you.  
Often as you.  
Not so often as you.

Oft (oftmals, öfter), its compara-  
tive is öfter, and its superlative  
am öfsten.  
So oft wie Sie.  
Öfter (öfter) als Sie.  
Nicht so oft als Sie.

### To breakfast.

#### Early.

Do you breakfast before you go  
into the wood?  
Does he breakfast before he begins  
to work?  
Do you breakfast as early as I?  
I breakfast earlier than you.

Frühstücken.  
Früh.  
Frühstücken Sie, ehe Sie in den  
Wald gehen?  
Frühstückt er, ehe er zu arbeiten  
anfängt?  
Frühstücken Sie so früh wie ich?  
Ich frühstücke früher als Sie.

<i>Late.</i>	<i>Spät.</i>
<i>Too.</i>	<i>Zu.</i>
Too late.	Zu spät.
Too early.	Zu früh.
Too great.	Zu groß.
Too little.	Zu klein.
Too much.	Zu viel.
Do you speak too much?	Sprechen Sie zu viel?
I do not speak enough.	Ich spreche nicht genug.

*Obs. B.* We have seen (Lesson XXVI.) that the infinitive in German is always preceded by the particle *zu*. This particle however is omitted before the infinitive,

1st, When it is joined to one of the following verbs :

*Dürfen* \*, to dare; *heißen* \*, to bid; *helfen* \*, to help; *hören*, to hear; *können* \*, to be able (can); *lassen* \*, to let; *lehren*, to teach; *lernen*, to learn; *mögen* \*, to be permitted (may); *müssen* \*, to be obliged (must); *sehen* \*, to see; *sollen* \*, to be obliged (shall, ought); *wollen* \*, to be willing, to wish (will).

*Fahren* \*, to ride, to go (in a carriage); *finden* \*, to find; *fühlen*, to feel; *nennen* \*, to call, to name; *reiten* \*, to ride, to go on horseback.

2d, When the infinitive is used in an absolute sense. Ex. *Fleißig seyn* geziemt dem Manne, it behoves a man *to be* assiduous. When two infinitives are thus employed, the verb which follows them is put in the third person singular. Ex. *Seine Fehler bekennen und bereuen*, *ist schon halbe Besserung*, to acknowledge one's faults and to repent of them is already half an amendment. In constructing the phrase with *es ist, it is*, the verbs *seyn* \*, to be; *bekennen* \*, to acknowledge; *bereuen*, to repent, are removed to the end and preceded by *zu*. Ex. *Es geziemt dem Manne, fleißig zu seyn. Es ist schon halbe Besserung, seine Fehler zu bekennen und zu bereuen.* (See Method, Part II. *Obs. A.* p. 34.)

## EXERCISES.

92.

Do you begin to speak?—I begin to speak.—Does your brother begin to learn Italian?—He begins to learn it.—Can you already speak German?—Not yet, but I am beginning.—Do our friends begin to speak?—They do not yet begin to speak, but to read.—Does our father already begin his letter?—He does not yet begin it.—Does the merchant begin to sell?—He does begin.—Can you swim already?—Not yet, but I begin to learn.—Does your son speak before he listens?—He listens before he speaks.—Does your brother listen to you (Lesson XXXVIII.) before he speaks?—He speaks before he listens to me.—Do you

children read before they write?—They write before they read.—Does your servant sweep the warehouse before he sweeps the room?—He sweeps the room before he sweeps the warehouse.—Dost thou drink before thou goest out?—I go out before I drink. Does your cousin wash his hands (*seine Hände*) before he washes his feet?—He washes his feet before he washes his hands.—Do you extinguish the fire before you extinguish the candle?—I extinguish neither the fire nor the candle (*auf to the end*).—Do you intend to go out before you write your letters?—I intend writing my letters before I go out.—Does your son take off his boots before he takes off his coat?—My son takes off neither his boots nor his coat (*auf to the end*).

## 93.

Do you intend to depart soon (*balb*)?—I intend to depart tomorrow.—Do you speak as often as I?—I do not speak as often, but my brother speaks oftener than you.—Do I go out as often as your father?—You do not go out as often as he; but he drinks oftener than you.—Do you begin to know this man?—I begin to know him.—Do you breakfast early?—We breakfast at a quarter past nine.—Does your cousin breakfast earlier than you?—He breakfasts later than I.—At what o'clock does he breakfast?—He breakfasts at eight o'clock, and I at half past six.—Do you not breakfast too early?—I breakfast too late.—Does your father breakfast as early as you?—He breakfasts later than I.—Does he finish his letters before he breakfasts?—He breakfasts before he finishes them.—Is your hat too large?—It is neither too large nor too small.—Does our gardener breakfast before he goes into the garden?—He goes into the garden before he breakfasts.—Do you read French as often as German?—I read French oftener than German.—Does the physician speak too much?—He does not speak enough.—Do the Germans drink too much wine?—They do not drink enough of it.—Do they drink more beer than cider?—They drink more of the latter than of the former.—Have you much money?—We have not enough of it.—Have your cousins much corn?—They have only a little, but enough.—Have you much more brandy?—We have not much more of it.—Have you as many tables as chairs?—I have as many of the one as of the other.—Does your friend receive as many letters as notes?—He receives more of the latter than of the former.—Do you finish before you begin?—I must begin before I finish. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## FORTY-THIRD LESSON.

### Drei und vierzigste Section.

#### THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

THE past participle of regular verbs <sup>1</sup> is formed from the second. person plural of the present indicative, by adding to it *ge*. Ex. *Ihr liebet* or *liebt*, you love; *geliebet* or *geliebt*, loved. The past participle of irregular verbs will always be given with the verb.

All that has been said (*Obs. A.* Lesson XXXVI.) on the rejection of the letter *e*, is equally applicable to the past participle, this being formed from the second person plural.

*Obs. A.* Some verbs do not add the syllable *ge* in the past participle. (See those verbs, Lesson XLVII.)

<p style="text-align: center;"><i>To be—been.</i></p> <p>Have you been to the market? I have been there. I have not been there. Have I been there? You have been there. Has he been there?</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><i>Seyn* — gewesen.</i></p> <p>Sind Sie auf dem Markte gewesen? Ich bin da gewesen. Ich bin nicht da gewesen. Bin ich da gewesen? Sie sind da gewesen. Ist er da gewesen?</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><i>Ever. Never.</i></p> <p>Have you been at the ball? Have you ever been at the ball? I have never been there. Thou hast never been there. You have never been there.</p> <p>He has never been there. Have you already been at the play? I have already been there. You have already been there. The play,</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><i>Se, jemals. Nie, niemals.</i></p> <p>Sind Sie auf dem Ball gewesen? Sind Sie je auf dem Ball gewesen? Ich bin nie da gewesen. Du bist nie da gewesen. Sie sind (Ihr seyd) niemals da gewesen. Er ist nie da gewesen. Sind Sie schon im Schauspiel gewesen? Ich bin schon da gewesen. Sie sind schon da gewesen. das Schauspiel (plur. c).</p>

<sup>1</sup> The pupils, in repeating the irregular verbs already given, must not fail to mark in their lists the past participle of those verbs.



I have not yet been there.  
 Thou hast not yet been there.  
 You have not yet been there.  
 He has not yet been there.

We have not yet been there.  
 Have you already been at my  
 father's (with my father)?

I have not yet been there (with  
 him).

Where have you been this morn-  
 ing?

I have been in the garden.

Where has thy brother been?

He has been in the storehouse.

Ich bin noch nicht da gewesen.

Du bist noch nicht da gewesen.

Sie sind noch nicht da gewesen.

Er ist noch nicht da gewesen.

Wir sind noch nicht da gewesen.

Sind Sie schon bei meinem Vater  
 gewesen?

Ich bin noch nicht bei ihm gewesen.

Wo sind Sie diesen Morgen ge-  
 wesen?

Ich bin im (in dem) Garten ge-  
 wesen.

Wo ist Dein Bruder gewesen?

Er ist im Vorrathshause gewesen.

## EXERCISES.

### 94.

Where have you been?—I have been at the market.—Have you been at the ball?—I have been there.—Have I been at the play?—You have been there.—Hast thou been there?—I have not been there.—Has your cousin ever been at the theatre?—He has never been there.—Hast thou already been in the great square?—I have never been there.—Do you intend to go thither?—I intend to go thither.—When will you go thither?—I will go thither to-morrow.—At what o'clock?—At twelve o'clock.—Has your son already been in my large garden?—He has not yet been there.—Does he intend to see it?—He does intend to see it.—When will he go thither (hincin)?—He will go thither to-day.—Does he intend to go to the ball this evening?—He does intend to go thither.—Have you already been at the bail?—I have not yet been there.—When do you intend to go thither (dahin)?—I intend to go thither to-morrow.—Have you already been in the Englishman's room?—I have not yet been in it (darin).—Have you been in my rooms?—I have been there.—When have you been there?—I have been there this morning.—Have I been in your room or in that (in dem) of your friend?—You have neither been in mine nor in that of my friend, but in that of the Italian.

### 95.

Has the Dutchman been in our storehouses or in those (in denen) of the English?—He has neither been in ours nor in those of the English, but in those of the Italians.—Hast thou already been at the market?—I have not yet been there, but I intend to go thither.—Has the son of our bailiff been there?—He has been


there.—When has he been there?—He has been there to-day.—Does the son of our neighbour intend to go to the market?—He does intend to go thither.—What does he wish to buy there?—He wishes to buy some chickens, oxen, cheese, beer, and cider there.—Have you already been at my cousin's house?—I have already been there.—Has your friend already been there?—He has not yet been there.—Have we already been at our friends'?—We have not yet been there (*bei ihnen*).—Have our friends ever been at our house?—They have never been there.—Have you ever been at the theatre?—I have never been there.—Have you a mind to write a letter?—I have a mind to write one.—To whom do you wish to write?—I wish to write to my son.—Has your father already been in the country?—He has not yet been there, but he intends to go thither.—Does he intend to go thither to-day?—He intends to go thither to-morrow.—At what o'clock will he depart?—He will depart at half past six.—Does he intend to depart before he breakfasts?—He intends to breakfast before he departs.—Have you been anywhere?—I have been nowhere. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

# FORTY-FOURTH LESSON.

## Vier und vierzigste Section.

*To have—had.*

| *Haben\*—gehabt.*

 The participle past, as well as the infinitive (Lesson XXVI.), when it forms with the auxiliary a compound tense, is in German placed at the end of the phrase.

Have you had my coat?  
I have not had it.  
Have I had it?  
You have had it.  
You have not had it.  
Thou hast not had it.  
Has he had it?  
He has had it.  
Hast thou had my book?  
I have had it.  
I have not had it.

Haben Sie meinen Rock gehabt?  
Ich habe ihn nicht gehabt.  
Habe ich ihn gehabt?  
Sie haben ihn gehabt.  
Sie haben ihn nicht gehabt.  
Du hast ihn nicht gehabt.  
Hat er ihn gehabt?  
Er hat ihn gehabt.  
Hast Du mein Buch gehabt?  
Ich habe es gehabt.  
Ich habe es nicht gehabt.

Have you had the books?  
I have had them.  
Has he had them?  
He has had them.  
Have you had bread?  
I have had some.  
Hast thou had paper?  
I have had none.  
Have I had any?  
Has he had some wine?  
He has had some.  
He has had none.  
What has he had?  
He has had nothing.  
He has never been either right  
or wrong.

Haben Sie die Bücher gehabt?  
Ich habe sie gehabt.  
Hat er sie gehabt?  
Er hat sie gehabt.  
Haben Sie Brod gehabt?  
Ich habe welches gehabt.  
Hast Du Papier gehabt?  
Ich habe keins gehabt.  
Habe ich welches gehabt?  
Hat er Wein gehabt?  
Er hat welchen gehabt.  
Er hat keinen gehabt.  
Was hat er gehabt?  
Er hat Nichts gehabt.  
† Er hat nie Recht noch Unrecht  
gehabt.

*To take place.*

Does the ball take place this evening?  
It does take place.  
It takes place this evening.

*Statt finden\*.*

Findet der Ball diesen Abend  
Statt?  
Er findet Statt.  
Er findet diesen Abend Statt.

<i>Found.</i>	<i>Gefunden.</i>
When did the ball take place?	Wann hat der Ball Statt gefunden?
Yesterday.	Gestern.
The day before yesterday.	Morgestern.
It took place yesterday.	Er hat gestern Statt gefunden.

*Obs. A.* Expressions such as *Statt finden*\*, ought to be considered as separable verbs; of which the particle is placed at the end in simple tenses and before the syllable *ge* of the past participle. Here the substantive *Statt*, place, stands as a separable particle.

<i>Time.</i>	<i>Mal</i> <sup>1</sup> .
The first time.	Das erste Mal.
The last time.	Das letzte Mal.
Last.	Letzt.
How many times (how often)?	Wie vielmal?
Once,	einmal;
twice,	zweimal;
thrice,	dreimal;
several times,	verschiedene Mal.

<i>Formerly.</i>	<i>Ehedem</i> (ehemals, ehebessen, vormals).
<i>Sometimes.</i>	<i>Manchmal.</i>
Do you go sometimes to the market?	Gehen Sie manchmal auf den Markt?
I do go sometimes thither.	Ich gehe manchmal dahin.

<i>Gone.</i>	<i>Gegangen.</i>
<i>Gone thither.</i>	<i>Hingegangen.</i>
Have you gone thither sometimes?	Sind Sie manchmal hingegangen?

*Obs. B.* Here it may be seen how the syllable *ge* in the past participle is placed between the separable particle and the verb. (See Lesson XXVII.)

I have gone thither sometimes.	Ich bin manchmal hingegangen.
Oftener than you.	Ofter als Sie.
Have the men had my trunk?	Haben die Männer meinen Koffer gehabt?
They have not had it.	Sie haben ihn nicht gehabt.

<sup>1</sup> When the word *Mal* is preceded by an adjective or an ordinal number it is written with a capital initial letter; when annexed to a cardinal number it begins with a small letter.

Who has had it?

Have I been wrong in buying books?

You have not been wrong in buying some.

Wer hat ihn gehabt?

Habe ich Unrecht gehabt, Bücher zu kaufen?

Sie haben nicht Unrecht gehabt, welche zu kaufen.

## EXERCISES.

### 96.

Have you had my glove?—I have had it.—Have you had my pocket-handkerchief?—I have not had it.—Hast thou had my umbrella?—I have not had it.—Hast thou had my pretty knife?—I have had it.—When hadst (hast—gehabt) thou it?—I had it yesterday.—Have I had thy gloves?—You have had them.—Has your brother had my wooden hammer?—He has had it.—Has he had my golden ribbon?—He has not had it.—Have the English had my beautiful ship?—They have had it.—Who has had my thread stockings?—Your servants have had them.—Have we had the iron trunk of our good neighbour?—We have had it.—Have we had his fine carriage?—We have not had it.—Have we had the stone tables of the foreigners?—We have not had them.—Have we had the wooden leg of the Irishman?—We have not had it.—Has the American had my good work?—He has had it.—Has he had my silver knife?—He has not had it.—Has the young man had the first volume of my work?—He has not had the first, but the second.—Has he had it?—Yes, Sir, he has had it.—When has he had it?—He has had it this morning.—Have you had sugar?—I have had some.—Have I had good paper?—You have had some.—Has the sailor had brandy?—He has had some.—Have you had any?—I have had none.

### 97.

Has the German had good beer?—He has had some.—Hast thou had large cakes (Kuchen is not softened in the plur.)?—I have had some.—Has thy brother had any?—He has had none.—Has the son of our gardener had flour?—He has had some.—Have the Poles had good tobacco?—They have had some.—What tobacco have they had?—They have had tobacco (for smoking) and snuff (Rauch- und Schnupftabak).—Have the English had as much sugar as tea?—They have had as much of the one as of the other.—Has the physician been right?—He has been wrong.—Has the Dutchman been right or wrong?—He never has been either right or wrong.—Have I been wrong in buying money?—You have been wrong in buying some.—What has your cousin had?—He has had your boots and shoes.—Has he

had my good biscuits (*Brüet* is not softened in the plur.)?—He has not had them.—What has the Spaniard had?—He has had nothing.—Who has had courage?—The English have had some.—Have the English had many friends?—They have had many of them.—Have we had many enemies?—We have not had many of them.—Have we had more friends than enemies?—We have had more of the latter than of the former.—Has your son had more wine than meat?—He has had more of the latter than of the former.—Has the Turk had more pepper than corn?—He has had more of the one than of the other.—Has the painter had anything?—He has had nothing.

## 98.

Have I been right in writing to my brother?—You have not been wrong in writing to him.—Have you had the head-ache?—I have had the tooth-ache.—Have you had anything good?—I have had nothing bad.—Did the ball take place yesterday?—It did not take place.—Does it take place to-day?—It does take place to-day.—When does the ball take place?—It takes place this evening.—Did it take place the day before yesterday?—It did take place.—At what o'clock did it take place?—It took place at eleven o'clock.—Have you gone to my brother's?—I have gone thither.—How often hast thou gone to my cousin's house?—I have gone thither twice.—Do you go sometimes to the theatre?—I go sometimes thither.—How many times have you been at the theatre?—I have been there only once.—Have you sometimes been at the ball?—I have often been there.—Has your brother ever gone to the ball?—He has never gone thither.—Has your father sometimes gone to the ball?—He went (*ist—gegangen*) thither formerly.—Has he gone thither as often as you?—He has gone thither oftener than I.—Dost thou go sometimes into the garden?—I do go thither sometimes.—Hast thou never been there?—I have often been there.—Does your old cook often go to the market?—He does go thither often.—Does he go thither as often as my bailiff?—He goes thither oftener than he.

## 99.

Did you formerly go to the ball?—I went thither sometimes.—When wert (*bist—gewesen*) thou at the ball?—I was there the day before yesterday.—Didst thou find any body there?—I found (*habe—gefunden*) nobody there.—Hast thou gone to the ball oftener than thy brothers?—I have gone thither oftener than they.—Has your cousin often been at the play?—He has been there several times.—Have you sometimes been hungry?—I have often been hungry.—Has your valet often been thirsty?—He has never been

either hungry or thirsty.—Did you go to the play early?—I went thither late.—Did I go to the ball as early as you?—You went thither earlier than I.—Did your brother go thither too late?—He went thither too early.—Have your brothers had anything?—They have had nothing.—Who has had my purse and my money?—Your servant has had both.—Has he had my stick and my hat?—He has had both.—Hast thou had my horse or that of my brother?—I have had neither yours nor that of your brother.—Have I had your note or that of the physician?—You have had both (*beide*).—What has the physician had?—He has had nothing.—Has anybody had my golden candlestick?—Nobody has had it. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

# FORTY-FIFTH LESSON.

## Fünf und vierzigste Section.

*To do—done.*

What have you done?  
I have done nothing.

*Thun\*—gethan.*

Was haben Sie gethan?  
Ich habe Nichts gethan.

Has the shoemaker made my  
boots?  
He has made them.  
He has not made them.

Hat der Schuhmacher meine Stiefel  
gemacht?  
Er hat sie gemacht.  
Er hat sie nicht gemacht.

*To take off—taken off.*

Have you taken your boots off?  
I have taken them off.

{ Abnehmen\*—abgenommen.  
Ausziehen\*—ausgezogen.  
Haben Sie Ihre Stiefel ausgezogen?  
Ich habe sie ausgezogen.

*This, that.*

Has he told you that?

*Dieses, das.*

Hat er Ihnen das gesagt?

*It.*

He has told it me.

*Es.*

Er hat es mir gesagt.

*Obs.* The neuter pronoun *es*, *it*, which is sometimes rendered into English by *so*, and more elegantly omitted, may in German relate to substantives of any gender or number, to adjectives, and even to whole phrases.

Have you told it me?  
I have told it you.  
Who has told it him?  
Are you the brother of my friend?

Haben Sie es mir gesagt?  
Ich habe es Ihnen gesagt.  
Wer hat es ihm gesagt?  
Sind Sie der Bruder meines  
Freundes?

I am.  
Are you ill?  
I am not.  
Are our neighbours as poor as they  
say?  
They are so.

+ Ich bin es.  
Sind Sie krank?  
+ Ich bin es nicht.  
Sind unsere Nachbarn so arm, wie  
sie sagen?  
+ Sie sind es.



<i>To speak—spoken.</i>	<i>Sprechen*—gesprochen.</i>
I have spoken with the man.	Ich habe mit dem Manne gesprochen.
I have spoken to the man.	Ich habe den Mann gesprochen <sup>1</sup> .

<i>With.</i>	<i>Mit (a preposition which governs the dative).</i>
With which man have you spoken?	Mit welchem Manne haben Sie gesprochen?
To which man have you spoken?	Welchen Mann haben Sie gesprochen?

<i>Cut (past participle).</i>	<i>Geschnitten.</i>
<i>Picked up.</i>	<i>Aufgehoben.</i>
<i>Washed.</i>	<i>Gewaschen.</i>
Which books have you picked up?	Welche Bücher haben Sie aufgehoben?
I have picked up yours.	Ich habe die Ihrigen aufgehoben. (See <i>Obs. B.</i> preceding Lesson.)

<i>Burnt.</i>	<i>Verbrennt<sup>2</sup>.</i>
Which books have you burnt?	Welche Bücher haben Sie verbrennt?
I have burnt no books.	Ich habe keine Bücher verbrennt.

<i>Torn.</i>	<i>Zerrißen.</i>
Which shirts have you torn?	Welche Hemden haben Sie zerrißen?
I have torn my own.	Ich habe die meinigen zerrißen.

## EXERCISES.

## 100.

Have you anything to do?—I have nothing to do.—What has your brother to do?—He has to write letters.—What hast thou done?—I have done nothing.—Have I done anything?—You have torn my clothes (*Kleider*).—What have your children done?

<sup>1</sup> *Jemanden sprechen* means to speak to somebody in an absolute sense, without mentioning the subject spoken of, whilst *mit Jemandem sprechen*, means to speak with or to somebody about a particular thing, as: *mit Jemandem über Etwas (von einer Sache) sprechen*, to speak with somebody about something.

<sup>2</sup> The participle past of the verb *verbrennen* would be *verbrannt*, if it were employed either in a neuter or intransitive sense. Ex. Are my books burnt? *sind meine Bücher verbrannt?* They are burnt, *sie sind verbrannt.* (See Note 3, Lesson XXVII.)

—They have torn their beautiful books.—What have we done?—You have done nothing; but your brothers have burnt my fine chairs.—Has the tailor already made your coat?—He has not yet made it.—Has your shoemaker already made your boots?—He has already made them.—Have you sometimes made a hat?—I have never made one.—Hast thou already made thy purse?—I have not yet made it.—Have our neighbours ever made books?—They made (*haben—gemacht*) some formerly.—How many coats has your tailor made?—He has made thirty or forty of them.—Has he made good or bad coats?—He has made (both) good and bad (ones).—Has our father taken off his hat?—He has taken it off.—Have your brothers taken off their coats?—They have taken them off.—Has the physician taken off his stockings or his shoes?—He has taken off neither the one nor the other.—What has he taken away?—He has taken away nothing, but he has taken off his large hat.—Who has told you that?—My servant has told it me.—What has your cousin told you?—He has told me nothing.—Who has told it to your neighbour?—The English have told it to him.—Are you the brother of that (*dieses*) youth?—I am (*Ich bin es*).—Is that boy your son?—He is.—How many children have you?—I have but two.—Has the bailiff gone to the market?—He has not gone thither.—Is he ill?—He is.—Am I ill?—You are not.—Are you as tall (*groß*) as I?—I am.—Are our friends as rich as they say?—They are.—Art thou as fatigued as thy brother?—I am more so (*es mehr*) than he.

## 101.

Have you spoken to my father?—I have spoken to him.—When did (*haben—gesprochen*) you speak to him?—I spoke to him the day before yesterday.—Have you sometimes spoken with the Turk?—I have never spoken with him.—How many times have you spoken to the captain?—I have spoken to him six times.—Has the nobleman ever spoken with you?—He has never spoken with me.—Have you often spoken with his son?—I have often spoken with him.—Have you spoken with him oftener than we?—I have not spoken with him so often as you (have).—To which son of the nobleman have you spoken?—I have spoken to the youngest.—To which men has your brother spoken?—He has spoken to these.—What has your gardener's son cut?—He has cut trees.—Has he cut corn?—He has cut some.—Has he cut as much hay as corn?—He has cut as much of the one as of the other.—Have you picked up my knife?—I have picked it up.—Has your boy picked up the tailor's thimble?—He has not picked it up.—Have you picked up a crown?—I have picked up two of them.—What have you picked up?—We have picked up nothing.

—Have you burnt anything?—We have burnt nothing.—What have the sailors burnt?—They have burnt their cloth coats.—Hast thou burnt my fine ribbons?—I have not burnt them.—Which books has the Greek burnt?—He has burnt his own.—Which ships (Schiffe) have the Spaniards burnt?—They have burnt no ships.—Have you burnt paper?—I have not burnt any.—Has the physician burnt notes?—He has burnt none.—Have you had the courage to burn my hat?—I have had the courage to burn it.—When did you burn it?—I burnt it yesterday.—Where have you burnt it?—I have burnt it in my room.—Who has torn your shirt?—The ugly boy of our neighbour has torn it.—Has anybody torn your books?—Nobody has torn them.

# FORTY-SIXTH LESSON.

## Sechs und vierzigste Section.

	INFINITIVE.	PAST PART.
To drink — drunk.	Trinken * — getrunken.	
To carry — carried.	Tragen * — getragen.	
To bring — brought.	Bringen * — gebracht.	
To send — sent.	Senden * — gesandt.	
To write — written.	Schreiben * — geschrieben.	
To see — seen.	Sehen * — gesehen.	
To give — given.	Geben * — gegeben.	
To lend — lent.	Leihen * — geliehen.	

### NEUTER VERBS.

Neuter verbs are conjugated like the active. The latter, however, always form their past tenses with the auxiliary *haben* \*, to have; on the contrary, some neuter verbs take *seyn* \*, to be, and others *haben* \*, for their auxiliary; others again take sometimes *haben* \* and sometimes *seyn* \*. Those of which the auxiliary is not marked have the same as in English. (See a Table of the Neuter Verbs which are conjugated with *seyn*, Method, Part II. p. 87.)

<i>To come—come</i> (p. p.).	<i>Kommen</i> *— <i>gekommen</i> .
<i>To go —gone.</i>	<i>Gehen</i> * — <i>gegangen</i> .
Is the man come to your father?	Ist der Mann zu Ihrem Vater gekommen?
He is come to him.	Er ist zu ihm gekommen.
Is thy brother gone into the field?	Ist Dein Bruder auf das (aufs) Feld gegangen?
He is gone thither.	Er ist dahin gegangen.
Have you seen the man?	Haben Sie den Mann gesehen?
I have seen him.	Ich habe ihn gesehen.
Have you seen my book?	Haben Sie mein Buch gesehen?
I have seen it.	Ich habe es gesehen.
I have not seen it.	Ich habe es nicht gesehen.

<i>When?—Where?</i>	<i>Wann?—Wo?</i>
When did you see my cousin?	Wann haben Sie meinen Vetter gesehen?
I saw him the day before yesterday.	Ich habe ihn vorgestern gesehen.

<sup>1</sup> Learners ought now to use in their exercises the adverbs of time.

Where have you seen him?	Wo haben Sie ihn gesehen?
I have seen him at the theatre.	Ich habe ihn im Theater gesehen.
Where hast thou seen my book?	Wo hast Du mein Buch gesehen?
I have seen it in your room.	Ich habe es in Ihrem Zimmer gesehen.

Do you learn to read?	Lernen Sie lesen?
I do learn (it).	Ich lerne es.
I learn to write.	Ich lerne schreiben.
Have you learnt to write?	Haben Sie schreiben gelernt?
I have (learnt it).	Ich habe es gelernt.

To know (to be acquainted with) —known.	Kennen *—gekannt.
Have you known those men?	Haben Sie jene Männer gekannt?
I have not known them.	Ich habe sie nicht gekannt.

*Obs.* Instead of the past participle the following verbs retain the form of the infinitive when preceded by another infinitive<sup>2</sup>: dürfen \*, to dare; heißen \*, to bid; helfen \*, to help; hören, to hear; können \*, to be able (can); lassen \*, to let; lehren, to teach; lernen, to learn; mögen \*, to be permitted (may); müssen \*, to be obliged (must); sehen \*, to see; sollen, to be obliged (shall, ought); wollen, to be willing, to wish (will<sup>3</sup>).

To let (to get, to have, to order).	Lassen *. (See Lesson XXXIII. where this verb is conjugated in the present tense.)
To get or to have mended—got or had mended.	Ausbessern lassen *.
To get or to have washed—got or had washed.	Waschen lassen *.

place, and number, mentioned in Lessons XXIX. XXXIII. XXXIV. and XLIV.

<sup>2</sup> It will be useful to remember that the particle *zu* does not precede the infinitive joined to one of these verbs. (See *Obs. B.* Lesson XLII.)

<sup>3</sup> Modern authors do not always observe this distinction, but give the preference to the regular form. Thus it is already generally said: *Ich habe ihn kennen gelernt* (not *lernen*), I have become acquainted with him; *ich habe ihm arbeiten geholfen* (not *helfen*), I have helped him to work; *er hat mich richtig sprechen gelehrt* (not *lehren*), he has taught me to speak correctly.

To have made — had made.  
 Are you getting a coat made (do you order a coat)?  
 I am getting one made (I do order one).  
 I have had one made.  
 Has your brother had his shirt washed?  
 He has had it washed.  
     The cravat,  
     the neck,  
 Hast thou sometimes had cravats mended?  
 I have had some mended sometimes.

Machen lassen\*.  
 Lassen Sie einen Rock machen?  
 Ich lasse einen machen.  
 Ich habe einen machen lassen.  
 Hat Ihr Bruder sein Hemd waschen lassen?  
 Er hat es waschen lassen.  
 das Halstuch;  
 der Hals.  
 Hast Du manchmal Halstücher ausbessern lassen?  
 Ich habe manchmal welche ausbessern lassen.

## EXERCISES.

## 102.

Have you drunk wine?—I have drunk some.—Have you drunk much of it?—I have drunk but little of it.—Hast thou drunk some beer?—I have drunk some.—Has thy brother drunk much good cider?—He has not drunk much of it, but enough.—When did you drink any wine?—I drank some yesterday and to-day (ich habe gestern und heute welchen).—Has the servant carried the letter?—He has carried it.—Where has he carried it to?—He has carried it to your friend.—Have you brought us some apples?—We have brought you some.—How many apples have you brought us?—We have brought you twenty-five of them.—When did you bring them?—I brought (habe — gebracht) them this morning.—At what o'clock?—At a quarter to eight.—Have you sent your little boy to the market?—I have sent him thither ( dahin).—When did you send him thither?—This evening.—Have you written to your father?—I have written to him.—Has he answered you?—He has not yet answered me.—Have you ever written to the physician?—I have never written to him.—Has he sometimes written to you?—He has often written to me.—What has he written to you?—He has written to me something.—Have your friends ever written to you?—They have often written to me.—How many times (Lesson XLIV.) have they written to you?—They have written to me more than thirty times.—Have you ever seen my son?—I have never seen him.—Has he ever seen you?—He has often seen me.—Hast thou ever seen any Greeks?—I have often seen some.—Have you already seen a Syrian?—I have already seen one.—Where have you seen one?—At the theatre.—Have you given the book to my brother? (Rule of Syntax, Lesson XXX.)—I have given it to him.—

Have you given money to the merchant?—I have given some to him.—How much have you given to him?—I have given to him fifteen crowns.—Have you given gold ribbons to our good neighbours' children?—I have given some to them.—Will you give some bread to the poor (man) (*Obs. A. end of Lesson XX.*)?—I have already given some to him.—Wilt thou give me some wine?—I have already given you some.—When didst thou give me some?—I gave you some formerly.—Wilt thou give me some now?—I cannot give you any (*Ich kann Ihnen keinen*).

## 103.

Has the American lent you money?—He has lent me some.—Has he often lent you some?—He has lent me some sometimes.—When did he lend you any?—He lent me some formerly.—Has the Italian ever lent you money?—He has never lent me any.—Is he poor?—He is not poor; he is richer than you.—Will you lend me a crown?—I will lend you two of them.—Has your boy come to mine?—He has come to him.—When?—This morning.—At what time?—Early.—Has he come earlier than I?—At what o'clock did you come?—I came at half-past five.—He has come earlier than you.—Where did your brother go to?—He went to the ball.—When did he go thither?—He went thither the day before yesterday.—Has the ball taken place?—It has taken place.—Has it taken place late?—It has taken place early.—At what o'clock?—At midnight.—Does your brother learn to write?—He does learn it.—Does he already know how (*Lesson XXXIX.*) to read?—He does not know how yet.—Have you ever learnt German?—I learnt it formerly, but I do not know it.—Has your father ever learnt French?—He has never learnt it.—Does he learn it at present?—He does learn it.—Do you know the Englishman whom I know?—I do not know the one whom (*Lessons XIV. and XVI.*) you know; but I know another. (*Lesson XXIII.*)—Does your friend know the same noblemen whom I know?—He does not know the same; but he knows others.—Have you known the same men whom I have known (*welche ich gekannt habe*)?—I have not known the same; but I have known others.—Have you ever had your coat mended?—I have sometimes had it mended.—Hast thou already had thy boots mended?—I have not yet had them mended.—Has your cousin sometimes had his stockings mended?—He has several times had them mended.—Hast thou had thy hat or thy shoe mended?—I have neither had the one nor the other mended.—Have you had my cravats or my shirts washed?—I have neither had the one nor the other washed.—What stockings have you had washed?—I have had the thread stockings washed.—Has your father had a table made?—He has had one made.—Have you had anything made?—I have had nothing made. (*See end of Lesson XXXVI.*)

# FORTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

## Sieben und vierzigste Lektion.

*To receive—received.*

Bekommen\* (erhalten\*, empfangen\*).

*Obs. A.* We have observed (Lesson XLIII.) that some verbs do not take the syllable *ge* in the past participle; they are,

1st, Those which begin with one of the inseparable unaccented particles: *be, emp, ent, er, ge, ver, wider, zer* (See Lesson XXVII., or with one of the following particles, when inseparable: *durch, through; hinter, behind; über, over; um, around; unter, under; voll, full; wieder, again*<sup>1</sup>.

2d, Those derived from foreign languages and terminating in *iten, or ieren*. Ex. *studiren, to study; past part. studirt, studied*. (See page 69, Method, Part II.)

*Rule.* All verbs, in general, which have not the tonic accent upon the first syllable, reject the syllable *ge* in the past participle.

How much money have you received?

Wieviel Geld haben Sie bekommen?

I have received three crowns.

Ich habe drei Thaler bekommen.

Have you received letters?

Haben Sie Briefe erhalten?

I have received some.

Ich habe welche erhalten.

*To promise—promised.*

Versprechen\*—versprochen.

*Obs. B.* Derivative and compound verbs are conjugated like their primitives: thus the verb *versprechen\** is conjugated like *sprechen\**, to speak, which is its primitive. (Lessons XXVI. and XXXVI.)

Do you promise me to come?

Versprechen Sie mir zu kommen?

I promise you.

Ich verspreche es Ihnen.

The grosh (a coin),

der Groschen (is not softened in the plur.);

the denier,

der Pfennig.

A crown contains twenty-four groshes.

Ein Thaler hat vier und zwanzig Groschen.

A grosh contains twelve deniers.

Ein Groschen hat zwölf Pfennige.

<sup>1</sup> Verbs compounded with these particles are inseparable, when the particles may be considered as adverbs, and separable when they have the meaning of prepositions.



A florin contains sixteen groshes or sixty kreutzers, or forty- eight good kreutzers.	Ein Gulden hat sechzehn Groschen oder sechzig Kreuzer, oder acht und vierzig gute Kreuzer.
A denier contains two oboles The obole,	Ein Pfennig hat zwei Heller. der Heller.

<i>There is.</i>	Es ist.
<i>There are.</i>	Es sind.
How many groshes are there in a crown?	Wieviel Groschen sind in einem Thaler?
Twenty-four.	Vier und zwanzig.

<i>To wear out—worn out.</i>	Abtragen* — abgetragen (ab- nutzen—abgenutzt).
<i>To spell—spelled.</i>	Buchstabiren — buchstabirt. (Obs. A.)
<i>How?</i>	Wie?
Well.	Gut, wohl (adverbs <sup>2</sup> ).
Bad, badly.	Schlecht, übel, schlimm (adverbs <sup>2</sup> ).
How has he washed the shirt?	Wie hat er das Hemd gewaschen?
He has washed it well.	Er hat es gut gewaschen.
How have you written the letter?	Wie haben Sie den Brief geschrie- ben?

<i>Thus.</i>	So.
<i>So so.</i>	So so.
In this manner.	{ Auf diese Art. Auf diese Weise.

<i>To call—called</i>	Rufen* — gerufen.
Have you called the man?	Haben Sie den Mann gerufen?
I have called him.	Ich habe ihn gerufen.

<sup>2</sup> Gut relates to the manner in which a thing is done. Ex. Er redet gut, he speaks well. Wohl denotes a certain degree of well being. Ex. Ich bin wohl, I am well; ich weiß es wohl, I know it well.

<sup>2</sup> Schlecht is the opposite to gut, and übel the opposite to wohl. Ex. Er schreibt schlecht, he writes badly. Etwas übel nehmen, to be offended at anything. Schlimm is employed nearly in the same sense as übel, thus we say: schlimm genug, bad enough; desto schlimmer, so much the worse.

<i>To dry.</i>	<i>Trocknen.</i>
<i>To put (to place, to lay).</i>	<i>legen.</i>
Do you put your coat to dry?	Legen Sie Ihren Rock zu trocknen?
I do put it to dry.	Ich lege ihn zu trocknen.
Where have you placed (put) the book?	Wo haben Sie das Buch hingelagt? (See Note 4, Lesson XXXIX.)
I have placed it upon the table.	Ich habe es auf den Tisch gelegt.

<i>To lie—lain.</i>	<i>Liegen*—gelegen.</i>
Where lies the book?	Wo liegt das Buch?
It lies upon the table.	Es liegt auf dem Tische.
It has lain upon the table.	Es hat auf dem Tische gelegen.

<i>There.</i>	<i>Darauf.</i>
Does the book lie on the chair?	Liegt das Buch auf dem Stuhle?
It does lie there (on it).	Es liegt darauf.
It has lain there.	Es hat darauf gelegen.

## EXERCISES.

104.

Hast thou promised anything?—I have promised nothing.—Do you give me what you have promised me?—I do give it you.—Have you received much money?—I have received but little.—How much of it have you received?—I have received but one crown.—When have you received your letter?—I have received it to-day.—Hast thou received anything?—I have received nothing.—What have we received?—We have received long (groß) letters.—Do you promise me to come to the ball?—I do promise you to come to it.—Does your ball take place to-night?—It does take place.—How much money have you given to my son?—I have given him fifteen crowns.—Have you not promised him more?—I have given him what I have promised him.—Have our enemies received their money?—They have not received it.—Have you German money?—I have some.—What kind of money have you?—I have crowns, florins, kreutzers, groshes, and deniers.—How many groshes are there in a florin?—A florin contains (hat) sixteen groshes, or sixty kreutzers, or forty-eight good kreutzers.—Have you any oboles?—I have a few of them.—How many oboles are there in a denier?—A denier contains two oboles.—Will you lend your coat to me?—I will lend it to you; but it is worn out.—Are your shoes worn out?—They are not worn out.—Will you lend them to my brother?—I will lend

them to him.—To whom have you lent your hat?—I have not lent it; I have given it to somebody.—To whom have you given it?—I have given it to a pauper (*der Arme*).

## 105.

Does your little brother already know how to spell?—He does know.—Does he spell well?—He does spell well.—How has your little boy spelt?—He has spelt so so.—How have your children written their letters?—They have written them badly.—Do you know (Lesson XXXIX.) Spanish?—I do know it.—Does your cousin speak Italian?—He speaks it well.—How do your friends speak?—They do not speak badly (*nicht übel*).—Do they listen to what you tell them?—They do listen to it.—How hast thou learnt English?—I have learnt it in this manner.—Have you called me?—I have not called you, but your brother.—Is he come?—Not yet (Lesson XLII.).—Where have you wetted (*naß machen*) your clothes?—I have wetted them in the country.—Will you put them to dry (*zu trocknen legen*)?—I will put them to dry.—Where have you put my hat?—I have put it upon the table.—Hast thou seen my book?—I have seen it.—Where is it?—It lies upon your brother's trunk.—Does my handkerchief lie upon the chair?—It does lie upon it.—When were you in the country?—I was there the day before yesterday.—Have you found your father there?—I have found him there.—What has he said?—He has said nothing.—What have you been doing in the country?—I have been doing nothing there.

# FORTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

## Acht und vierzigste Section.

Does your father wish to give me anything to do?	Will Ihr Vater mir Etwas zu thun geben?
He does wish to give thee something to do.	Er will Dir Etwas zu thun geben.

*Obs. Da zu, to it, relates sometimes to an infinitive, as:*

Have you a mind to work?	Haben Sie Lust zu arbeiten?
I have no mind to it.	Ich habe keine Lust dazu.
Is thy brother gone to the country?	Ist Dein Bruder aufs Land gegangen?
He is gone thither.	Er ist dahin gegangen.
Hast thou a mind to go thither?	Hast Du Lust dahin zu gehen?
I have a mind to it.	Ich habe Lust dazu.

How old are you?	Wie alt sind Sie?
I am twelve years old.	Ich bin zwölf Jahr <sup>1</sup> alt.
How old is your brother?	Wie alt ist Ihr Bruder?
He is thirteen years old.	Er ist dreizehn Jahr alt.

<i>Almost (nearly).</i>	Beinahe or fast.
<i>About.</i>	ungefähr.
<i>Hardly.</i>	Kaum.
He is almost fourteen years old.	Er ist fast vierzehn Jahr alt.
I am about fifteen years old.	Ich bin ungefähr fünfzehn Jahr alt.
He is almost sixteen years old.	Er ist beinahe sechzehn Jahr alt.
You are hardly seventeen years old.	Sie sind kaum siebzehn Jahr alt.

<i>Not quite.</i>	Nicht ganz.
I am not quite eighteen years old.	Ich bin nicht ganz achtzehn Jahr alt.
Art thou older than thy brother?	Bist Du älter als Dein Bruder?
I am younger than he.	Ich bin jünger als er.

<sup>1</sup> Here custom requires the singular number.

*To understand—understood.*

Do you understand me ?  
 do understand you.  
 Have you understood the man ?  
 I have understood him.  
 I hear you, but I do not under-  
 stand you.

Verstehen \*—verstanden. (*Obs.*  
*A, Lesson XLVII.*)

Verstehen Sie mich ?  
 Ich verstehe Sie.  
 Haben Sie den Mann verstanden ?  
 Ich habe ihn verstanden.  
 Ich höre Sie, aber ich verstehe Sie  
 nicht.

The noise,  
 The noise (roaring) of the wind,  
 The wind,  
 Do you hear the roaring of the  
 wind ?  
 I do hear it.

der Lärm.  
 das Gausen des Windes.  
 der Wind.  
 Hören Sie das Gausen des Windes ?  
 Ich höre es.

*To bark.*  
 The barking,  
 Have you heard the barking of  
 the dogs ?  
 I have heard it.

Bellen.  
 das Bellen.  
 Haben Sie das Bellen der Hunde  
 gehört ?  
 Ich habe es gehört.

*To lose—lost.*  
*To beat—beaten.*  
 Thou beatest,—he beats.

Verlieren \*—verloren. (*Obs. A.*  
*Lesson XLVII.*)  
 Schlagen \*—geschlagen.  
 Du schlägst—er schlägt.

*To read —read (p. p.).*  
*To remain—remained.*

Lesen \*—gelesen.  
 Bleiben \*—geblieben (*takes*  
*seyn for its auxiliary*).  
 Nehmen \*—genommen.  
 Wissen \*—gewußt.

*To take—taken.*  
*To know—known.*  
 Have you lost anything ?  
 I have lost nothing.

Haben Sie Etwas verloren ?  
 Ich habe Nichts verloren.

*To lose (at play)—lost.*  
 How much has your brother lost ?  
 He has lost about a crown.  
 Who has beaten the dog ?  
 No one has beaten it.

Verspielen \*—verspielt. (*Obs.*  
*A, Lesson XLVII.*)  
 Wieviel hat Ihr Bruder verspielt ?  
 Er hat ungefähr einen Thaler ver-  
 spielt.  
 Wer hat den Hund geschlagen ?  
 Niemand hat ihn geschlagen.

How many books has your cousin already read?

He has already read five of them, and at present he is reading the sixth.

Has the man taken anything from you?

He has taken nothing from me.

Do you know as much as this man?

I do not know as much as he.

Have you known that?

I have not known it.

Where have our friends remained?

They have remained at home.

Wieviel Bücher hat Ihr Vetter schon gelesen?

Er hat deren schon fünf gelesen, und jetzt liest er das sechste.

† Hat der Mann Ihnen Etwas genommen?

† Er hat mir Nichts genommen.

Wissen Sie so viel wie dieser Mann?

Ich weiß nicht so viel wie er.

Haben Sie das gewußt?

Ich habe es nicht gewußt.

Wo sind unsere Freunde geblieben?

Sie sind zu Hause geblieben.

## EXERCISES.

### 106.

Have you time to write a letter?—I have time to write one.—Will you lend a book to my brother?—I have lent one to him already.—Will you lend him one more?—I will lend him two more.—Have you given anything to the poor?—I have given them money.—How much money has my cousin given you?—He has given me only a little; he has given me only two crowns.—How old is your brother?—He is twenty years old.—Are you as old as he?—I am not so old.—How old are you?—I am hardly eighteen years old.—How old art thou?—I am about twelve years old.—Am I younger than you?—I do not know.—How old is our neighbour?—He is not quite thirty years old.—Are our friends as young as we?—They are older than we.—How old are they?—The one is nineteen and the other twenty years old.—Is your father as old as mine?—He is older than yours.—Have you read my book?—I have not quite read it yet.—Has your friend finished his book?—He has almost finished it.—Do you understand me?—I do understand you.—Does the Englishman understand us?—He does understand us.—Do you understand what we are telling you?—We do understand it.—Dost thou understand German?—I do not understand it yet, but I am learning it.—Do we understand the English?—We do not understand them.—Do the Germans understand us?—They do understand us.—Do we understand them?—We hardly understand them.—Do you hear any noise?—I hear nothing.—Have you heard the roaring of the wind?—I have heard it.—What do you hear?—I hear the barking of the dogs.—Whose dog is this?—It is the dog of the Scotchman.

## 107.

Have you lost your stick?—I have not lost it.—Has your servant lost my note?—He has lost it.—Have you gone to the ball?—No, I have not gone to it.—Where have you remained?—I have remained at home.—Has your father lost (at play) as much money as I?—He has lost more of it than you.—How much have I lost?—You have hardly lost a crown.—Where has thy brother remained?—He has remained at home.—Have our friends remained in the country?—They have remained there.—Do you know as much as the English physician?—I do not know as much as he.—Does the French physician know as much as you?—He knows more than I?—Does any one know more than the French physicians?—No one knows more than they.—Have your brothers read my books?—They have not quite read them.—How many of them have they read?—They have hardly read two of them.—Has the son of my gardener taken anything from you?—He has taken my books from me.—What hast thou taken from him?—I have taken nothing from him.—Has he taken money from you?—He has taken some from me.—How much money has he taken from you?—He has taken from me almost two crowns. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

# FORTY-NINTH LESSON.

## Neun und vierzigste Section.

*To bite—bitten.*


*Why?*

*Because.*

Beißen \*—gebissen.

Warum?

Weil.

 The verb of the subject or nominative (in compound tenses, the auxiliary), is placed at the end of the phrase, when this begins with a conjunction or a conjunctive word, such as a relative pronoun or a relative adverb. The conjunctions which do not require the verb to be placed at the end, will be given hereafter.

Why do you beat the dog?

I beat it, because it has bitten me.

Do you see the man who is in the garden?

I do see him.

Do you know the man who has lent me the book?

I do not know him.

Do you read the book, which I have lent you?

I do read it.

Warum schlagen Sie den Hund?

Ich schlage ihn, weil er mich gebissen hat.

Sehen Sie den Mann, welcher (der) im Garten ist?

Ich sehe ihn.

Kennen Sie den Mann, der (welcher) mir das Buch geliehen hat?

Ich kenne ihn nicht.

Lesen Sie das Buch, welches ich Ihnen geliehen habe?

Ich lese es.

*Obs.* When the verb which a conjunctive word causes to be placed at the end of the phrase, is compounded with a separable particle, this is not detached from it. *Ex.*

I breakfast before I go out.

Does the tailor show you the coat, which he is mending?

Ich frühstücke, ehe ich ausgehe.

Zeigt Ihnen der Schneider den Rock, welchen er ausbessert?

*To wait.*

*To expect.*

To wait for some one or for something.

To expect some one or something.

Do you wait for my brother?

Warten.

Erwarten<sup>1</sup>.

Auf einen oder Etwas warten.

Einen oder Etwas erwarten.

Warten Sie auf meinen Bruder?

<sup>1</sup> Warten auf, with the accusative case, is used, when the person or thing spoken of is present, and erwarten, when it is not.



I do wait for him.  
Do you expect friends?  
I do expect some.

Ich warte auf ihn.  
Erwarten Sie Freunde?  
Ich erwarte einige.

*To owe.*  
How much do you owe me?  
I owe you fifty crowns.  
  
How much does the man owe  
you?  
He owes me ten shillings.  
Does he owe as much as you?  
He owes more than I.

The shilling,  
The pound,  
The livre (a coin),

Schuldig seyn<sup>2</sup>.  
Wieviel sind Sie mir schuldig?  
Ich bin Ihnen fünfzig Thaler schul-  
dig.  
Wieviel ist Ihnen der Mann schul-  
dig?  
Er ist mir zehn Schillinge schuldig.  
Ist er so viel schuldig wie Sie?  
Er ist mehr schuldig als ich.  
der Schilling.  
das Pfund.  
der Franke.

*To return (to come back)—  
returned.*  
At what o'clock do you return  
from the market?  
I return from it at twelve o'clock.

Zurück kommen\* — zurückge-  
kommen.  
Um wieviel Uhr kommen Sie von  
dem Markte zurück?  
Ich komme um zwölf Uhr von da  
zurück.

*From there, thence (from it).*  
Does the servant return early  
thence?  
He returns thence at ten o'clock  
in the morning.  
At nine o'clock in the morning.  
At eleven o'clock at night.

Von da.  
Kommt der Bediente früh von da  
zurück?  
Er kommt um zehn Uhr Morgens  
von da zurück.  
† Um neun Uhr Morgens.  
† Um elf Uhr Abends.

*How long?  
During, for.*

Wie lange?  
Während (a preposition which  
governs the genitive case).

<sup>2</sup> Schuldig seyn\*, to owe, is to be considered as a compound verb, of which the separable particle is placed at the end, schuldig, due, owing, indebted, having here the force of the separable particle.

<sup>3</sup> The accusative case answers to the question wie lange? how long? and other similar questions, relative to measure, weight, quantity, &c., as wie lang? how long? wie schwer? how heavy? wieviel? how much? wie theuer? of what price? wie weit? how far? wie groß? of what size? wie alt? how old? (See Method, Part II. p. 34.)

How long has he remained there?	Wie lange ist er da geblieben?
A minute.	Eine Minute.
An hour.	Eine Stunde <sup>4</sup> .
A day.	Einen Tag.
A year.	Ein Jahr (a neuter substantive, taking e in the plural, without being softened).
A month.	Einen Monat.

The summer,	der Sommer;
the winter,	der Winter.
During the summer.	{ Während des Sommers.
	{ Den Sommer über.
	{ Den Sommer hindurch.

How long have you spoken with the man?	Wie lange haben Sie mit dem Manne gesprochen?
I have spoken with him for three hours.	Ich habe drei Stunden mit ihm gesprochen.
How long has your brother remained in the country?	Wie lange ist Ihr Bruder auf dem Lande geblieben?
He has remained there a month.	Er ist einen Monat da geblieben.
Have you remained long with my father?	Sind Sie lange bei meinem Vater geblieben?
I have remained with him for an hour.	Ich bin eine Stunde lang bei ihm geblieben.
Long.	Lange.

## EXERCISES.

108.

Why do you love that man?—I love him, because he is good.—Why does your neighbour beat his dog?—Because it has bitten his little boy.—Why does our father love me?—He loves you, because you are good.—Do your friends love us?—They love us, because we are good.—Why do you bring me wine?—I bring you some, because you are thirsty.—Why does the hatter drink?—He drinks, because he is thirsty.—Do you see the sailor, who is in (auf) the ship?—I do not see the one who is in (auf) the

<sup>4</sup> Minute, minute, Stunde, hour, are two nouns of the feminine gender; they add n in all the cases of the plural, without softening the radical vowels. We can also say: eine Stunde lang, during an hour; ein Jahr lang, during a year.

the ship, but the one who is in (auf) the square.—Do you read the books which my father has given you?—I do read them.—Do you know the Italians whom we know?—We do not know those whom you know, but we know others (andere).—Do you buy the horse which we have seen?—I do not buy that which we have seen, but another (ein anderes).—Do you seek what you have lost?—I do seek it.—Do you find the man whom you have looked for?—I do not find him.—Does the butcher kill the ox which he has bought in (auf with the dat.) the market?—He does kill it.—Do our cooks kill the chickens which they have bought?—They do kill them.—Does the hatter mend the hat which I have sent him?—He does mend it.—Does the shoemaker mend the boots which you have sent him?—He does not mend them, because they are worn out.—Does your coat lie upon the chair?—It does lie upon it.—Does it lie upon the chair upon which I placed it?—No, it lies upon another.—Where is my hat?—It is in the room in which (worin or in welchem) you have been.—Do you wait for any one?—I wait for no one.—Do you wait for the man whom I have seen this morning?—I do wait for him.—Art thou waiting for thy book?—I am waiting for it.—Do you expect your father this evening?—I do expect him.—At what o'clock has he gone to the theatre?—He has gone thither at seven o'clock.—At what o'clock does he return from there?—He returns from there at eleven o'clock.—Has your bailiff returned from the market?—He has not yet returned from it.—At what o'clock has your brother returned from the country?—He has returned from thence at ten o'clock in the evening.

## 109.

At what o'clock hast thou come back from thy friend?—I have come back from him at eleven o'clock in the morning.—Hast thou remained long with him?—I have remained with him about an hour.—How long do you intend to remain at the ball?—I intend to remain there a few minutes.—How long has the Englishman remained with you?—He has remained with me for two hours.—Do you intend to remain long in the country?—I intend to remain there during the summer.—How long have your brothers remained in town (in der Stadt)?—They have remained there during the winter.—How much do I owe you?—You do not owe me much.—How much do you owe your tailor?—I only owe him fifty crowns.—How much dost thou owe thy shoemaker?—I owe him already seventy crowns.—Do I owe you anything?—You owe me nothing.—How much does the Frenchman owe you?—He owes me more than you.—Do the English *owe you as much as the Spaniards?*—Not quite so much.—Do I *owe you as much as my brother?*—You owe me more than he.—

Do our friends owe you as much as we?—You owe me less than they.—Why do you give money to the merchant?—I give him some because he has sold me handkerchiefs.—Why do you not drink?—I do not drink because I am not thirsty.—Why do you pick up this ribbon?—I pick it up, because I want it.—Why do you lend money to this man?—I lend him some because he wants some.—Why does your brother study?—He studies, because he wishes to learn German (*lernen will*).—Art thou thirsty?—I am not thirsty, because I have drunk.—Has your cousin drunk already?—Not yet, he is not yet thirsty.—Does the servant show you the room which he sweeps?—He does not show me that which he sweeps now, but that which he swept yesterday.—Do you breakfast before you go out?—I go out before I breakfast.—What does your shoemaker do before he sweeps his room?—He mends my boots and my shoes before he sweeps it. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## FIFTIETH LESSON.

## Fünfzigste Section.

*To live, to dwell, to reside, to abide,  
to lodge.*

Where do you live?

I live in William-street, number  
twenty-five.

Where has your brother lived?

He has lived in Frederic-street,  
number a hundred and fifty.

Dost thou live at thy cousin's  
house?

I do not live at his, but at my  
father's house.

Does your friend still live where  
I have lived?

He lives no longer where you have  
lived; he lives at present in the  
great square.

Wohnen.

Wo wohnen Sie?

Ich wohne in der Wilhelmsstraße,  
Nummer fünf und <sup>1</sup> zwanzig.

Wo hat Ihr Bruder gewohnt?

Er hat in der Friedrichsstraße,  
Nummer hundert und fünfzig  
gewohnt.

Wohnst Du bei Deinem Vetter?

Ich wohne nicht bei ihm, sondern  
bei meinem Vater.

Wohnt Ihr Freund noch (da), wo  
ich gewohnt habe?

Er wohnt nicht mehr (da), wo Sie  
gewohnt haben; er wohnt jetzt  
auf dem großen Plage.

The street.

The number.

Die Straße (a noun of the femi-  
nine gender).

Die Nummer (a noun of the fem.  
gender).

*To brush.*

Have you brushed my coat?

I have brushed it.

Bürsten.

Haben Sie meinen Rock gebürstet?

Ich habe ihn gebürstet.

*How long?*

*Till, until.*

Till noon.

Till twelve o'clock.

Wie lange?

Bis.

} Bis Mittag.

<sup>1</sup> In German, the conjunction *und*, is used to add a number less than  
a hundred.

Till to-morrow.	Bis morgen.
Till the day after to-morrow.	Bis übermorgen.
Till Sunday.	Bis Sonntag.
Till Monday.	Bis Montag.
Till this evening.	Bis heute Abend.
Till evening.	Bis auf den Abend.
Until morning.	Bis an den Morgen.
Until the next day.	Bis zum andern Tag.
Until that day.	Bis auf diesen Tag.
Until that moment.	Bis auf diesen Augenblick.
Till now—hitherto.	Bis jetzt—bisher.

To this place, hither, so far, as far as here.	Bis hieher (an adverb of place).
To that place, thither, so far, as far as there.	Bis dahin (an adverb of place).

*Obs.* The days of the week are all of the masculine gender, except die Mittwoch, Wednesday, which some authors use as feminine.

Tuesday.	Dienstag ;
Wednesday.	Mittwoch ;
Thursday.	Donnerstag ;
Friday.	Freitag ;
Saturday.	Samstag (Sonabend).

<i>Then.</i>	Dann—(damals, alsdann).
Till I return (till my return).	Bis ich zurückkomme.
Till my brother returns (till my brother's return).	Bis mein Bruder zurückkommt.
Till four o'clock in the morning.	Bis vier Uhr Morgens.
Till midnight (till twelve o'clock at night).	Bis Mitternacht (a noun of the feminine gender).

How long did you remain with my father ?	Wie lange sind Sie bei meinem Vater geblieben ?
I remained with him till eleven o'clock at night.	Ich bin bis elf Uhr Abends bei ihm geblieben.

<i>One, the people, they, or any one.</i>	Man (indefinite pronoun always singular).
Have they brought my shoes ?	Hat man meine Schuhe gebracht ?
<i>They have not brought them yet.</i>	Man hat sie noch nicht gebracht.

What have they said?  
 They have said nothing.  
 What have they done?  
 They have done nothing.

Was hat man gesagt?  
 Man hat nichts gesagt.  
 Was hat man gethan?  
 Man hat nichts gethan.

*To be willing (to wish),—been willing (wished).*

Has he been willing to go for the physician?  
 He has not been willing to go for him.  
 Has he wished to go out this morning?  
 He has not wished to go out.  
 Have they been willing to do it?  
 They have not been willing to do it.  
 They have not been willing to do anything.

Wollen\*,—gewollt.

Hat er den Arzt holen wollen? (not gewollt. See *Obs. Less. XLVI.*)  
 Er hat ihn nicht holen wollen.  
 Hat er diesen Morgen ausgehen wollen?  
 Er hat nicht ausgehen wollen.  
 Hat man es thun wollen?  
 Man hat es nicht thun wollen.  
 Man hat nichts thun wollen.

*To be able (can),—been able (could).*

Have they been able to find the books?  
 They have not been able to find them.  
 Has the tailor been willing to mend my coat?  
 He has not been willing to mend it.

Können\*—gekonnt.

Hat man die Bücher finden können?  
 (not gekonnt. See *Less. XLVI.*)  
 Man hat sie nicht finden können.  
 Hat der Schneider meinen Rock ausbessern wollen?  
 Er hat ihn nicht ausbessern wollen.

*Something (or anything) new.*

What do they say new?  
 They say nothing new.

Etwas Neues.  
 Was sagt man Neues?  
 Man sagt nichts Neues.

*New.*

My new coat.  
 My new friend.  
 His new clothes.

Neu.

Mein neues Kleid.  
 Mein neuer Freund.  
 Seine neuen Kleider.

## EXERCISES.

## 110.

Where do you live?—I live in the large (in der großen) street.—Where does your father live?—He lives at his friend's house.—Where do your brothers live?—They live in the large street, number a hundred and twenty.—Dost thou live at thy cousin's?—I do live at his house.—Do you still live where you did live (gewohnt haben)?—I live there still.—Does your friend still live where he did live?—He no longer lives where he did live.—Where does he live at present?—He lives in William-street, number a hundred and fifteen.—Where is your brother?—He is in the garden.—Where is your cousin gone to?—He is gone into the garden.—Did you go to the play yesterday?—I did go thither.—Have you seen my friend?—I have seen him.—When did you see him?—I saw (habe—gesehen) him this morning.—Where has he gone to?—I do not know. (*Obs. Lesson XLV.*)—Has the servant brushed my clothes?—He has brushed them.—Has he swept my room?—He has swept it.—How long did he remain here?—Till noon.—How long have you been writing?—I have been writing until midnight.—How long did I work?—You worked until four o'clock in the morning.—How long did my brother remain with you?—He remained with me until evening.—How long hast thou been working?—I have been working till now.—Hast thou still long to write?—I have to write till the day after to-morrow.—Has the physician still long to work?—He has to work till to-morrow.—Must I remain long here?—You must remain here till Sunday.—Must my brother remain long with you?—He must remain with us till Monday.—How long must I work?—You must work till the day after to-morrow.—Have you still long to speak?—I have still an hour to speak.—Did you speak long?—I spoke (habe—gesprochen) till the next day.—Have you remained long in my room?—I have remained in it till this moment.—Have you still long to live in this house?—I have still long to live in it (darin).—How long have you still to live in it?—Till Sunday.

## 111.

Does your friend still live with you?—He lives with me no longer.—How long has he lived with you?—He has lived with me only a year.—How long did you remain at the ball?—I remained there till midnight.—How long have you remained in the carriage?—I have remained an hour in it.—Have you remained in the garden till now?—I have remained there (darin) till now.—Has the captain come as far as here?—He has come as far as here.—How far has the merchant come?—He has come as far as the end of the small road.—Has the Turk come as



far as the end of the forest?—He has come as far as there.—What do you do in the morning?—I read.—And what do you do then?—I breakfast and work.—Do you breakfast before you read?—No, Sir, I read before I breakfast.—Dost thou play instead of working (Lesson XXXVIII.)?—I work instead of playing.—Does thy brother go to the play instead of going into the garden?—He does not go to the play.—What do you do in the evening?—I work.—What hast thou done this evening?—I have brushed your clothes and have gone to the theatre.—Didst thou remain long at the theatre?—I remained there but a few minutes.—Are you willing to wait here?—How long must I wait?—You must wait till my father returns.—Has anybody come?—Somebody has come.—What have they (man) wanted (gewollt)?—They (man) have wanted to speak to you.—Have they not been willing to wait?—They have not been willing to wait.—What do you say to that man?—I tell him to wait.—Have you waited for me long?—I have waited for you an hour.—Have you been able to read my letter?—I have been able to read it.—Have you understood it?—I have understood it.—Have you shown it to any one?—I have shown it to no one.—Have they brought my clothes?—They have not brought them yet.—Have they swept my room and brushed my clothes?—They have done both (beides).—What have they said?—They have said nothing.—What have they done?—They have done nothing.—Has your little brother been spelling?—He has not been willing to spell.—Has the merchant's boy been willing to work?—He has not been willing.—What has he been willing to do?—He has not been willing to do anything.

## 112.

Has the shoemaker been able to mend my boots?—He has not been able to mend them.—Why has he not been able to mend them?—Because he has had no time.—Have they (man) been able to find my gold buttons?—They have not been able to find them.—Why has the tailor not mended my coat?—Because he has no good thread.—Why have you beaten the dog?—Because it has bitten me.—Why do you not drink?—Because I am not thirsty.—What have they wished to say?—They have not wished to say anything.—What do they (man) say new in the market?—They say nothing new there.—Have they (man) wished to kill a man?—They have not wished to kill any one.—Have they said any thing new?—They have said nothing new. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## THIRD MONTH.

## Dritter Monat.

## FIFTY-FIRST LESSON.

## Ein und funfzigste Lektion.

*To steal—stolen.*

Thou stealest, he steals.  
 To steal something from some one.  
 Have they stolen your hat from you?  
 They have stolen it from me.  
 Has the man stolen the book from thee?  
 He has stolen it from me.  
 What have they stolen from you?

## Stehlen\*—gestohlen.

Du stiehst,—er stiehlt.  
 † Jemandem Etwas stehlen\*.  
 † Hat man Ihnen Ihren Hut gestohlen?  
 † Man hat ihn mir gestohlen.  
 † Hat Dir der Mann das Buch gestohlen?  
 † Er hat es mir gestohlen.  
 † Was hat man Ihnen gestohlen?

*All.*

All is declined in the following manner.

*All.*

	N.	G.	D.	A.
<i>Masc.</i>	aller	es	em	en.
<i>Neut.</i>	alles	es	em	es.

*All (plural).*

	N.	G.	D.	A.
	Alle	er	en	e.

All the good wine.  
 All the good water.  
 All the good children.

Alle gute Wein.  
 Alles gute Wasser.  
 Alle gute Kinder. (See end of Lesson XX. *Obs. B.*)

*Obs. A.* When two determinative words, which do not take the definite article, as: all, all (See Lesson XXXIV.); dieser, this; jener, that, &c. are placed one after the other, they have each the characteristic ending of this article. *Ex.*

All this wine.  
 All this money.  
 All these children.  
 All these good children.

Alle dieser (not diese) Wein.  
 Alles dieses (not diese) Geld.  
 Alle diese Kinder.  
 Alle diese guten Kinder.

*Obs. B.* In familiar style, when all, all, is followed by a pronoun, it often rejects its termination. *Ex.*

All his money.

| All sein Geld.

The word,  
the speech,  
How is this word written?  
It is written thus.

das Wort;  
das Wort (plur. Worte)<sup>1</sup>.  
Wie schreibt man dieses Wort?  
Man schreibt es so.

*To dye or to colour.*  
To dye black, white.  
To dye green, blue.  
To dye red, yellow.  
To dye grey, brown.  
My blue coat.  
  
This white hat.  
Do you dye your coat blue?  
I dye it green.  
What colour will you dye your  
cloth?  
I will dye it blue.  
The dyer.

Färben.  
Schwarz, weiß färben.  
Grün, blau färben.  
Roth, gelb färben.  
Grau, braun färben.  
Mein blauer Rock (mein blaues  
Kleid).  
Dieser weiße Hut.  
Färben Sie Ihren Rock blau?  
Ich färbe ihn grün.  
Wie wollen Sie Ihr Tuch färben?  
  
Ich will es blau färben.  
der Färber.

*To get dyed—got dyed.*  
What colour have you got your  
hat dyed?  
I have got it dyed white.

Färben lassen\*. (See *Obs. Les-*  
*son XLVI.*)  
Wie haben Sie Ihren Hut färben  
lassen?  
Ich habe ihn weiß färben lassen.

As far as my brother's.  
As far as London.  
As far as Paris.  
As far as England.  
As far as France.  
As far as Italy.

Bis zu meinem Bruder.  
Bis London.  
Bis Paris.  
Bis nach England.  
Bis nach Frankreich.  
Bis nach Italien.

<sup>1</sup> When Wort, means merely a word, its plural is regular; but when it conveys the meaning of a whole phrase, its plural is Worte. *Ex.* Leere Worte, useless words; Glauben Sie meinen Worten, take my word for it; das Hauptwort, the substantive; plur. die Hauptwörter, substantives.

Germany,  
Spain,  
Holland,

Deutschland;  
Spanien;  
Holland.

*Rule.* The names of countries, towns, and villages, belong to the neuter gender, and stand without the article. They are indeclinable except in the genitive, which receives *s* when the pronunciation admits it. If the ending of the name does not admit the letter *s*, as in *Paris*, *Paris*, the preposition *von*, *of*, is used. *Ex.* *die Einwohner von Paris*, the inhabitants of *Paris*. Some proper names of countries are of the feminine gender. These, like all other feminine nouns, are invariable in the singular, and form their case by means of the definite article, viz. 1, Names of countries which terminate in *ei*. *Ex.* *die Türkei*, and 2, the following: *die Krimm*, *Crimea*; *die Lausitz*, *Lusatia*; *die Mark*, *March*; *die Moldau*, *Moldavia*; *die Pfalz*, *Palatinate*; *die Schweiz*, *Switzerland*. *Ex.* *der Schweiz*, *of Switzerland*; *der Schweiz*, *to Switzerland*; *die Schweiz*, *Switzerland*.

*To travel.*

Do you travel to *Paris*?

Do you go to *Paris*?

I do travel (or go) thither.

Is he gone to *England*?

He is gone thither.

How far has he travelled?

He has travelled as far as *America*.

*Reisen* (is used with the auxiliary *seyn*).

*Reisen Sie nach Paris?*

*Gehen Sie nach Paris?*

*Ich reise (ich gehe) dahin.*

*Ist er nach England gereist?*

*Er ist dahin gereist.*

*Bis wohin ist er gereist?*

*Er ist bis nach Amerika gereist.*

## EXERCISES.

### 113.

Have they (man) stolen anything from you?—They have stolen all the good wine from me.—Have they stolen anything from your father?—They have stolen all his good books from him.—Dost thou steal anything?—I steal nothing.—Hast thou ever stolen anything?—I have never stolen anything (*nie Etwas*).—Have they stolen your apples from you?—They have stolen them from me.—What have they stolen from me?—They have stolen from you all the good books.—When did they steal the carriage from you?—They stole (*man hat—gestohlen*) it from me the day before yesterday.—Have they ever stolen anything from us?—They have never stolen anything from us.—Has the carpenter drunk all the wine?—He has drunk it.—Has your little boy torn all his books?—He has torn them all.—Why has he torn them?—Because he does not wish to study.—How much have you lost (*at play*)?—I have lost all my money.—Do you

know where my father is?—I do not know.—Have you not seen my book?—I have not seen it.—Do you know how this word is written?—It is written thus.—Do you dye anything?—I dye my hat.—What colour do you dye it?—I dye it black.—What colour do you dye your clothes?—We dye them yellow.

## 114.

Do you get your trunk dyed?—I get it dyed.—What colour do you get it dyed?—I get it dyed green.—What colour dost thou get thy thread stockings dyed?—I get them dyed white.—Does your cousin get his handkerchief dyed?—He does get it dyed.—Does he get it dyed red?—He gets it dyed grey.—What colour have your friends got their coats dyed?—They have got them dyed green.—What colour have the Italians had their carriages painted?—They have had them painted blue.—What hat has the nobleman?—He has two hats, a white one and a black one.—Have I a hat?—You have several.—Has your dyer already dyed your cravat?—He has dyed it.—What colour has he dyed it?—He has dyed it yellow.—Do you travel sometimes?—I travel often.—Where do you intend to go to (*hinzureisen*) this summer?—I intend to go to Germany.—Do you not go to Italy?—I do go thither.—Hast thou sometimes travelled?—I have never travelled.—Have your friends the intention to go to Holland?—They have the intention to go thither.—When do they intend to depart?—They intend to depart the day after to-morrow.—Has your brother already gone to Spain?—He has not yet gone thither.—Have you travelled in Spain?—I have travelled there.—When do you depart?—I depart to-morrow.—At what o'clock?—At five o'clock in the morning.—Have you worn out all your boots?—I have worn them all out.—What have the Turks done?—They have burnt all our good ships.—Have you finished all your letters?—I have finished them all.—How far have you travelled?—I have travelled as far as Germany.—Has he travelled as far as Italy?—He has travelled as far as America.—How far have the Spaniards gone?—They have gone as far as London.—How far has this poor man come?—He has come as far as here.—Has he come as far as your house?—He has come as far as my father's. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## FIFTY-SECOND LESSON.

## Zwei und funfzigste Section.

Above.	Oben (rest).	{ hinauf } (motion). { herauf }
Below.	Unten (rest).	{ hinunter or hinab } (motion). { herunter or herab }
This side.	Diesseits (rest).	Hither, hierher, hier her- über, von dort her } (motion).
That side.	Jenseits (rest).	Thither, dorthin (motion).

*Obs. A.* The particles *her* and *hin*, having no corresponding words in English, must be carefully distinguished from each other. *Her* expresses motion towards the person who speaks, as: *herauf*, up; *herunter* or *herab*, down; *heraus*, out; *herüber*, hither, to this side. *Hin* expresses motion from the person who speaks towards another place, as: *hinauf*, up; *hinunter* or *hinab*, down; *hinaus*, out; *hinüber*, thither, to the opposite side. If, for instance, I wish to tell any one who is on a mountain to come down, I must say: *kommen Sie herunter*, come down (to where I am). He might answer me, *kommen Sie herauf*, come up. I might say to him, *ich komme nicht hinauf*, I am not coming up; and he might answer me, *und ich nicht hinunter*, and I am not coming down.

According to this we must say: *kommen Sie herein*, come in; *gehen Sie hinaus*, go out; *fahren Sie hinüber*, drive to the opposite side; *springen Sie hinein*, jump in (i. e. in den Fluß, into the river); but should the person speaking be already in the water, he would say, *springen Sie herein*. (See the *Adverbs of Motion*, page 166, Method, Part II.)

The mountain,	der Berg;
The river,	der Fluß;
The present,	das Geschenk (plur. e').

*Obs. B.* The adverbs *diesseits*, *jenseits*, ought to be carefully distinguished from the prepositions, *diesseit*, *jenseit*. The latter are always followed by the genitive, whilst the others never govern a case. *Ex.*

<sup>1</sup> Neuter words, formed of a verb and the syllable *ge*, add *e* to all the cases plural, and do not soften the radical vowel. (See "Introductory Book.")

biesseit des Flusses, on this side of the river; jenseit des Bergeß, on the other side of the mountain.

To go up the mountain.

Where is your brother gone to?

He is gone up the mountain.

Den Berg hinauf gehen\*.

Wo ist Ihr Bruder hingegangen?

Er ist den Berg hinauf gegangen.

To give back again (to restore).

Thou givest back again.

He gives back again.

Given back again.

Does he restore you your book?

He does restore it to me.

Has he given you your stick back again?

He has given it me back again.

Wiedergeben\*.

Du gibst wieder.

Er gibt wieder.

Wiedergegeben.

Gibt er Ihnen Ihr Buch wieder?

Er gibt es mir wieder.

Hat er Ihnen Ihren Stoc wieder-  
gegeben?

Er hat ihn mir wiedergegeben.

To begin, to commence.

Begun, commenced.

Have you already commenced your letter?

Not yet.

I have not yet commenced it.

Have you received a present?

I have received several.

From whom have you received presents?

Anfangen\*, beginnen\*.

Angefangen, begonnen.

Haben Sie Ihren Brief schon angefangen?

Noch nicht.

Ich habe ihn noch nicht angefangen.

Haben Sie ein Geschenk bekommen?

Ich habe verschiedne bekommen.

Von wem haben Sie Geschenke bekommen?

Whence? Where from?

Out of.

Where do you come from?

Woher;

Aus (governs the dative).

Wo kommen Sie her?

*Obs. C.* The adverb *woher* may be separated into two parts (as *wohin*, Lesson XXXIX.) the first of which is put at the beginning, and the second at the end of the phrase. If the phrase ends with a participle past, or an infinitive, *her* is placed before it, but it precedes the particle *zu* of the infinitive.

I come from (out of) the garden.

Where has he come from?

He has come from the theatre.

Ich komme aus dem Garten.

Woher ist er gekommen?

Er ist aus dem Theater gekommen.

To be worth.

How much may that horse be worth?

Werth seyn\*.

Wieviel kann dieses Pferd werth seyn?

It may be worth a hundred  
crowns.

This is worth more than that.

The one is not worth so much as  
the other.

How much is that worth?

That is not worth much.

That is not worth anything.

Es kann hundert Thaler werth seyn.

Dieses ist mehr werth als jenes.

Das eine ist nicht so viel werth als  
das andere.

Wieviel ist das werth?

Das ist nicht viel werth.

Das ist nichts werth.

*To be better.*

Am I not as good as my brother?

You are better than he.

I am not so good as you.

Besser seyn\* (mehr werth  
seyn\*).

Bin ich nicht so gut wie mein  
Bruder?

{ Sie sind besser als er.

{ Sie sind mehr werth als er.

| Ich bin nicht so gut wie Sie.

## EXERCISES.

115.

Do you call me?—I do call you.—Where are you?—I am on (auf with the dative) the mountain; are you coming up?—I am not coming up.—Where are you?—I am at the foot (am Fuße) of the mountain; will you come down?—I cannot come down.—Why can you not come down?—Because I have sore feet.—Where does your cousin live?—He lives on this side of the river.—Where is the mountain?—It is on that side of the river.—Where stands the house of our friend?—It stands on that side of the mountain.—Is the garden of your friend on this or that side of the wood?—It is on that side (jenseits).—Is our storehouse not on that side of the road?—It is on this side (diesseits).—Where have you been this morning?—I have been on (Lesson XXXII.) the great mountain.—How many times have you gone up the mountain?—I have gone up (ich hinauf gegangen) three times.—Is your father below or above?—He is above.—Have the neighbour's boys given you your books back again?—They have given them me back again.—When did they give them you back again? They gave (haben—wiebergegeben) them me back again yesterday.—To whom have you given your stick?—I have given it to the nobleman.—To whom have the noblemen given their gloves?—They have given them to Englishmen.—To which Englishmen have they given them?—To those (Lesson XVI.) whom you have seen this morning at my house.—To which people do you give money?—I give some to those to whom (Lesson XVI.) you give some.—Do you give any one money?—I do give some to



those who want any.—To which children does your father give cakes?—He gives some to those who are good.

## 116.

Have you received presents?—I have received some.—What presents have you received?—I have received fine presents.—Has your little brother received a present?—He has received several.—From whom has he received any?—He has received some from my father and from yours.—Do you come out of the garden?—I do not come out of the garden, but out of the house.—Where are you going to?—I am going into the garden.—Whence comes the Irishman?—He comes from the garden.—Does he come from the same garden from which (aus welchem) you come?—He does not come from the same.—From which garden does he come?—He comes from that of our old friend.—Whence comes your boy?—He comes from the play.—How much is that carriage worth?—It is worth five hundred crowns.—Is this book worth as much as that?—It is worth more.—How much is my horse worth?—It is worth as much as that of your friend.—Are your horses worth as much as those of the French?—They are not worth so much.—How much is that knife worth?—It is worth nothing.—Is your servant as good as mine?—He is better than yours.—Are you as good as your brother?—He is better than I.—Art thou as good as thy cousin?—I am as good as he.—Are we as good as our neighbours?—We are better than they.—Is your umbrella as good as mine?—It is not worth so much.—Why is it not worth so much as mine?—Because it is not so fine as yours.—Do you wish to sell your horse?—I do wish to sell it.—How much is it worth?—It is worth two hundred florins.—Do you wish to buy it?—I have bought one already.—Does your father intend to buy a horse?—He does intend to buy one, but not yours. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## FIFTY-THIRD LESSON.

## Drei und funfzigste Lektion.

*That* (conjunction).

What do you say?  
 I say that you have my book.  
 I tell you that I have it not.  
 Have you not had it?  
 I have had it, but I have it no longer.

*No more.*

Daß (See Rule of Syntax, Lesson XLIX.).

Was sagen Sie?  
 Ich sage, daß Sie mein Buch haben.  
 Ich sage Ihnen, daß ich es nicht habe.  
 Haben Sie es nicht gehabt?  
 Ich habe es gehabt, aber ich habe es nicht mehr.  
 Nicht mehr.

Where have you placed it?  
 I have placed it on the table.  
 Is it (does it lie) on the table?  
 It is (lies) on it.

Wo haben Sie es hingelegt?  
 Ich habe es auf den Tisch gelegt.  
 Liegt es auf dem Tische?  
 Es liegt darauf.

*Some, a little.*

Can you give me some water?

I can give you some.

Etwas (ein wenig).

Können Sie mir etwas Wasser geben?

Ich kann Ihnen welches geben.

*Must.**Necessary* (adjective).*To be necessary.*

Is it necessary to go to the market?

It is necessary to go thither.

What must one do in order to learn German?

One must study much.

What must he do?

He must go for a book.

What must I do?

Müssen, past part. gemußt.

Nöthig.

Nöthig seyn \*.

Muß man auf den Markt gehen?  
 Ist es nöthig auf den Markt zu gehen?

Man muß dahin gehen.  
 Es ist nöthig dahin zu gehen.

Was muß man thun, um deutsch zu lernen?

Man muß viel studiren.

Was muß er thun?

Er muß ein Buch holen.

Was muß ich thun?

*Still, silent.*

*To be sitting, been sitting.*

You must sit still.

*Still.*

*Sitzen* \* (takes *haben* for its auxiliary), *gesehen*.

*Sie müssen still sitzen.*

Have you been obliged to work much to learn German?

I have been obliged to work much.

*Haben Sie viel arbeiten müssen* (*Obs. Lesson XLVI.*), *um deutsch zu lernen?*

*Ich habe viel arbeiten müssen.*

*The competency, the subsistence, the livelihood.*

*To have wherewithal to live?*

Has he wherewithal to live?

He has.

What must I buy?

Some beef.

*The ox (neat).*

You must buy some beef.

*Das Auskommen.*

*Sein Auskommen haben* \*.

*Hat er sein Auskommen?*

*Er hat es.*

*Was muß ich kaufen?*

*Rindfleisch.*

*Das Rind.*

*Sie müssen Rindfleisch kaufen.*

What do you wish?

What do you want?

I want some money.

Do you want some money?

Do you wish to have some money?

I do want some.

Do you want much?

I do want much.

How much must you have?

How much do you want?

I only want a grosh.

Is that all you want?

That is all I want.

*Was wollen Sie?*

*Was brauchen Sie?*

*Was haben Sie nöthig?*

*Ich habe Geld nöthig.*

*Ich brauche Geld.*

*Brauchen Sie Geld?*

*Wollen Sie Geld haben?*

*Ich brauche welches.*

*Brauchen Sie dessen viel?*

*Ich brauche dessen viel.*

*Wieviel müssen Sie haben?*

*Wieviel brauchen Sie?*

*Ich brauche nur einen Groschen.*

*Ist das Alles, was Sie brauchen?*

*Das ist Alles, was ich brauche.*

*More.*

Do you not want more?

I do not want more.

What does he want?

He wants a coat.

Have you what you want?

*Mehr.*

*Brauchen Sie nicht mehr.*

*Ich brauche nicht mehr.*

*Was braucht er?*

*Er braucht ein Kleid.*

*Haben Sie, was Sie brauchen?*

I have what I want.  
 He has what he wants.  
 They have what they want.

Ich habe, was ich brauche.  
 Er hat, was er braucht.  
 Sie haben, was sie brauchen.

*To be obliged (shall, ought).*  
 What am I to do?  
 You must work.  
 Am I to go thither?  
 You may go thither.

Sollen, past part. gesollt.  
 Was soll ich thun?  
 Sie sollen arbeiten.  
 Soll ich hingehen?  
 Sie können hingehen.

## EXERCISES.

117.

Were (sind—gewesen) you yesterday at the physician's?—I was at his house (bei ihm).—What does he say?—He says that he cannot come.—Why does he not send his son?—His son does not go out (geht nicht aus, Lesson XXXVI. *Obs. C.*).—Why does he not go out (geht er nicht aus)?—Because he is ill.—Hast thou had my purse?—I tell you that I have not had it.—Hast thou seen it?—I have seen it.—Where is it?—It lies upon the chair.—Have you had my knife?—I tell you that I have had it.—Where have you placed it?—I have placed it upon the table.—Will you look for it?—I have already looked for it.—Have you found it?—I have not found it.—Have you sought (for) my gloves?—I have sought (for) them, but I have not found them.—Has your servant my hat?—He has had it, but he has it no longer.—Has he brushed it?—He has brushed it.—Are my books upon your table?—They are (lie) upon it.—Have you any wine?—I have but little, but I will give you what I have.—Will you give me some water?—I will give you some.—Have you much wine?—I have much.—Will you give me some?—I will give you some.—How much do I owe you?—You owe me nothing.—You are too kind (gütig).—Must I go for some wine?—You must go for some.—Shall I go to the ball?—You must go thither.—When must I go thither?—You must go thither this evening.—Must I go for the carpenter?—You must go for him.—Is it necessary to go to the market?—It is necessary to go thither.—What must one do in order to learn Russian?—One must study much.—Must one study much to learn German?—One must study much.—What shall I do?—You must buy a good book.—What is he to do?—He must sit still.—What are we to do?—You must work.—Must you work much, in order to learn the Arabic?—I must work much to learn it.—Does your brother not work?—He does not want to work.—Has he wherewithal to live?—He has.—Why must I go to the market?—You

must go thither to buy some beef.—Why must I work?—You must work, in order to get (*haben*) a competency.

118.

What do you want, Sir?—I want some cloth.—How much is that hat worth?—It is worth three crowns.—Do you want any stockings?—I want some.—How much are those stockings worth?—They are worth twelve kreutzers.—Is that all you want?—That is all.—Do you not want shoes?—I do not want any.—Dost thou want much money?—I want much.—How much must thou have?—I must have six crowns.—How much does your brother want?—He wants but six groshes.—Does he not want more?—He does not want more.—Does your cousin want more?—He does not want so much as I.—What do you want?—I want money and boots.—Have you now what you want?—I have what I want.—Has your brother what he wants?—He has what he wants.

## FIFTY-FOURTH LESSON.

## Hier und fünfzigste Section.

*To pay—paid.*

To pay a man for a horse.  
 To pay the tailor for the coat.  
 Do you pay the shoemaker for the shoes?  
 I pay him for them.  
 Does he pay you for the knives?  
 He pays me for them.

Bezahlen—bezahlt. (See *Obs. A. Lesson XLVII.*)

Einem Manne ein Pferd bezahlen.  
 Dem Schneider den Rock bezahlen.  
 Bezahlen Sie dem Schuhmacher die Schuhe?  
 Ich bezahle sie ihm.  
 Bezahlte er Ihnen für die Messer?  
 Er bezahlt mir dafür.

*Obs. A.* These examples show that the verb *bezahlen* governs the dative of the person, and the accusative of the thing. It may also be used with the preposition *für*, *for*, as in English. Ex. I pay him for the boots, *ich bezahle ihm für die Stiefel*. But taken figuratively, in the signification of *bestrafen*, to punish, it is sometimes construed with the accusative of the person, as in the following expressions: *warte, ich will Dich bezahlen*, wait, I shall pay (punish) you for it; *den habe ich schon bezahlt*, I have paid (punished) this man well.

Have you paid the shoemaker for the boots?  
 I have paid him for them.  
 I pay what I owe.  
 Have you paid for your book?  
 I have paid for it.  
 I have not yet paid for it.

Haben Sie dem Schuhmacher die Stiefel bezahlt?  
 Ich habe sie ihm bezahlt.  
 Ich bezahle, was ich schuldig bin.  
 Haben Sie Ihr Buch bezahlt?  
 Ich habe es bezahlt.  
 Ich habe es noch nicht bezahlt.

*To demand—demanded.*

*To ask—asked.*

*To beg of—begged of.*

*To pray—prayed.*

*To request—requested.*

} Verlangen—verlangt. (*Obs. A. Lesson XLVII.*)

| Ansprechen \*—angesprochen.

} Bitten \*—gebeten.

To ask one for money.  
 To beg money of some one.  
 To request money of any one.  
 What do you ask me for?  
 I ask you for nothing.  
 I beg some money of you.  
 He has begged some money of me.

Von Jemandem Geld verlangen.  
 Jemanden um Geld ansprechen \*.  
 Jemanden um Geld bitten \*.  
 Was verlangen Sie von mir?  
 Ich verlange nichts von Ihnen.  
 Ich spreche Sie um Geld an.  
 Er hat mich um Geld angesprochen.

<i>For.</i>	Um (a preposition governing the accusative).
Do you beg some money of him?	Sprechen Sie ihn um Geld an?
I beg some of him.	Ich erbitte mir welches von ihm.
To solicit any one to do a thing.	Etwas von Jemandem erbitten *.

<i>For it.</i>	Darum.
To ask him for it.	{ Ihn darum ansprechen *. { Es von ihm verlangen.
To ask him for them.	{ Ihn darum ansprechen *. { Sie von ihm verlangen.
I ask you for it.	{ Ich spreche Sie darum an. { Ich verlange es von Ihnen.
Do you ask me for anything?	Verlangen Sie Etwas von mir?
I ask you for the hat.	Ich bitte Sie um den Hut.
Do you ask me for the hat?	Bitten Sie mich um den Hut?
I ask you for it.	Ich bitte Sie darum.

<i>To speak of some one.</i>	Von Jemandem sprechen *.
Does one speak of that man?	Spricht man von diesem Manne?
One speaks of him.	Man spricht von ihm.
One does not speak of him.	Man spricht nicht von ihm.
Do they speak of my book?	Spricht man von meinem Buche?
They speak much of it.	Man spricht viel davon.
What do you say to it?	Was sagen Sie dazu (hierzu)?
I say he is right.	Ich sage, daß er Recht hat.

<i>Content, satisfied.</i>	Zufrieden.
<i>New.</i>	Neu.
To be content with any one.	Mit Jemandem zufrieden seyn *.
Are you content with this man?	Sind Sie mit diesem Manne zufrieden?
I am content with him.	Ich bin mit ihm zufrieden.

*Obs. B.* From *hier, here*, and *da, there*, compound adverbs are formed by means of certain prepositions governing the dative or accusative. In these adverbs *hier* and *da* stand instead of the three genders singular and plural, dative and accusative of the demonstrative pronoun: *dieser, diese, dieses* (*der, die, das*), which is never used with a preposition.

Are you content with your new coat?	Sind Sie mit Ihrem neuen Kleide zufrieden?
I am contented with it.	Ich bin damit zufrieden.
I am discontented with it.	Ich bin unzufrieden damit.
<i>Discontented.</i>	Unzufrieden.

Of what do they speak?

They speak of peace, of war, of  
your book.

Do they speak of peace?

They do speak of it.

Wovon spricht man?

Man spricht von dem Frieden, von  
dem Kriege, von Ihrem Buche.

Spricht man von dem Frieden?

Man spricht davon.

*Obs. C.* The adverb *wo*, *where*, like *hier* and *da* (See *Obs.* above), forms compound adverbs with certain prepositions governing the dative or accusative. In these, *wo* takes the place of the dative and accusative of the pronoun interrogative and relative *welcher*, *welche*, *welches*, or *was*.

With what are you content?

I am content with my book.

With whom are you satisfied?

I am satisfied with my master.

Womit sind Sie zufrieden?

Ich bin mit meinem Buche zufriede-  
ben.

Mit wem sind Sie zufrieden?

Ich bin mit meinem Lehrer zufriede-  
ben.

*To study—studied.*

Studiren—studirt. (See *Obs.*  
A. Lesson XLVII.)

*To correct—corrected.*

Verbessern—verbessert.

Korrigiren—korrigirt.

*To question, interrogate.*

Fragen (governs the accus.).

The uncle,

the gentleman, the lord,  
the master, the tutor, the  
preceptor, the professor,

the scholar,  
the pupil,  
the fee, wages, salary,  
the lesson,

the exercise,

der Oheim (is not softened in the  
plural);

der Herr;

der Lehrer;

der Schüler;

der Jüdling;

der Lohn (has no plur.);

die Section (a feminine noun,  
taking *en* in the plur.);

die Aufgabe (a feminine noun,  
taking *n* in the plur.);

Von Jemandem ein Geschenk be-  
kommen\*.

To receive a present from some  
one.

## EXERCISES.

119.

Have we what we want?—We have not what we want.—What do we want?—We want a fine house, a large garden, a beautiful carriage, pretty horses, several servants, and much money.—la



that all we want?—That is all we want.—What must I do?—You must write a letter.—To whom (Lesson XXXII.) must I write?—You must write to your friend.—Shall I go to the market?—You may go there.—Will you tell your father that I am waiting for him here?—I will tell him so (*Obs.* Lesson XLV.). What will you tell your father?—I will tell him that you are waiting for him here.—What wilt thou say to my servant?—I will say to him, that you have finished your letter.—Have you paid (for) your table?—I have paid (for) it.—Has your uncle paid for the book?—He has paid for it.—Have I paid the tailor for the clothes?—You have paid him for them.—Hast thou paid the merchant for the horse?—I have not yet paid him for it.—Have we paid for our gloves?—We have paid for them.—Has your cousin already paid for his boots?—He has not yet paid for them.—Does my brother pay you what he owes you?—He does pay it me.—Do you pay what you owe?—I do pay what I owe.—Have you paid (with the dative) the baker?—I have paid him.—Has your uncle paid the butcher for the meat?—He has paid him for it.—Have you paid your servant his wages?—I have paid them to him.—Has your master paid you your wages?—He has paid them to me.—When did he pay them to you?—He paid (*ḥat-bejaḥḥ*) them to me the day before yesterday.—What do you ask this man for?—I ask him for my book.—What does this boy beg of me?—He begs of you some money.—Do you ask me for anything?—I ask you for a crown.—Do you ask me for the bread?—I ask you for it.—Do the poor beg money of you?—They beg some of me.—Which man do you ask for money?—I ask him for some whom you ask for some.—Which merchants do you ask for gloves?—I ask those who live in William Street (Lesson L.) for some.—Which joiner do you ask for chairs?—I ask that one whom you know for some.—What do you ask the baker for?—I ask him for some bread.—Do you ask the butchers for some meat?—I do ask them for some.—Dost thou ask me for the stick?—I do ask thee for it.—Does he ask thee for the book?—He does ask me for it.—What have you asked the Englishman for?—I have asked him for my leather trunk.—Has he given it you?—He has given it me.

## 120.

Whom have you asked for some sugar?—I have asked the merchant for some.—Of whom have the poor begged some money?—They have begged some of the noblemen.—Of which noblemen have they begged some?—They have begged some of those whom you know.—Whom do you pay for the meat?—I pay the butchers for it.—Whom does your brother pay for his *boots*?—He pays the shoemakers for them.—Whom have we *paid for the bread*?—We have paid our bakers for it.—Of whom

have they (man) spoken?—They have spoken of your friend.—Have they not spoken of the physicians?—They have not spoken of them.—Do they not speak of the man of whom (von welchem) we have spoken?—They do speak of him.—Have they spoken of the noblemen?—They have spoken of them.—Have they spoken of those of whom we speak?—They have not spoken of those of whom we speak, but they have spoken of others.—Have they spoken of our children or of those of our neighbours?—They have neither spoken of ours nor of those of our neighbours.—Which children have been spoken of?—Those of our preceptor have been spoken of.—Do they speak of my book?—They do speak of it.—Of what do you speak?—We speak of war.—Do you not speak of peace?—We do not speak of it.—Are you content with your pupils?—I am content with them.—How does my brother study?—He studies well.—How many lessons have you studied?—I have already studied fifty-four.—Is your master satisfied with his scholar?—He is satisfied with him.—Has your master received a present?—He has received several.—From whom has he received presents?—He has received some from his pupils.—Has he received any from your father?—He has received some (both) from mine and from that of my friend.—Is he satisfied with the presents which he has received?—He is satisfied with them.—How many exercises hast thou already done?—I have already done twenty-one.—Is thy master satisfied with thee?—He says that he is satisfied with me.—And what dost thou say?—I say that I am satisfied with him.—How old art thou?—I am not quite ten years old.—Dost thou already learn German?—I do already learn it.—Does thy brother know German?—He does not know it.—Why does he not know it?—Because he has not learnt it.—Why has he not learnt it?—Because he has not had time.—Is your father at home?—No, he has departed, but my brother is at home.—Where is your father gone to?—He is gone to England.—Have you sometimes gone thither?—I have never gone thither.—Do you intend going to Germany this summer?—I do intend going thither.—Have you the intention of staying there long?—I have the intention of staying there during the summer.—How long does your brother remain at home?—Till twelve o'clock.—Have you had your gloves dyed?—I have had them dyed.—What have you had them dyed?—I have had them dyed brown.—Will you tell your father that I have been here?—I will tell him so.—Will you not wait until he comes back again?—I cannot wait. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## FIFTY-FIFTH LESSON.

## Fünf und funfzigste Section.

---

<i>To eat—eaten.</i>	Essen*—gegessen.
Thou eatest—he eats.	Du issest—er isset or ist.
<i>To dine (eat dinner)—dined.</i>	{ Zu Mittage essen—zu Mittage gegessen.
	{ Speisen—gespeiset or gespeist.
At what o'clock do you dine ?	{ Um wieviel Uhr speisen Sie ?
	{ Um welche Zeit essen Sie zu Mittag ?
I dine at five o'clock.	I Ich speise um fünf (um fünf Uhr).

---

I have dined.	I Ich habe zu Mittage gegessen.
I have dined earlier than you.	I Ich habe früher gespeist als Sie.

---

Have you already breakfasted ?	Haben Sie schon gefrühstückt ?
The dinner.	Das Mittagessen.
The breakfast.	Das Frühstück.

---

<i>To eat supper (to sup).</i>	Zu Abend essen *, Abendbrod essen *.
The supper.	Das Abendessen, das Abendbrod.
I wish to eat supper.	I Ich will Abendbrod essen.
I have supped late.	{ Ich habe spät zu Abend gegessen.
	{ Ich habe spät Abendbrod gegessen.

---

<i>After.</i>	Nach (a preposition governing the dative).
After you.	Nach Ihnen.
After me.	Nach mir.
After him.	Nach ihm.
After my brother.	Nach meinem Bruder.
I have breakfasted after him.	I Ich habe nach ihm gefrühstückt.

---

*To hold—held.*  
 Thou holdest—he holds.  
 Will you hold my stick?

Halten\*—gehalten.  
 Du hältst—er hält.  
 Wollen Sie meinen Stock halten?

*To try—tried.*

*To taste—tasted.*

Will you try to do that?  
 I have tried to do it.  
 You must try to do it better.

Have you tasted that wine?

I have tasted it.

{ Probiren,—probiert. (*Obs. A.*  
 Lesson XLVII.)  
 Versuchen—versucht.  
 { Kosten—gekostet.  
 Versuchen—versucht.  
 Wollen Sie versuchen, das zu thun?  
 Ich habe versucht, es zu thun.  
 Sie müssen versuchen, es besser zu  
 machen.  
 Haben Sie diesen Wein gekostet  
 (versucht)?  
 Ich habe ihn gekostet (versucht).

Are you looking for any one?  
 Whom are you looking for?  
 I am looking for a brother of  
 mine.

An uncle of mine.  
 A neighbour of yours.  
 A relation of mine.

Suchen Sie Jemanden?  
 Wen suchen Sie?  
 † Ich suche einen meiner Brüder.

Acc. Sing. GEN. Plur.  
 † Einen meiner Oheime.  
 † Einen Ihrer Nachbarn.  
 † Einen meiner Verwandten.

(See Method, Part II. *Obs. H.* p. 49.)

*Obs.* Adjectives taken substantively are declined like other adjectives. Ex. der Verwandte, the relation; gen. des Verwandten, of the relation, &c.; der Bediente, the servant; gen. des Bedienten, of the servant, &c.; ein Verwandter, a relation; ein Bedienter, a servant, &c. (See Introductory Book, p. 62.)

The parents (father and mother).  
 He tries to see an uncle of his.

A cousin of his.  
 A friend of ours.  
 A neighbour of theirs.  
 He tries to see you.  
 Does he try to see me?

die Eltern.  
 Er sucht einen seiner Oheime zu  
 sehen.  
 † Einen seiner Vetter.  
 † Einen unserer Freunde.  
 † Einen ihrer Nachbarn.  
 Er sucht Sie zu sehen.  
 Sucht er mich zu sehen?

*To inquire after some one.*  
 After whom do you inquire?  
 I inquire after a friend of mine.

The acquaintance.  
 Whom do you look for?  
 I am looking for an acquaintance  
 of mine.  
 I ask him for a piece of bread.

Nach Jemandem fragen.  
 Nach wem fragen Sie?  
 Ich frage nach einem meiner  
 Freunde.  
 Der Bekannte.  
 Wen suchen Sie?  
 Ich suche einen meiner Bekannten.  
 Ich bitte ihn um ein Stück Brod.

**Rule 1.** The preposition *of*, which in English stands between two substantives, when the second determines the substance of the first, is never expressed in German. **Ex.**

A piece of bread.  
 A glass of water.  
 A sheet of paper.  
 Three sheets of paper.  
 The piece.  
 the sheet,  
 the small piece (little bit),  
 the little book.

† Ein Stück Brod.  
 † Ein Glas Wasser.  
 † Ein Bogen Papier.  
 † Drei Bogen Papier.  
 das Stück;  
 der Bogen;  
 das Stückchen;  
 das Büchlein.

**Rule 2.** All diminutives terminating in *chen* and *lein* are neuter, and those terminating in *ling* are masculine. To form diminutives from German substantives, the syllable *chen* or *lein* is added, and the radical vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, are softened into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*. **Ex.**

The small house,  
 the small picture,  
 the little heart,  
 the little child,  
 the little boy,  
 the suckling (baby),  
 the favourite, darling,  
 the apprentice,

das Häuschen;  
 das Bildchen;  
 das Herzchen;  
 das Kindlein;  
 das Knäblein, Knäbchen;  
 der Säugling;  
 der Liebling;  
 der Lehrling.

## EXERCISES.

### 121.

Have you already dined?—Not yet.—At what o'clock do you dine?—I dine at six o'clock.—At whose house (*bei wem*, Less. XXVIII.) do you dine?—I dine at the house of a friend of mine.—With whom (*bei wem*) did you dine yesterday?—I dined (*habe-gespeist*) with a relation of mine.—What have you eaten? ~~What~~ We have eaten good bread, beef, apples, and cakes.—What

have you drunk?—We have drunk good wine, good beer, and good cider.—Where does your uncle dine to-day?—He dines with (bei) us.—At what o'clock does your father eat supper?—He eats supper at nine o'clock.—Do you eat supper earlier than he?—I eat supper later than he.—At what o'clock do you breakfast?—I breakfast at ten o'clock.—At what o'clock did you eat supper yesterday?—We ate (haben—gegessen) supper late.—What did you eat?—We ate only a little meat and a small piece of bread.—When did your brother sup?—He supped after my father.—Where are you going to?—I am going to a relation of mine, in order to breakfast with him.—Do you dine early?—We dine late.—Art thou willing to hold my gloves?—I am willing to hold them.—Is he willing to hold my cane?—He is willing to hold it.—Who has held your hat?—My servant has held it.—Will you try to speak?—I will try.—Has your little brother ever tried to do exercises?—He has tried.—Have you ever tried to make a hat?—I have never tried to make one.—Have we tasted that beer?—We have not tasted it yet.—Which wine do you wish to taste?—I wish to taste that which you have tasted.—Have the Poles tasted that brandy?—They have tasted it.—Have they drunk much of it (davon)?—They have not drunk much of it.—Will you taste this tobacco?—I have tasted it already.—How do you find it?—I find it good.—Why do you not taste that cider?—Because I am not thirsty.—Why does your friend not taste this meat?—Because he is not hungry.

## 122.

Whom are you looking for?—I am looking for the man who has sold a horse to me.—Is your relation looking for any one?—He is looking for an acquaintance of his.—Are we looking for any one?—We are looking for a neighbour of ours.—Whom dost thou look for?—I look for a friend of ours.—Are you looking for a servant of mine?—No, I am looking for one of mine.—Have you tried to speak to your uncle?—I have tried to speak to him.—Have you tried to see my father?—I have tried to see him.—Have you been able (Lesson L.) to see him?—I have not been able to see him.—After whom do you inquire?—I inquire after your father.—After whom dost thou inquire?—I inquire after the tailor.—Does this man inquire after any one?—He inquires after you.—Do they inquire after you?—They do inquire after me.—Do they inquire after me?—They do not inquire after you, but after a friend of yours.—Do you inquire after the physician?—I do inquire after him.—What do you ask me for?—I ask you for some meat.—What does your little brother ask me for?—He asks you for some wine and some water.—Do you

ask me for a sheet of paper?—I do ask you for one.—How many sheets of paper does your friend ask for?—He asks for two.—Dost thou ask me for the little book?—I do ask you for it.—What has your cousin asked for?—He has asked for a few apples and a small piece of bread.—Has he not breakfasted yet?—He has breakfasted, but he is still hungry.—What does your uncle ask for?—He asks for a glass of wine.—What does the Pole ask for?—He asks for a small glass of brandy?—Has he not already drunk?—He has already drunk, but he is still thirsty.

## FIFTY-SIXTH LESSON.

## Sechß und funfzigste Lektion.

I see the man who has my money.	Ich sehe den Mann, welcher mein Geld hat.
I see the child who plays.	Ich sehe das Kind, welches spielt.
I perceive him who is coming.	Ich bemerke den, welcher kommt.
I see him who owes me money.	Ich sehe den, welcher mir Geld schuldig ist.
Do you perceive the soldiers who are going into the storehouse?	Bemerken Sie die Soldaten, welche nach dem Magazin gehen?
	Bemerken Sie die Soldaten, welche in das Magazin (hinein) gehen?
I do perceive those who are going into it.	Ich bemerke die, welche dahin gehen.
	Ich bemerke die, welche hinein gehen.

*Also.**To perceive—perceived.*

Have you perceived any one?

I have perceived no one.

Auch.

Bemerken—bemerkt.

Haben Sie Jemanden bemerkt?

Ich habe Niemanden bemerkt.

The soldier,

To go to the store-house.

| der Soldat<sup>1</sup>.

{ Nach dem Magazin gehen\*.

{ In das Magazin (hinein) gehen\*.

*Obs. A.* Direction towards a place or towards a country is expressed by the preposition nach with the dative.

*Willingly.*

To like.

To like to see.

To like to study.

To like wine.

He likes a large hat.

Do you like to see my brother?

I do like to see him.

I like to do it.

Do you like water?

No, I like wine.

Gern. (See page 176, Method, Part II.)

† Gern haben\*.

† Gern sehen\*.

† Gern studiren.

† Gern Wein trinken\*.

† Er hat gern einen großen Hut.

† Sehen Sie meinen Bruder gern?

† Ich sehe ihn gern.

† Ich thue es gern.

† Trinken Sie gern Wasser?

† Nein, ich trinke gern Wein.

<sup>1</sup> Substantives derived from foreign languages and terminating in: ant, arch, at, et, ent, ist, it, og, add en to the genitive singular and to all the other cases, singular and plural. (See "Introductory Book.")



Fowl,  
the fish,  
fish,  
the pike,  
pike,

Huhn;  
der Fisch;  
Fische (plur.);  
der Ficht;  
Fichte (plur.).

To like something.  
I like fish.  
He likes fowl.  
I do not like fish.

† Ein Freund von Etwas seyn\*.  
† Ich bin ein Freund von Fischen.  
† Er ist gern Huhn.  
† Ich bin kein Freund von Fischen.

*By heart.*

*To learn by heart.*

Do your scholars like to learn by heart?  
They do not like learning by heart.  
Have you learnt your exercises by heart?  
We have learnt them.

Auswendig.  
Auswendig lernen.  
Lernen Ihre Schüler gern auswendig?  
Sie lernen nicht gern auswendig.  
Haben Sie Ihre Aufgaben auswendig gelernt?  
Wir haben sie gelernt.

Once a day.  
Thrice or three times a month.

Einmal des Tags.  
Dreimal des Monats.

*Obs. B.* The genitive is used in reply to the questions: wann? when? wie oft? how often? in speaking of something that takes place habitually and at a determinate period.

Six times a year.  
How many times a day does he eat?  
He eats three times a day.  
Do you eat as often as he?  
When do you go out?  
We go out early in the morning.

Sechsmal des Jahres.  
Wie vielmal (wie oft) ist er des Tags?  
Er ist dreimal des Tags.  
Essen Sie so oft wie er?  
Wann gehen Sie aus?  
Wir gehen des Morgens früh aus.

*If.*

I intend paying you if I receive my money.  
Do you intend to buy wood?  
I do intend to buy some, if they pay me what they owe me.

Wenn. (See Rule of Syntax, Lesson XLIX.)  
Ich bin gesonnen, Ihnen zu bezahlen, wenn ich mein Geld bekomme.  
Gedenken Sie Holz zu kaufen?  
Ich gedenke welches zu kaufen, wenn man mir bezahlt, was man mir schuldig ist.

*How is the weather?*  
*What kind of weather is it?*

Was für Wetter ist es?

It is fine weather at present.	Es ist jetzt schönes Wetter.
How was the weather yesterday?	} Was für Wetter war es gestern?
What kind of weather was it yesterday?	

*Obs. C.* War, was, is the imperfect of the auxiliary verb *seyn*\*, to be; we shall speak of it hereafter. (See Lesson LIX.)

Was it fine weather yesterday?	War es gestern schönes Wetter.
It was bad weather yesterday.	Es war gestern schlechtes Wetter.
It was fine weather this morning.	Es war diesen Morgen schönes Wetter.
Is it warm?	Ist es warm?
It is warm.	Es ist warm.
	Sehr.
It is very warm.	Es ist sehr warm.
It is cold.	Es ist kalt.
It is very cold.	Es ist sehr kalt.
It is neither cold nor warm.	Es ist weder kalt noch warm.

Dark, obscure.	finster;
dusky, gloomy,	dunkel;
clear, light,	hell.
It is gloomy in your shop.	Es ist dunkel in Ihrem Laden.
Is it gloomy in his room?	Ist es dunkel in seinem Zimmer?
It is gloomy there.	Es ist dunkel darin. (See <i>Obs. A.</i> and <i>C. Lesson XXXI.</i> )

The shop,	der Laden;
moist, humid, damp,	feucht;
dry,	trocken.
Is the weather damp?	Ist es feuchtes Wetter?
The weather is not damp.	Das Wetter ist nicht feucht.
It is dry weather.	Es ist trockenes Wetter.
The weather is too dry.	Das Wetter ist zu trocken.
It is moonlight (moonshine).	Es ist Mondschein.
We have too much sun.	Wir haben zu viel Sonne.
We have no rain.	Wir haben keinen Regen.

The moonlight, moonshine,	der Mondschein;
the rain,	der Regen;
the sun,	die Sonne (a feminine noun).
Of what do you speak?	Wovon sprechen Sie?
We speak of the weather.	Wir sprechen vom (von dem) Wetter.
The weather,	das Wetter.

## EXERCISES.

## 123.

Do you perceive the man who is coming?—I do not perceive him.—Do you perceive the soldier's child?—I perceive it.—What do you perceive?—I perceive a great mountain and a small house.—Do you not perceive the wood?—I perceive it also.—Dost thou perceive the soldiers who are going to the market?—I do perceive them.—Do you perceive the men who are going into the garden?—I do not perceive those who are going into the garden, but those who are going to the market.—Do you see the man to whom I have lent money?—I do not see the one to whom you have lent, but the one who has lent you some.—Dost thou see the children who are studying?—I do not see those who are studying, but those who are playing.—Do you perceive anything?—I perceive nothing.—Have you perceived the house of my parents?—I have perceived it.—Do you like a large hat?—I do not like a large hat, but a large umbrella.—What do you like to do?—I like to write.—Do you like to see those little boys?—I do like to see them.—Do you like beer?—I like it.—Does your brother like cider?—He does not like it.—What do the soldiers like?—They like wine and water.—Dost thou like wine or water?—I like both (*beides*).—Do these children like to study?—They like to study and to play.—Do you like to read and to write?—I like to read and to write.—How many times do you eat a day?—Four times.—How often do your children drink a day?—They drink several times a day.—Do you drink as often as they?—I drink oftener.—Do you often go to the theatre?—I go thither sometimes.—How often do you go thither (in) a month?—I go thither but once a month.—How many times a year does your cousin go to the ball?—He goes thither twice a year.—Do you go thither as often as he?—I never go thither.—Does your cook often go to the market?—He goes thither every morning.

## 124.

Do you often go to my uncle?—I go to him six times a year.—Do you like fowl?—I do like fowl, but I do not like fish.—What do you like?—I like a piece of bread and a glass of wine.—What fish does your brother like?—He likes pike.—Do you learn by heart?—I do not like learning by heart.—Do your pupils like to learn by heart?—They like to study, but they do not like learning by heart.—How many exercises do they do a day?—They only do two, but they do them well.—Do you like coffee or tea?—I like both.—Do you read the letter which I have *written to you* (Rule of Syntax, Lesson XLIX.)?—I do read it.—Do you understand it?—I do understand it.—Do you under-

stand the man who speaks to you?—I do not understand him.—Why do you not understand him?—I do not understand him because he speaks too badly.—Does this man know German?—He does know it, but I do not know it.—Why do you not learn it?—I have no time to learn it.—Have you received a letter?—I have received one.—Will you answer it?—I am going to (id will) answer it.—When did you receive it?—I received it at ten o'clock in the morning.—Are you satisfied with it?—I am not dissatisfied with it.—What does your friend write to you?—He writes to me that he is ill (Rule of Syntax, Lesson XLIX.)—Does he ask you for anything?—He asks me for money.—Why does he ask you for money?—Because he wants some.—What do you ask me for?—I ask you for the money which you owe me.—Will you wait a little?—I cannot wait.—Why can you not wait?—I cannot wait because I intend to depart to-day.—At what o'clock do you intend to set out?—I intend setting out at five o'clock in the evening.—Do you go to Germany?—I do go thither.—Are you not going to Holland?—I am not going thither.—How far has your brother gone?—He has gone as far as London.

## 125.

Do you intend going to the theatre this evening?—I do intend going thither, if you go.—Has your father the intention to buy that horse?—He has the intention to buy it, if he receives his money.—Has your cousin the intention to go to England?—He has the intention to go thither, if they pay him what they owe him.—Do you intend going to the ball?—I do intend going thither, if my friend goes.—Does your brother intend to study German?—He does intend to study it, if he finds a good master. How is the weather to-day?—It is very fine weather.—Was it fine weather yesterday?—It was bad weather yesterday.—How was the weather this morning?—It was bad weather, but now it is (ift est) fine weather.—Is it warm?—It is very warm.—Is it not cold?—It is not cold.—Is it warm or cold?—It is neither warm nor cold.—Did you go to the country (Lesson XXXII.) the day before yesterday?—I did not go thither.—Why did you not go thither?—I did not go thither, because it was bad weather.—Do you intend going into the country to-morrow?—I do intend going thither, if the weather is fine.

## 126.

Is it light in your room?—It is not light in it.—Do you wish to work in mine?—I do wish to work in it.—Is it light there?—It is very light there.—Can you work in your small room (Lesson LV.)?—I cannot work there.—Why can you not work there?—

I cannot work there, because it is too dark.—Where is it too dark?—In my small room.—Is it light in that hole?—It is dark there.—Is it dry in the street (Lesson L.)?—It is damp there.—Is the weather damp?—The weather is not damp.—Is the weather dry?—It is too dry.—Is it moonlight?—It is not (fein) moonlight, it is very damp.—Why is the weather dry?—Because we have too much sun and no rain.—When do you go into the country?—I intend going thither to-morrow, if the weather is fine, and if we have no rain.—Of what does your uncle speak?—He speaks of the fine weather.—Do you speak of the rain?—We do speak of it.—Of what do those men speak?—They speak of fair and bad weather.—Do they not speak of the wind?—They do also speak of it (auch davon).—Dost thou speak of my uncle?—I do not speak of him.—Of whom dost thou speak?—I speak of thee and thy parents.—Do you inquire after any one?—I inquire after your uncle (Lesson LV.); is he at home?—No, he is at his best friend's. (See Lesson XLI. and end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## FIFTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

## Sieben und funfzigste Section.

## OF PASSIVE VERBS.

IN English, the past participle is joined to the verb *to be*, either to form the passive voice, or as an adjective to qualify the subject. In the first instance it must be translated by *werden* \*, and in the second by *seyn* \*.

In German we distinguish, as in Latin: *das Haus ist gebaut, domus ædificata est*, from *das Haus wird gebaut, domus ædificatur*; *die Briefe sind geschrieben, litteræ scriptæ sunt*, from *die Briefe werden geschrieben, litteræ scribuntur*.

To ascertain whether a past participle stands as an adjective or not, one has only to change the construction into the active voice; if in that voice the tense is the same as in the passive, the participle is a passive participle, and the auxiliary *to be* must be translated by *werden* \*; but if the tense is not the same, it then stands as a mere adjective, and the auxiliary *to be* must be translated by *seyn* \*. Ex. *Ich werde geliebt*, I am loved, is in the same tense, when I say: *er liebt mich*, he loves me; but *der Spiegel ist zerbrochen*, the looking-glass is broken, is not in the same tense, when I say: *er hat den Spiegel zerbrochen*, he has broken the looking-glass. Here *zerbrochen* is nothing but an adjective, which qualifies the subject *Spiegel*, looking-glass.

I am loved.	Ich werde geliebt.
Thou art guided.	Du wirst geleitet.
He is praised.	Er wird gelobt.
We are heard.	Wir werden gehört.
They are blamed.	Sie werden getadelt.
You are punished.	{ Ihr werdet gestraft.
	{ Sie werden gestraft.
To praise, to blame.	loben, tadeln.

By me—by us.	Von mir—von uns.
By thee—by you.	Von Dir—von Euch (Ihnen).
By him—by them.	Von ihm—von ihnen.

I am loved by him.	Ich werde von ihm geliebt.
Who is punished?	Wer wird gestraft?
The naughty boy is punished.	Der unartige Knabe wird gestraft.

By whom is he punished?  
He is punished by his father.

Which man is praised, and which  
is blamed?

The skilful man is praised, and  
the awkward blamed.

Which boys are rewarded, and  
which are punished?

Those that are assiduous are re-  
warded, and those that are idle  
punished.

We are loved by the captain's  
sons, you are despised by  
them.

You are praised by our bro-  
thers, and we are despised by  
them.

Von wem wird er gestraft?  
Er wird von seinem Vater ge-  
straft.

Welcher Mann wird gelobt, und  
welcher wird getadelt?

Der geschickte Mann wird gelobt  
und der ungeschickte getadelt.

Welche Knaben werden belohnt,  
und welche werden bestraft?

Diejenigen welche fleißig sind, wer-  
den belohnt, und die, welche träge  
sind, bestraft.

Wir werden von den Söhnen des  
Hauptmanns geliebt; Ihr wer-  
det von ihnen verachtet.

Sie werden von unsern Brüdern  
gelobt, und wir werden von ihnen  
verachtet.

Good—naughty.

Skilful, diligent—awkward.

Assiduous—idle.

Ignorant.

The idler, the lazy fellow.

To reward—rewarded.

To esteem.

To despise.

To hate.

Artig—unartig. (See Note 6, Les-  
son XLI.)

Geschickt—ungeschickt.

Fleißig—träge (faul).

Unwissend.

der Faulenzer.

Belohnen—belohnt (See *Obs. A.*  
Lesson XLVII.)

Achten, schätzen.

Verachten.

Hassen.

Is your book torn?

It is not torn.

Are your children good?

They are very good.

Is the enemy beaten?

He is beaten.

The enemies are beaten.

These children are loved, be-  
cause they are studious and  
good.

Ist Ihr Buch zerrissen?

Es ist nicht zerrissen.

Sind Ihre Kinder artig?

Sie sind sehr artig.

Ist der Feind geschlagen?

Er ist geschlagen.

Die Feinde sind geschlagen.

Diese Kinder werden geliebt, weil  
sie fleißig und artig sind. (See  
Note 6, Lesson XLI.)

## EXERCISES.

127.

Are you loved by your uncle?—I am loved by him.—Is your brother loved by him?—He is loved by him.—By whom am I loved?—Thou art loved by thy parents.—Are we loved?—You are loved.—By whom are we loved?—You are loved by your friends.—Are those gentlemen loved?—They are loved.—By whom are they loved?—They are loved by us and by their good friends.—By whom is the blind man led?—He is led by me.—Where do you lead him to?—I lead him home.—By whom are we blamed?—We are blamed by our enemies.—Why are we blamed by them?—Because they do not love us.—Are you punished by your tutor?—We are not punished by him, because we are good and studious.—Are we heard?—We are (es, Lesson XLV.)—By whom are we heard?—We are heard by our neighbours.—Is the master heard by his pupils?—He is heard by them.—Which children are praised?—Those that are good.—Which are punished?—Those that are idle and naughty.—Are you praised or blamed?—We are neither praised nor blamed.—Is our friend loved by his masters?—He is loved and praised by them, because he is studious and good; but his brother is despised by his, because he is naughty and idle.—Is he sometimes punished?—He is (with es) every morning and every evening.—Are you sometimes punished?—I am (es) never; I am loved and rewarded by my good masters.—Are these children never punished?—They are (es) never, because they are studious and good; but those are so (es) very often, because they are idle and naughty.

128.

Who is praised and rewarded?—Skilful people (teute) are praised, esteemed, and rewarded, but the ignorant are blamed and despised.—Who is loved and who is hated?—He who is studious and good is loved, and he who is idle and naughty is hated.—Must one be good in order to be loved?—One must be so.—What must one do in order to be loved?—One must be good and assiduous.—What must one do in order to be rewarded?—One must be skilful and study much.—Why are those children loved?—They are loved because they are good.—Are they better than we?—They are not better, but more studious than you.—Is your brother as assiduous as mine?—He is as assiduous as he; but your brother is better than mine.—Do you know anything new?—I do not know anything new.—What does your cousin say new?—He says nothing new.—Do they not speak of war?—They do not speak of it.—Of what (Obs. C. Lesson LIV.) do they speak?—They speak of peace.—What do they say?—



They say that the enemy is beaten.—Are you understood by your pupils?—I am understood by them.—Dost thou often receive presents?—I do receive some if I am good.—Are you often rewarded?—We are rewarded if we study well, and if we are diligent.—Has your master the intention of rewarding you?—He has the intention of doing so if we study well.—What does he intend to give you if you study well?—He intends giving us a book.—Has he already given you a book?—He has already given us one.

## 129.

Have you dined already?—I have dined already, but I am still hungry.—Has your little brother drunk already?—He has drunk already, but he is still thirsty.—What must we do in order to be skilful?—You must work much.—Must we sit still in order to study?—You must listen to what the master tells you.—Do you intend to eat supper to-day?—I do intend to dine before I eat supper.—At what o'clock do you dine?—I dine at four and eat supper at nine o'clock.—Have you seen my cousin?—I have seen him.—What has he said?—He has said that he does not wish to see you (*sehen will*).—Why does he not wish to see me?—He does not wish to see you, because he does not like you.—Why does he not like me?—Because you are naughty.—Will you give me a sheet of paper?—Why (*Waszu*) do you want paper?—I want some to write a letter.—To whom (*Lesson XXXII.*) do you wish to write?—I wish to write to the man by whom (*von wem*) I am loved.—After whom do you inquire?—I inquire after no one. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## FIFTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

## Acht und funfzigste Section.

## OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

THESE verbs having no determinate subject, are only conjugated in the third person singular, by means of the indefinite pronoun *es*, it. Ex.

<i>To rain—it rains.</i>	Regnen— <i>es</i> regnet.
<i>To snow—it snows.</i>	Schneien— <i>es</i> schneiet.
Does it thunder?	Donnert <i>es</i> ?
It does thunder.	<i>Es</i> donnert.
Is it foggy?	Ist <i>es</i> nebelig?
Does the sun shine?	Ist <i>es</i> Sonnenschein?
The sun shines.	{ <i>Es</i> ist Sonnenschein.
	{ Wir haben Sonnenschein.
It thunders loud.	<i>Es</i> donnert heftig.
Foggy,	nebelig;
the fog,	der Nebel;
hard, violent.	heftig.
<hr/>	
<i>To shine—shone.</i>	Scheinen*—geschiehen.
<i>To thunder.</i>	Donnern.
The sun does not shine.	Die Sonne scheint nicht.
The sun is in my eyes.	† Die Sonne scheint mir ins Gesicht.
<hr/>	
The face,	das Gesicht;
the thunder,	der Donner;
the snow,	der Schnee;
the sunshine,	der Sonnenschein;
the parasol.	der Sonnenschirm.
Does it lighten?	Bleibt <i>es</i> ?
It does lighten.	<i>Es</i> blizt.
<hr/>	
<i>To hail.</i>	Hageln, schloßen.
The hail,	der Hagel.
It hails.	{ <i>Es</i> hagelt.
	{ <i>Es</i> schloßt.
It rains very hard.	<i>Es</i> regnet sehr stark.
It lightens much	<i>Es</i> blizt sehr.

Does it snow?  
It does snow much.  
It hails much.

Schneiet es?  
Es schneiet sehr.  
Es hagelt sehr.

*Obs. A.* There are some impersonal verbs, which relate to a person; they govern the dative or accusative, and instead of: *ich bin hungrig*, (Lesson VII.) one may say: *es hungert mich*, I am hungry; for the verb *hungern*<sup>1</sup>, to be hungry, governs the accusative.

*To be thirsty.*

*To be sleepy.*

Art thou sleepy?  
I am not sleepy, but hungry.

Is your brother thirsty?  
He is thirsty.  
He is not thirsty, but sleepy.

Dursten.

Schlâfern.

Schlâfert es Dich?

Es schlâfert mich nicht; aber es hungert mich.

Durstet es Ihren Bruder?

Es durstet ihn.

Es durstet ihn nicht; aber es schlâfert ihn.

*Obs. B.* The case of the verb may be placed before the impersonal verb, but then the indefinite pronoun *es* must be suppressed. For instance, instead of: *es hungert mich*, one may say: *mich hungert*, I am hungry; but if the sentence is interrogative, the indefinite pronoun *es* must not be omitted.

Are you sleepy?

We are sleepy.

Are those men hungry?

They are hungry.

Who is thirsty?

I am very thirsty.

Has your cousin been thirsty?

He has been thirsty.

Schlâfert es Sie?

Es schlâfert uns.

Uns schlâfert.

Hungert es diese Männer?

Es hungert sie.

Sie hungert.

Wen durstet es?

Es durstet mich sehr.

Mich durstet sehr.

Hat es Ihren Vetter gedurstet?

Es hat ihn gedurstet.

Ihn hat gedurstet.

Where has he gone to?

He has gone to Vienna.

Is it good travelling?

It is bad travelling.

Wohin ist er gereis't?

Er ist nach Wien gereis't.

Ist es gut reisen?

Es ist schlecht reisen.

<sup>1</sup> *hungern*, in the signification of *to fast*, is neuter, and follows the conjugation of neuter verbs.

In the winter.	Im Winter.
In the summer.	Im Sommer.
Is it good travelling in the winter?	Ist es gut reisen im Winter?
It is bad travelling in the winter.	Es ist schlecht reisen im Winter.
The spring,	der Frühling;
the autumn,	der Herbst.
<hr/>	
To ride in a carriage.	Fahren* (in this signification takes seyn* for its auxiliary <sup>1</sup> ).
Ridden in a carriage.	Gefahren.
To ride on horseback.	Reiten* (takes seyn* for its auxi- liary).
Ridden on horseback.	Geritten.
To go on foot.	Zu Fuß gehen*.
Do you like to go on horseback?	† Reiten Sie gern.
I like to ride in a carriage.	† Ich fahre gern.
Where is the bailiff gone to (on horseback)?	Wo ist der Amtmann hingeritten?
He is gone (on horseback) to the forest.	Er ist in den Wald geritten.
When does your cousin go to Berlin?	Wann geht Ihr Vetter nach Berlin?
He goes thither this winter.	Er geht diesen Winter dahin.
I intend going this spring to Dresden.	Ich bin gesonnen diesen Frühling nach Dresden zu reisen.
Where is your uncle?	Wo ist Ihr Oheim?
He is in Berlin.	Er ist in Berlin.
He is at Berlin.	Er ist zu Berlin.

**Rule.** The preposition *zu* or *in* is used to express rest in a place or country, and the preposition *nach* motion or direction towards a place or country. *Nach* is particularly used before names of towns or countries (Lesson LVI.); but the preposition *zu* must be made use of to express motion towards a person. (Lesson XXVIII.)

The two prepositions *zu* and *in* answer the question *wo?* and *nach* the question *wohin?* as is seen by the above examples.

Is it good living in Paris?	}	Ist es gut leben in Paris?
Is the living good in Paris?		
It is good living there.	}	Es ist gut leben da.
The living is good there.		

<sup>1</sup> When the verb *fahren*\* signifies *to move anything by a carriage*, it is active, and takes *haben*\* for its auxiliary. (See Obs. D. page 86, *Method*, Part II.)

Is the living dear in London?	}	Ist es theuer leben in London?
Is it dear living in London?		
The living is dear there.		

Is it windy? Does the wind blow?	}	Ist es windig? Es ist windig, der Wind geht. Es geht ein starker Wind.
It is windy. The wind blows.		
It is very windy. The wind blows hard.		

Is it stormy?	}	Ist es stürmisch? Ist es stürmisches Wetter?
It is not stormy.		

	}	Es ist nicht stürmisch. Das Wetter ist nicht stürmisch.

Strong; stormy; dear; windy.	Stark; stürmisch; theuer; windig.
------------------------------	-----------------------------------

## EXERCISES.

130.

Do you like to ride in a carriage?—I like to ride on horseback.  
—Has your cousin ever gone on horseback?—He has never gone on horseback.—Did you go on horseback the day before yesterday?—I went on horseback to-day.—Where did you go to (on horseback)?—I went into the country.—Does your brother ride on horseback as often as you?—He rides on horseback oftener than I.—Hast thou sometimes ridden on horseback?—I have never ridden on horseback.—Wilt thou go (in a carriage) to-day into the country?—I will go thither (in a carriage).—Do you like travelling?—I do like travelling.—Do you like travelling in the winter?—I do not like travelling in the winter; I like travelling in the spring and in autumn.—Is it good travelling in the spring?—It is good travelling in the spring and in the autumn, but it is bad travelling in the summer and in the winter.—Have you sometimes travelled in the winter?—I have often travelled in the winter and in the summer.—Does your brother travel often?—He travels no longer; he formerly travelled much.—When do you like to ride on horseback?—I like riding on horseback in the morning after breakfast.—Is it good travelling in this country?—It is good travelling here (da).—Have you ever gone to Vienna?—I have never gone thither.—Where is your brother gone to?—He is gone to London.—Does he sometimes go to Berlin?—He went thither formerly.—What does he say of (von) that country?—He says that it is good travelling in Germany.—Have you been at Dresden?—I have been there.—Have you stayed there long?—I have stayed there two years.—What do you say of the (von den) people of that country?—I say that they are good people (es gute Leute sind).—Is your brother at Dresden?—No,

Sir, he is at Vienna.—Is the living good at Vienna?—The living is good there.

## 131.

Have you been in London?—I have been there.—Is the living good there?—The living is good there, but dear.—Is it dear living in Paris?—It is good living there, and not dear.—At whose house have you been this morning?—I have been at my uncle's.—Where are you going to now?—I am going to my brother's.—Is your brother at home?—I do not know.—Have you already been at the English captain's?—I have not been there yet.—When do you intend going thither?—I intend going thither this evening.—How often has your brother been in London?—He has been there thrice.—Do you like travelling in France?—I like travelling there, because one finds good people there.—Does your friend like travelling in Holland?—He does not like travelling there, because the living is bad there.—Do you like travelling in Italy?—I do like travelling there, because the living is good there, and one finds good people there; but the roads are not very good there.—Do the English like to travel in Spain?—They like to travel there; but they find the roads there too bad.—How is the weather?—The weather is very bad.—Is it windy?—It is very windy.—Was it stormy yesterday?—It was stormy.—Did you go into the country?—I did not go thither, because it was stormy.—Do you go to the market this morning?—I do go thither, if it is not stormy.—Do you intend going to Germany this year?—I do intend going thither, if the weather is not too bad. Do you intend breakfasting with me this morning?—I intend breakfasting with you, if I am hungry.

## 132.

Does your uncle intend dining with us to-day?—He does intend dining with you, if he is hungry.—Does the Pole intend drinking some of (von) this wine?—He does intend drinking some of it (bavon), if he is thirsty.—Do you like to go on foot?—I do not like to go on foot, but I like going in a carriage, when (wenn) I am travelling.—Will you go on foot?—I cannot go on foot, because I am too tired.—Do you go to Italy on foot?—I do not go on foot, because the roads are there too bad.—Are the roads there as bad in the summer as in the winter?—They are not so good in the winter as in the summer.

## 133.

Are you going out to-day?—I am not going out, when it is raining.—Did it rain yesterday?—It did not rain.—Has it snowed?—It has not snowed.—Why do you not go to the mar-

ket?—I do not go thither, because it snows.—Do you wish to have an umbrella?—If you have one.—Will you lend me an umbrella?—I will lend you one.—What sort of weather is it?—It thunders and lightens.—Does the sun shine?—The sun does not shine, it is foggy.—Do you hear the thunder?—I do hear it.—How long have you heard the thunder?—I have heard it till four o'clock in the morning.—Is it fine weather?—The wind blows hard, and it thunders much.—Does it rain?—It does rain very fast (фаст).—Do you not go into the country?—How can I go into the country? do you not see how (wie) it lightens?—Does it snow?—It does not snow, but it hails.—Does it hail?—It does not hail, but thunders very much.—Have you a parasol?—I have one.—Will you lend it me?—I will lend it you.—Have we sunshine?—We have much sunshine; the sun is in my eyes.—Is it fine weather?—It is very bad weather, it is dark; we have no sunshine.

## 134.

Are you thirsty?—I am not thirsty, but very hungry.—Is your servant sleepy?—He is sleepy.—Is he hungry?—He is hungry.—Why does he not eat?—Because he has nothing to eat.—Are your children hungry?—They are very hungry, but they have nothing to eat.—Have they anything to drink?—They have nothing to drink.—Why do you not eat?—I do not eat when (when) I am not hungry.—Why does the Russian not drink?—He does not drink when he is not thirsty.—Did your brother eat anything yesterday evening?—He ate a piece of beef, a small piece of fowl, and a piece of bread.—Did he not drink?—He also drank.—What did he drink?—He drank a large glass of water, and a small glass of wine.—How long did you stay at his house (bei ihm)?—I stayed there till midnight.—Have you asked him for anything?—I have asked him for nothing.—Has he given you anything?—He has given me nothing.—Of whom have you spoken?—We have spoken of you.—Have you praised me?—We have not praised you; we have blamed you.—Why have you blamed me?—Because you do not study well.—Of what has your brother spoken?—He has spoken of his books, his houses, and his gardens.—Who is hungry?—My friend's little boy is hungry.—Who has drunk my wine?—No one has drunk it.—Hast thou already been in my room?—I have already been there.—How dost thou find my room?—I find it beautiful.—Are you able to work there?—I am not able to work there, because it is too dark. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## FIFTY-NINTH LESSON.

### Neun und funfzigste Section.

#### OF THE IMPERFECT AND PERFECT TENSES.

**In English there are three imperfect tenses, viz. I praised, did praise, and was praising. These three are expressed in German by one imperfect, ich lobte. It is used to express a past action or event in reference to another, which was either simultaneous with or antecedent to it. It is the historical tense of the Germans, and is always employed in narration, particularly when the narrator was an eyewitness of the action or event. The perfect tense, on the contrary, expresses an action or event, as perfectly past and ended, without any reference to another event, and when the narrator was not an eye-witness. In this latter instance the imperfect also may be used, if the narrator accompanies his narrative with any phrase denoting that he does not speak in his own name, as man sagt or sagt man, they say, it is said, &c.**

**The perfect tense is compounded of the present of the auxiliary, and the past participle, as in English. (See Lessons XLIII., XLIV., &c.)**

I was—he was.  
We were—they were.  
Thou wast—you were.

Ich war—er war.  
Wir waren—sie waren.  
Du warst—Ihr waret (Sie waren).

Were you content?  
I was very content.  
Was the wine good?  
It was very good.  
Were you there yesterday?  
I was there to-day.  
Where was he the day before yesterday?  
Were you already in Paris?  
I was there twice already.

Waren Sie zufrieden?  
Ich war sehr zufrieden.  
War der Wein gut?  
Er war sehr gut.  
Sind Sie gestern da gewesen?  
Ich bin heute da gewesen.  
Wo ist er vorgestern gewesen?  
Sind Sie schon in Paris gewesen?  
Ich bin schon zweimal da gewesen.

Obedient—disobedient.  
Negligent.

Gehorsam—ungehorsam.  
Nachlässig.

*Obs. A.* The imperfect of regular verbs is formed from the infinitive by changing *en* into *t*, and adding the proper termination to each per-



son, viz. *e*, to the first and third persons singular, *en*, to the first and third persons plural, *est*, to the second person singular, and *et*, to the second person plural. Ex.

I	{ loved, did love, was loving.	He	{ loved, did love, was loving.	}	Ich liebte—er liebte.
We	{ loved, did love, were loving.	They	{ loved, did love, were loving.	}	Wir liebten—sie liebten.
Thou	{ lovedst, didst love, wast loving.	You	{ loved, did love, were loving.	}	Du liebtest—Ihr liebtet (Sie liebten).

*Obs. B.* The consonant *t* of the imperfect is preceded by *e*, if the pronunciation requires it, which is the case in all verbs, the root of which ends in *b*, *t*, *th*, or *ft*, or in several consonants united. (*Obs. A. Lesson XXXVI. and Lesson XLIII.*) Ex.

I	{ worked, did work, was working.	He	{ worked, did work, was working.	}	Ich arbeitete—er arbeitete.
We	{ worked, did work, were working.	They	{ worked, did work, were working.	}	Wir arbeiteten—sie arbeiteten.
Thou	{ workedst, didst work, wast working.	You	{ worked, did work, were working.	}	Du arbeitetest—Ihr arbeitetet (Sie arbeiteten).

*Obs. C.* In all German verbs, whether regular or irregular, the third person singular of the imperfect tense is the same as the first person; and the third person plural is the same as the first in all the tenses.

I had—he had.	Ich hatte—er hatte.
We had—they had.	Wir hatten—sie hatten.
Thou hadst—you had	Du hattest—Ihr hattet (Sie hatten)
Had you money?	Hatten Sie Geld?
I had some.	Ich hatte welches.
Had your brother book?	Hatte Ihr Bruder Bücher?
He had some.	Er hatte welche.
What had we?	Was hatten wir?
What sort of weather was it yesterday?	Was für Wetter war es gestern?
It was fine weather.	Es war schönes Wetter.

Had you a wish to buy a horse ?	Hatten Sie Lust, ein Pferd zu kaufen ?
I had a wish to buy one, but I had no money.	Ich hatte Lust, eins zu kaufen ; aber ich hatte kein Geld.
Did your cousin intend to learn German ?	War Ihr Vetter gesonnen, deutsch zu lernen ?
He did intend to learn it, but he had no master.	Er war gesonnen, es zu lernen ; aber er hatte keinen Lehrer.

## EXERCISES.

## 135.

Were you at home this morning ?—I was not at home.—Where were you ?—I was at the market.—Where were you yesterday ?—I was at the theatre.—Wast thou as assiduous as thy brother ?—I was as assiduous as he, but he was more clever than I.—Where have you been ?—I have been at the English physician's.—Was he at home ?—He was not at home.—Where was he ?—He was at the ball.—Have you been at the Spanish cook's ?—I have been at his house.—Has he already bought his meat ?—He has already bought it.—Have you given the book to my brother ?—I have given it to him.—Hast thou given my books to my pupils ?—I have given them to them.—Were they satisfied with them (*damit*) ?—They were highly (*sehr*) satisfied with them.—Had your cousin a wish to learn German ?—He had a wish to learn it.—Has he learnt it ?—He has not learnt it.—Why has he not learnt it ?—Because he had not courage enough.—Have you been at my father's ?—I have been there (*bei ihm*).—Have you spoken to him ?—I have spoken to him.—Has the shoemaker already brought you the boots ?—He has already brought them to me.—Have you paid him (*for*) them ?—I have not paid him (*for*) them yet.—Have you ever been in London ?—I have been there several times.—What did you do there ?—I learnt English there.—Do you intend going thither once more ?—I intend going thither twice more.—Is the living good there ?—The living is good there, but dear.—Was your master satisfied with his pupil ?—He was satisfied with him.—Was your brother satisfied with my children ?—He was highly (*sehr*) satisfied with them.—Was the tutor satisfied with this little boy ?—He was not satisfied with him.—Why was he not satisfied with him ?—Because that little boy was very negligent.

## 136.

Were the children of the poor as clever as those of the rich ?—They were more clever, because they worked harder (*mehr*).—Did you love your tutor ?—I did love him, because he loved me.—Did he give you anything ?—He gave me a good book, because

he was satisfied with me.—Whom do you love?—I love my parents and my preceptors.—Do your tutors love you?—They do love me, because I am assiduous and obedient.—Did this man love his parents?—He did love them.—Did his parents love him?—They did love him, because he was never disobedient.—How long did you work yesterday evening?—I worked till ten o'clock.—Did your cousin also work?—He did also work.—When didst thou see my uncle?—I saw him this morning.—Had he much money?—He had much.—Had your parents many friends?—They had many.—Have they still some?—They have still several.—Had you any friends?—I had some, because I had money.—Have you still some?—I have no longer any, because I have no more money.—Where was your brother?—He was in the garden.—Where were his servants?—They were in the house.—Where were we?—We were in a good country and with (6c) good people.—Where were our friends?—They were on (board) the ships of the English.—Where were the Russians?—They were in their carriages.—Were the peasants in the fields?—They were there.—Were the bailiffs in the woods?—They were there.—Who was in the store-houses?—The merchants were there.

## 137.

What sort of weather was it?—It was very bad weather.—Was it windy?—It was windy and very cold.—Was it foggy?—It was foggy.—Was it fine weather?—It was fine weather but too warm.—What sort of weather was it the day before yesterday?—It was very dark and very cold.—Is it fine weather now?—It is neither fine nor bad weather.—Is it too warm?—It is neither too warm nor too cold.—Was it stormy yesterday?—It was very stormy.—Was it dry weather?—The weather was too dry; but to-day it is too damp.—Did you go to the ball yesterday evening?—I did not go, because the weather was bad.—Had you the intention to tear my books?—I had not the intention to tear, but to burn them. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## SIXTIETH LESSON.

## Sechzigste Section.

I	{ spoke, did speak, was speaking.	He	{ spoke, did speak, was speaking. }	Ich sprach <sup>1</sup> —er sprach.
We	{ spoke, did speak, were speaking.	They	{ spoke, did speak, were speaking. }	Wir sprachen—sie sprachen. (See <i>Obs. C.</i> , Lesson LIX.)
Thou	{ spokest, didst speak, wast speaking.	You	{ spoke, did speak, were speaking. }	Du sprachst—Ihr sprachtet (Sie sprachen).

*Obs.* In irregular verbs the imperfect of the indicative is formed by changing the radical vowel into: *a*, *ie*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and adding the termination belonging to each person. Hence in the irregular verbs we shall mark only the change of that vowel, together with the termination of the first person, in order to enable learners to know the imperfect tense. Examples: the verb *sprechen* above changes in the imperfect the radical vowel *e* into *a*; *bleiben*, to remain, changes it into *ie*, thus: *ich blieb*, I remained; *gehen*, to go, into *i*, thus: *ich ging*, I went; *ziehen*, to draw, into *o*, thus: *ich zog*, I drew; *schlagen*, to beat, into *u*, thus: *ich schlug*, I smote.

Compound verbs follow in general the conjugation of simple verbs.

At first (in the beginning).

Afterwards.

Hereupon, upon this.

Erst, zuerst (anfangs).

Hernach or nachher.

Hierauf.

Whenever a sentence begins with any other word than the subject, its order is inverted, and the subject stands after the verb in simple, and after the auxiliary in compound tenses<sup>2</sup>.

At first he said yes, afterwards no.

At first he worked, and afterwards he played.

I do not go out to-day.

Erst sagte er ja, hernach nein.

Erst arbeitete, und hernach spielte er.

Heute gehe ich nicht aus.

<sup>1</sup> Learners ought now to add to their list of verbs the imperfect of all irregular verbs which they have been using hitherto, or will have to use hereafter.

<sup>2</sup> From this rule must be excepted the conjunctions which serve to unite sentences (See Lesson XLIX.); they leave the subject in its place and throw the verb to the end of the sentence.

Now you must work.  
My father set out yesterday

Here lies your book and there  
your paper.

He came afterwards.  
Upon this he said.

Jetzt müssen Sie arbeiten.  
Gestern ist mein Vater abge-  
reist.

Hier liegt Ihr Buch und da Ihr  
Papier.

Er ist hernach (nachher) gekommen.  
Hierauf sagte er.

*As soon as.*

I drink as soon as I have eaten.  
As soon as I have taken off my  
shoes, I take off my stockings.

What do you do after supper?

Sobald, sobald als.

Ich trinke, sobald ich gegessen habe.  
Sobald ich meine Schuhe ausgezogen  
habe, ziehe ich meine Strümpfe  
aus<sup>2</sup>.

Was thun Sie nach dem Abendessen?

*To sleep—slept.*

I sleep, thou sleepest, he sleeps.  
Does your father still sleep?  
He does still sleep.

Schlafen—geschlafen. Imper-  
fect schlief.

Ich schlafe, du schläfst, er schläft.  
Schläft Ihr Vater noch?  
Er schläft noch.

*To live.*

Is your relation still alive?  
He is no longer alive (he is dead).

Leben.

† Lebt Ihr Verwandter noch?  
† Er lebt nicht mehr.

*Without.*

Without money.  
Without speaking.  
Without saying anything.

Ohne (is followed by zu before  
the infinitive).

Ohne Geld.  
† Ohne zu sprechen.  
† Ohne Etwas zu sagen.

*To go away—gone away.*

He went away without saying any-  
thing.

Weggehen\*—weggegangen.  
Imperf. ging.

Er ging weg, ohne Etwas zu sagen.

*At last.*

*To arrive—arrived.*

Has he arrived at last?

Endlich.

Ankommen\*—angekommen.  
Imperf. kam.

Ist er endlich angekommen?

<sup>2</sup> See Obs. C. Lesson XXXVI.

He has not arrived yet.  
Does he come at last?  
He does come.

Er ist noch nicht angekommen.  
Kommt er endlich?  
Er kommt.

To give away—given away.

Weggeben\*—weggegeben. Imperf. gab.

To cut off—cut off (past part.).

Abschneiden\*—abgeschnitten. Imperf. schnitt.

Has he given away anything?

Hat er Etwas weggegeben?

He has given away his coat.

Er hat sein Kleid weggegeben.

To cut one's throat.

Jemandem den Hals abschneiden\*.

They have cut his throat.

Man hat ihm den Hals abgeschnitten.

To crop a dog's ears.

Einem Hunde die Ohren abschneiden\*.

What have they done to him?

Was haben sie ihm gethan?

They have cut off his ears.

Sie haben ihm die Ohren abgeschnitten.

*Aloud.*

*Laut.*

Does your master speak aloud?

Spricht Ihr Lehrer laut?

He does speak aloud.

Er spricht laut.

In order to learn German, one must speak aloud.

Um deutsch zu lernen, muß man laut sprechen.

## EXERCISES.

138.

Hadst thou the intention to learn English?—I had the intention to learn it, but I had not a good master.—Did your brother intend to buy a carriage?—He did intend to buy one, but he had no more money.—Why did you work?—I worked in order to learn German.—Why did you love that man?—I loved him because he loved me.

Have you already seen the son of the captain?—I have already seen him.—Did he speak French?—He spoke English.—Where were you then (Lesson L.)?—I was in Germany.—Did you speak German or English?—I spoke neither German nor English, but French.—Did the Germans speak French?—At first they spoke German, afterwards French.—Did they speak as well as you?—They spoke just as well as you and I.—What do you do in the evening?—I work as soon as I have supped.—

And what do you do afterwards?—Afterwards I sleep.—When do you drink?—I drink as soon as I have eaten.—When do you sleep?—I sleep as soon as I have supped.—Dost thou speak German?—I spoke it formerly.—Dost thou take off thy hat before thou takest off thy coat?—I take off my hat as soon as I have taken off my clothes.—What do you do after breakfast?—As soon as I have breakfasted I go out.—Art thou sleeping?—You see that I am not sleeping.—Does thy brother still sleep?—He does still sleep.—Have you tried to speak to my uncle?—I have not tried to speak to him.—Has he spoken to you?—As soon as he sees me, he speaks to me.—Are your parents still alive?—They are still alive.—Is your friend's brother still alive?—He is no longer alive.

## 139.

Have you spoken to the merchant?—I have spoken to him.—Where have you spoken to him?—I have spoken to him at my house (bei mir).—What has he said?—He went away without saying anything.—Can you work without speaking?—I can work, but not study German, without speaking.—Do you speak aloud when (wenn) you are studying German?—I do speak aloud.—Can you understand me?—I can understand you, when (wenn) you speak aloud.—Wilt thou go for some wine?—I cannot go for wine without money.—Have you bought any horses?—I do not buy without money.—Has your father arrived at last?—He has arrived.—When did he arrive?—This morning, at four o'clock.—Has your cousin set out at last?—He has not set out yet.—Have you at last found a good master?—I have at last found one.—Are you at last learning English?—I am at last learning it.—Why did you not learn it already?—Because I had not a good master.—Are you waiting for any one?—I am waiting for my physician.—Is he coming at last?—You see that he is not yet coming.—Have you the head-ache?—No, I have sore eyes.—Then you must wait for the physician.—Have you given away anything?—I have not given away anything.—What has your uncle given away?—He has given away his old clothes.—Hast thou given away anything?—I had not anything to give away.—What has thy brother given away?—He has given away his old boots and his old shoes. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## SIXTY-FIRST LESSON.

## Ein und sechzigste Section.

---

*Been.* | *Worden.*

*Obs. A.* The learner must remember that *werden*\* not *seyn*\* is the verb which serves to form the passive voice. (Lesson LVII.) The past participle of the former is *worden*, and that of the latter *gewesen*. (Lesson XLIII.)

Have you been praised?	Sind Sie gelobt worden?
I have been praised.	Ich bin gelobt worden.
Hast thou been blamed?	Bist Du getabelt worden?
I have not been blamed.	Ich bin nicht getabelt worden.
Have we been loved?	Sind wir geliebt worden?
By whom has he been punished?	Von wem ist er gestraft worden?
He has been punished by his father.	Er ist von seinem Vater gestraft worden.
When has he been punished?	Wann ist er gestraft worden?
He has been punished to-day.	Er ist heute gestraft worden.

I was —he was	} praised.	Ich wurde —er wurde	} gelobt.
We were —they were		Wir wurden —sie wurden	
Thou wast—you were		Du wurdest —Ihr wurdet	
		(Sie wurden)	

Were you loved?	Burden Sie geliebt?
I was loved.	Ich wurde geliebt.
Was he hated?	Burde er gehaßt?
He was neither loved nor hated.	Er wurde weder geliebt noch gehaßt.

---

*To become.* | *Werden*¹.

The past participle of this verb is:

*Become.* | *Geworden*¹.

And its imperfect:

I became—he became.	Ich warb, or wurde—er warb, or wurde.
Thou becamest.	Du warbst or wurdest.

---

¹ Not *worden*, which is the past participle of the verb that serves to form the passive voice, as may be seen above.



*Obs. B.* In all the other tenses and persons *werden*\*, to become, is conjugated as the verb which serves to form the passive voice. (See Lesson LVII. and above.)

He was made a king.	}	† Er ward König.
He became a king.		
Have you become a merchant?	}	Sind Sie Kaufmann geworden?
I have become a lawyer.		Ich bin Advokat geworden.
He has taken the degrees of a doctor.		† Er ist Doctor geworden.
The king,	}	der König;
the successor,		der Nachfolger <sup>2</sup> ;
the lawyer (barrister-at-law),		der Advokat (See Note 1, Lesson LVI.);
the office, the employment.		das Amt.

Learned.		Gelehrt.
To fall sick.	}	† Krank werden*.
To be taken ill.		
To recover, to grow well.	}	† Gesund werden*.
To recover one's health.		
He was taken ill.		† Er ward krank.
He has recovered his health.		† Er ist gesund geworden.
What has become of him?	{	Was ist aus ihm geworden?
		Wo ist er hingekommen?
He has turned soldier.		Er ist Soldat geworden.
He has enlisted.		Er hat sich anwerben lassen.
To enlist, to enroll.	{	Soldat werden*.
		Sich anwerben lassen*.
Children become men.		Aus Kindern werden Leute.

To tear—torn.	}	Reißen*—gerissen <sup>2</sup> .
To snatch—snatched.		
I tore—we tore.		Ich riß—wir rissen.
Thou torest—you tore.		Du risset—Ihr risset (Sie rissen).
He snatched it out of my hands.		Er riß es mir aus den Händen.
What did he snatch out of your hands?		Was riß er Ihnen aus den Händen?

<sup>2</sup> Masculine substantives derived from a regular verb do not soften the radical vowel in the plural, as *Nachfolger*, which is derived from *nachfolgen*, to follow, to succeed; plur. *die Nachfolger*, the successors. See *Obs. D.*, page 5, in "Introductory Book.")

*The verb reißen*, to tear, to pull, to wrest, must not be mistaken for *zerreißen*, which means: to tear to pieces, to rend, to burst asunder

<i>When.</i>	<i>Als (da, wenn). (See Lesson XLIX.)</i>
I was there, when you were there.	Ich war da, als Sie da waren.
Next year.	Nächstes Jahr.
Last month.	Vorigen (letzten) Monat.
Last Monday.	Letzten Montag.
Next,	nächst;
last,	vorig, letzt.
When was he in Berlin?	Wann war er in Berlin?
He was there last winter.	Er war vorigen Winter da.
When will you go to Berlin?	Wann wollen Sie nach Berlin reisen?
I will go thither next summer	Ich will nächsten Sommer dahin reisen.

<i>So that.</i>	<i>So daß. (See Lesson XLIX.)</i>
I have lost my money, so that I cannot pay you.	Ich habe mein Geld verloren, so daß ich Ihnen nicht bezahlen kann.
I am ill, so that I cannot go out.	Ich bin krank, so daß ich nicht ausgehen kann.
The imperfect of können is ich konnte, I could.	

The way to Berlin.	Der Weg nach Berlin.
The way from Berlin to Dresden.	Der Weg von Berlin nach Dresden.
Which way has he taken?	Welchen Weg hat er genommen?
He has taken the way to Leipsic.	Er hat den Weg nach Leipzig genommen.
Which way will you take?	Welchen Weg wollen Sie nehmen?
I will take this way.	Ich will diesen Weg nehmen.
And I that one.	Und ich jenen.

## EXERCISES,

140.

Why has that child been praised?—It has been praised because it has studied well.—Hast thou ever been praised?—I have often been praised.—Why has that other child been punished?—It has been punished, because it has been naughty and idle.—Has this child been rewarded?—It has been rewarded, because it has worked well.—When was that man punished?—He was punished last month.—Why have we been esteemed?—Because we have been studious and obedient.—Why have these people been hated?—Because they have been disobedient.—Were you loved when (als) you were at Dresden?—I was not hated.—Was your brother

esteemed when (als) he was in London?—He was loved and esteemed.—When were you in Spain?—I was there when you were there.—Who was loved and who was hated?—Those that were good, assiduous, and obedient, were loved, and those who were naughty, idle, and disobedient, were punished, hated, and despised.—What must one do, in order not to be despised?—One must be studious and good?—Were you in Berlin when the king was there?—I was there when he was there.—Was your uncle in London when I was there?—He was there when you were there.—Where were you when I was at Dresden?—I was in Paris.—Where was your father when you were in Vienna?—He was in England.—At what time did you breakfast when you were in Germany?—I breakfasted when (wenn) my father breakfasted.—Did you work when he was working?—I studied when he was working.—Did your brother work when you were working?—He played when I was working.

## 141.

What has become of your friend?—He has become a lawyer.—What has become of your cousin?—He has enlisted.—Was your uncle taken ill?—He was taken ill, and I became his successor in his office.—Why did this man not work?—He could not work because he was taken ill.—Has he recovered?—He has recovered.—What has become of him?—He has turned a merchant.—What has become of his children?—His children have become men.—What has become of your son?—He has become a great man.—Has he become learned?—He has become learned (es).—What has become of my book?—I do not know what has become of it.—Have you torn it?—I have not torn it.—What has become of our neighbour?—I do not know what has become of him.—Did they wrest the book out of your hands?—They did wrest it out of my hands.—Did you wrest the book out of his hands?—I did wrest it out of his hands.—When did your father set out?—He set out last Tuesday.—Which way has he taken?—He has taken the way to Berlin.—When were you in Dresden?—I was there last year.—Did you stay there long?—I stayed there nearly a month.—Has my brother paid you?—He has lost all (*Obs. B.*, Lesson LI.) his money, so that he cannot pay me. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## SIXTY-SECOND LESSON.

## Zwei und sechzigste Section.

*Of whom, of which.*

| Von dem, wovon.

*Obs. A. Of which, when relating to a thing, may be translated by the preposition which the verb requires, added to the adverb wo.*

I see the man of whom you speak.

Ich sehe den Mann, von dem (von welchem) Sie sprechen.

I have bought the horse of which you spoke to me.

Ich habe das Pferd gekauft, von dem Sie mit mir gesprochen haben.

Has your father the book of which I am speaking?

Hat Ihr Vater das Buch, wovon ich spreche?

*Whose.*

Dessen. Plur. deren.

The man whose.

Der Mann, dessen.

The child whose.

Das Kind, dessen.

The men whose.

Die Männer, deren.

I see the man whose brother has killed my dog.

Ich sehe den Mann, dessen Bruder meinen Hund getödtet hat.

Do you see the child whose father set out yesterday?

Sehen Sie das Kind, dessen Vater gestern abgereist ist?

I do see it.

Ich sehe es.

I see the man whose dog you have killed.

Ich sehe den Mann, dessen Hund Sie getödtet haben.

Do you see the people whose horse I have bought?


Sehen Sie die Leute, deren Pferd ich gekauft habe?

I do see them.

Ich sehe sie.

I have seen the merchant whose shop you have taken.

Ich habe den Kaufmann gesehen, dessen Laden Sie genommen haben.

 Incidental or explicative propositions are placed either immediately after the word which they determine, or at the end of the principal proposition. Ex.

I have spoken to the man whose house has been burnt.

{ Ich habe mit dem Manne, dessen Haus abgebrannt ist, gesprochen.  
Ich habe mit dem Manne gesprochen, dessen Haus abgebrannt ist.

*To burn—burnt.*

Have you read the book, which  
I lent you?

I have what I want.

Abbrennen (verb. act. and neut.  
irreg.), abgebrannt. Imperf.  
brannte.

Haben Sie das Buch, welches ich  
Ihnen geliehen habe, gelesen?

Haben Sie das Buch gelesen, wel-  
ches ich Ihnen geliehen habe?

Ich habe, was ich brauche.

*That, the one of which.*

Have you the paper of which you  
have need?

I have that of which I have need.

Das, dessen.

Haben Sie das Papier, dessen Sie  
bedürftig sind?

Ich habe das, dessen ich bedürftig  
bin.

DATIVE.

GEN.

That, the one of which, of whom.

*Mas.* der von welchem—der dessen.  
*Neut.* das von welchem—das dessen.

I see the man of whom I speak.

Ich sehe den Mann, von welchem  
ich spreche.

I see the one of whom I am speak-  
ing to you.

Ich sehe den (denjenigen), von wel-  
chem ich mit Ihnen spreche. (See  
Lesson XIV.)

Which book have you?

Welches Buch haben Sie?

I have that (the one) of which I  
have need.

Ich habe das (dasjenige), dessen ich  
bedürftig bin.

DATIVE.

GEN.

Those, the ones of which.

*die* von welchen } *die* deren.  
*die* von denen }

Which men do you see?

Welche Männer sehen Sie?

I see those of whom you have  
spoken to me.

Ich sehe die (diejenigen), von wel-  
chen (von denen) Sie mit mir  
gesprochen haben. (See Lesson  
XVI.)

Which nails has the man?

Welche Nägel hat der Mann?

He has those of which he has  
need.

Er hat die (diejenigen), deren er  
bedürftig ist.

DAT. Plur.

*To whom.*

Denen.

I see the children to whom you  
gave apples.

Ich sehe die Kinder, denen Sie  
Äpfel gegeben haben.

<i>Of those.</i>		Von denen (dative).
Of which people do you speak?	I speak of those whose children have been assiduous.	Von welchen Leuten reden Sie? Ich rede von denen (denjenigen), deren Kinder fleißig gewesen sind.

## DECLENSION OF THE ARTICLE

*when it is used instead of either*

The demonstrative pronouns *dieser*, *jener*, the determinative pronoun *derjenige*, or the relative pronoun *welcher*. (See *Obs. Lessons XIV. and XVI.*, and *Introductory Book*, pages 70, 71, and 72.)

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Plural for all Genders.</i>
NOM.	der	die	das	die
GEN.	dessen (deß)	deren	dessen (deß)	derer (deren)
DAT.	dem	der	dem	denen
ACC.	den	die	das	die.

*Obs. B.* In the genitive singular masculine and neuter, *deß* is often used instead of *dessen*, chiefly in poetry and compound words.

*Obs. C.* When the definite article is used instead of *welcher*, its genitive plural is not *derer*, but *deren*. (See *Obs. B. Lesson XVI.*)

## EXERCISES.

142.

Did your cousin learn German?—He was taken ill, so that he could not learn it.—Has your brother learnt it?—He had not a good master, so that he could not learn it.—Do you go to the ball this evening?—I have sore feet, so that I cannot go to it.—Did you understand that Englishman?—I do not know English, so that I could not understand him.—Have you bought that horse?—I had no money, so that I could not buy it.—Do you go into the country on foot?—I have no carriage, so that I must go thither on foot.—Have you seen the man from whom I received a present?—I have not seen him.—Have you seen the fine horse of which I spoke to you?—I have seen it.—Has your uncle seen the books of which you spoke to him?—He has seen them.—Hast thou seen the man whose children have been punished?—I have not seen him.—To whom were you speaking when you were in the theatre?—I was speaking to the man whose brother has killed my fine dog.—Have you seen the little boy whose father has become a lawyer?—I have seen him.—Whom have you seen at the ball?—I have seen the people there whose horses and those whose carriage you bought.—Whom do you see now?—I see the man whose servant has broken my

looking-glass.—Have you heard the man whose friend has lent me money?—I have not heard him.—Whom have you heard?—I have heard the French captain whose son is my friend.—Hast thou brushed the coat of which I spoke to you?—I have not yet brushed it.—Have you received the money which you were wanting?—I have received it.—Have I the paper of which I have need?—You have it.—Has your brother the books which he was wanting?—He has them.—Have you spoken to the merchants whose shop we have taken?—We have spoken to them.—Have you spoken to the physician whose son has studied German?—I have spoken to him.—Hast thou seen the poor people whose houses have been burnt?—I have seen them.—Have you read the books which we lent to you?—We have read them.—What do you say of them?—We say that they are very fine.—Have your children what they want?—They have what they want.

## 143.

Of which man do you speak?—I speak of the one whose brother has turned soldier.—Of which children did you speak?—I spoke of those whose parents are learned.—Which book have you read?—I have read that of which I spoke to you yesterday.—Which paper has your cousin?—He has that of which he has need.—Which fishes has he eaten?—He has eaten those which you do not like.—Of which books are you in want?—I am in want of those of which you have spoken to me.—Are you not in want of those which I am reading?—I am not in want of them.—Is any one in want of the coats of which my tailor has spoken to me?—No one is in want of them.—Do you see the children to whom I have given cakes?—I do not see those to whom you have given cakes, but those whom you have punished.—To whom have you given money?—I have given some to those who gave me some.—To which children must one give books?—One must give some to those who learn well and who are good and obedient.—To whom do you give to eat and to drink?—To those who are hungry and thirsty.—Do you give anything to the children who are idle?—I give them nothing.—What sort of weather was it when you went (gingen) out?—It was raining and very windy.—Do you give cakes to your pupils?—They have not studied well, so that I give them nothing. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## SIXTY-THIRD LESSON.

## Drei und sechzigste Section.

*To forget—forgotten.**Forgot. Imperf.*

Thou forgettest—he forgets.

I have forgotten to do it.

Has he forgotten to bring you the book?

He has forgotten to bring it me.

You have forgotten to write to me.

Vergessen \*—vergesen. (See Obs. A. Lesson XLVII.)

Vergaß.

Du vergiffest—er vergift.

Ich habe vergessen, es zu thun.

Hat er vergessen, Ihnen das Buch zu bringen?

Er hat vergessen, es mir zu bringen.

Sie haben vergessen, an mich zu schreiben.

Sie haben vergessen, mir zu schreiben.

*To belong*

Does this horse belong to your brother?

It does belong to him.

To whom does this table belong?

It belongs to us.

To whom do these gloves belong?

They belong to the captains.

Gehören.

Gehört dieses Pferd Ihrem Bruder?

Es gehört ihm.

Wem gehört dieser Tisch?

Er gehört uns.

Wem gehören diese Handschuhe?

Sie gehören den Hauptleuten.

*Whose.*

Whose hat is this?

It is mine.

Wessen. (See Lesson XXXI. and XLI.)

Wessen Hut ist das?

Es ist meiner.

*Obs. A.* The possessive conjunctive pronouns, when used instead of the possessive absolute pronouns, in the nominative masculine take the termination *er*, and *es* in the nominative and accusative neuter. (See *Obs.* Lesson IX.)

Whose book is this?

It is his.

Whose carriage is that?

It is ours.

Whose shoes are these?

They are ours.

Wessen Buch ist das?

Es ist seines.

Wessen Wagen ist das?

Es ist unser.

Wessen Schuhe sind das?

Es sind unsere.



*Obs. B.* These examples show that the indefinite pronoun *es*, and the demonstrative pronoun *das*, may relate to substantives of any gender or number. (See also the *Obs.* of Lesson XLV.)

*To fit (suit).*  
Do these shoes fit these men?

They fit them.  
That fits you very well.

Kleiden, passen, stehen \*.  
Passen diese Schuhe diesen Männern?  
Sie passen ihnen.  
Das steht Ihnen sehr gut.

*To suit (please)—suits.*  
Does this cloth suit (please) your brother?  
It suits (pleases) him.  
Do these boots suit (please) your brothers?  
They suit (please) them.  
Does it suit you to do this?  
It does suit me to do it.

Anstehen \*—Angestanden. Imperf. stand.  
Steht Ihrem Bruder dieses Tuch an?  
Es steht ihm an.  
Stehen Ihren Brüdern diese Stiefel an?  
Sie stehen ihnen an.  
Steht es Ihnen an, dieses zu thun?  
Es steht mir an, es zu thun.

*To become.*  
Does it become you to do this?  
It does become me to do it.  
It does not become me to do it.  
It does not become him to go on foot.

Geziemen.  
Geziemt es Ihnen, dieses zu thun?  
Es geziemt mir, es zu thun.  
Es geziemt mir nicht, es zu thun.  
Es geziemt ihm nicht zu Fuße zu gehen.

*To please.*  
Does it please your brother to go with us?  
Does it suit your brother to go with us?  
It does not please him.  
It does not suit him.  
What is your pleasure? What do you want?

Belieben.  
Beliebt es Ihrem Bruder mitzukommen (with us is understood)?  
Steht es Ihrem Bruder an mitzukommen?  
Es beliebt ihm nicht.  
Es steht ihm nicht an.  
Was beliebt Ihnen?  
Was beliebt?

*To please, to like.*  
Thou pleasest—he pleases.  
Does this book please you?  
Do you like this book?

Gefallen \*.  
Imperf. gefällt.  
Du gefällst—er gefällt.  
Gefällt Ihnen dieses Buch?

It pleases me much.	}	Es gefällt mir sehr.
I like it very much.		
How do you please yourself here?		Wie gefällt es Ihnen hier?
I please myself very well here.		Es gefällt mir recht wohl hier.

Paid in cash, ready.	Bar.
Ready money.	Bares Geld.
To pay down.	Bar bezahlen.
To buy for cash.	Um bares Geld kaufen.
To sell for cash.	Um bares Geld verkaufen.

On credit.	Auf Credit, auf Borg.
To sell on credit.	Auf Credit verkaufen.
The credit,	der Credit, der Borg.
Will you buy for cash?	Wollen Sie um bares Geld kaufen?
Does it suit you to sell me on credit?	Steht es Ihnen an, mir auf Credit zu verkaufen?

To succeed—succeeded.	Gelingen*—gelingen. (See Obs. A. Lesson XLVII.) Imperf. gelang.
-----------------------	---

*Obs. C.* This impersonal verb takes *seyn* for its auxiliary, and governs the dative. (See *Obs. A. Lesson LVIII.*)

Do you succeed in learning the German?	† Gelingt es Ihnen, deutsch zu lernen?
I do succeed in it.	† Es gelingt mir.
I do succeed in learning it.	† Es gelingt mir, es zu lernen.
Do these men succeed in selling their horses?	† Gelingt es diesen Leuten, ihre Pferde zu verkaufen?
They do succeed therein.	† Es gelingt ihnen.

There is.	Es ist.
There are.	Es sind.
Is there any wine?	Ist Wein da?
There is some.	Es ist welcher da.
Are there any apples?	Sind Äpfel da?
There are some.	Es sind welche da.
There are none.	Es sind keine da.
Are there any men?	Sind Leute da?
There are some.	Es sind einige da.

*Obs. D.* The impersonal verb *there is, there are*, is translated by *es ist, es sind*, when it expresses existence in a certain place, and by *es gibt*, when it expresses existence in general. Ex.


There are men who will not study.	Es gibt Menschen, welche nicht studiren wollen.
Is there any one?	Ist Jemand da?
There is no one.	Es ist Niemand da.
Has a man been there?	Ist ein Mann da gewesen?
There has been one there.	Es ist einer da gewesen.
Were many people there?	Waren viel Leute da?
There were a great many there.	Es waren sehr viele da.

<i>To clean.</i>	Reinigen, rein machen.
<i>Clean.</i>	Rein.
<i>The inkstand,</i>	das Tintenfaß.
Will you clean my inkstand?	Wollen Sie mein Tintenfaß reinigen?
I will clean it.	Ich will es reinigen.

<i>To keep — kept.</i>	Behalten*. (Obs. A. Lesson XLVII.)
<i>Kept. Imperf.</i>	Behielt.
Will you keep the horse?	Wollen Sie das Pferd behalten?
I will keep it.	Ich will es behalten.
You must not keep my money?	Sie müssen mein Geld nicht behalten?

Directly, immediately.	Gleich.
This instant.	Diesen Augenblick.
Instantly.	Augenblicklich.

I will do it.	Ich will es thun.
I will do it immediately.	Ich will es sogleich thun.
I am going to work.	Ich will arbeiten.

 Some Conjunctions do not throw the verb to the end of the phrase (See Lesson XLIX.), but leave it in its place immediately after the subject. They are the following :

und, and;	entweder—oder, either — or;
aber or allein, but;	weber —noch, neither—nor;
sondern, but (on the contrary);	sowohl —als,
beim, for;	sowohl —als auch, } as well as;
oder, or;	nicht nur—sondern auch, not only
	—but also.

I cannot pay you, for I have no money (because I have no money).

He cannot come to your house, for he has no time.

Ich kann Ihnen nicht bezahlen, denn ich habe kein Geld (weil ich kein Geld habe).

Er kann nicht zu Ihnen kommen, denn er hat nicht Zeit.

## EXERCISES.

### 144.

Have you brought me the book which you promised me?—I have forgotten it.—Has your uncle brought you the handkerchiefs which he promised you?—He has forgotten to bring me them.—Have you already written to your friend?—I have not yet had time to write to him.—Have you forgotten to write to your relation?—I have not forgotten to write to him.—To whom does this house belong?—It belongs to the English captain whose son has written a letter to us.—Does this money belong to thee?—It does belong to me.—From whom hast thou received it?—I have received it from the men whose children you have seen.—To whom do those woods belong?—They belong to the king.—Whose horses are those?—They are ours.—Have you told your brother that I am waiting for him here?—I have forgotten to tell him so.—Is it your father or mine who is gone into the country?—It is mine.—Is it your baker or that of our friend who has sold you bread on credit?—It is ours.—Is that your son?—He is (es ist) not mine, he is my friend's.—Where is yours?—He is at Dresden.—Does this cloth suit you?—It does not suit me, have you no other?—I have some other; but it is dearer than this.—Will you show it me?—I will show it you.—Do these boots suit your uncle?—They do not suit him, because they are too dear.—Are these the boots of which you have spoken to us?—They are the same.—Whose shoes are these?—They belong to the gentleman whom you have seen this morning in my shop.—Does it suit you to go with us?—It does not suit me.—Does it become you to go to the market?—It does not become me to go thither.—Did you go on foot into the country?—It does not become me to go on foot, so that I went thither in a carriage.

### 145.

What is your pleasure, Sir?—I am inquiring after your father.—Is he at home?—No, Sir, he is gone out.—What is your pleasure?—I tell you that he is gone out.—Will you wait till he comes back again?—I have no time to wait.—Does this merchant sell on credit?—He does not sell on credit.—Does it suit you to buy for cash?—It does not suit me.—Where have you bought these pretty knives?—I have bought them at the merchant's whose shop you saw yesterday.—Has he sold them to you

on credit?—He has sold them to me for cash.—Do you often buy for cash?—Not so often as you.—Have you forgotten anything here?—I have forgotten nothing.—Does it suit you to learn this by heart?—I have not a good memory, so that it does not suit me to learn by heart.

## 146.

Has this man tried to speak to the king?—He has tried to speak to him, but he has not succeeded in it.—Have you succeeded in writing a letter?—I have succeeded in it.—Have those merchants succeeded in selling their horses?—They have not succeeded therein.—Have you tried to clean my inkstand?—I have tried, but have not succeeded in it.—Do your children succeed in learning the English?—They do succeed in it.—Is there any wine in this cask?—There is some in it (*barin*).—Is there any brandy in this glass?—There is none in it.—Is wine or water in it?—There is neither wine nor water in it.—What is there in it?—There is vinegar in it.—Are there any men in your room?—There are some there.—Is there any one in the storehouse?—There is no one there.—Were there many people in the theatre?—There were many there.—Are there many children that will not play?—There are many that will not study, but few that will not play.—Hast thou cleaned my trunk?—I have tried to do it, but I have not succeeded.—Do you intend buying an umbrella?—I intend buying one, if the merchant sells it me on credit.—Do you intend keeping mine?—I intend giving it you back again, if I buy one.—Have you returned the books to my brother?—I have not returned them yet to him.—How long do you intend keeping them?—I intend keeping them till I have read them.—How long do you intend keeping my horse?—I intend keeping it till my father returns.—Have you cleaned my knife?—I have not had time yet, but I will do it this instant.—Have you made (a) fire?—Not yet, but I will make one (*welches*) immediately.—Why have you not worked?—I have not yet been able.—What had you to do?—I had to clean your table, and to mend your thread stockings. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## SIXTY-FOURTH LESSON.

## Hier und sechzigste Section.

To run—part. past, *ran*.

Thou runnest—he runs.

To run away.

Behind (a preposition).

To be sitting behind the oven.

He ran behind the oven.

Where is he running to?

He is running behind the house.

Where has he run to?

The oven, the stove,  
the blow, the knock,  
the kick,  
the stab,

Have you given that man a blow?

I have given him one.

A blow with a stick,  
beatings,  
the stab of a knife,  
the kick (with the foot),  
a blow (with the fist),  
blows (with the fist),  
the sword,  
the stab of a sword,  
the sabre,

Laufen\*—gelaufen (takes *seyn* for its auxiliary). Imperf. lief.

Du läufst—er läuft.

Beglaufen\*.

Hinter (governs the dative and accusative).

Hinter dem Ofen sitzen\*. Imperf. saß.

Er lief hinter den Ofen.

Wohin läuft er?

Er läuft hinter das Haus.

Wo ist er hingelaufen?

der Ofen;  
der Schlag, der Stieb;  
der Stoß, der Tritt;  
der Stich.

Haben Sie diesem Manne einen Schlag gegeben?

Ich habe ihm einen gegeben.  
ein Schlag mit dem Stöcke;  
Stockschläge, Stockprügel;  
der Messerstich;  
der Tritt (mit dem Fuße);  
ein Schlag (mit der Faust);  
Faustschläge;  
der Degen;  
der Degenstich;  
der Säbel.

To push—pushed.

Thou pushest—he pushes.

To beat.

Why do you push him?

I push him, because he has pushed me.

Has this soldier given you a blow?

Stoßen\*—gestoßen. Imp. stieß.

Du stößt—er stößt.

Prügeln (schlagen\*).

Warum stoßen Sie ihn?

Ich stoße ihn, weil er mich gestoßen hat.

Hat Ihnen dieser Soldat einen Schlag gegeben?

He has given me a blow with the fist.

I gave him a kick.

Er hat mir einen Schlag mit der Faust gegeben.

Ich gab ihm einen Tritt.

The shot or the report of a gun,  
the shot of a pistol,  
the powder,  
the officer,  
the shot,

der Flintenschuß;  
der Pistolenschuß;  
das Pulver;  
der Officier;  
der Schuß.

To shoot—part. past, *shot*.  
Imperf. *shot*.

Schießen\*—geschossen.  
Schuß.

To fire a gun.

{ Einen Flintenschuß thun\*. Imp  
that.  
Eine Flinte loschießen\* or abschie-  
ßen\*.

To fire a pistol.

{ Einen Pistolenschuß thun\*.  
Eine Pistole loslassen\* or loschie-  
ßen\*.

To fire at some one.  
I have fired at a bird.

{ Auf Jemanden schießen\*.  
Ich habe auf einen Vogel geschossen.  
Nach Jemandem mit der Flinte  
schießen\*.

To fire a gun at some one.

{ Einen Flintenschuß nach Jemandem  
thun\*.

I have fired (shot) at that bird.

{ Ich habe nach diesem Vogel mit der  
Flinte geschossen.

I have fired twice.

{ Ich habe zweimal geschossen.  
Ich habe zwei Flintenschüsse gethan.  
Ich habe drei Flintenschüsse gethan.  
Ich habe einige Flintenschüsse ge-  
than.

I have fired three times.

I have fired several times.

How many times have you fired?  
How many times have you fired  
at that bird?

Wie vielmal haben Sie geschossen?  
Wie vielmal haben Sie nach diesem  
Vogel geschossen?

I have fired at it several times.

{ Ich habe verschiedene Mal nach ihm  
geschossen.

I have heard a shot.

He has heard the report of a pistol.

We have heard a clap of thunder.

{ Ich habe einen Flintenschuß gehört.  
Er hat einen Pistolenschuß gehört.  
Wir haben einen Donner Schlag ge-  
hört.

The clap of thunder,

der Donnerschlag.

## EXERCISE.

147.

Do you intend buying a carriage?—I cannot buy one, for I have not yet received my money.—Must I go to the theatre?—You must not go thither, for it is very bad weather.—Why do you not go to my brother?—It does not suit me to go to him; for I cannot yet pay him what I owe him.—Why does this officer give this man a stab with his sword?—He gives him a stab with his sword because the man (*dieser*) has given him a blow with the fist.—Which of these two pupils begins to speak?—The one who is studious begins to speak.—What does the other do who is not so?—He also begins to speak, but he is neither able to write nor to read.—Does he not listen to what you tell him?—He does not listen to it, if (See Rule of Syntax, Lesson XLIX.) I do not give him a beating (*Stockprügel*).—What does he do when (*wenn*) you speak to him?—He sits behind the oven without saying a word.—Where does that dog run to?—It runs behind the house.—What did it do when you gave it a beating?—It barked and ran behind the oven.—Why does your uncle kick that poor dog?—Because it (*dieser*) has bitten his little boy.—Why has your servant run away?—I gave him a beating, so that he has run away.—Why do those children not work?—Their master has given them blows with the fist, so that they will not work (*arbeiten wollen*).—Why has he given them blows with the fist?—Because they have been disobedient.—Have you fired a gun?—I have fired three times.—At whom did you fire?—I fired at a bird which sat on a tree.—Have you fired a gun at that man?—I have fired a pistol at him.—Why have you fired a pistol at him?—Because he gave me a stab with his sword. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)



## SIXTY-FIFTH LESSON.

## Fünf und sechzigste Section.

*To cast*—past part. *cast*.

Thou castest—he casts.

To cast an eye upon some one or something.

Have you cast an eye upon that book?

I have cast an eye upon it.

Werfen\*—geworfen. Imperf. warf.

Du wirfst—er wirft.

Einen Blick (Die Augen) auf Jemanden oder Etwas werfen\*.

Haben Sie einen Blick auf dieses Buch geworfen?

Ich habe einen Blick darauf geworfen. (See *Obs. A. Lesson XXXI.*)

*To throw*—thrown.

*Threw*.

Have you thrown a stone into the river?

I have thrown one into it.

Werfen\*—geworfen.

Warf.

Haben Sie einen Stein in den Fluß geworfen?

Ich habe einen hinein geworfen. (*Obs. A. Lesson LII.*)

*Now*.

Where does the stone lie now?

It lies in the river.

Nun.

Wo liegt nun der Stein?

Er liegt in dem (im) Fluße.

*To draw, to pull*.

*To drag*.

Ziehen\*. Imperf. zog.

Schleppen.

The evil, the pain.

To hurt.

das Leid.

Weh thun\*.

To hurt some one.

Jemandem Etwas zu Leide thun\*.

Jemandem ein Leid thun\*.

Jemandem Böses thun\*.

Jemandem Böses zufügen.

The injury, the damage.

der Schaden.

*To cause (to do)*.

To prejudice some one.

It is a pity.

Zufügen, verursachen.

Jemandem Schaden zufügen.

† Es ist schade.

Have you hurt that man?

I have not hurt him.

Why have you hurt that man?

I have not hurt him.

Does this hurt you?

It does hurt me.

Have I hurt you?

You have not hurt me.

Haben Sie diesem Manne Etwas zu Leide gethan?

Ich habe ihm Nichts zu Leide gethan.

Warum haben Sie diesem Manne ein Leid gethan?

Ich habe ihm nichts Böses gethan.

Thut das Ihnen weh?

Es thut mir weh.

Habe ich Ihnen weh gethan?

Sie haben mir nicht weh gethan.

### *Harm.*

Have I ever done you any harm?

On the contrary.

No, on the contrary, you have done me good.

I have never done harm to any one.

To do good to any body.

To show—shown.

Böses.

Habe ich Ihnen je Böses gethan?

Im Gegentheil.

Nein, im Gegentheil, Sie haben mir Gutes gethan (erwiesen).

Ich habe nie Jemandem Etwas zu Leid gethan.

Jemandem Gutes thun\* (erweisen\*).

Erweisen\*—erwiesen. Imperf. erwies.

To be good for the health, to be wholesome.

That does me good.

Zuträglich } seyn\*.  
Gesund }

{ Dies thut mir wohl.  
{ Dies ist mir zuträglich.

What does the servant do with his broom?

He sweeps the room with it.

What does he wish to make out of this wood?

He does not wish to make anything of it.

Was macht der Bediente mit seinem Besen?

Er kehrt das Zimmer damit aus.

Was will er aus diesem Holze machen?

Er will Nichts daraus machen.

To pass by the side of some one.

I pass by the side of him.

Have you passed by the side of my brother?

I have passed by the side of him.

An Jemandem vorbeigehen\*.

Ich gehe an ihm vorbei.

Sind Sie an meinem Bruder vorbeigegangen?

Ich bin an ihm vorbeigegangen.

### *To throw away.*

He has thrown away his money.

Begwerfen\*.

Er hat sein Geld weggeworfen.

*Before.*

To pass before a place.

To pass by a place.

He has passed before my house.

I have passed by the theatre.

He has passed before me.

Vor (dative and accusative).

Vor einem Orte vorbeigehen\*.

An einem Orte vorbeigehen\*.

Er ist vor meinem Hause vorbeigegangen.

Ich bin am Theater vorbeigegangen.

Er ist vor mir vorbeigegangen.

## EXERCISES.

148.

How many times have you shot at that bird?—I have shot at it twice.—Have you killed it?—I have killed it at the second shot.—Have you killed that bird at the first shot?—I have killed it at the fourth.—Do you shoot at the birds which you (see) upon the houses, or at those which you see in the gardens?—I shoot neither at those which I (see) upon the houses, nor at those which I see in the gardens, but at those which I perceive upon the trees.—How many times have the enemies fired at us?—They have fired at us several times.—Have they killed (erschossen) any one?—They have killed no one.—Have you a wish to shoot at that bird?—I have a desire to shoot at it.—Why do you not shoot at those birds?—I cannot, for I have no powder.—When did the officer fire?—He fired when his soldiers fired.—How many birds have you shot at?—I have shot at all I have perceived, but I have killed none, for my powder was not good.

149.

Have you cast an eye upon that man?—I have cast an eye upon him.—Has your uncle seen you?—I have passed by the side of him, and he has not seen me, for he has sore eyes.—Has that man hurt you?—No, Sir, he has not hurt me.—What must one do in order to be loved?—One must do good to those that have done us harm.—Have we ever done you harm?—No, you have on the contrary done us good.—Do you do harm to any one?—I do no one any harm.—Why have you hurt these children?—I have not hurt them.—Have I hurt you?—You have not hurt me, but your children (have).—What have they done to you?—They dragged me into your garden in order to beat me.—Have they beaten you?—They have not beaten me, for I ran away.—Is it your brother who has hurt my son?—No, Sir, it is not my brother, for he has never hurt any one.—Have you drunk of (von) that wine?—I have drunk of it, and it has done me good.—What have you done with my book?—I have placed it on the table.—Where does it lie now?—It lies upon the table.—Where are my gloves?—They are lying upon the chair.—Where is my stick?—They (man) have thrown it into the river.—Who has thrown it into it? (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## SIXTY-SIXTH LESSON.

## Sechß und sechzigste Section.

To spend time in something.

Die Zeit mit Etwas zubringen \* or  
hinbringen\*.

Imperf. brought.

Brachte.

What do you spend your time in?

Womit bringen Sie die Zeit zu?

*Rule.* A demonstrative, relative, or interrogative pronoun is never used with a preposition, when it relates to an indeterminate thing. Instead of the pronoun, one of the adverbs da, wo is joined to the preposition; thus: daran, for an das; woran, for an was; worauf, for auf was; womit, for mit was, &c. (See *Obs. B. and C.*, Lesson LIV.)

I spend my time in studying.

Ich bringe die Zeit mit Studiren zu.

What has he spent his time in?

Womit hat er die Zeit zugebracht?

*To miss, to fail.*The merchant has failed to bring  
the money.

Verfehlen, verabsäumen.

Der Kaufmann hat das Geld zu  
bringen verabsäumt (verfehlt).Der Kaufmann hat verabsäumt  
(verfehlt) das Geld zu bringen.

You have missed your turn.

Sie haben Ihre Reihe verfehlt.

You have failed to come to me  
this morning.Sie haben verfehlt, diesen Morgen  
zu mir zu kommen.

The turn,

die Reihe.

*To hear.*

To hear of some one.

Hören.

Von Jemandem hören.

Have you heard of my friend?

Haben Sie von meinem Freunde  
gehört?

I have heard of him.

Ich habe von ihm gehört.

Of whom have you heard?

Von wem haben Sie gehört?

Have you heard nothing new?

Haben Sie nichts Neues gehört?

I hear that your father has arrived.

Ich höre, daß Ihr Vater angekom-  
men ist.*To assure.*

| Versichern (governs the dat.).

*Obs.* The verb versichern requires the dative of the person, when followed by the conjunction daß, expressed or understood; otherwise it

takes the accusative of the person, and the genitive of the thing, or the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing. (See Method, Part II. Verbs governing the Genitive, pp. 130, 131.)

I assure you of my assistance.	{	Ich versichere Sie meines Beistandes. Ich versichere Ihnen meinen Beistand.
--------------------------------	---	--

<i>To happen—happened.</i>	{	Geschehen*—geschehen. (Obs. A. Lesson XLVII.) Imperf. geschah. Widerfahren*—widerfahren. Imperf. widerfuhr.
----------------------------	---	--

<i>To happen, to meet with.</i>	{	Begegnen (has seyn* for its auxiliary).
---------------------------------	---	---

The fortune, happiness, the misfortune, A great misfortune has happened. He has met with a great misfortune. I have met with your brother.	{	das Glück; das Unglück. Es ist ein großes Unglück geschehen. Es ist ihm ein großes Unglück begegnet (widerfahren). Ich bin Ihrem Bruder begegnet.
--	---	---

Are there many horses in this village?	{	Gibt es viel Pferde in diesem Dorfe?
--	---	--------------------------------------

<i>There.</i> There is not a single good horse there. The village, single,	{	Dasselbst or da. Es gibt kein einziges gutes Pferd daselbst. das Dorf; einzig.
---	---	---

Are there many learned men in France?	{	Gibt es viel Gelehrte in Frankreich?
There are a good many there.	{	Es gibt sehr viele da.
There are no apples this year.	{	Es gibt keine Äpfel dieses Jahr.

<i>To be of use, to be good.</i> To be good for something. Of what use is that?  <i>It is good for nothing.</i> The good-for-nothing fellow, the fault, the defect,	{	Taugen. Zu Etwas taugen. Wozu taugt das? (Obs. C. Lesson LIV. and Rule above.) Es taugt zu Nichts. der Zeugnißts; der Fehler.
---	---	--

Is the stuff which you have bought	}	ist der Zeug, den Sie gekauft haben.
good?		gut.
No, it is good for nothing.		} Rein, er taugt Nichts.
No, it is worth nothing.		

## EXERCISES.

150.

I do not see my gloves; where are they?—They are lying in the river.—Who has thrown them into it?—Your servant, because they were no longer good for anything.—What have you done with your money?—I have bought a house with it (*damit*).—What has the joiner done with that wood?—He has made a table and two chairs of it.—What has the tailor done with the cloth which you gave him?—He has made clothes of it for (*für* with the accus.) your children and mine.—What has the baker done with the flour which you sold him?—He has made bread of it for you and me.—Have the horses been found?—They have been found.—Where have they been found?—They have been found behind the wood, on this side (*Lesson LII.*) of the river.—Have you been seen by anybody?—I have been seen by nobody.—Have you passed by anybody?—I passed by the side of you, and you did not see me.—Has any one passed by the side of you?—No one has passed by the side of me.

151.

Do you expect (*Lesson XLIX.*) any one?—I do expect my cousin, the officer.—Have you not seen him?—I have seen him this morning; he has passed before my house.—What does this young man wait for (*Obs. C., Lesson LIV. and Rule, page 223*)?—He waits for money.—Art thou waiting for anything?—I am waiting for my book.—Is this young man waiting for his money?—He is waiting for it.—Has the king passed (in the carriage) here (*hier vorbei*)?—He has not passed here, but before the theatre.—Has he not passed before the new fountain?—He has passed there; but I have not seen him.—What do you spend your time in?—I spend my time in studying.—What does your brother spend his time in?—He spends his time in reading and playing.—Does this man spend his time in working?—He is a good-for-nothing fellow; he spends his time in drinking and playing.—What did you spend your time in, when you were at Berlin?—When I was at Berlin, I spent my time in studying, and riding on horseback?—What do your children spend their time in?—They spend their time in learning.—Can you pay me what you owe me?—I cannot pay it you, for our bailiff has failed to bring me my money.—Why have you breakfasted without me?—You

It is more than a year since.  
 It is hardly six months since.  
 It is nearly two years since.  
 It is almost a year since.  
 I have been living here these two years.

Es ist länger als ein Jahr, daß.  
 Es sind kaum sechs Monate, daß.  
 Es sind ungefähr zwei Jahre, daß.  
 Es ist fast ein Jahr, daß.  
 † Ich wohne seit zwei Jahren hier.

The state of existence or of action, when in its duration, is in German expressed by the present tense.

How long have you had that horse?  
 I have already had it these five years.  
 It is already more than three months since.  
 I have not seen him for a year.

† Wie lange haben Sie das Pferd?  
 † Ich habe es schon fünf Jahre.  
 Es sind schon mehr als drei Monate, daß.  
 Ich habe ihn in einem Jahre nicht gesehen.

*Soon, almost.*

A few hours ago.  
 Half an hour ago.  
 A quarter of an hour ago.

Bald.  
 Vor einigen Stunden.  
 Vor einer halben Stunde.  
 Vor einer Viertelstunde.

I have seen him more than twenty times.  
 More than a hundred times.

Ich habe ihn mehr als zwanzigmal gesehen.  
 Mehr als hundertmal.

*Since.*

*How long?*

How long has he been here?  
 These three days.  
 This month.

Seit (a preposition governing the dative).  
 † Seit wann?  
 † Seit wann ist er hier?  
 † Seit drei Tagen.  
 † Seit einem Monate.

*To cost.*

How much does this book cost you?

Kosten (is an impersonal verb governing the dative of the person).

Wieviel kostet Ihnen dieses Buch?

It costs me three crowns and a half.

Es kostet mir vierthalb Thaler.  
 Es kostet mir drei und einen halben Thaler.

This table costs him seven florins and a half.

Dieser Tisch kostet ihm achthalb Gulden.  
 Dieser Tisch kostet ihm sieben und einen halben Gulden.

*Obs. C.* The adjective *halb*, half, is declined when before a substantive; but it is not declined in fractional numbers, as *anberthalb*, one and a half, compounded of *anber*, other, and *halb*, half; *britthalb*, two and a half, compounded of *ber dritte*, the third, and *halb*, half. (See Method, Part II. *Obs. A.* p. 40.)

*To purchase (to buy).*

What have you purchased to-day?  
I have purchased three pair of shoes, and two pair of boots.  
Have you purchased anything to-day?

*Einkaufen.*

Was haben Sie heute eingekauft?  
Ich habe drei Paar Schuhe und zwei Paar Stiefel eingekauft.  
Haben Sie heute Etwas eingekauft?

*Obs. D.* The names of weights, measures, and quantities, as well as the word *Mann*, man, meaning a soldier, are not used in the plural, when preceded by a noun of number. (See Method, Part II. *Obs. D.* p. 36.)

My father has bought twenty pounds of sugar.

Three quires of paper.

A regiment of a thousand men.

The pound (weight).

the dozen,

the pair,

the quire of paper,

the foot (measure),

the inch,

the regiment,

the ring,

the picture.

Mein Vater hat zwanzig Pfund Zucker gekauft.

Drei Buch Papier.

Ein Regiment von tausend Mann.

das Pfund;

das Duzend;

das Paar;

das Buch Papier;

der Fuß, der Schuh;

der Zoll;

das Regiment;

der Ring;

das Gemälde.

## EXERCISES.

### 153.

Have you ever been in this village?—I have several times been there.—Are there good horses in it?—There is not a single one in it.—Have you ever been in that country?—I have been there once.—Are there many learned men there?—There are many there, but they spend their time in reading.—Are there many studious children in that village?—There are some, but there are also others who will not study.—Are the peasants of this village able to read and write?—Some are able to read, others to write and not to read, and many both to read and to write; there are a few who are neither able to read nor to write.—Have you done the exercises?—We have done them.—Are there any faults in them?—There are no faults in them, for we have been *very assiduous*.—Has your friend many children?—He has only one, but who is a good-for-nothing fellow, for he



will not study.—In what does he spend his time?—He spends his time in playing and running.—Why does his father not punish him?—He has not the courage to punish him.—What have you done with the stuff which you bought?—I have thrown it away, for it was good for nothing.—Have you thrown away your apples?—I tasted (them), and found them very good, so that I have eaten them.

## 154.

Have you been long in Paris?—These four years.—Has your brother been long in London?—He has been there these ten years.—Is it long since you dined?—It is long since I dined, but not long since I supped.—How long is it since you supped?—It is two hours and a half.—Is it long since you received a letter from your father?—It is not long since I received one.—How long is it since you received a letter from your friend who is in Germany?—It is three months since I received one.—Is it long since you spoke to the man whose son has lent you money?—It is not long since I spoke to him.—Is it long since you saw your parents?—It is a great while since I saw them.—Has the son of my friend been living long in your house?—He has been living there a fortnight (*vierzehn Tage*).—How long have you had these books?—I have had them these three months.—How long is it since your cousin set out?—It is more than a month since he set out.—What is become of the man who spoke English so well?—I do not know what is become of him, for it is a great while since I saw him.—Is it long since you heard of the officer who gave your friend a stab with his sword?—It is more than a year since I heard of him.—How long have you been learning German?—I have been learning it only these three months.—Are you already able to speak it?—You see that I am beginning to speak it.—Have the children of the French noblemen been learning it long?—They have been learning it these five years, and they do not yet begin to speak.—Why can they not speak it?—They cannot speak it, because they are learning it badly.—Why do they not learn it well?—They have not a good master, so that they do not learn it well.

## 155.

Is it long since you saw the young man who learnt German with (bei) the same master with whom we learnt it?—I have not seen him for nearly a year.—How long is it since that child ate?—It ate a few minutes (*Lesson XLIX. Note 4.*) ago.—How long is it since those children drank?—They drank a quarter of an hour ago.—How long has your friend been in Spain?—He has been there this month.—How often have you seen the king?—I saw him more than ten times when I was in Paris.—When did

you meet my brother?—I met him a fortnight ago.—Where did you meet him?—In (auf) the great square (Platz) before the theatre.—Did he do you any harm?—He did me no harm, for he is a very good boy.—Has your son long been able to read?—These two days only.—With (bei) whom has he learnt it?—He has learnt it with (bei) the German tutor.—How long have you been spending your time in studying?—Nearly these twenty years.—Have you purchased anything to-day?—I have purchased something.—What have you bought?—I have bought three casks of wine and thirty pounds of sugar.—Have you not bought any stockings?—I have bought nine pair of them.—Have you also bought handkerchiefs?—I have bought two dozen of them.—Why have you not bought gold rings?—I could not buy anything more, for I had no more money.—Are there many soldiers in your country?—There is a regiment of three thousand men there.—How long have I kept your cousin's money?—You have kept it almost a year. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## SIXTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

## Acht und sechzigste Section.

*Just now.*

I have just seen your brother.

He has just written.

The men have just arrived.

So eben.

Ich habe so eben Ihren Bruder gesehen.

Er hat so eben geschrieben.

Die Leute sind so eben angekommen.

*To spend money.*

How much have you spent to-day?

*To spend (to eat, to consume).*

What am I to pay?

How much has he spent at the inn?

He has fifty crowns a month to live upon.

*To squander, to dissipate, to lavish.*

He has squandered all his wealth.

The landlord, the innkeeper,  
the wealth, the fortune,  
entire, whole.

Ausgeben\*.

Wieviel haben Sie heute ausgegeben?

Verzehren.

† Was habe ich verzehrt?

† Wieviel hat er bei dem Wirth verzehrt?

† Er hat den Monat funfzig Thaler zu verzehren.

Verschwenden.

Er hat sein ganzes Vermögen verschwendet.

der Wirth;  
das Vermögen;  
ganz.

What countryman are you?

From Venice.

From London.

I am from Dresden.

{ † Woher sind Sie? Wo sind Sie her?

{ Was für ein Landsmann<sup>1</sup> sind Sie?

{ Von (aus) Venedig.

{ Von (aus) London.

{ Ich bin aus Dresden.

<sup>1</sup> The plural of der Landsmann, the countryman, one of the same country, is Landleute. Its feminine is Landmänninn, countrywoman, a woman of the same country. This word must not be mistaken for der Landmann, the countryman, farmer, rustic, the plural of which is Landleute.

*Obs. A.* The syllable *er* is the characteristic termination of the masculine gender<sup>2</sup>, and signifies the person that performs or is accustomed to perform the thing expressed by the verb. This syllable, joined to the name of a town or country, forms a substantive denoting the man born in such a town or country. **Ex.**

He is a saddler,	Er ist ein Sattler ;
a baker,	ein Bäcker <sup>3</sup> ;
a locksmith,	ein Schlosser ;
the lock,	das Schloß ;
the saddle,	der Sattel ;
the key,	der Schlüssel.
He is from Berlin.	+ Er ist ein Berliner.
Are you an Englishman?	Sind Sie ein Engländer ?

Whence do you come ?	{ Woher kommen Sie ?
	{ Wo kommen Sie her ?
I come from Paris.	Ich komme von Paris.

<i>To serve, to wait upon.</i>	{ Dienen (governs the dative).
	{ Bedienen (governs the accusative).
<i>To serve some one, or to wait upon some one.</i>	Jemandem dienen.
<i>To be in one's service.</i>	Bei Jemandem dienen.
Has he been in your service ?	Hat er bei Ihnen gedient ?
Does he serve you well ?	Bedient er Sie gut ?
He serves me very well.	Er bedient mich sehr gut.
This is to no purpose (of no use).	+ Das dient zu Nichts.
Do you choose any of it ?	+ Kann ich Ihnen damit dienen ?
I do not like it.	{ + Damit ist mir nicht gedient.
It will not do for me.	

<i>To spoil.</i>	{ Verderben* (verb act. and neut. irreg.).
	{ Zu Schanden machen (a vulgar expression).
Thou spoilest—he spoils.	Du verdirbst, er verdirbt. (Imperf. verdarb.)

<sup>2</sup> This is the reason why most substantives of this termination are of the masculine gender. (See my Treatise on the gender of substantives in "Introductory Book to the Method," and pages 3, 4, Method, Part II.)

<sup>3</sup> Derived from *backen*, to bake.

You have spoiled my book.  
My book is spoiled.

Has he spoiled my hat?

*To damage.*

Sie haben mein Buch verderbt.  
Mein Buch ist verdorben (zu Schanden gemacht).

Hat er meinen Hut verderbt (zu Schanden gemacht)?

Beschädigen.

That hat fits you well.  
How does this hat fit me?  
It does not fit you.

Most lovely, charming.

Admirably.

Dieser Hut steht Ihnen gut.

Wie steht mir dieser Hut?

Er steht Ihnen nicht gut.

Allerliebste.

Wunderschön.

*To dress, to fit, to sit well.* | Kleiden.

*Obs. B.* The verb *kleiden*, when it signifies *to fit, to sit well*, is neuter, and governs the dative; but when it means *to dress, to clothe*, it is active and governs the accusative.

That hat fits you admirably well.

That coat fits him.

My father clothes me.

God clothes the poor.

The man with the blue coat.

How was the child dressed?

It was dressed in green.

Dieser Hut kleidet Ihnen allerliebste.

Dieser Rock kleidet ihm gut.

Mein Vater kleidet mich.

Gott kleidet die Armen.

Der Mann mit dem blauen Kleide.

Wie war das Kind gekleidet?

† Es war grün gekleidet.

How large?

Of what size?

How high? of what height?

How deep? of what depth?

Of what height is his house?

It is nearly thirty feet high.

} Wie groß?

Wie hoch?

Wie tief?

Wie hoch ist sein Haus?

Es ist ungefähr dreißig Fuß hoch.

(Lesson LXVII. *Obs. D.*)

*True.*

Is it true that his house has been burnt?

It is true.

Is it not? (meaning, Is it not true?)

The philosopher,

Wahr.

Ist es wahr, daß sein Haus abgebrannt ist?

Es ist wahr?

† Nicht wahr?

der Weltweise, der Philosoph (gen. en.).

*\* Altes is the genitive plural of the word all, all. It is sometimes thus joined to the superlative to give it more strength.*

## EXERCISES.

156.

Who is the man who has just spoken to you?—He is a learned man.—What has the shoemaker just brought?—He has brought the boots and shoes which he has made us.—Who are the men that have just arrived?—They are philosophers.—Of what country are they?—They are from London.—Who is the man who has just started?—He is an Englishman, who has squandered away (*verschwendet*) all his fortune in France.—What countryman are you?—I am a Spaniard, and my friend is an Italian.—Wilt thou go for the locksmith?—Why must I go for the locksmith?—He (*derselbe*) must make me a key, for I have lost the one belonging to my room (*den meines Zimmers*).—Where did your uncle dine yesterday?—He dined at the innkeeper's.—How much did he spend?—He spent three florins.—How much has he a month to live upon?—He has two hundred florins a month to live upon.—Must I go for the saddler?—You must go for him, for he must mend the saddle.—Have you seen any one at the market?—I have seen a good many people there.—How were they dressed?—Some were dressed in blue, some in green, some in yellow, and several in red.

157.

Who are those men?—The one who is dressed in grey is my neighbour, and the one with the black coat the physician, whose son has given my neighbour a blow with a stick.—Who is the man with the green coat?—He is one of my relations.—Are you from Berlin?—No, I am from Dresden.—How much money have your children spent to day?—They have spent but little; they have spent but one florin.—Does that man serve you well?—He does serve me well; but he spends too much.—Are you willing to take this servant?—I am willing to take him, if he will serve me.—Can I take this servant?—You can take him, for he has served me very well.—How long is it since he (first) served you?—It is but two months since.—Has he served you long?—He has served me (for) six years.—How much did you give him a year (*des Jahres*)?—I gave him five hundred francs without clothing him.—Did he board (*ab*) with (*bei*) you?—He did board with me.—What did you give him to eat?—I gave him whatever (*von Allem, was*) I ate.—Were you pleased with him?—I was much (*sehr*) pleased with him. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## SIXTY-NINTH LESSON.

## Neun und sechzigste Lektion.

<i>To trust with.</i>	Anvertrauen.						
<i>To entrust, to confide, to commit in confidence.</i>	Vertrauen.						
I trust you with my money.	Ich vertraue Ihnen mein Geld an.						
He has trusted me with his money.	Er hat mir sein Geld anvertraut.						
I entrust you with a secret.	Ich vertraue Ihnen ein Geheimniß.						
To unbosom one's self to one.	† Sich Jemandem vertrauen.						
<hr/>							
The secret,	das Geheimniß (plur. e <sup>1</sup> ).						
To keep anything secret.	Etwas geheim halten.						
	Imperf. hielt.						
I have kept it secret.	Ich habe es geheim gehalten.						
Secret (adjective).	Geheim.						
<hr/>							
<i>To pity.</i>	Beklagen.						
With all my heart.	† Von ganzem Herzen.						
Do you pity that man?	Beklagen Sie diesen Mann?						
I do pity him with all my heart.	Ich beklage ihn von ganzem Herzen.						
<hr/>							
<i>To offer—offered.</i>	Anbieten*—angeboten.						
	Imperf. bot.						
I offer it you.	Ich biete es Ihnen an.						
<hr/>							
<i>For.</i>	Für (a preposition governing the accusative).						
To take care of something.	{ Sorge für Etwas tragen *.						
	{ Etwas in Acht nehmen *.						
To take care of it.	{ <table><tr><td><i>Masc.</i></td><td><i>Neut.</i></td></tr><tr><td>Dafür besorgt seyn</td><td>ihn</td></tr><tr><td>Dafür sorgen</td><td>es besorgen.</td></tr></table> }	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	Dafür besorgt seyn	ihn	Dafür sorgen	es besorgen.
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>						
Dafür besorgt seyn	ihn						
Dafür sorgen	es besorgen.						
To take care of the hat.	Den Hut in Acht nehmen *.						
	Imperf. nahm.						
Do you take care of your clothes?	Nehmen Sie Ihre Kleider in Acht?						
I do take care of them.	† Ich nehme sie in Acht.						

<sup>1</sup> Neuter nouns terminating in *niß*, add *e* to all cases of the plural, without softening the radical vowel. (See "Introductory Book," and Method, Part II.)

*Obs. A.* There are in German many substantives, adverbs, and other words and expressions which form one signification with the verb, as; *auswendig lernen*, to learn by heart<sup>2</sup>; *gern essen*\*, to like to eat (Lesson LVI.); *schuldig seyn*\*, to owe (Lesson XLIX.), &c. These are placed exactly like the separable particles (Lesson XXVII.), but are never joined to the verb. (See those expressions in Method, Part II. *Obs. G.* p. 105.)

Will you take care of my horse ?	{	<i>Wollen Sie für mein Pferd sorgen ?</i> <i>Wollen Sie mein Pferd besorgen ?</i>
I will take care of it.	{	<i>Ich will dafür sorgen</i> <i>Ich will es besorgen.</i>
To take care.		<i>Sorgen, besorgen.</i>

The merchant of Hamburg. | *Der Hamburger Kaufmann.*

*Obs. B.* The genitive of names of towns is generally expressed by an adjective. This is formed by adding the syllable *er* to the name, and is indeclinable. *Ex.*

		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
The student of Leipzig.	{	Nom.	der Leipziger Student	—die
		Gen.	des Leipziger Studenten	—der
		Dat.	dem Leipziger Studenten	—den
		Acc.	den Leipziger Studenten	—die
				Leipziger Studenten.

The citizen (burgess) of London,		der Londoner Bürger ;
the citizen of Paris,		der Pariser Bürger ;
the beer of Strasburg,		das Strasburger Bier.

## EXERCISES.

158.

Are there many philosophers in your country ?—There are as many there as in yours.—How does this hat fit me ?—It fits you very well.—How does this hat fit your brother ?—It fits him admirably.—Is your brother as tall (*groß*) as you ?—He is taller than I, but I am older than he.—How high is this man ?—He is five feet, four inches high.—How high is the house of our landlord ?—It is sixty feet high.—Is your well deep ?—Yes, Sir, for it is fifty feet deep.—How long have those men been in your father's service ?—They have been in his service already more than three years.—Has your cousin been long at Paris ?—He has been there nearly six years.—Who has spoiled my knife ?—No—

<sup>2</sup> This and the above examples show that such a construction is not altogether unusual in English.

\* The first of these two expressions is the best.



body has spoiled it, for it was spoiled when we were in want of it.—Is it true that your uncle has arrived?—I assure you that he has arrived.—Is it true that the king has assured you of his assistance?—I assure you that it is true.—Is it true that the six thousand men whom we were expecting have arrived?—I have heard so.—Will you dine with us?—I cannot dine with you, for I have just eaten.—Will your brother drink a glass (of) wine?—He cannot drink, for, I assure you, he has just drunk.—Do you throw away your hat?—I do not throw it away, for it fits me admirably.—Does your friend sell his coat?—He does not sell it, for it fits him most beautifully.—There are many learned men in Berlin, are there not (*nicht wahr*)? asked Cuvier a man from Berlin (*der Berliner*). Not so many as when you were there, answered the man from Berlin.

## 159.

Why do you pity that man?—I pity him, because he has trusted a merchant of Hamburg with his money, and the man (*diefer*) will not return it to him.—Do you trust this citizen with anything?—I do not trust him with anything.—Has he already kept anything from you (*Sihnen Etwas behalten*)?—I have never trusted him with anything, so that he has never kept anything from me.—Will you trust my father with your money?—I will trust him with it.—What secret has my son entrusted you with?—I cannot entrust you with that with which he has entrusted me, for he has desired (*bitten* \*) me to keep it secret.—Whom do you entrust with your secrets?—I entrust nobody with them, so that nobody knows them.—Has your brother been rewarded?—He has, on the contrary, been punished; but I beg you to keep it secret, for no one knows it.—What has happened to him?—I will tell you what has happened to him, if you promise me to keep it secret.—Do you promise me to keep it secret?—I promise you, for I pity him with all my heart. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## SEVENTIETH LESSON

## Siebzigste Section.

Each man.	Jeder Mensch.
Each child	Jedes Kind.
Every one.	Jedermann.
The whole world.	Die ganze Welt.

*Obs. A.* Jedermann adds *s* in the genitive, and remains invariable in the other cases, thus :

Every one, every body.	Now. Jedermann.
	Gen. Jedermanns.
	Dat. Jedermann.
	Acc. Jedermann.

*Every thing* (meaning all). | Alles.

*Obs. B.* Alles, all, taken substantively, is put in the neuter gender, and written with a capital letter. (See Circumscribing Auxiliaries, Method, Part II. *Obs. H.* pp. 106, 107, et seqq.) Ex.

He knows every thing.	Er kann Alles.
I have seen all.	Ich habe Alles gesehen.
He is fit for any thing.	† Er ist zu Allem zu gebrauchen.

*Obs. C.* Ganz, whole, entire, is used with the article, but all, all, is never used with it.

The whole town.	Die ganze Stadt.
The whole society.	Die ganze Gesellschaft.
His whole wealth.	} Sein ganzes Vermögen.
All his fortune.	

The walk (meaning the place to walk in),	der Spazierplatz ;
the concert,	das Concert ;
the walk (meaning the walking),	der Spaziergang.
There were many people in the walk (at the concert),	Es waren viel Leute auf dem Spazierplatze (im Concert).

I have cut his finger.	† Ich habe ihn in den Finger geschnitten.
He has cut my leg.	† Er hat mich in das Bein geschnitten.
Has he cut off his finger ?	Hat er ihm den Finger abgeschnitten ?
He has cut it off.	Er hat ihn ihm abgeschnitten.
Entirely	Gänzlich.

*To bring along with one.*  
Have you come quite alone?

Mitbringen\*.  
Sind Sie ganz allein gekommen?

*Obs. D. Allein, as a conjunction, has the same signification as aber, but; as an adverb it signifies alone.*

No, I have brought all my men along with me.

Nein, ich habe alle meine Leute mitgebracht.

He has brought all his men along with him.

Er hat alle seine Leute mitgebracht.

Have you brought your brother along with you?

Haben Sie Ihren Bruder mitgebracht?

I have brought him along with me.

Ich habe ihn mitgebracht.

Have you told the groom to bring me the horse?

Haben Sie dem Stallknecht gesagt, mir das Pferd zu bringen?

The groom,

der Stallknecht.

*Near.*

Unweit, in der Nähe (govern the genitive).

Bei (governs the dative).

Neben (governs the dative and accusative).

Near me.

Neben mir (rest).

Near the fire.

Bei dem Feuer.

Am Feuer.

Vor dem Feuer.

Near the castle.

Unweit des Schlosses<sup>1</sup>.

Where do you live?

Wo wohnen Sie?

I live near the castle.

Ich wohne unweit des Schlosses.

What are you doing near the fire?

Was thun Sie bei dem Feuer?

*To fall.*

Fallen (takes *seyn* for its auxiliary).

Thou fallest—he falls.

Du fällst—er fällt.

Fallen.

Gefallen.

Fell. (Imperf.)

Fiel.

*To drop (meaning to let fall).*

Fallen lassen\*.

Has he dropt anything?

Hat er Etwas fallen lassen?

He has not dropt anything.

Er hat Nichts fallen lassen.

*To hinder, to prevent.*

Verhindern.

You hinder me from sleeping.

Sie verhindern mich zu schlafen.

<sup>1</sup> *Das Schloß*, the castle, is declined exactly like *das Schloß*, the lock

## EXERCISES.

160.

Whom do you pity?—I pity your friend.—Why do you pity him?—I pity him because he is ill.—Do the merchants of Berlin pity anybody?—They pity nobody.—Do you offer me anything?—I offer you a gold ring.—What has my father offered you?—He has offered me a fine book.—To whom do you offer those fine horses?—I offer them to the French officer.—Do you offer that fine carriage to my uncle?—I do offer it to him.—Dost thou offer thy pretty little dog to these good children?—I do offer it to them, for I love them with all my heart.—What have the citizens of Strasburg offered you?—They have offered me good beer and salt meat (*gesalzenes Fleisch*).—To whom do you offer money?—I offer some to those Parisian citizens who have assured me of their assistance.—Will you take care of my clothes?—I will take care of them.—Wilt thou take care of my hat?—I will take care of it.—Are you taking care of the book which I lent you?—I am taking care of it.—Will this man take care of my horse?—He will take care of it.—Who will take care of my servant?—The landlord will take care of him.—Does your servant take care of your horses?—He does take care of them.—Is he taking care of your clothes?—He is taking care of them, for he brushes them every morning.—Have you ever drunk Strasburg beer?—I have never drunk any.—Is it long since you ate Leipzig bread?—It is almost three years since I ate any.

161.

Have you hurt my brother-in-law?—I have not hurt him; but he has cut my finger.—What has he cut your finger with?—With the knife which you had lent him.—Why have you given that boy a blow with your fist?—Because he hindered me from sleeping.—Has anybody hindered you from writing?—Nobody has hindered me from writing; but I have hindered somebody from hurting your cousin.—Has your father arrived?—Everybody says that he has arrived; but I have not seen him yet.—Has the physician hurt your son?—He has hurt him, for he has cut his finger.—Have they cut off this man's leg?—They have cut it off entirely.—Are you pleased with your servant?—I am much (*sehr*) pleased with him, for he is fit for anything.—What does he know?—He knows every thing.—Can he ride on horseback?—He can.—Has your brother returned at last from Germany?—He has returned thence, and has brought you a fine horse.—Has he told his groom to bring it me?—He has told him to bring it you.—What do you think (*sagen*) of (*zu*) that horse?—I think (*sage*) that it is a fine and good one, and (*ich*) beg you to lead it into the stable.—In what did you spend your time

yesterday?—I went to the public walk (der Spazierplatz), and afterwards to the concert.—Were there many people in the public walk?—There were many people there.

## 162.

What did you see at the concert?—I saw many people.—What did you do after the concert?—I went to the inn (das Wirthshaus) in order to dine.—Have you dined well?—I have dined very well, but I have spent too much.—How much have you spent?—I have spent nearly two florins and a half.—Is the fare (speiset man) good at your inn?—It is very good; but everything is so dear, that one must be rich to dine there.—Have you dropt anything?—I have dropt nothing; but my cousin dropt some money.—Who picked it up?—Some men who were passing by picked it up.—Have they returned it to him?—They have returned it to him, for they were good people.—Where were you going to when I met you this morning?—I was going to my uncle.—Where does he live?—He lives near the castle.—What news has (sagt) your uncle?—He has no news.—What has happened to him?—A little misfortune has happened to him.—Will you tell me what has happened to him?—I will tell it you; but I beg you to keep it secret.—I promise you to tell it to nobody.—Will you tell me now what has happened to him?—He fell as (als) he was going to the theatre.—Is he ill?—He is very ill.—I pity him from my heart, if he is ill.—Have you succeeded in finding a hat that fits you well?—I have succeeded in finding one.—How does it fit you?—It fits me admirably. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## SEVENTY-FIRST LESSON.

## Ein und siebenzigste Section.

<i>Far.</i>	<i>Weit.</i>
How far?	Wie weit?
How far is it from here to Berlin?	Wie weit ist es von hier nach Berlin?
Is it far from here to Berlin?	Ist es weit von hier nach Berlin?
It is far.	Es ist weit.
It is not far.	Es ist nicht weit.
How many miles is it?	Wieviel Meilen sind?
It is twenty miles.	Es sind zwanzig Meilen.
The mile,	die Meile (a feminine noun <sup>1</sup> ).
It is almost a hundred and thirty miles from here to Berlin.	Es sind beinahe hundert und dreißig Meilen von hier nach Berlin.
It is nearly a hundred miles from Berlin to Vienna.	Es sind ungefähr hundert Meilen von Berlin nach Wien.

<i>To like better.</i>	<i>Lieber mögen<sup>2</sup>.</i>
	Part. past, gemocht,
	Imperf. mochte.
I like better, thou likest better, he likes better.	Ich mag lieber, du magst lieber, er mag lieber.
<i>Than.</i>	<i>Als, als daß.</i>
I like staying here better than going out.	Ich mag lieber hier bleiben als ausgehen.
	Ich bleibe lieber hier, als daß ich ausgehe.
Do you like to write better than to speak?	Mögen Sie lieber schreiben als sprechen?
	Schreiben Sie lieber, als daß Sie sprechen?
I like to speak better than to write.	Ich mag lieber sprechen als schreiben.
	Ich spreche lieber, als daß ich schreibe.


<sup>1</sup> A German mile is equal to four English miles and a half.<sup>2</sup> Lieber is the comparative to gern. (See Lessons XLI. and LVI.)

He likes to play better than to study.	Er mag lieber spielen als studiren.
He likes to do both.	Er thut beides gern.
I like beef better than veal.	† Ich esse lieber Rind- als Kalb- fleisch <sup>3</sup> .
He likes beer better than wine.	† Er trinkt lieber Bier als Wein.
Do you like bread better than cheese?	† Essen Sie lieber Brod als Käse?
I like neither the one nor the other.	Ich esse keins von beiden gern.
I like tea as much as coffee.	Ich trinke eben so gern Thee als Kaffee.
The calf,	Das Kalb.

<i>Quick, fast.</i>	Geschwind, schnell.
<i>Slow, slowly.</i>	Langsam.
He eats quicker than I.	Er ißt geschwinder als ich.
Do you learn as fast as I?	Lernen Sie so schnell wie ich?
I learn faster than you.	Ich lerne schneller als Sie.
I do not understand you, because you speak too fast.	Ich verstehe Sie nicht, weil Sie zu schnell sprechen.

<i>Cheap.</i>	Wohlfeil.
Does he sell cheap?	Verkauft er wohlfeil?
He does not sell dear.	Er verkauft nicht theuer.
He has sold to me very dear.	Er hat mir sehr theuer verkauft.

<i>So.</i>	So.
<i>So much.</i>	So viel.
This man sells every thing so very dear, that one cannot buy anything of him.	Dieser Mann verkauft Alles so theuer, daß man Nichts bei ihm kaufen kann.

 In a sentence in which the verb ought to stand at the end (Lesson XLIX.) when the auxiliary *seyn*\* or *werden*\*, or one of the

<sup>3</sup> When two or more compounds terminate in the same component word, this is joined only to the last, and a German hyphen (=) is placed after the others. Ex. der Ein- und Ausgang, the entrance and exit; er ißt ein guter Sprach- und Schreiblehrer, he is a good master of languages and of writing; Rind- und Schöpfsenfleisch, beef and mutton; auf- und zumachen, to open and shut; instead of der Eingang und Ausgang, der Sprachlehrer und Schreiblehrer, Rindfleisch und Schöpfsenfleisch, aufmachen und zumachen. (See *Obs. E.* page 11, and page 254, Method, Part II.)

verbs dürfen\*, können\*, lassen\*, mögen\*, müssen\*, sollen\*, wollen\*, is added to an infinitive, it must be placed immediately after that infinitive, as is seen in the above example.

I do not know what you wish to say.	Ich weiß nicht, was Sie sagen wollen.
You speak so fast that I cannot understand you.	Sie sprechen so schnell, daß ich Sie nicht verstehen kann.
I assure you that he wishes to speak to you.	Ich versichere Ihnen, daß er Sie sprechen will.

*To drink.*

*Drank.*

Do you drink tea or coffee?

I drink neither the one nor the other.

What do you drink in the morning?

Trinken\*.

Trank. (Imperf.)

Trinken Sie Thee oder Kaffee?

Ich trinke keins von beiden.

Was trinken Sie des Morgens?

## EXERCISES.

163.

How far is it from Paris to London?—It is nearly (beinahe) a hundred miles from Paris to London.—Is it far from here to Hamburg?—It is far.—Is it far from here to Vienna?—It is almost a hundred and forty miles from here to Vienna.—Is it further from Berlin to Dresden than from Leipsic to Berlin?—It is further from Berlin to Dresden than from Leipsic to Berlin.—How far is it from Paris to Berlin?—It is almost a hundred and thirty miles from here to Berlin.—Do you intend to go to Berlin soon?—I do intend to go thither soon.—Why do you wish to go this time?—In order to buy good books and a good horse there; and to see my good friends.—Is it long since you were there?—It is nearly two years since I was there.—Do you not go to Vienna this year?—I do not go thither, for it is too far from here to Vienna.—Is it long since you saw your Hamburg friend?—I saw him but a fortnight ago.—Do your scholars like to learn by heart?—They do not like to learn by heart; they like reading and writing better than learning by heart.—Do you like beer better than cider?—I like cider better than beer.—Does your brother like to play?—He likes to study better than to play.—Do you like meat better than bread?—I like the latter better than the former.—Do you like to drink better than to eat?—I like to eat better than to drink; but my uncle likes to drink better than to eat.—Does your brother-in-law like meat better than fish?—He likes fish better than meat.—Do you like to write



better than to speak?—I like to do both.—Do you like fowl better than fish?—Do you like good honey better than sugar?—I like neither.

## 164.

Does your father like coffee better than tea?—He likes neither.—What do you drink in the morning?—I drink a glass of water with a little sugar; my father drinks good coffee, my younger brother good tea, and my brother-in-law a glass of good wine.—Can you understand me?—No, Sir, for you speak too fast.—Will you be kind enough (*so gut ſeyn*) not to speak so fast (*langſamer zu ſprechen*)?—I will not speak so fast, if you will listen to me.—Can you understand what my brother tells you?—He speaks so fast, that I cannot understand him.—Can your pupils understand you?—They understand me when I speak slowly; for in order to be understood one must speak slowly.—Why do you not buy any thing of that merchant?—I had a mind to buy several dozen of handkerchiefs, some cravats, and a white hat of him; but he sells so dear that I cannot buy anything of him.—Will you take me to another?—I will take you to the son of the one whom you bought of last year.—Does he sell as dear as this (one)?—He sells cheaper.—Do you like going to the theatre better than going to the concert?—I do like going to the concert as well as going to the theatre; but I do not like going to the public walk, for there are too many people there.—Do your children like learning Italian better than Spanish?—They do not like to learn either; they only like to learn German.—Do they like to speak better than to write?—They like to do neither.—Do you like mutton?—I like beef better than mutton.—Do your children like cake better than bread?—They like both.—Has he read all the books which he bought?—He bought so many of them, that he cannot read them all.—Do you wish to write some letters?—I have written so many of them, that I cannot write any more. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## SEVENTY-SECOND LESSON.

Zwei und siebenzigste Section.

## OF REFLECTIVE VERBS.

WHEN the action falls upon the agent, and the objective case refers to the same person as the nominative, the verb is called reflective.

In reflective verbs the pronoun of the object is of the same person as that of the subject, and stands either in the dative or the accusative, according as the verb governs the one or the other case. In the third person singular and plural it is always *sich*, whether the verb governs the dative or accusative.

## A REFLECTIVE VERB GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

To disguise myself—to disguise ourselves.	<i>Mich verstellen—Uns verstellen.</i>
To disguise thyself—to disguise yourselves.	<i>Dich verstellen—Euch verstellen.</i>

## A REFLECTIVE VERB GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

To represent to myself—to repre- sent to ourselves.	<i>Mir vorstellen—Uns vorstellen.</i>
To represent to thyself—to repre- sent to yourselves.	<i>Dir vorstellen—Euch vorstellen.</i>

## THIRD PERSON FOR ALL GENDERS.

*Singular and Plural Dative and Accusative.*

To disguise one's self—to repre- sent to one's self.	<i>Sich verstellen—sich vorstellen.</i>
---	---

☞ The personal pronoun of reflective verbs is placed after the verb as in English; and so are all other personal pronouns when they are not in the nominative.

*Obs. A.* There is no real reflective verb in English, that is to say, such as cannot be used otherwise; but in German there are many, as for instance the following, which govern the accusative.

To rejoice.	<i>Sich freuen.</i>
To be ashamed.	<i>Sich schämen.</i>
To look back.	<i>Sich umsehen*. Imperf. sah.</i>

Do you see yourself?  
I do see myself.  
Thou cuttest thyself.  
He cuts himself.  
I am afraid to go thither.  
They burn themselves.

Sehen Sie sich? (Sehet Ihr Euch?)  
Ich sehe mich.  
Du schneidest Dich.  
Er schneidet sich.  
Ich fürchte mich hinzugehen.  
Sie brennen sich.

*To flatter.*

Dost thou flatter thyself?  
I do not flatter myself.  
We do not flatter ourselves.  
He disguises himself.  
You represent to yourself.

Schmeicheln (governs the dative).  
Schmeichelst Du Dir?  
Ich schmeichle mir nicht.  
Wir schmeicheln uns nicht.  
Er verstellt sich.  
Sie stellen sich vor.

To fear some one.  
To be afraid of somebody.  
I am not afraid of him.  
I do not fear him.  
Of whom are you afraid?  
Whom do you fear?

Jemanden fürchten.  
Sich vor Jemandem fürchten.  
Ich fürchte mich nicht vor ihm.  
Ich fürchte ihn nicht.  
Vor wem fürchten Sie sich?  
Wen fürchten Sie?

To enjoy something.  
To amuse one's self in doing something.

} Sich zum Zeitvertreib mit Etwas beschäftigen.

To pass away the time.  
To drive away.  
Driven away.  
Drove away.  
The pastime, the diversion.  
In what do you amuse yourself?  
I amuse myself in reading.  
He diverts himself in playing.

Die Zeit vertreiben\*.  
Vertreiben\*.  
Vertrieben.  
Vertrieb. (Imperf.)  
Der Zeitvertreib.  
Womit vertreiben Sie sich die Zeit?  
Ich vertreibe mir die Zeit mit Lesen.  
Er vertreibt sich die Zeit mit Spielen.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Each or each one.	{ Jeder,	jede,	jedes.
	{ Ein jeder,	eine jede,	ein jedes. (Jedermann.)

*Obs. B.* Jeder, jede, jedes, has no plural, and is declined like all, with the characteristic termination of the article (Lesson LI.) Preceded by the indefinite article, it is declined like an adjective preceded by this article.

Every man has his taste.  
 Each of you.  
 Every body speaks of it.  
 Each man amuses himself as he  
 likes.  
 Each one amuses himself in the  
 best way he can.  
 The taste,

Jeder Mensch hat seinen Geschmack.  
 Ein jeder von Euch.  
 Jedermann spricht davon.  
 Ein jeder vertreibt sich die Zeit wie  
 es ihm gefällt.  
 Ein jeder vertreibt sich die Zeit so  
 gut er kann.  
 der Geschmack.

*To mistake, to be mistaken.*  
 Every man is liable to mistake.  
 You are mistaken.

Sich irren, sich täuschen.  
 Jeder Mensch kann sich irren.  
 Sie irren sich.

To soil.  
 To deceive.  
 Deceived.  
 He has cheated me of a hundred  
 crowns.

Beschmutzen, schmutzig machen.  
 Betrügen\* (betriegen\*).  
 Betrogen (past part.) Imperf. be-  
 trog.  
 Er hat mich um hundert Thaler  
 betrogen.

*At (over).*  
 To rejoice at something.  
 I rejoice at your happiness.  
 At what does your uncle rejoice?

Ueber (a preposition governing  
 the dative and accusative).  
 Sich über Etwas freuen.  
 Ich freue mich über Ihr Glück.  
 Worüber freut sich Ihr Oheim?

*To believe.*

| Glauben.

This verb requires the person in the dative, and the thing in the  
 accusative. It governs also the accusative with the preposition an.

Do you believe that man?  
 I do not believe him.  
 Do you believe what I am telling  
 you?  
 I believe in God.  
 The God,  
 the story-teller, the liar,  
 To utter a falsehood, to lie.

Glauben Sie diesem Manne?  
 Ich glaube ihm nicht.  
 Glauben Sie mir, was ich Ihnen  
 sage?  
 Ich glaube an Gott.  
 der Gott (plural Götter);  
 der Lügner.  
 Lügen (Part. past, gelogen, Imperf.  
 log).

## EXERCISES.

165.

Have you written long or short letters?—I have written (both) long and short ones.—Have you many apples?—I have so many of them that I do not know which I shall (ſoll) eat.—Do you wish to give anything to these children?—They have studied so badly, that I do not wish to give them anything.—What is this man rejoicing at?—He is rejoicing at the luck which has happened to his brother.—What dost thou rejoice at?—I rejoice at the good fortune that has happened to you.—What do your children rejoice at?—They rejoice at seeing you.—Do you rejoice at the happiness of my father?—I do rejoice at it.—What does your uncle say to my happiness?—He rejoices at it from his heart.—Do you flatter my brother?—I do not flatter him.—Does this master flatter his pupils?—He does not flatter them.—Is he pleased with them?—He is much (ſehr) pleased (zufrieden) with them when they learn well; but he is highly (ſehr) displeased with them when they do not learn well.—Do you flatter me?—I do not flatter you, for I love you.—Do you see yourself in that small looking-glass?—I do see myself in it.—Can your friends see themselves in that large looking-glass?—They can see themselves therein.—Why do you not remain near the fire?—Because I am afraid of burning myself.—Does this man make his fire?—He does not make it, for he is afraid of burning himself.—Do you fear me?—I do not fear you.—Do you fear those ugly men?—I do not fear them, for they hurt nobody.—Why do those children run away?—They run away because they are afraid of you.—Do you run away before your enemies?—I do not run away before them, for I do not fear them.

166.

In what do your children amuse themselves?—They amuse themselves in studying, writing, and playing.—In what do you amuse yourself?—I amuse myself in the best way I can, for I read good books, and I write to my friends.—In what do you amuse yourself when you have nothing to do at home?—I go to the play and to the concert, for every one amuses himself in the best way he can.—Every man has his taste; what is yours?—Mine is to study, to read a good book, to go to the theatre, the concert, the ball, and the public walk, and to ride on horseback.—Has that physician done any harm to your child?—He has cut his finger (er in den Finger), but he has not done him any harm; so you are mistaken, if you believe that he has done him any harm.—Why do you listen to that man?—I listen to him, *but I do not believe him; for I know that he is a story-teller.*—

How do you know that he is a story-teller?—He does not believe in God ; and all those who do not believe in God are story-tellers. —Why does your cousin not brush his hat?—He does not brush it because he is afraid of soiling his fingers (*ſich die Finger*).—What does my neighbour tell you?—He tells me that you wish to buy his horse ; but I know that he is mistaken, for you have no money to buy it.—What do they say at the market?—They say that the enemy is beaten.—Do you believe it?—I do believe it, because every one says so.—Why have you bought that book? —I bought it, because I wanted it to learn German ; and because every one spoke of it. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

# CONTINUATION OF THE SEVENTY-SECOND LESSON.

## Folge der zwei und siebenzigsten Section.

WHEN a proposition has no definite subject, the English, in order to avoid the pronouns *they, people, &c.*, use the verb in the passive voice; and say, *I was told*, instead of, *They told me*; *It was given to me*, instead of, *They gave it to me*. This is expressed in German by means of the indefinite pronoun *man, one*, as in French by *on*. Ex.

I am told that he is arrived.

Man sagt mir, daß er angekommen ist.

A knife was given to him to cut his bread, and he cut his finger.

Man gab ihm ein Messer, sein Brod zu schneiden, und er schnitt sich in den Finger.

## PERFECT OF REFLECTIVE VERBS.

Have you cut yourself?

Haben Sie sich geschnitten?

I have not cut myself.

Ich habe mich nicht geschnitten.

Have those men cut themselves?

Haben sich diese Männer geschnitten?

They have not cut themselves.

Sie haben sich nicht geschnitten.

Hast thou hurt thyself?

Hast Du Dir weh gethan?

I have not hurt myself.

Ich habe mir nicht weh gethan.

Who has cut himself?

Wer hat sich geschnitten?

I have cut my finger.

† Ich habe mich in den Finger geschnitten.

I have rejoiced.

† Ich habe mich gefreuet (gefreut).

I have flattered myself.

Ich habe mir geschmeichelt.

Thou hast cut thyself.

Du hast Dich geschnitten.

He has flattered himself.

Er hat sich geschmeichelt.

We have been afraid.

† Wir haben uns gefürchtet.

You have mistaken.

† Ihr habt Euch geirrt.

† Sie haben sich geirrt.

## To pull out.

He pulls out his hair.

## Ausreißen\*.

† Er reißt sich die Haare aus.

He has pulled out his hair.

† Er hat sich die Haare ausgerissen.

He has cut his hair.

† Er hat sich die Haare abgesehnitten.

I have had my hair cut.

† Ich habe mir die Haare schneiden lassen.

I have cut my nails.

The hair,

† Ich habe mir die Nägel abgeschnitten.  
das Haar (plur. e).

To go to bed.

To get up, to rise.

Do you rise early?

I rise at sun-rise.

I go to bed at sun-set.

At what time did you go to bed?

At midnight.

At three o'clock in the morning.

He went to bed late.

At what o'clock did you go to bed yesterday?

At a quarter past eleven.

The bed.

The sun-rise.

The sun-set.

Zu Bette gehen \*.

Schlafen gehen \*.

Sich legen.

Aufstehen \*.

Stehen Sie früh auf?

Ich stehe mit Sonnenaufgang auf.

Ich gehe mit Sonnenuntergang zu Bette.

Ich lege mich mit Sonnenuntergang.  
Um welche Zeit sind Sie zu Bette  
gegangen?

Um Mitternacht.

Um drei Uhr Morgens.

Er ist spät zu Bette gegangen.

Um wieviel Uhr sind Sie gestern zu  
Bette gegangen?

Um ein Viertel auf zwölf.

das Bett (plur. en).

der Sonnenaufgang.

der Ausgang der Sonne.

der Sonnenuntergang.

der Untergang der Sonne.

Nothing but.

He has nothing but enemies.

He drinks nothing but water.

Nichts als.

Er hat nichts als Feinde.

Er trinkt nichts als Wasser.

## EXERCISES.

167.

Did your father rejoice to see you?—He did rejoice to see me.  
—What did you rejoice at?—I rejoiced at seeing my good  
friends.—What was your uncle delighted with (worüber hat sich Ihr  
Onkel gefreut)?—He was delighted with (über) the horse which you  
brought him from Germany.—What were your children delighted  
with?—They were delighted with the fine clothes which I had  
made (for) them.—Why does this officer rejoice so much  
(so sehr)?—Because he flatters himself he has good friends.—Is  
he not right in rejoicing?—He is wrong, for he has nothing but  
enemies.—Do you flatter yourself that you know German?—I do



flatter myself that I know it ; for I can speak, read, and write it.—Can you write a German letter without an error (*der Fehler*) ?—I can.—Does any one correct your letters ?—No one corrects them ; they do not require (*brauchen nicht*) to be corrected, for I make no faults in them.—How many letters have you already written ?—I have already written a dozen.—Have you hurt yourself ?—I have not hurt myself.—Who has hurt himself ?—My brother has hurt himself, for he has cut his finger.—Is he still ill ?—He is better.—I rejoice to hear that he is no longer ill ; for I love him, and I pitied him from my heart.—Why does your cousin pull out his hair ?—Because he cannot pay what he owes.—Have you cut your hair ?—I have not cut it (myself), but I have had it cut.—Why do you pity that child ?—Because he has cut his foot.—Why was a knife given to him ?—A knife was given to him to cut his nails, and he has cut his finger and his foot.


## 168.

Do you go to bed early ?—I go to bed late, for I cannot sleep if I go to bed early.—At what o'clock did you go to bed yesterday ?—Yesterday I went to bed at a quarter past eleven.—At what o'clock do your children go to bed ?—They go to bed at sun-set.—Do they rise early ?—They rise at sun-rise.—At what o'clock did you rise to-day ?—To-day I rose late, because I went to bed late yesterday evening.—Does your son rise late ?—He must rise early, for he never goes to bed late.—What does he do when he gets up ?—He studies, and then breakfasts.—Does he not go out before he breakfasts ?—No, he studies and breakfasts before he goes out.—What does he do after breakfast ?—As soon as he has breakfasted he comes to my house, and we ride (on horseback) into the forest.—Didst thou rise this morning as early as I ?—I rose earlier than you, for I rose before sun-rise. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## SEVENTY-THIRD LESSON.

## Drei und siebenzigste Lektion.


To take a walk.	Spazieren gehen *.
To take an airing in a carriage.	Spazieren fahren * (Imp. fuhr).
To take a ride on horseback.	Spazieren reiten * (Imp. ritt).

 A. When two or more infinitives, two past participles, or a past participle and an infinitive depend upon each other, the last in English is put the first in German.

Do you wish to take a walk (to go a walking)?	Wollen Sie spazieren gehen?
I do wish to take a walk (to go a walking).	Ich will spazieren gehen.
He wishes to take a walk.	Er will spazieren gehen.
Thou wishest to take an airing.	Du willst spazieren fahren.
They wish to take a ride.	Sie wollen spazieren reiten.
Do you wish to see him work?	Wollen Sie ihn arbeiten sehen?
Has your brother been praised?	Ist Ihr Bruder gelobt worden?

He takes a walk every day.	Er geht alle Tage spazieren.
Do you often walk?	Gehen Sie oft spazieren?
I take a walk every morning.	Ich gehe alle Morgen spazieren.

To take a child a walking.	Ein Kind spazieren führen.
Do you take your children a walking?	Führen Sie Ihre Kinder spazieren?
I take them a walking every evening.	Ich führe sie alle Abend spazieren.

 B. Two infinitives or participles not depending on each other follow the English construction.

One must love and praise one's friend.	Man muß seinen Freund lieben und loben.
Whom must we despise and punish?	Wen muß man verachten und strafen?

I take a walk when I have nothing to do at home. | Ich gehe spazieren, wenn ich zu Hause Nichts zu thun habe.

*Obs. A.* The adverb *wann* is used to interrogate with respect to time only. In all other instances the English *when* is translated by *wenn*. *Ex.*

When do you start? | Wann reisen Sie ab?  
When did he start? | Wann ist er abgereist?

*To teach.* | *Lehren.*

*Obs. B.* This verb, when joined to an infinitive, governs the name of the person in the accusative; but when the thing taught is expressed by a substantive, it governs the dative of the person.

He teaches me to read. | Er lehrt mich lesen.  
I teach him to write. | Ich lehre ihn schreiben.  
He teaches me arithmetic and writing. | Er lehrt mir das Rechnen und Schreiben.

*Obs. C.* All infinitives taken substantively are of the neuter gender. Any German infinitive may thus be taken substantively, *e. g.* das Rechnen, arithmetic, from rechnen, to reckon; das Schreiben, the writing, from schreiben \*, to write, &c.

I teach you the German language. | Ich lehre Ihnen die deutsche Sprache<sup>1</sup>.

*To instruct.* { Unterrichten.  
Unterricht ertheilen (or 'geben \*).

The instruction, the lessons, | der Unterricht.  
He gives me lessons. { Er gibt mir Unterricht.  
Er ertheilt mir Unterricht.

I give him lessons in German (I teach him German). | Ich gebe (or ertheile) ihm Unterricht im Deutschen.

I gave lessons in English to his children (I taught his children English). | Ich habe seinen Kindern Unterricht im Englischen ertheilt.

He takes lessons in dancing. | Er nimmt Unterricht im Tanzen.

<sup>1</sup> Die Sprache, the language, is a feminine noun, and has *n* in the plural.

The learned man. a learned man,	der Gelehrte; ein Gelehrter; (See <i>Obs. Lesson</i> LV.)
the clergyman, a clergyman,	der Geistliche; ein Geistlicher;
the German master (meaning the master of the German language),	der Deutschlehrer;
the German master (meaning that the master is a German, whatever he teaches),	der deutsche Lehrer;
the dancing-master, To dance.	der Tanzmeister. Tänzen.
To cipher, to reckon.	Rechnen.

*To remember, to recollect.* | Sich erinnern.

*Obs. D.* This verb governs either the genitive alone, or, less elegantly, the accusative with the preposition *an*.

Do you remember that man?	Erinnern Sie sich dieses Mannes?
I do remember him.	Ich erinnere mich seiner.
Does he recollect his promise?	Erinnert er sich seines Versprechens?
	Erinnert er sich an sein Versprechen?
He does recollect it.	Er erinnert sich dessen.
	Er erinnert sich daran.
Does he recollect it?	Erinnert er sich dessen?
	Erinnert er sich daran?
I remember you.	Ich erinnere mich Ihrer.
I recollect them.	Ich erinnere mich ihrer.
He remembers me.	Er erinnert sich meiner.
He recollects us.	Er erinnert sich unser.
I have remembered him.	Ich habe mich seiner erinnert.

## EXERCISES.

169.

Do you call me?—I do call you.—What is your pleasure?—You must rise, for it is already late.—What do you want me for?—I have lost all my money at play, and I come to beg you to lend me some.—What o'clock is it?—It is already a quarter past six, and you have slept long enough.—Is it long since you rose?

—It is an hour and a half since I rose.—Do you often go a walking?—I go a walking when I have nothing to do at home.—Do you wish to take a walk?—I cannot take a walk, for I have too much to do.—Has your brother taken a ride on horseback?—He has taken an airing in a carriage.—Do your children often go a walking?—They go a walking every morning after breakfast.—Do you take a walk after dinner?—After dinner I drink tea, and then I take a walk.—Do you often take your children a walking?—I take them a walking every morning and every evening.—Can you go along with me?—I cannot go along with you, for I must take my little brother out a walking.—Where do you walk?—We walk in our uncle's garden and fields.—Do you like walking?—I like walking better than eating and drinking.—Does your father like to take a ride on horseback?—He likes to take a ride in a carriage better than on horseback.—Must one love children who are not good?—One ought, on the contrary, to punish and despise them.—Who has taught you to read?—I have learnt it with (bei) a French master.—Has he also taught you to write?—He has taught me to read and to write.—Who has taught your brother arithmetic?—A German master has taught it him.—Do you wish to take a walk with us?—I cannot go a walking, for I am waiting for my German master.—Does your brother wish to take a walk?—He cannot, for he is taking lessons in dancing.

## 170.

Have you an English master?—We have one.—Does he also give you lessons in Italian?—He does not know Italian; but we have an Italian and Spanish master.—What has become of your old writing-master?—He has taken orders (has become a clergyman).—What has become of the learned man whom I saw at your house last winter?—He has set up for a merchant.—And what has become of his son?—He has turned a soldier.—Do you still recollect my old dancing-master?—I do still recollect him; what has become of him?—He is here, and you can see him, if you like (wollen).—Hast thou a German master?—I have a very good (one), for it is my father who gives me lessons in German and in English.—Does your father also know Polish?—He does not know it yet, but he intends to learn it this summer.—Do you remember your promise?—I do remember it.—What did you promise me?—I promised to give you lessons in German; and I will do it.—Will you begin this morning?—I will begin this evening, if you please (wenn es Ihnen gefällig ist).—Do you recollect the man whose son taught us dancing?—I no longer recollect him.—Do you still recollect my brothers?—I do recollect them very well, for when I was studying at Berlin, I saw them every day.—Does your uncle still recollect me?—I

assure you that he still recollects you.—Do you speak German better than my cousin?—I do not speak it so well as he, for he speaks it better than many Germans.—Which of your pupils speaks it the best?—The one that was walking with me yesterday speaks it the best of them all.—Is your uncle's house as high as ours?—Yours is higher than my uncle's, but my cousin's is the highest house that I have ever seen.—Has your friend as many books as I?—You have more of them than he; but my brother has more of them than (both) you and he.—Which of us (wer von uns) has the most money?—You have the most, for I have but thirty crowns, my friend has but ten, and you have five hundred. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## SEVENTY-FOURTH LESSON.

## Vier und siebenzigste Section.

*To make use of, to use.*

Do you use my horse?  
 I do use it.  
 Does your father use it?  
 He does use it.  
 Have you used my carriage?

★ I have used it.  
 Do you use my books?  
 I do use them.  
 May I use your book?

Thou mayest use it.

Sich bedienen (governs the genitive).

Bedienen Sie sich meines Pferdes?  
 Ich bediene mich dessen.  
 Bedient sich Ihr Vater dessen?  
 Er bedient sich dessen.  
 Haben Sie sich meines Wagens bedient?

Ich habe mich dessen bedient.  
 Bedienen Sie sich meiner Bücher?  
 Ich bediene mich derselben.  
 Kann ich mich Ihres Buches bedienen?

Du kannst Dich desselben bedienen.

To approach, to draw near.

To withdraw from, to go away from.

Sich nähern (governs the dative).

Sich entfernen (governs the dative with the preposition von).

Do you approach the fire?  
 I do approach it.  
 I go away from the fire.  
 I go away from it.  
 What do you recollect?  
 I recollect nothing.  
 What are you withdrawing from?

Nähern Sie sich dem Feuer?  
 Ich nähere mich demselben.  
 Ich entferne mich vom Feuer.  
 Ich entferne mich davon.  
 Woran erinnern Sie sich?  
 Ich erinnere mich an Nichts.  
 Wovon entfernen Sie sich?

Are you cold?  
 I am very cold.  
 I am not cold.  
 Art thou cold?  
 Is he warm?  
 Are they warm or cold?  
 They are neither warm nor cold.

Who is cold?  
 My feet are cold.

† Ist es Ihnen kalt?  
 † Es ist mir sehr kalt.  
 † Es ist mir nicht kalt.  
 † Ist es Dir kalt?  
 † Ist es ihm warm?  
 † Ist es ihnen warm oder kalt?  
 † Es ist ihnen weder warm noch kalt.  
 † Wem ist es kalt?  
 † Es ist mir in den Füßen kalt.

His hands are cold.	† Es ist ihm in den Händen kalt.
Why does that man go away from the fire?	Warum entfernt sich dieser Mann von dem Feuer?
He goes away from it because he is not cold.	Er entfernt sich davon, weil es ihm nicht kalt ist.

To freeze—frozen.	† Frieren*—gefroren.
Froze.	† Froz (imperfect).

*Obs.* The impersonal verb *frieren* \*, to freeze, governs the accusative, and may also be used for the English verb *to be cold*, as:

I am very cold.	† Es friert mich sehr.
I am not cold.	† Es friert mich nicht.
Who is cold?	† Wen friert es?
My feet are cold.	† Mir frieren die Füße.
His hands are cold.	† Ihm frieren die Hände.

For what? whereto? for what purpose?	Wozu?
What do you want money for?	Wozu brauchen Sie Geld?
I want some to buy a carriage with.	Ich brauche welches, um einen Wagen zu kaufen.
What does this horse serve you for?	Wozu dient Ihnen dieses Pferd?
It serves me to ride out upon.	Es dient mir auszureiten or zum Ausreiten.
To ride out.	Ausreiten*.
To go out in a carriage.	Ausfahren*.

## EXERCISES.

171.

Which is the nearest way to go to your uncle's castle?—This way is shorter than the one we took yesterday; but my father knows one which is the nearest of all.—Do you use my carriage?—I do use it.—Has your father used my horse?—He has used it.—What does this horse serve you for?—It serves me to ride out upon?—Do you use the books which I lent you?—I do use them.—May I (*Kann ich*) use your knife?—Thou mayest use it, but thou must not cut thyself.—May my brothers use your books?—They may use them, but they must not tear them.—May we use your stone table?—You may use it, but you must not spoil it.—What has my wood served you for?—It has served me to warm myself with.—For what purpose do your brothers want money?—They want some to live upon.—What does this knife serve us for?—It serves us to cut our bread, our meat, and



our cheese with.—Is it cold to-day?—It is very cold.—Will you draw near the fire?—I cannot draw near it, for I am afraid of burning myself.—Why does your friend go away from the fire?—He goes away from it because he is afraid of burning himself.—Art thou coming near the fire?—I am coming near it because I am very cold.—Are thy hands cold?—My hands are not cold, but my feet are.—Do you go away from the fire?—I do go away from it.—Why do you go away from it?—Because I am not cold.—Are you cold or warm?—I am neither cold nor warm.

## 172.

Why do your children approach the fire?—They approach it because they are cold.—Is any body cold?—Somebody is cold.—Who is cold?—The little boy, whose father has lent you a horse, is cold.—Why does he not warm himself?—Because his father has no money to buy wood.—Will you tell him to come to me to warm himself?—I will tell him so.—Do you remember anything?—I remember nothing.—What does your uncle recollect?—He recollects your promise.—What have I promised him?—You have promised him to go to Germany with him next winter.—I intend to do so if it is not too cold.—Are your hands often cold?—My hands are scarcely ever cold, but my feet are often so.—Why do you withdraw from the fire?—I have been sitting near the fire this hour and a half, so that I am no longer cold.—Does your friend not like to sit near the fire?—He likes, on the contrary, much (*sehr*) to sit near the fire, but only when he is cold.—May one approach your uncle?—One may approach him, for he receives every body. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## SEVENTY-FIFTH LESSON.

## Fünf und siebenzigste Lektion.

To shave.	{ Rasiren (verb active).
	{ Sich rasiren (verb reflective).
To get shaved.	Sich rasiren lassen *.

To dress, to put on clothes.	Anziehen *.
To dress.	Ankleiden.
To undress, to put off clothes.	Ausziehen *.
To undress.	Auskleiden.

*Obs. A.* Anziehen\* expresses either *to dress* or *to put on clothes*, but ankleiden can only be used to express the English *to dress*. The same may be said with regard to ausziehen\* and auskleiden.

Have you dressed yourself?	Haben Sie sich angekleidet.
I have not yet dressed myself.	Ich habe mich noch nicht angekleidet.
Have you dressed the child?	Haben Sie das Kind angezogen?
I have dressed it.	Ich habe es angezogen.
He has put on his coat.	Er hat seinen Rock angezogen.
He has taken off his shoes.	Er hat seine Schuhe ausgezogen.

To wake.	Weden, aufweden.
To awake.	Erwachen, aufwachen.

*Obs. B.* Weden and aufweden are active verbs, but erwachen and aufwachen are neuter, and take the verb *seyn*\* for their auxiliary. Weden signifies to wake intentionally, aufweden unintentionally. Ex. *Weden Sie mich um zwei Uhr weden?* Will you wake me at two o'clock? *Machen Sie keinen Lärm, damit Sie ihn nicht aufweden*, do not make any noise, that you may not wake him. Erwachen means to awake at once or by accident. Ex. *Ich erwachte auf einmal aus meinem Traume*, I at once awoke from my dream. Aufwachen means to awake regularly without any accident. Ex. *Des Morgens aufwachen*, to awake in the morning.

To come down. (See Lesson LII.)	{ Herab, hinab } steigen*, gehen*,
	{ Herunter, hinunter } reiten*, fahren*, u.s.w.

To go down into the well.	In den Brunnen hinunter steigen*.
To come down the hill.	Vom Berge herabsteigen*.
To go down the river.	Den Strom hinab fahren*.

To alight from one's horse, to dismount.

↓ Vom Pferde steigen \*.

To alight, to get out.

{ Aussteigen \*.  
Aus dem Wagen steigen \*.

*To mount—to ascend.*

To mount the horse.

To get into the coach.

To go on board a ship.

Steigen \* (Part. past, gestiegen.  
Imperf. stieg).

Aufs (auf das) Pferd steigen \*.

In den Wagen steigen \*.

In ein Schiff steigen \*.

The dream, the beard,  
the stream (the river),

↓ der Traum ; der Bart ;  
der Strom.

Where is your brother ?

He is in the garret.

Will you desire him to come  
down ?

The garret (the loft) under the  
roof of a house.

To come down.

Wo ist Ihr Bruder ?

Er ist auf dem Boden.

Wollen Sie ihn bitten herab (he-  
runter) zu kommen ?

Der Boden unter dem Dache eines  
Hauses.

Herab (or herunter) kommen.

*To behave, to conduct one's  
self.*

I behave well.

How does he behave ?

{ Sich aufführen.

{ Sich betragen \* (Imperf. betrug).

Ich führe mich gut auf.

Wie führt er sich auf ?

*Towards.*

He behaves ill towards this man.

He has behaved ill towards me.

Gegen (a preposition governing  
the accusative).

Er betrügt sich schlecht gegen diesen  
Mann.

Er hat sich übel gegen mich betragen.

*To be worth while.*

Is it worth while ?

It is worth while.

It is not worth while.

Is it worth while to do that ?

Is it worth while to write to him ?

Der Mühe<sup>1</sup> werth seyn \*.

Ist es der Mühe werth ?

Es ist der Mühe werth.

Es ist nicht der Mühe werth.

Ist es der Mühe werth, dieses zu  
thun ?

Ist es der Mühe werth, an ihn zu  
schreiben ?

<sup>1</sup> Die Mühe, is a feminine substantive, and takes n in the plural.

Is it better?  
 It is better.  
 It is better to do this than that.  
 It is better to ~~say~~ here than to go  
 a walking.

Ist es besser?  
 Es ist besser.  
 Es ist besser dieses als jenes zu thun.  
 Es ist besser hier zu bleiben als  
 spazieren zu gehen.

## EXERCISES.

## 173.

Have you shaved to-day?—I have shaved.—Has your brother shaved?—He has not shaved himself, but has got shaved.—Do you shave often?—I shave every morning, and sometimes also in the evening.—When do you shave in the evening?—When I do not dine at home.—How many times a day does your father shave?—He shaves only once a day, but my brother has such a strong beard that he is obliged to shave twice a day.—Does your uncle shave often?—He shaves only every other day (einen Tag um den andern), for his beard is not strong.—At what o'clock do you dress in the morning?—I dress as soon as I have breakfasted, and I breakfast every day at eight o'clock, or at a quarter past eight.—Does your neighbour dress before he breakfasts?—He breakfasts before he dresses.—At what o'clock in the evening dost thou undress?—I undress as soon as I return from (aus) the theatre.—Dost thou go to the theatre every evening?—I do not go every evening, for it is better to study than to go to the theatre.—At what o'clock dost thou undress when thou dost not go to the theatre?—I then undress as soon as I have supped, and go to bed at ten o'clock.—Have you already dressed the child?—I have not dressed it yet, for it is still asleep (schläft noch).—At what o'clock does it get up?—It gets up as soon as it is waked. (See continuation of Lesson LXXII.)

## 174.

Do you rise as early as I?—I do not know at what o'clock you rise, but I rise as soon as I awake.—Will you tell my servant to wake me to-morrow at four o'clock?—I will tell him.—Why have you risen so early?—My children have made such a noise that they wakened me.—Have you slept well?—I have not slept well, for you made too much noise.—At what o'clock must I wake you?—To-morrow thou mayest wake me at six o'clock.—At what o'clock did the good captain awake?—He awoke at a quarter past five in the morning.—When did this man go down into the well?—He went down into it this morning.—Has he come up again yet (wieder herauf gestiegen)?—He came up an hour ago.—Where is your brother?—He is in his room.—Will you tell him to come down?—I will tell him so; but he is not dressed yet.—Is your friend still on the mountain?—He has

already come down.—Did you go down or up this river?—We went down it.—Has your brother dined already?—He dined as soon as he had alighted from his horse.—Is your uncle already asleep (*schlafen*\*)?—I believe that he is asleep, for he went to bed as soon as he had alighted.—Did my cousin speak to you before he started?—He spoke to me before he got into the coach.—Have you seen my brother?—I saw him before I went on board the ship.

## 175.

How did my child behave?—He did behave very well.—How did my brother behave towards you?—He behaved very well towards me, for he behaves well towards every body.—Is it worth while to write to that man?—It is not worth while to write to him.—Is it worth while to alight in order to buy a cake?—It is not worth while, for it is not long since we ate.—Is it worth while to dismount from my horse in order to give something to that poor man?—Yes, for he seems to want it; but you can (*schenken*) give him something without dismounting from your horse.—Is it better to go to the theatre than to study?—It is better to do the latter than the former.—Is it better to learn to read German than to speak it?—It is not worth while to learn to read it without learning to speak it.—Is it better to go to bed than to go a walking?—It is better to do the latter than the former.—Is it better to get into a coach than to go on board the ship?—It is not worth while to get into a coach or to go on board the ship when one has no wish to travel. (See end of Lesson XXXVL.)

## FOURTH MONTH.

Vierter Monat.

## SEVENTY-SIXTH LESSON.

Sechs und siebenzigste Section.

<i>To hire, to rent.</i>	Miethen.
<i>To hire a room.</i>	Ein Zimmer miethen.
Have you hired a room?	Haben Sie ein Zimmer gemiethet?
I have hired one.	Ich habe eins gemiethet.
<i>To let.</i>	Vermiethen.
He has a room to let.	Er hat ein Zimmer zu vermiethen.

<i>To get rid of some one.</i>	Sich Jemanden vom Halse schaffen.
I did get rid of him.	Ich habe ihn mir vom Halse geschafft.

<i>To part with something.</i>	Etwas abschaffen.
Do you intend to part with your horses?	Sind Sie gesonnen, Ihre Pferde abzuschaffen?
I have already parted with them.	Ich habe sie schon abgeschafft.
He has parted with his carriage.	Er hat seinen Wagen abgeschafft.
Have you parted with (discharged) your servant?	Haben Sie Ihren Bedienten abgeschafft?
I have parted with (discharged) him.	Ich habe ihn abgeschafft.
<i>To get rid of something.</i>	} † Etwas los werden*.
<i>To rid one's self of something.</i>	
Did you get rid of your damaged sugar?	† Sind Sie Ihren verborbenen Zucker los geworden?
I did get rid of it.	† Ich bin ihn los geworden.
Did he get rid of his old horse?	† Ist er sein altes Pferd los geworden?
He did get rid of it.	† Er ist es los geworden.

<i>To hope, to expect.</i>	Hoffen.
Do you expect to find him there?	Hoffen Sie ihn da zu finden?
I do expect it.	Ich hoffe es.

*To earn, to get.*

*To gain.*

*To get one's bread.*

*To get one's livelihood by.*

*He gets his livelihood by working.*

*I get my livelihood by writing.*

*I gain my money by working.*

*By what does this man get his livelihood?*

*Verbienen.*

*Gewinnen\*. Part. past, gewonnen. Imperf. gewann.*

*Sein Brod verdienen or erwerben\*.*

*Part. past, erworben. Imperf. erwarb.*

*Sich ernähren mit.*

*Er ernährt sich mit Arbeiten.*

*Ich ernähre mich mit Schreiben.*

*Ich verdiene mein Geld mit Arbeiten.*

*Womit ernährt sich dieser Mann?*

*To spill.*

*He has spilt the wine over the table.*

*Vergießen\*. Part. past, vergossen. Imperf. vergoß.*

*Er hat den Wein auf den Tisch vergossen (action).*

*To stand.*

*The wine is on the table.*

*Stehen\*. Part. past, gestanden, Imperf. stand.*

*Der Wein steht auf dem Tische (rest).*

*Has your father already departed?*

*He is ready to depart.*

*Ready.*

*To make ready.*

*To make one's self ready.*

*To keep one's self ready.*

*Ist Ihr Herr Vater schon abgereist?*

*Er ist bereit abzureisen.*

*Bereit.*

*Bereiten.*

*Sich bereit machen.*

*Sich bereit halten\*.*

*To split (to pierce).*

*To break somebody's heart.*

*You break this man's heart.*

*Zerspalten (durchbohren).*

*Jemandem das Herz durchbohren.*

*Sie durchbohren diesem Mann das Herz.*

*To hang.*

*To be hanging.*

*hängen (verb active, regular).*

*hängen\* (a neuter irregular verb). Part. past, gehangen.*

*Imperf. hing.*

*Was my hat hanging on the nail?*

*hing mein Hut an dem Nagel?*

It was hanging on it.  
 I hang it on the nail.  
 The thief has been hanged.  
 Who has hung the basket on the  
 tree?  
 The thief,  
 the robber, the highwayman.

Er hing daran.  
 Ich hänge ihn an den Nagel.  
 Der Dieb ist gehängt worden.  
 Wer hat den Korb an den Baum  
 gehängt?  
 Der Dieb;  
 der Räuber.

The patient (the sick person).

der Patient. (See Note, Lesson  
 LVI.)

Tolerably well.  
 It is rather late.  
 It is rather far.

Ziemlich, so ziemlich.  
 Es ist ziemlich spät.  
 Es ist ziemlich weit.

## EXERCISE.

178.

How is your father?—He is (only) so so.—How is your patient?—He is a little better to-day than yesterday.—Is it long since you saw your brothers?—I saw them two days ago.—How were they?—They were very well.—How art thou?—I am tolerably well (*nicht übel*).—How long has your brother been learning German?—He has been learning it only three months.—Does he already speak it?—He already speaks, reads, and writes it better than your cousin who has been learning it these five years.—Is it long since you heard of my uncle?—It is hardly three months since I heard of him.—Where was he staying then?—He was staying at Berlin, but now he is in London.—Do you like to speak to my uncle?—I do like much (*sehr*) to speak to him, but I do not like (*ich habe nicht gern*) him to laugh at me.—Why does he laugh at you?—He laughs at me because I speak badly.—Why has your brother no friends?—He has none because he criticises every body.—What do you get your livelihood by?—I get my livelihood by working.—Does your friend get his livelihood by writing?—He gets it by speaking and writing.—Do these gentlemen get their livelihood by working?—They do not get it by doing anything, for they are too idle to work. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)



## SEVENTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

## Acht und siebenzigste Section.

To doubt any thing.	} An Etwas zweifeln (governs the dative with the preposition an).
To question any thing.	
Do you doubt that?	Zweifel Sie daran?
I do not doubt it.	} Ich zweifle nicht daran.
I make no question, have no doubt of it.	
It is not to be doubted.	Daran ist nicht zu zweifeln.
What do you doubt?	Woran zweifeln Sie?
I doubt what that man has told me.	Ich zweifle an dem, was dieser Mann mir gesagt hat.

To agree to a thing.	Ueber (or wegen) Etwas einig (or eins) werden *.
To admit or grant a thing.	} Etwas eingestehen * or zugeben *.
To confess a thing.	
Do you grant that?	Gestehen Sie es?
I do grant it.	Ich gestehe es (or ich gestehe es ein or ich gebe es zu).

How much have you paid for that hat?	Wieviel haben Sie für diesen Hut bezahlt?
I have paid three crowns for it.	Ich habe drei Thaler dafür bezahlt.

<i>For.</i>	Für (a preposition governing the accusative).
I have bought this horse for five hundred francs.	Ich habe dieses Pferd für (or um) fünf hundert Franken gekauft.

The price,	der Preis.
Have you agreed about the price?	Sind Sie über den Preis (wegen des Preises) einig geworden?
We have agreed about it.	Wir sind darüber (deswegen) einig geworden.
About what have you agreed?	Worüber (weswegen) sind Sie einig geworden?

About the price.	{ Ueber den Preis.
On account of (about).	{ Wegen des Preises.
Do you confess your fault?	{ Wesen (a preposition governing the genitive).
I do confess it.	{ Gestehe Sie Ihren Fehler ein?
I confess it to be a fault.	{ Ich gestehe ihn ein.
	{ Ich gestehe, daß es ein Fehler ist.

To agree, to compose a difference,	{ Sich vergleichen *. Part. past, verglichen. Imperf. verglich.
To consent.	{ Sich vereinigen.
	{ Einwilligen.

However.	{ Indessen, doch, jedoch.
For all that.	{ Dessen ungeachtet.
To wear.	{ Tragen *. Imperf. trug.
What garments does he wear?	{ Was für Kleider trägt er?
He wears beautiful garments.	{ Er trägt schöne Kleider.

Against my custom.	{ Gegen meine Gewohnheit (a fem. noun taking en in the plural).
As customary.	{ Wie gewöhnlich.
The partner.	{ der Handelsgenosß (gen. en).

To observe something, to take notice of something.	{ Etwas merken (gewahr werden *. sehen *).
Do you take notice of that?	{ Merken Sie das?
I do take notice of it.	{ Ich merke es.
Did you observe that?	{ Haben Sie das gemerkt?
Did you notice what he did?	{ Haben Sie gesehen, was er gethan hat?
I did notice it.	{ Ich habe es gesehen.

To expect (to hope).	{ Vermuthen (hoffen).
Do you expect to receive a letter from your uncle?	{ Vermuthen Sie einen Brief von Ihrem Oheim zu erhalten?
I do expect it.	{ Ich hoffe es.
He expects it.	{ Er vermuthet es.
Have we expected it?	{ Haben wir es vermuthet?
We have expected it.	{ Wir haben es vermuthet.

To get (meaning to procure).  
I cannot procure any money.

He cannot procure any thing to  
eat.

Verſchaffen.

Ich kann mir kein Geld ver-  
ſchaffen.

Er kann ſich Nichts zu eſſen ver-  
ſchaffen.

## EXERCISES.

### 179.

What have you gained that money by?—I have gained it by working.—What have you done with your wine?—I have spilt it on the table.—Where is yours?—It is on the large table in my little room; but you must not drink any of it, for I must keep it for my father, who is ill.—Are you ready to depart with me?—I am so.—Does your uncle depart with us?—He departs with us if he pleases.—Will you tell him to be ready to depart to-morrow at six o'clock in the evening?—I will tell him so.—Why are you laughing at that man?—I do not intend to laugh at him.—I beg of you not to do it, for you will break his heart if you laugh at him.—Why have they (man) hanged that man?—They have hanged him because he has killed somebody.—Have they (man) hanged the man who stole a horse (from) your brother (in the dative)?—They (man) have punished him, but they have not hanged him: they only hang highwaymen in our country (bei uns).—Where have you found my coat?—I found it in the blue room; it was hanging on a great nail.—Will you hang my hat on the tree?—I will hang it thereon.

### 180.

Do you doubt what I am telling you?—I do not doubt it.—Do you doubt what that man has told you?—I do doubt it, for he has often told me what was not true (wahr).—Why have you not kept your promise?—I know no more what I promised you.—Did you not promise us to take (führen) us to the concert (on) Thursday?—I confess that I was wrong in promising you; although (indessen) the concert has not taken place.—Does your brother confess his fault?—He does confess it.—What does your uncle say to that letter?—He says that it is written very well; but he admits that he has been wrong in sending it to the captain.—Do you confess your fault now?—I confess it to be a fault.—Have you at last bought the horse which you wished to buy?—I have not bought it, for I have not been able to procure money. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## SEVENTY-NINTH LESSON.


## Neun und siebenzigste Section.

## OF THE PLUPERFECT.

THIS past tense expresses an action entirely finished when another action which relates to it was commencing.

After having read (after I had read).	Nachdem ich gelesen hatte.
After having cut the bread (after he had cut the bread).	Nachdem er das Brod geschnitten hatte.
After having eaten (after he had eaten).	Nachdem er gegessen hatte.
After cutting myself.	Nachdem ich mich geschnitten hatte.
After dressing yourself.	Nachdem Sie sich angezogen hatten.
After he had withdrawn from the fire.	Nachdem er sich vom Feuer entfernt hatte.
After thou hadst shaved.	Nachdem Du Dich rasirt hattest.
After they had warmed themselves.	Nachdem sie sich gewärmt hatten.

Before I set out.	Ue ich abreise.
When I had read, I breakfasted.	Nachdem ich gelesen hatte, frühstückte ich.

 In the second member of a compound phrase the nominative is placed after its verb.

When you had dressed you went out.	Nachdem Sie sich angezogen hatten, gingen Sie aus.
When he had cut the bread he cut the meat.	Nachdem er das Brod geschnitten hatte, schnitt er das Fleisch.
After he had read the letter he said.	Nachdem er den Brief gelesen hatte, sagte er.
Before I depart I will once more see my children.	Ue ich abreise, will ich noch einmal meine Kinder sehen.

*Obs. A.* This transposition of the nominative does not take place when the phrase begins with the subject.

He cut the meat after he had cut the bread.	Er schnitt das Fleisch, nachdem er das Brod geschnitten hatte.
What did he do after he had eaten?	Was that er, nachdem er gegessen hatte?
He went to bed.	Er ging zu Bette.

THE FOLLOWING VERBS GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE  
PREPOSITION *über*.

To be afflicted at something.	Ueber Etwas betrübt seyn *.
To afflict one's self at something.	Sich über Etwas betrüben.
Are you afflicted at the death of my friend?	Sind Sie über den Tod meines Freundes betrübt?
I am much afflicted at it.	Ich bin sehr betrübt darüber.
At what is your father afflicted?	Worüber ist Ihr Herr Vater betrübt?

The accident.	der Zufall;
the death,	der Tod.
To die (to lose life).	Sterben *.
I die, am dying.	Ich sterbe.
Thou diest, art dying	Du stirbst.
He dies, is dying.	er stirbt.
Died.	Part. past, gestorben. Imperf. starb.

To complain of some one or something.	Sich über Jemanden oder Etwas beklagen (beschweren).
Do you complain of my friend?	Beklagen Sie sich über meinen Freund?
I do complain of him.	Ich beklage mich über ihn.
Of whom do you complain?	Ueber wen beklagen Sie sich?
Of what does your brother complain?	Worüber beschwert sich Ihr Bruder?

To wonder, to be astonished or surprised at something.	Sich über Etwas wundern.
Do you wonder at what I have done?	Wundern Sie sich über das, was ich gethan habe?
I do wonder at it.	Ich wundere mich darüber.
At what are you surprised?	Worüber wundern Sie sich?

To be glad.	Lieb seyn * (governs the dative).
To be sorry.	Leid seyn * or thun * (governs the dative).
I am glad of it.	+ Es ist mir lieb.
I am sorry for it.	+ Es thut (or ist) mir leid.
I am glad to hear that your father is well.	Es ist mir lieb zu vernehmen, daß Ihr Herr Vater sich wohl befindet.
To hear (to understand).	Bernehmen *.
Dear,	lieb;
sad, sorrowful.	traurig.

The prince,  
the count,  
the baron;

der Fürst, der Prinz (en in the  
genitive).  
der Graf (en in the genitive);  
der Baron.

*To pronounce.*

The Saxon,  
the Prussian,  
the Austrian,  
Saxony,  
Prussia,  
Austria,  
the Christian,  
the Jew,  
the negro,

Aussprechen \*.

der Sachse;  
der Preusse;  
der Oestreicher;  
Sachsen;  
Preussen;  
Oestreich (Oesterreich<sup>1</sup>);  
der Christ (gen. en);  
der Jude;  
der Neger (der Mohr, gen. en).

## EXERCISES.

### 181.

Has your father at last bought the house?—He has not bought it, for he could not agree about the price.—Have you at last agreed about the price of that carriage?—We have agreed about it.—How much have you paid for it?—I have paid fifteen hundred francs (der *Frank*) for it.—What hast thou bought to-day?—I have bought three beautiful pictures, a pretty gold ring, and two pair of thread stockings.—How much hast thou bought the pictures for?—I have bought them for seven hundred francs.—Do you find that they are dear?—I do not find so.—Have you agreed with your partner?—I have agreed with him.—Does he consent to pay you the price of the ship?—He does consent to pay it me.—Do you consent to go to England?—I do consent to go thither.—Have you seen your old friend again (*wieder gesehen*)?—I have seen him again.—Did you recognise him?—I could hardly recognise him, for, contrary to his custom, he wears a long sword.—How is he?—He is very well.—What garments does he wear?—He wears beautiful new garments.—Have you taken notice of what your boy has done?—I have taken notice of it.—Have you punished him for it?—I have not punished him for it, because he has confessed his fault.—Has your father already written to you?—Not yet; but I expect to receive a letter from him to-day.—Of what do you complain?—I complain of not being able to procure some money.—Why do these poor people complain?—They complain because they cannot procure a livelihood.—How are your parents?—They are, as usual (*wie*

<sup>1</sup> All names of countries are neuter. (See p. 40, Introductory Book.)

gewöhnlich), very well.—Is your uncle (Ihr Herr Onkel) well?—He is better than he usually is (als gewöhnlich).—Have you already received a letter from your friend who is in Berlin?—I have already written to him several times; he has, however, not answered me yet.

## 182.

What did you do when you had finished your letter?—I went to my brother, who took (führten) me to the theatre, where I had the pleasure to find one of my friends, whom I had not seen for ten years.—What didst thou do after getting up this morning?—When I had read the letter of the Polish count, I went out to see the theatre of the prince, which I had not seen before (noch nicht).—What did your father do when he had breakfasted?—He shaved, and went out.—What did your friend do after he had been a walking?—He went to the baron.—Did the baron cut the meat after he had cut the bread?—He cut the bread after he had cut the meat.—When do you set out?—I do not set out till (erst) to-morrow; for before I depart I will once more see my good friends.—What did your children do when they had breakfasted?—They went a walking with their dear preceptor.—Where did your uncle go to after he had warmed himself?—He went nowhither.—After he had warmed himself he undressed and went to bed.—At what o'clock did he get up?—He got up at sun-rise.—Did you wake him?—I had no need to wake him, for he had got up before me.—What did your cousin do when he heard (of) the death of his best friend?—He was much afflicted, and went to bed without saying a word.—Did you shave before you breakfasted?—I shaved when I had breakfasted.—Did you go to bed when you had eaten supper?—When I had eaten supper I wrote my letters, and when I had written them I went to bed.—At what are you afflicted?—I am afflicted at that accident.—Are you afflicted at the death of your relation?—I am much (sehr) afflicted at it.—When did your relation die?—He died last month.—Of what do you complain?—I complain of your boy.—Why do you complain of him?—Because he has killed the pretty dog, which I received from one of my friends.—Of what has your uncle complained?—He has complained of what you have done.—Has he complained of the letter which I wrote to him?—He has complained of it. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## EIGHTIETH LESSON

## Achtzigste Section.

*Declension of Feminine Substantives.*

		NOM.	GEN.	DAT.	ACC.
The	<i>Singular.</i>	die,	der,	der,	die.
	<i>Plural.</i>	die,	der,	den,	die.

## I. SINGULAR.

**Rule.** All feminine substantives, without exception, together with all foreign feminine words adopted into German, as: *die Form*, the form; *die Linie*, the line, remain invariable in all the cases singular. **Ex. NOM.** *die Frau*, the woman; **GEN.** *der Frau*, of the woman; **DAT.** *der Frau*, to the woman; **ACC.** *die Frau*, the woman.

## II. PLURAL.

**Rule.** Feminine substantives ending in *e, el, er*, add *n*, and all others *en*, in all the cases of the plural; and do not soften the radical vowels. (See Table of the Declension of Substantives, Lesson XV.)

There are two exceptions to this Rule:

1st, The two substantives: *die Mutter*, the mother; *die Tochter*, the daughter, soften the radical vowels in the plural without adding *n*<sup>1</sup>. **Ex. Plural:** *die Mütter*, the mothers; *die Töchter*, the daughters.

2d, Feminine monosyllables containing an *a* or *u*, are declined in the plural like masculine substantives, that is, they add *e* in all the cases, and soften the radical vowel<sup>2</sup>.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
The door — the doors.	die Thür	— die Thüren.
The bottle — the bottles.	die Flasche	— die Flaschen.
The fork — the forks.	die Gabel	— die Gabeln.
The pen — the pens.	die Feder	— die Federn.
The hand — the hands.	die Hand	— die Hände.
The nut — the nuts.	die Nuß	— die Nüsse.

<sup>1</sup> Except in the dative. It will be remembered that all substantives without exception take *n* in the dative plural, if they have not one in the nominative. (See Lesson XV.)

<sup>2</sup> The declension of those substantives which deviate from these rules will be separately noted.



She—they.

Has she?  
 She has.  
 She has not.  
 Have they?  
 They have.  
 They have not.

Sie—ſie. (See Table of the Personal Pronouns, Less. XXX.)

Hat ſie?  
 Sie hat.  
 Sie hat nicht.  
 Haben ſie?  
 Sie haben.  
 Sie haben nicht.

NOM. GEN. DAT. ACC.

My (feminine singular).

meine, meiner, meiner, meine.

My (plural for all genders).

meine, meiner, meinen, meine.

*Obs. A.* In this manner all possessive pronouns of the feminine gender are declined, as: Deine, thy; ſeine, his; ihre, her; unſere, our; Eure, your; ihre, their.

The father and his son or his daughter.

Der Vater und ſein Sohn oder ſeine Tochter.

The mother and her son or her daughter.

Die Mutter und ihr Sohn oder ihre Tochter.

The child and its brother or its sister.

Das Kind und ſein Bruder oder ſeine Schweſter.

My door — my doors.

Meine Thür — meine Thüren.

Thy fork — thy forks.

Deine Gabel — Deine Gabeln.

His pen — his pens.

Seine Feder — ſeine Federn.

Her brother — her brothers.

Ihr Bruder — Ihre Brüder.

Her sister — her sisters.

Ihre Schweſter — ihre Schweſtern.

Her book — her books.

Ihr Buch — ihre Bücher.

THE ADJECTIVE PRECEDED BY THE DEFINITE ARTICLE  
OF THE FEMININE GENDER.

				Singular.	Plural.
NOM.	the good	} Sing. and Plural.	}	NOM. die gute.	die guten.
GEN.	of the good			GEN. der guten.	der guten.
DAT.	to the good			DAT. der guten.	den guten.
ACC.	the good			ACC. die gute.	die guten.

*Obs. B.* The adjective preceded by a possessive pronoun of the feminine gender, as: meine, Deine, &c. has exactly the same declension as with the definite article.

My good linen,  
 the right hand,

meine gute Leinwand;  
 die rechte Hand;

the left hand,  
the language,  
the tongue,  
the street,  
the town,  
the woman, the wife,

the girl,  
the young lady,

die linke Hand;  
die Sprache;  
die Zunge;  
die Straße;  
die Stadt;  
die Frau (does not soften, and  
takes en in the plural);  
das Mädchen;  
das Fräulein.

My right hand aches.  
His left hand aches.

Mir schmerzt die rechte Hand.<sup>3</sup>  
Ihm schmerzt die linke Hand.

The room,  
the chamber,  
the cabinet,  
the apartment,

die Stube;  
das Zimmer;  
die Kammer;  
das Gemach<sup>4</sup>.

the front room,  
the back room.  
the silk,  
the silk stocking,

die Stube vorn heraus;  
die Stube hinten aus;  
die Seide;  
der seidene Strumpf.

#### THE ADJECTIVE WITHOUT AN ARTICLE IN THE FEMININE GENDER.

	NOM.	GEN.	DAT.	ACC.
Good, &c. (in the singular).	gute,	guter,	guter,	gute.
Good, &c. (in the plural).	gute,	guter,	guten,	gute.

Some good soup.  
Some bad pens.  
Some beautiful linen shirts.

Gute Suppe.  
Schlechte Federn.  
Schöne leinwandene Hemden. (See  
Obs. Lesson VI.)

<sup>3</sup> When the sensation expressed by the impersonal verb is felt only in a part of the body, the person is put in the dative.

<sup>4</sup> Stube is the room commonly inhabited, and in which there is a stove. Zimmer is the general word for room, whether there is a stove in it or not. Kammer is a small room in which there is no stove, and in which various things are kept; hence die Kleiderkammer, the wardrobe; die Bodenkammer, the garret, &c. Gemach is only used in speaking of the apartments in a castle or a palace.

THE ADJECTIVE PRECEDED BY THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE IN THE  
FEMININE GENDER.

A good, &c. (feminine).	N. eine gute.	G. einer guten.
	A. eine gute.	D. einer guten.

THE FOLLOWING PRONOUNS ARE DECLINED LIKE THE DEFINITE  
ARTICLE.

This or this one, that or that one,	diese, jene.
Some, sundry,	einige, etliche.
Many, several,	mehre or mehrere <sup>5</sup> .
Which,	welche.
All,	alle.
Many a one, some,	mancher, manche, manches.

Andere is declined like an adjective.

*Obs. C.* In the plural all adjectives, ordinal numbers, and pronominal adjectives have the same declension for all genders, as we have already seen in many parts of this work, particularly in the Table of the Declension of Adjectives, Lesson XX.

REMARK.

To become intimately acquainted with the declension of adjectives, ordinal numbers, and pronominal adjectives, the learner has only to familiarize himself with the definite article; for when the adjective is preceded by a word having the characteristic termination<sup>6</sup>, it takes *en* in all the cases, except in the nominative singular of all genders and the accusative singular feminine and neuter, in which it takes *e*. (Lesson XX. No. 2.) The adjective itself takes these terminations when it is not preceded by any article<sup>7</sup>, or if the word preceding has not the characteristic termination, as: *ein, mein, fein*, &c. in the nominative of the masculine, and nominative and accusative of the neuter gender.

This principle is clearly exemplified in the adjective preceded by the indefinite article. The nominative *ein*, not having the characteristic termination *er* for the masculine and *eß* for the neuter, the adjective takes it. Ex. *Ein guter Mann, ein gutes Kind*.

The characteristic termination of the masculine being *er*, and that

<sup>5</sup> Some authors write *mehre*, others *mehrere*. The latter is more usual, the former more correct.

<sup>6</sup> The terminations of the definite article are called characteristic, because they characterize the case, number, and gender.

<sup>7</sup> Except in the genitive singular masculine and neuter, in which it takes *en*, and in the nominative and accusative singular of the neuter, in which it changes *aß* into *eß*. (Lesson XX. No. 1.)

of the neuter *es*, that of the feminine is *e* so that it is sufficient to join the ending *e* to a word of the characteristic termination to make it feminine. Ex. Masc. and neuter: dieser, dieses; feminine, diese; masc. and neuter: jener, jenes; feminine, jene.

These principles being once well understood, the learner will find no difficulty whatever in declining adjectives, ordinal numbers, or pronominal adjectives.

Have you my pen?

No, Madam, I have it not.

Which bottle have you broken?

Which soup has she eaten?

What pear have you?

What linen have you bought?

Do you see my sister?

I do see her.

Have you seen my sisters?

No, my lady, I have not seen them.

Haben Sie meine Feder?

Nein, Madam (gnädige Frau\*), ich habe sie nicht.

Welche Flasche haben Sie zerbrochen?

Welche Suppe hat sie gegessen?

Was für eine Birn haben Sie?

Was für Leinwand haben Sie gekauft?

Sehen Sie meine Schwester?

Ich sehe sie.

Haben Sie meine Schwestern gesehen?

Nein, mein Fräulein, ich habe sie nicht gesehen.

The nose,  
the butter,  
the soup,  
the towel,  
the napkin,

die Nase;  
die Butter;  
die Suppe;  
die Serviette;  
das Telleruch, die Serviette.

## EXERCISES.

183.

Are you not surprised at what my friend has done?—I am much surprised at it.—At what is your son surprised?—He is surprised at your courage.—Are you sorry for having written to my uncle?—I am on the contrary glad of it.—At what art thou afflicted?—I am not afflicted at the happiness of my enemy, but at the death of my friend.—How are your brothers?—They have been very well for these few days.—Are you glad of it?—I am glad to hear that they are well.—Are you a Saxon?—No, I am a Prussian.—Do the Prussians like to learn French?—They do

\* If speaking to a lady of rank, gnädige Frau, gracious lady, must be used.

like to learn it.—Do the Prussians speak German as well as the Saxons?—The Saxons and the Prussians speak German well; but the Austrians do not pronounce it very well (*nicht allzu gut*); notwithstanding they are (*besse ungeschet find es*) very good people.—Which day of the week (*welchen Tag in der Woche*) do the Turks celebrate (*feiern*)?—They celebrate Friday (*den Freitag*); but the Christians celebrate Sunday, the Jews Saturday, and the negroes their birth-day (*der Geburtstag*).

## 184.

Has your sister my gold ribbon?—She has it not.—What has she?—She has nothing.—Has your mother anything?—She has a fine gold fork.—Who has my large bottle?—Your sister has it.—Do you sometimes see your mother?—I see her often.—When did you see your sister?—I saw her three months and a half (*Obs. C., Lesson LXVII.*) ago.—Who has my fine nuts?—Your good sister has them.—Has she also my silver forks?—She has them not.—Who has them?—Your mother has them.—Have your sisters had my pens?—They have not had them, but I believe that their children have had them.—Why does your brother complain?—He complains because his right hand aches.—Why do you complain?—I complain because my left hand aches. Is your sister as old as my mother?—She is not so old, but she is taller.—Has your brother purchased anything?—He has purchased something.—What has he bought?—He has bought fine linen and good pens.—Has he not bought some silk stockings?—He has bought some.—Is your sister writing?—No, Madam, she is not writing.—Why does she not write?—Because she has a sore hand.—Why does the daughter of your neighbour not go out?—She does not go out because she has sore feet.—Why does my sister not speak?—Because she has a sore mouth.—Hast thou not seen my silver pen?—I have not seen it.—Hast thou a front room?—I have one behind, but my brother has one in the front.—Does the wife of our shoemaker go out already?—No, my lady, she does not go out yet, for she is still very ill.

## 185.

Which bottle has your little sister broken?—She broke the one which my mother bought yesterday.—Have you eaten of my soup or of my mother's?—I have eaten neither of yours nor your mother's, but of that of my good sister.—Have you seen the woman that was with (*bei*) me this morning?—I have not seen her.—Has your mother hurt herself?—She has not hurt herself.—Have you a sore nose?—I have not a sore nose, but a sore hand.—Have you cut your finger?—No, my lady, I have my hand.—Will you give me a pen?—I will give you one.

—Will you (have) this (one) or that (one)?—I will (have) neither.—Which (one) do you wish to have?—I wish to have that which your sister has.—Do you wish to have my mother's good black silk or my sister's?—I wish to have neither your mother's nor your sister's, but that which you have.—Can you write with this pen?—I can write with it. (*Obs. B.*, Lesson LIV.)  
 —Each woman thinks herself amiable (~~lieb~~<sup>lieb</sup>~~enswertig~~<sup>würdig</sup>) and each is conceited (~~besitzt~~<sup>besitzt</sup> *Eigenliebe*).—The same (eben so) as men (~~die~~<sup>die</sup> *Mannsperſon*), my dear friend. Many a one thinks himself learned who is not so, and many men surpass (~~über~~<sup>über</sup>~~treffen~~<sup>treffen</sup>\*) women in vanity (an *Eitelkeit*). (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## EIGHTY-FIRST LESSON.

## Ein und achtzigste Section.

To go into the kitchen, to be in the kitchen.	In die Küche gehen*, in der Küche seyn*. (See Lesson XXXI. Note 2.)
To go to church, to be at church.	In die Kirche gehen*, in der Kirche seyn*.
To go to school, to be at school.	In die Schule gehen*, in der Schule seyn*.
To go into the cellar, to be in the cellar. The dancing school, the play (the comedy), the opera,	In den Keller gehen*, in dem Keller seyn*. die Tanzschule; die Komödie; die Oper.
To go a hunting, to be a hunting.	† Auf die Jagd gehen*, auf der Jagd seyn*. (See Lesson XXXII. Note 1.)
To go to the castle, to be at the castle.	Auf das Schloß gehen*, auf dem Schlosse seyn <sup>1</sup> .*
To go to the exchange, to be at the exchange. The bank, the bench, To go to fish or a fishing. To hunt.	Auf die Börse gehen*, auf der Börse seyn*. die Bank (plur. Banken); die Bank (plur. Bänke). Fischen gehen*. Jagen.
The whole day, all the day, the whole morning, the whole evening, the whole night, all the night, the whole year, the whole week, the whole society, All at once, suddenly (all of a sudden),	den ganzen Tag; den ganzen Morgen; den ganzen Abend; die ganze Nacht; das ganze Jahr; die ganze Woche; die ganze Gesellschaft <sup>2</sup> . auf einmal; plötzlich.

<sup>1</sup> The preposition auf denotes action and existence upon the exterior of anything or motion towards an elevation.

<sup>2</sup> Substantives terminating in ei, heit, zeit, schaft, and ath, are feminine. (See page 46, Introductory Book, and pages 4, 5, 6, 7, Method, Part II.)

Next week.

Last week.

This week.

This year.

Die künftige (nächste) Woche.

Die vorige (vergangene) Woche.

Diese Woche.

Dieses Jahr.

Your mother,

your sister,

your sisters,

A person,

The belly-ache,

† Ihre Frau Mutter (See *Obs.*  
Lesson LXXVII.);

† Ihr Fräulein Schwester;

† Ihre Fräulein Schwestern.

eine Person.

das Bauchweh; plur. die Bauch-  
schmerzen.

She has the stomach-ache.

Sie hat Magenschmerzen. (plur.)

His sister has a violent head-ache.

Seine Schwester hat großes Kopf-  
weh.

Some of it, any of it.

Some of them, any of  
them.

Of it, of them.

Sing.

and

Plural

fem.

*Singular and Plural feminine.*

Welche, deren, derselben.

(See *Obs.* Lesson XVIII.)*Pronouns possessive absolute.*

Mine, his, hers.

Ours, yours, theirs.

Singular.

Mine, his, hers,

Ours, yours, theirs.

Plural.

FEMININE.

*Singular.*

die meinige, die seinige, die ihrige.

die unserige, die Eurige, die ihrige.

*Plural.*

die meinigen, die seinigen, die ihrigen.

die unserigen, die Eurigen, die  
ihrigen<sup>2</sup>.

Have you my pen or hers?

Haben Sie meine Feder oder die  
ihrige?

I have hers.

Ich habe die ihrige.

*To her.*Ihr. (See Table of Personal Pro-  
nouns, Lesson XXX.)What do you wish to send to  
your aunt?Was wollen Sie der Auhme  
schicken?

I wish to send her a tart.

Ich will ihr eine Torte schicken.

<sup>2</sup> These pronouns have the declension of an adjective preceded by  
the definite article. (See Lesson IX.)



Will you send her also fruits?

I will send her some.

Have you sent the books to my sisters?

I have sent them to them.

Wollen Sie ihr auch Früchte schicken?

Ich will ihr welche schicken.

Haben Sie meinen Schwestern die Bücher geschickt?

Ich habe sie ihnen geschickt.

The fruit,  
the tart,  
the aunt,  
the peach,  
the strawberry,  
the cherry,  
the cousin (aunt),  
the niece,  
the night (power),  
the maid-servant,  
the gazette,  
the relation,

die Frucht;  
die Torte;  
die Muhme (die Tante);  
die Pfirsiche;  
die Erdbeere;  
die Kirsche;  
die Base;  
die Nichte;  
die Nacht;  
die Magd;  
die Zeitung<sup>4</sup>;

{ *Mas.* der Verwandte ; } (an adjective)  
{ *Fem.* die Verwandte ; }

the neighbour (feminine),  
the ware (merchandise, goods).

die Nachbarinn;  
die Waare.

*Obs. A.* A feminine substantive is formed by joining the syllable *inn* to a masculine substantive. *Ex.*

The actor,  
the actress,

der Schauspieler;  
die Schauspielerinn.

*Obs. B.* If the radical syllable of the masculine substantive contains one of the vowels *a, o, u*, it is generally softened on being made feminine by the addition of the syllable *inn*. *Ex.*

The countess,  
the fool (fem.),  
the cook (fem.),  
the peasant (peasant's wife),  
the sister-in-law.

die Gräfinn;  
die Narrinn;  
die Köchin;  
die Bäuerinn;  
die Schwägerinn.

To catch a cold.  
To have a cold.  
To have a cough.  
I have caught a cold.

den Schnupfen bekommen\*.  
den Schnupfen haben\*.  
den Husten haben\*.  
Ich habe den Schnupfen bekommen.

<sup>4</sup> Words terminating in *ung* are feminine. (See Introductory Book, page 47, and page 6, Method, Part II.)

The cold,  
the cough,  
To make sick.  
It makes me sick.

der Schnupfen ;  
der Husten.  
Krank machen.  
Es macht mich krank.

## EXERCISES.

186.

Where is your cousin ?—He is in the kitchen.—Has your cook (fem.) already made the soup ?—She has made it, for it stands already upon the table.—Where is your mother ?—She is at church.—Is your sister gone to school ?—She is gone thither.—Does your mother often go to church ?—She goes thither every morning and every evening.—At what o'clock in the morning does she go to church ?—She goes thither as soon as she gets up.—At what o'clock does she get up ?—She gets up at sun-rise.—Dost thou go to school to-day ?—I do go thither.—What dost thou learn at school ?—I learn to read, write, and speak there.—Where is your aunt ?—She is gone to the play with my little sister.—Do your sisters go this evening to the opera ?—No, Madam, they go to the dancing school.—Is your father gone a hunting ?—He has not been able to go a hunting, for he has a cold.—Do you like to go a hunting ?—I like to go a fishing better than a hunting.—Is your father still in the country ?—Yes, Madam, he is still there.—What does he do there ?—He goes a hunting and a fishing there.—Did you hunt when you were in the country ?—I hunted the whole day.

187.

How long have you stayed with (bei) my mother ?—I stayed with her the whole evening.—Is it long since you were at the castle ?—I was there last week.—Did you find many people there ?—I found only three persons there.—Who were those three persons ?—They (es) were the count, the countess, and their daughter.—Are these girls as good as their brothers ?—They are better than they.—Can your sisters speak German ?—They cannot, but they are learning it.—Have you brought anything to your mother ?—I brought her good fruits and a fine tart.—What has your niece brought you ?—She has brought us good cherries, good strawberries, and good peaches.—Do you like peaches ?—I do like them much (sehr).—How many peaches has your neighbour (fem.) given you ?—She has given me more than twenty of them.—Have you eaten many cherries this year ?—I have eaten many of them.—Did you give any to your little sister ?—I gave her some.—Why have you not given any to your good neighbour (fem.) ?—I wished to give her some, but she did not

wish to take any, because she does not like cherries.—Were there many pears last year?—There were not many.

## 188.

Why do your sisters not go to the play?—They cannot go thither, because they have a cold, and that makes them very ill.—Did you sleep well last night?—I did not sleep well, for my children made too much noise in my room.—Where were you last night?—I was at my brother-in-law's.—Did you see your sister-in-law?—I did see her.—How is she?—She was better yesterday evening than usual.—Did you play?—We did not play, but we read some good books: for my sister-in-law likes to read better than to play.—Have you read the gazette to-day?—I have read it.—Is there any thing new in it?—I have not read anything new in it.—Where have you been since (seitdem) I saw you?—I have been at Vienna, London, and Berlin.—Did you speak to my sister?—I did speak to her.—What does she say?—She says that she wishes to see you.—Where have you put my pen?—I have put it on the table.—Do you intend to see your aunt to-day?—I do intend to see her, for she has promised me to dine with us.—I admire (bewundern) that family (die Familie), for the father is the king and the mother the queen of it. The children and the servants (das Gefinde has no plural) are the subjects (der Unterthan, gen. en) of the state (der Staat).—The tutors of the children are the ministers (der Minister), who share (theilen) with the king and queen the care (die Sorge) of the government (die Regierung). The good education (die Erziehung) which is given to children (See *Obs. Contin. of Lesson LXXII.*) is the crown (die Krone) of monarchs (der Monarch, gen. en). (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## EIGHTY-SECOND LESSON.

## Zwei und achtzigste Section.

To march (to walk).	Marſchiren <sup>1</sup> .
To walk (to go on foot).	Geſehen * (zu Fuße gehen).
To step.	Schreiten *. Part. past, geſchrit-
	ten. Imperf. ſchritt.
To travel.	Reiſen, } take ſeyn for their
To wander (to go on foot).	Wandern, } auxiliary.
The traveller,	der Reiſende ;
the wanderer (the traveller on foot).	der Wanderer (Wanderſmann).
To walk or travel a mile.	Eine Meile zurüchlegen.
To make a step (meaning to step physically).	Einen Schritt machen.
To take a step (meaning to take measures morally).	Einen Schritt thun *.
To go on a journey.	Eine Reiſe machen.
To make a speech.	Eine Rede halten *.
A piece of business,	} ein Geſchäft (plural e).
an affair,	
To transact business.	Geſchäfte machen.
<hr/>	
To salt.	Salzen.
Salt meat,	geſalzenes Fleiſch ;
fresh meat,	frifches Fleiſch ;
the food (victuals),	die Speiſe ;
the dish (mess),	das Gericht (plural e) ;
the milk,	die Milch.
Salt meats,	geſalzene Speiſen ;
Milk-food,	Milchſpeiſe.
<hr/>	
To attract.	An ſich ziehen * (herbei zie-
	hen *, anziehen *).
The loadstone attracts iron.	Der Magnet zieht das Eiſen an ſich.
Her singing attracts me.	Ihr Gefang zieht mich an.

<sup>1</sup> The verb marſchiren takes the auxiliary ſeyn \*, when there is a destination of place, else it takes either haben \* or ſeyn \*. Ex. Die Armee iſt nach Rom marſchirt, the army has marched to Rome; die Armee hat (or iſt) den ganzen Tag marſchirt, the army has marched the whole day

To allure, to entice.	locken.	
To excite, to charm.	Reizen.	
To charm, to enchant.	Bezaubern.	
To enrapture, to ravish.	Entzücken.	
I am enraptured with it.	Ich bin darüber entzückt.	
The beauty,	die Schönheit ;	
the harmony,	die Harmonie ;	
the voice,	die Stimme ;	
the power (the force).	die Gewalt.	
<hr/>		
To meddle with something.	{ Sich in Etwas mischen.	
	{ Sich mit Etwas abgeben *.	
To concern one's self about something.	{	Sich um Etwas bekümmern.
To trouble one's head about something (to meddle with something).		
<hr/>		
I do not meddle with other people's business.	Ich mische mich nicht in fremde	
The quarrel (the contest),	Handel.	
the commerce (the traffic),	der Handel ;	
Strange (foreign),	der Handel (has no plural).	
It is strange.	fremd.	
	Es ist sonderbar.	
<hr/>		
He employs himself in painting.	Er gibt sich mit der Malerei ab.	
The art of painting,	die Malerei ;	
the chymistry,	die Chymie, die Scheidekunst ;	
the chymist,	der Chymiker (der Scheidekünstler) ;	
the art,	die Kunst.	
<hr/>		
To look at some one.	Jemanden ansehen *.	
To concern some one.	Jemanden angehen *.	
I look at you.	Ich sehe Sie an.	
The thing.	{ die Sache,	
	{ das Ding (plural e).	
I do not like to meddle with things that do not concern me.	Ich mische mich nicht gern in Dinge, die mich Nichts angehen.	
What is that to me ?	+ Was geht das mich an ?	
What is that to you ?	+ Was geht das Sie an ?	
<hr/>		
To repeat	Wiederholen.	
The repetition,	{ das Wiederholen. (See Lesson LXXI. Note 2.)	

the beginning, the commencement,	der Anfang ;
the wisdom,	die Weisheit ;
the study,	{ das Studium <sup>2</sup> ; das Studiren ;
the goddess,	die Göttinn ;
the lord,	der Herr ;
the nightingale,	die Nachtigall.
All commencements are difficult.	Aller Anfang ist schwer (a proverb).

<i>To create.</i>	Schaffen. Part. past, geschaffen. Impeff. schuf.
The Creator,	der Schöpfer ;
the creation,	die Schöpfung ;
the benefit (the kindness),	die Wohlthat ;
the fear of the Lord,	die Furcht des Herrn ;
the heaven,	der Himmel ;
the earth,	die Erde ;
the solitude,	die Einsamkeit ;
the lesson,	die Lektion ;
the exercise,	die Aufgabe ;
the goodness.	die Güte <sup>2</sup> .

I have done it for your sake. | Ich habe es Ihetwegen gethan.

*Obs.* The preposition *wegen* takes its place either before or after the genitive which it governs ; but when it follows a personal pronoun, the letter *t* is substituted for the letter *r* of the pronoun which then forms one word with the preposition. The same thing should be observed with regard to the prepositions *haben*, on account of, and *um—willen*, for the sake of, with this difference, that they never stand before the case. *Ex.*

Meinetwegen, meinethalben, on account of me.	Unserwegen, unserthalben, on account of us.
Deinetwegen, deinethalben, on account of thee.	Eurewegen, eurethalben, on account of you.
Seinetwegen, seinethalben, on account of him.	Ihretwegen, ihretthalben, on account of them, for their sake.
Ihretwegen, ihretthalben, on account of her.	

<sup>2</sup> Substantives terminating in *um*, form their plural by changing *um* into *en*. *Ex.* das Individuum, the individual ; plur. die Individuen ; das Studium, the study ; plur. die Studien. (See Introductory Book, page 31.)

<sup>3</sup> Abstract substantives have generally no plural in German, as die Güte, the goodness ; die Liebe, the love, &c. (See Introductory Book. *Obs.* B. page 34, and note <sup>1</sup>, page 2, Method, Part II.)

In the same way we say: um meinetwillen, for my sake; um beinetwillen, for thy sake, &c.

He has done it for the sake of her.

On account of you and your children, as well as on account of me and mine, I have put you in mind of and inculcated this important and infallible truth.

Er hat es um ihretwillen gethan.

Ihret- und Ihrer Kinder, eben sowohl als meinet- und der meinigen wegen, habe ich Ihnen diese wichtige und untrügliche Wahrheit zu Gemüthe geführt und eingeschärft.

The cleanliness, the uncleanness, the government (meaning the magistrate),

Sensible, reasonable,

Not only—but also.

die Reinlichkeit; die Unreinlichkeit. die Obrigkeit;

vernünftig.

Nicht allein—sondern auch.

## EXERCISES.

### 189.

Will you dine with us to-day?—With much pleasure.—What have you for dinner?—We have good soup, some fresh and salt meat, and some milk-food.—Do you like milk-food?—I like it better than all other food.—Are you ready to dine?—I am ready.—Do you intend to set out soon?—I intend setting out next week.—Do you travel alone?—No, Madam, I travel with my uncle.—Do you travel on foot or in a carriage?—We travel in a carriage.—Did you meet any one in (auf with the dative) your last journey to Berlin?—We met many wanderers.—What do you intend to spend your time in this summer?—I intend to take a short journey.—Did you walk much in your last journey?—I like much to walk, but my uncle likes to go in a carriage.—Did he not wish to walk?—He wished to walk at first, but after having taken a few steps, he wished to get into the carriage, so that I did not walk much.—What have you been doing at school to-day?—We have been listening to our professor, who made a long speech on (über with the accus.) the goodness of God.—What did he say?—After saying, “God is the Creator of heaven and earth; the fear of the Lord is the commencement of all wisdom;” he said, “Repetition is the mother of studies, and a good memory is a great benefit of God.”—Why did you not stay longer in Holland?—When I was there the living was dear, and I had not money enough to stay there longer.—What sort of weather was it when you were on the way to Vienna?—It was very bad weather; for it was stormy, and snowed, and rained very heavily<sup>4</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> The learner must here repeat all the expressions relative to the impersonal verb *es ist*, *it is*, in Lessons LVI. and LVIII.

What are you doing all the day in this garden?—I am walking in it (*ðarín*).—What is there in it that attracts you?—The singing of the birds attracts me.—Are there any nightingales in it?—There are some in it, and the harmony of their singing enchants me.—Have those nightingales more power over (*úber* with the accus.) you than the beauties of painting, or the voice of your tender (*gártlíð*) mother, who loves you so much?—I confess, the harmony of the singing of those little birds has more power over me than the most tender words of my dearest friends.—What does your niece amuse herself with in her solitude?—She reads a good deal and writes letters to her mother.—What does your uncle amuse himself with in his solitude?—He employs himself in painting and chymistry.—Does he no longer do any business?—He no longer does any, for he is too old to do it.—Why does he meddle with your business?—He does not generally (*gewöñn-líð*) meddle with other people's business; but he meddles with mine, because he loves me.—Has your master made you repeat your lesson to-day?—He has made me repeat it.—Did you know it?—I did know it pretty well.—Have you also done some exercises?—I have done some, but what is that to you, I beg?—I do not generally meddle with things that do not concern me; but I love you so much (*so sehr*) that I concern myself much (*sehr*) about what you are doing.—Does any one trouble his head about you?—No one troubles his head about me; for I am not worth the trouble.—Not only for the sake of cleanliness, but also for the sake of health (*die Gesundheit*), prudent people avoid (*sich hüten vor* with the dative) uncleanness, and wash themselves often. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)



## EIGHTY-THIRD LESSON.

## Drei und achtzigste Section.

## OF THE FUTURE.

THE first or simple future is formed from the present of the auxiliary *werden* \*, to become <sup>1</sup>, and the infinitive of the verb, as in English from *shall* or *will*, and the infinitive. *Ex.*

I shall love, he (she) will love.

Thou wilt love, you will love.

We shall love, they will love.

Ich werde lieben, er (sie) wird lieben.

Du wirst lieben, Ihr werdet (Sie werden) lieben.

Wir werden lieben, sie werden lieben.

I shall be loved.

Will you love my mother?

I shall love her much.

I shall never love her.

I shall love her when she loves me.

Will you go out to-day?

Ich werde geliebt werden.

Werden Sie meine Mutter lieben?

Ich werde sie sehr lieben.

Ich werde sie nie lieben.

Ich werde sie lieben, wann sie mich lieben wird. (See Lesson XLIX.)

Werden Sie heute ausgehen?

*To be dusty.*

Is it dusty?

It is dusty.

It is very dusty.

Is it muddy out of doors?

It is very muddy.

Staubig seyn \*, stauben.

Ist es staubig?

Es ist staubig.

Es ist sehr staubig.

Ist es schmutzig draußen?

Es ist sehr schmutzig.

*To be smoky, to smoke.*

Is it smoky? Does it smoke?

It is very smoky. It smokes much.

It is too smoky. It smokes too much.

Rauchen.


Raucht es?

Es raucht sehr.


Es raucht zu sehr.

<sup>1</sup> The verb *werden* \*, when employed in the formation of the future and other tenses, loses its proper signification.

<i>To go in.</i>	Hinein gehen *.
<i>To come in.</i>	Herein kommen *.
Will you go in ?	Werden Sie hinein gehen ?
<i>To sit down.</i>	Sich setzen.
<i>To sit.</i>	Sitzen * (verb neuter). Part. past, gegessen. Imperf. saß.
I will sit down on that chair.	Ich will mich auf diesen Stuhl setzen ?
Where did he sit ?	Wo saß er ?
He sat upon that chair.	Er saß auf diesem Stuhle.
<i>To have left.</i>	Uebrig bleiben *. Imperf. blieb.
How much money have you left ?	Wieviel Geld bleibt Ihnen übrig ?
I have a crown left.	Es bleibt mir ein Thaler übrig.
I have only three crowns left.	Es bleiben mir nur drei Thaler übrig.
If I pay him I shall have but little left.	Wenn ich ihm bezahle, wird mir nur wenig übrig bleiben (or so wird mir nur wenig übrig blei- ben).

 **A.** The subject is placed after the verb in an inversion of propositions; that is, when that which ought to stand first is put after, and forms, as it were, the complement of the other. An inversion of propositions takes place when the first proposition begins with a conjunction. Ex.

If he comes, I shall speak to him (inversion).	Wenn er kommt, werde ich mit ihm sprechen.
I shall speak to him if he comes (without inversion).	Ich werde mit ihm sprechen, wenn er kommt.
If it is fine weather to-morrow I shall take a walk (inversion).	Wenn es morgen schönes Wetter ist, werde ich spazieren gehen.
I shall take a walk, if it is fine weather to-morrow (without inversion).	Ich werde spazieren gehen, wenn es morgen schönes Wetter ist.

 **B.** The subject is also placed after its verb, when in an inversion of propositions the conjunction *wenn*, *if*, is omitted in the first. This omission of the conjunction may take place or not; but

<sup>2</sup> Whenever a will or intention, and not merely futurity, is to be expressed, the verb *wollen* \* is used.

when it does, the second proposition begins with the conjunction *so*, then (*so*).

<i>Then (so).</i>	<i>So.</i>
If I receive my money, I shall pay you.	Bekomme ich mein Geld (instead of: wenn ich mein Geld bekomme), so bezahle ich Ihnen.
If he speaks to me, I shall answer him.	Spricht er zu mir (for: wenn er zu mir spricht) so werde ich ihm antworten.

*Obs.* When the conjunction *wenn* is not omitted, the conjunction *so* of the second proposition may either be omitted or not, unless the proposition is of a certain length.

If you will promise me to keep it secret, I shall tell it you.	Wenn Sie mir versprechen wollen, es geheim zu halten, so werde ich es Ihnen sagen.
--	--

I have spent all my money, so that I have none left.	Ich habe mein ganzes Geld ausgegeben, so daß mir keins mehr übrig bleibt.
--	---

<i>To fill.</i>	<i>Füllen (ansfüllen).</i>
To fill a bottle with wine.	Eine Flasche mit Wein ansfüllen.
I fill my purse with money.	Ich fülle meinen Beutel (meine Börse) mit Geld.
With what do you fill that glass?	Womit füllen Sie dieses Glas?

## EXERCISE.

191.

Will your father go out to-day?—He will go out, if it is fine weather.—Will your sister go out?—She will go out, if it is not windy.—Will you love my brother?—I shall love him with all my heart, if he is as good as you.—Will your parents go into the country to-morrow?—They will not go, for it is too dusty.—Shall we take a walk to-day?—We will not take a walk, for it is too muddy out of doors.—Do you see the castle of my relation behind yonder mountain?—I do see it.—Shall we go in?—We will go in, if you like.—Will you go into that room?—I shall not go into it, for it is smoky.—I wish you a good morning, Madam.—Will you not come in?—Will you not sit down?—I will sit down upon that large chair. Will you tell me what has become of your brother?—I will tell you. Here is the chair upon which he sat often.—When did he die?—He died two years

ago.—I am very much. (sch) afflicted at it.—Hast thou spent all thy money?—I have not spent all.—How much hast thou left of it?—I have not much left of it; I have but one florin left.—How much money have thy sisters left?—They have but three crowns left.—Have you money enough left to pay your tailor?—I have enough of it left to pay him; but if I pay him, I shall have but little left.—How much money will your brothers have left?—They will still have a hundred crowns left.—Will you speak to my uncle if you see him?—If I see him, I shall speak to him.—Will you take a walk to-morrow?—If it is fine weather I shall take a walk; but if it is bad weather I shall stay at home.—Will you pay your shoemaker?—I shall pay him, if I receive my money to-morrow.—Why do you wish to go?—If your father comes I shall not go; but if he does not come, I must go.—Why do you not sit down?—If you will stay with (bei) me, I will sit down; but if you go, I shall go along with you.—Will you love my children?—If they are good and assiduous, I shall love them; but if they are idle and naughty, I shall despise and punish them.—Am I right in speaking thus (so)?—You are not wrong. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## EIGHTY-FOURTH LESSON.

## Bier und achtzigste Section.

## OF THE PAST OR COMPOUND INFINITIVE.

IN German, as in English, the past infinitive is formed from the infinitive of the auxiliary and the past participle of the verb; but in English the past participle stands after the infinitive, whereas in German it precedes it. Ex.

Have loved, to have loved.

In order to have loved.

Without having loved.

Have been loved.

To have been loved.

Geliebt haben, geliebt zu haben.

Um geliebt zu haben.

Ohne geliebt zu haben.

Geliebt worden seyn.

Geliebt worden zu seyn.

## OF THE PAST FUTURE.

The past or compound future is formed, as the first or simple future (preceding Lesson), from the present of the auxiliary werden \*, and the past infinitive. Ex.

I shall have loved, he (she) will have loved.

Thou wilt have loved, you will have loved.

We shall have loved, they will have loved.

I shall have been loved.

Ich werde geliebt haben, er (sic) wird geliebt haben.

Du wirst geliebt haben, Ihr werdet (Sie werden) geliebt haben.

Wir werden geliebt haben, sie werden geliebt haben.


Ich werde geliebt worden seyn.

I shall have written my letters before you return.

When I have paid for the horse I shall have only ten crowns left.

Ich werde meine Briefe geschrieben haben, ehe Sie zurückkommen.

Wenn ich das Pferd bezahlt haben werde (or werde bezahlt haben), werden mir nur noch zehn Thaler übrig bleiben.

 A. When at the end of a proposition there are two infinitives, two past participles, or an infinitive and a past participle, the verb which on account of the conjunction ought to be thrown to the end of the phrase, may be placed either before or after those infinitives or participles. Ex.

What will you do when you have dined ?

Was werden Sie thun, wann Sie zu Mittag gegessen haben werden, or werden zu Mittag gegessen haben ?

When I have spoken to your brother I shall know what I have to do. { Wann ich Ihren Bruder gesprochen haben werde, or werde gesprochen haben, so werde ich wissen, was ich zu thun habe.

**B.** The latter way of placing the verb is the most elegant and most usual. Ex.

I have told him that you have been obliged to sell the horse. { Ich habe ihm gesagt, daß Sie das Pferd haben verkaufen müssen (and not verkaufen gemußt or müssen haben).

The same (feminine).

Dieſelbe, die nämliche. (See Lessons XIV. and XVI.)

The same thing.

{ Dieſelbe (die nämliche) Sache.  
Daſſelbe (daſ nämliche) Ding.

One and the same.

Einerlei.

It is all one (the same).

Es iſt einerlei.

Such.

Mas. Fem. Neut.

Solcher, ſolche, ſolches (is declined according to the characteristic termination).

**Obs. A.** When *ſold* is preceded by *ein* or *kein*, it has the declension of an adjective. Ex.

Such a man, such a woman, such a child.

Ein ſolcher Mann, eine ſolche Frau  
ein ſolches Kind.

Such men merit esteem.

Solche Menſchen verdienen Achtung.

**Obs. B.** When *ſold* is followed by *ein* it is not declined. Ex.

Such a man, such a woman, such a happiness.

Sold ein Mann, ſold eine Frau,  
ſold ein Glück.

On the outside of, without, out of.

Außerhalb (a preposition governing the genitive).

The church stands outside the town.

Die Kirche iſt außerhalb der Stadt.

I shall wait for you before the town gate.

Ich werde Sie vor dem Thore (Stadtthor) erwarten.

The town or city gate.

{ daſ Stadtthor.  
daſ Thor der Stadt.

To go out.	Hinausgehen *.
To come out.	Herauskommen *
Seldom (rarely).	Selten.
Does he sit under the tree?	Sitzt er unter dem Baume?
He is sitting under it.	Er sitzt darunter. ( <i>Obs. B. Lesson LIV.</i> )
To continue (to proceed).	{ Fortfahren *.
	{ Fortsetzen <sup>1</sup> .
He continues his speech.	! + Er fährt in seiner Rede fort.
The appetite,	{ der Appetit,
the narrative, the tale,	die Lust, die Lust zum Essen;
the shore (the coast, the bank),	die Erzählung;
the sea-shore,	das Ufer;
on the sea-shore.	das Ufer des Meeres;
	am Ufer des Meeres.
Not until (not before).	Nicht eher — bis.
Before.	Ehe, ehe als, bevor.
I shall not see him until I go thither.	Ich werde ihn nicht sehen, ehe (bevor) ich hingehe.
Did you see him before his departure?	Haben Sie ihn vor seiner Abreise gesehen?
I do not do it until you tell it me.	Ich thue es nicht, bis Sie es mir sagen.
There is, there are.	Da ist, Plural da sind.
Here is, here are.	Hier ist, — hier sind.
Here I am.	Hier bin ich.
There is my book.	Da ist mein Buch.
There it is.	Da ist es.
There they are.	Da sind sie.
Therefore.	Deswegen, daher.
That is the reason why.	Das ist die Ursache warum.
Therefore I say so.	Deswegen sage ich es.
My sister's feet are cold.	Meiner Schwester frieren die Füße.
Her hands are cold.	Ihr frieren die Hände (Es ist ihr in den Händen kalt).

*Fortsetzen* is a regular verb active, and governs the accusative; *fortfahren* \*, on the contrary, is neuter and irregular, and governs the dative with the preposition *in* or *mit*.

## EXERCISES.

192.

When will you go to Italy?—I shall go as soon as I have learnt Italian.—When will your brothers go to Germany?—They will go thither as soon as they know German.—When will they learn it?—They will learn it when they have found a good master.—How much money shall we have left when we have paid for our horses?—When we have paid for them, we shall have only a hundred crowns left.—Have you told my brother that I have been obliged to sell the carriage?—I have told him so.—Have you written to the same man to whom my father wrote?—I have not written to the same, but to another.—Have they already answered you?—Not yet, but I hope to receive a letter next week.—Have you ever seen such a person?—I have never seen such a one.—Have you already seen our church?—I have not seen it yet.—Where does it stand?—It stands outside the town.—If you wish to see it, I will go with you in order to show it to you.—Who is there?—It is I.—Who are those men?—They are foreigners who wish to speak to you.—Of what country are they?—They are Americans.—Where have you been since I saw you?—We sojourned long on the sea-shore, until a ship arrived, which brought us to France.—Will you continue your narrative?—Scarcely had we arrived in France when we were taken to the king, who received (*aufnahm*) us very well, and sent us back to our country.—Whom are you looking for?—I am looking for my little brother.—If you wish to find him, you must go into the garden, for he is there.—The garden is large, and I shall not be able to find him, if you do not tell me in which part (*der Theil*) of the garden he is.—He is sitting under the large tree under which we were sitting yesterday.—Now I shall find him.

193.

Why do your children not live in France?—They wish to learn English, that is the reason why they live in England.—Why do you sit near the fire?—My hands and feet are cold, that is the reason why I sit near the fire.—What do the people live upon that live on the sea-shore?—They live upon fish alone.—Why will you not go a hunting any more?—I hunted yesterday the whole day, and I killed nothing but an ugly bird, that is the reason why I shall not go any more a hunting.—Why do you not eat?—I shall not eat before I have a good appetite.—Why does your brother eat so much?—He has a good appetite, that is the reason he eats so much.—If you have read the books which I lent you, why do you not return them to me?—I intend reading them once more, that is the reason why I have not yet returned them to you; but I shall return them to you as soon as I have



read them a (zum) second time.—Why did you not bring me my clothes?—They were not made, therefore I did not bring them; but I bring them you now, here they are.—You have learnt your lesson, why has your sister not learnt hers?—She has taken a walk with my mother, that is the reason why she has not learnt it; but she will learn it to-morrow.—When will you correct my exercises?—I will correct them when you bring me those of your sister.—Do you think (glauben) you have made faults in them?—I do not know.—If you have made faults, you have not studied your lessons well; for the lessons must be learnt well, to make no faults in the exercises.—It is all the same, if you do not correct them (for) me to-day, I shall not learn them before (so werde ich sie erst) to-morrow.—You must make no faults in your exercises, for you have all you want, in order to make none. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## EIGHTY-FIFTH LESSON.

## Fünf und achtzigste Section.

To die of a disease.	An einer (dative) Krankheit sterben*.
The small-pox,	die Blattern (plural of die Blatter, the blister, the pustule, the pock).
She died of the small-pox.	Sie ist an den Blattern gestorben.
The fever, the intermitting fever,	das Fieber, das Wechselfieber.
He had a cold fit.	Er hatte einen Anfall von Fieber.
He has an ague.	Er hat das Fieber bekommen.
His fever has returned.	Er hat das Fieber wieder bekommen.
The apoplexy,	der Schlag, der Schlagfluß.
He has been struck with apoplexy.	Der Schlag hat ihn gerührt. Er ist vom Schläge gerührt worden.
To sell well.	Guten Abgang haben*. Gut abgehen*.
Wine sells well.	Viel Käufer finden*. † Der Wein geht gut ab (hat guten Abgang).
Cloth sells well.	† Das Tuch hat guten Abgang (findet viel Käufer).
Wine will sell well next year.	† Der Wein wird nächstes Jahr guten Abgang haben.
To open.	Deffnen, aufmachen, aufschließen* <sup>1</sup> .
To shut.	Zumachen, zuschließen* <sup>2</sup> (active verbs). Zugehen*, zuschließen*. Part. past, geschlossen. Imperf. schloß.

<sup>1</sup> Deffnen and aufmachen mean to remove the obstacle in order to give access, as: die Thore, die Thür eines Zimmers, einen Schrant, einen Brief öffnen or aufmachen, to open the town-gates, the door of a room, a cupboard, a letter. Deffnen is only employed to make an opening in the thing itself, as: einen Leichnam, eine Ader, ein Geschwür öffnen, to open a corpse, a vein, an abscess, because there is no opening yet. So we say die Laufgräben öffnen, to open the trenches. Aufschließen is only employed in speaking of things that are shut with a key or a padlock.

<sup>2</sup> The same distinction is to be made between zumachen and zuschließen\*, as between aufmachen and aufschließen\*.

To open.	Aufgehen * (a neuter verb), sich öffnen.
That door opens easily.	Diese Thür geht leicht auf (ist leicht zu öffnen).
The door does not shut.	Die Thür schließt nicht.
The window shuts well.	Das Fenster schließt gut.
Far off, from afar.	Von weitem, von ferne.
That house is seen far off.	Man sieht dieses Haus von weitem (von ferne).
Summer clothes are not worn in winter.	{ Sommerkleider trägt man nicht im Winter. Sommerkleider werden nicht im Winter getragen.
That is not said.	Das wird nicht gesagt.
That cannot be comprehended.	Das ist unbegreiflich.
It is clear.	Es ist deutlich.
To conceive, to comprehend.	Begreifen *. Part. past, begriffen. Imperf. begriff.
According to circumstances.	{ Nach den Umständen. Nach Beschaffenheit der Umstände.
The disposition,	die Beschaffenheit;
The circumstance,	der Umstand.
According as.	Nachdem, je nachdem, in so fern.
That is according to.	{ Nachdem es ist (nachdem es kommt).
It depends.	{ Nachdem die Umstände sind.
Do not put the glass upon the table, for it will break.	Stellen Sie das Glas nicht auf den Tisch; denn es wird zerbrechen. Imperf. zerbrach.
To put.	Stellen.
To lay.	Legen.
To set, to seat.	Setzen.
To stick.	Stecken <sup>3</sup> .

<sup>3</sup> Stellen is used when the person or thing spoken of is, as it were, *standing* upright, and legen when it is lying. Ex. Die Gläser, die Flasche auf den Tisch stellen, to put the glasses, the bottle on the table; ein Kind auf das Bett legen, to place a child upon the bed; ein Kleid

Are the women handsome?	Sind die Frauen schön?
They are so; they are rich and handsome.	Sie sind es; sie sind reich und schön.
What countrywoman is she?	{ Woher ist sie?
	{ Wo ist sie her?
She is from France.	• Sie ist aus (or von) Frankreich.

To be angry at somebody (about anything).	Böse auf Jemanden (über Etwas) seyn.
What are you angry about?	Worüber sind Sie böse?

Are you sorry for having done it?	Thut es Ihnen leid, es gethan zu haben?
I am sorry for it.	{ Es thut mir leid.
	{ Es ist mir nicht lieb. (See Lesson LXXIX.)

Polite (courteous), impolite (uncivil).	Höflich; unhöflich.
Happy, unhappy.	Glücklich; unglücklich.

What sort of pen have you lost?	Was für eine Feder haben Sie verloren?
A gold one.	Eine goldene.
What sort of pens has your sister made?	Was für Federn hat Ihre Schwester gemacht?
Good ones.	Gute.

auf das Bett legen, to put a coat upon the bed; wo haben Sie meinen Stock hingestellt? where have you placed my stick? wo haben Sie mein Messer hingelegt? where have you put my knife? The verbs stehen \* and liegen \* may be explained by the English verbs, to stand and to lie. Ex. Ihr Stock steht in meinem Zimmer, your stick is (stands) in my room; Ihr Bruder steht am Fenster, your brother stands at the window; Ihr Messer liegt auf dem Tische, your knife is (lies) upon the table; hier steht Ihr Stock und da liegt Ihr Messer, here stands your stick and there lies your knife. Setzen nearly answers to the English verb to seat, as: setzen Sie sich hierher, seat yourself here. It is also used in the following idiom: Jemanden in den Stand setzen, to enable some one, as: ich habe ihn in den Stand gesetzt, es zu thun, I have enabled him to do it. Stecken, as an active verb, is used with the preposition in followed by the accusative. Ex. In die Tasche stecken, to put into the pocket. We shall hereafter see various other examples of these verbs.

## EXERCISE.

194.

Of what illness did your sister die?—She died of the fever.—How is your brother?—My brother is no longer living. He died three months ago.—I am surprised at it, for he was very well last summer when I was in the country. Of what did he die?—He died of apoplexy.—How is the mother of your friend?—She is not well; she had an attack of ague the day before yesterday, and this morning the fever has returned (*und diesen Morgen wieder*).—Has she the intermitting fever?—I do not know, but she often has cold fits.—What has become of the woman whom I saw at your mother's?—She died this morning of apoplexy.—Did the wine sell well last year?—It did not sell very well; but it will sell better next year, for there will be a great deal of it, and it will not be dear.—Why do you open the door?—Do you not see how it smokes here?—I do see it; but you must open the window instead of opening the door.—The window does not open easily, that is the reason why I open the door.—When will you shut it?—I will shut it as soon as there is no more smoke.—Why do you not put those beautiful glasses on the small table?—If I put them upon that little table, they will break.—Did you often go a fishing when you were in that country?—We often went a fishing and a hunting.—If you will go with us into the country, you will see the castle of my father.—You are very polite, Sir; but I have seen that castle already. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## EIGHTY-SIXTH LESSON.

## Sechß und achtzigste Section.

The utility, the use, the advantage,	der Nutzen ; der Vortheil.
This thing is of no use.	Diese Sache ist von keinem Nutzen.
To profit by a thing.	Nutzen aus einer Sache ziehen *.
To turn a thing to profit.	Sich eine Sache zu Nutzen machen.
To be useful to any one.	Jemandem nutzen (or nützen).
Of what use is that ?	Wozu nützt das ?
That is of no use.	Das nützt Nichts.
Useful.	Nützlich.
Useless.	Unnütz, nutzlos.
Is it useful to write a great deal ?	Ist es nützlich viel zu schreiben ?
It is useful.	Es ist nützlich.

Is it well (right) to do it ?	Ist es billig, es zu thun ?
It is not well (wrong).	Es ist unbillig (unrecht).

What is that ?	Was ist das ?
I do not know what it is.	Ich weiß nicht, was es ist.

<i>To be called.</i>	Heißen *. Part. past, geheißen.
	Imperf. hieß.
What is your name ?	+ Wie heißen Sie ?
My name is Charles.	+ Ich heiße (mein Namen ist) Karl.
What do you call this in German ?	Wie heißt das auf deutsch ?
How do you express (say) this in French ?	Wie sagen Sie das auf französisch ?
What is that called ?	Wie nennt man das ?
To name.	Nennen *. Part. past, genannt.
	Imperf. nannte.

DECLENSION OF THE NAMES OF PERSONS<sup>1</sup>.

The names of persons are declined either without or with the article.  
Without the article they take *s* in the genitive, and *en* in the dative

<sup>1</sup> For the proper names of countries and towns, see Lesson LI. (and page 17, et seq. Meth Part II.)

and accusative; with the article they add nothing to their termination.  
Ex.

NOM.	Wilhelm	or der Wilhelm,	William.
GEN.	Wilhelms	— des Wilhelm,	of William.
DAT.	Wilhelmen	— dem Wilhelm,	to William.
ACC.	Wilhelmen	— den Wilhelm,	William.

NOM.	Elisabeth	— die Elisabeth,	Elizabeth.
GEN.	Elisabeths	— der Elisabeth,	of Elizabeth.
DAT.	Elisabethen	— der Elisabeth,	to Elizabeth.
ACC.	Elisabethen	— die Elisabeth,	Elizabeth.

*Obs. A.* Names of persons terminating in *sch, s, ft, ß, z, take ens* in the genitive. Ex. Franz, Francis; gen. Franzens. Names of females in *a* or *e* (the common endings for almost all such names) change in the genitive *a* or *e* into *ens*. Ex. Wilhelmina, Wilhelmine; gen. Wilhelminens, of Wilhelmine. Leonore, Eleanor; Leonorens, of Eleanor.

*Obs. B.* To indicate that the ending of the genitive is not a part of the name, it is commonly separated by an apostrophe as in English. Ex. Schiller's Gedichte, Schiller's poems; Goethe's Werke, Goethe's works.

Sooner—than.	Eher—als.
Rather—than.	Lieber—als.
He has arrived sooner than I.	Er ist eher angekommen als ich.
Rather than squander my money	Lieber werfe ich mein Geld in den
I would throw it into the river.	Fluß, ehe ich es verschwende.
	Ehe ich mein Geld verschwende,
	werfe ich es lieber in den Fluß
I will rather pay him than go	Ich will ihm lieber bezahlen, als
thither.	hingehen.
I will rather burn the coat than	Ich will den Rock lieber verbrennen,
wear it.	als ihn tragen.

<i>Sure.</i>	Gewiß.
To be sure of a thing.	Einer Sache gewiß seyn *.
I am sure of that.	Ich bin dessen gewiß.
I am sure that he has arrived.	Ich weiß (or bin) gewiß, daß er
	angekommen ist.
I am sure of it.	} Ich weiß es gewiß.
I know it well.	

To repair to, to go to.  
 I went to my room.  
 He repaired to that town.  
 To repair to the army, to one's  
 regiment.  
 I repaired to that place.  
 He repaired thither.  
 Repair to where you please.

Sich wohin begeben \*.  
 Ich begab mich auf mein Zimmer.  
 Er begab sich in diese Stadt.  
 Sich zur Armee, zu seinem Regi-  
 mente begeben \*.  
 Ich habe mich an diesen Ort begeben.  
 Er hat sich dahin begeben.  
 Gehen Sie wohin Sie wollen.

George the Third.  
 Louis the Fourteenth.  
 Henry the Fourth.

Georg der Dritte.  
 Ludwig der Vierzehnte.  
 Heinrich der Vierte.

Europe, European.  
 Fluently.  
 Charles the Fifth spoke several  
 European languages fluently.

Europa ; Europäisch.  
 Gekläufig.  
 Karl der Fünfte sprach gekläufig  
 mehrere Europäische Sprachen.

Such a thing.  
 Have you ever seen such a thing ?  
 Have you ever heard of such a  
 thing ?  
 I have never seen nor heard of  
 such a thing.

So Etwas.  
 Haben Sie je so Etwas gesehen ?  
 Haben Sie je so Etwas gehört ?  
 Ich habe nie so Etwas gesehen noch  
 gehört.

## EXERCISES.

195.

When did you see my father's castle ?—I saw it when I was travelling last year. It is one of the finest castles that I have ever seen ; it is seen far off.—How is that said ?—That is not said. That cannot be comprehended.—Cannot every thing be expressed in your language ?—Every thing can be expressed, but not as in yours.—Will you rise early to-morrow ?—It will depend upon circumstances ; if I go to bed early I shall rise early, but if I go to bed late, I shall rise late.—Will you love my children ?—If they are good, I shall love them.—Will you dine with us to-morrow ?—If you get ready (zubereiten lassen) the food I like, I shall dine with you.—Have you already read the letter which you received this morning ?—I have not opened it yet.—When will you read it ?—I shall read it as soon as I have time.—Of what use is that ?—It is of no use.—Why have you picked it up ?—I have picked it up, in order to show it to you.—Can you tell me what it is ?—I cannot tell you, for I do not know ; but I shall ask my brother who will tell you.—Where have you found it ?—I have found it on the shore of the river, near the wood.—



Did you perceive it from afar?—I did not want to perceive it from afar, for I passed by the side of the river.—Have you ever seen such a thing?—Never.—Is it useful to speak much?—If one wishes to learn a foreign language it is useful to speak a great deal.—Is it as useful to write as to speak?—It is more useful to speak than to write; but in order to learn a foreign language, one must do both (*beides*).—Is it useful to write all that one says?—That is useless.

## 196.

Where did you take this book from?—I took it out of the room of your friend (fem.).—Is it right to take the books of other people?—It is not right, I know; but I wanted it, and I hope that your friend will not be displeased: for I will return it to her as soon as I have read it.—What is your name?—My name is William.—What is your sister's name?—Her name is Eleanor.—Why does Charles complain of his sister?—Because she has taken his pens.—Of whom do those children complain?—Francis complains of Eleanor and Eleanor of Francis.—Who is right?—They are both wrong; for Eleanor wishes to take Francis's books and Francis Eleanor's.—To whom have you lent Schiller's works?—I have lent the first volume to William and the second to Elizabeth.—How is that said in French?—That is not said in French.—How is that said in German?—It is said thus.—Has the tailor already brought you your new coat?—He has brought it me, but it does not fit me well.—Will he make you another?—He must make me another; for rather than wear it I will give it away.—Will you use that horse?—I shall not use it.—Why will you not use it?—Because it does not suit me.—Will you pay for it?—I will rather pay for it than use it.—To whom do those fine books belong?—They belong to William.—Who has given them to him?—His good father.—Will he read them?—He will tear them rather than read them.—Are you sure that he will not read them?—I am sure of it, for he has told me so. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## EIGHTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

Sieben und achtzigste Lektion.

Sweet,	Süß ;
mild,	sanft ;
agreeable,	angenehm ;
Sweet wine,	süßer Wein ;
A mild zephyr,	ein sanfter Zephyr ;
A mild air,	eine sanfte Luft ;
A soft sleep,	ein sanfter Schlaf.
Nothing makes life more agreeable	Nichts macht das Leben angenehmer,
than the society of and inter-	als die Gesellschaft und der Um-
course with our friends.	gang mit unsern Freunden.
Sour, acid.	Sauer.

To cry, to scream, to shriek.	Schreien*. Part. past, geschrien.
	Imperf. schrie.
To help.	Helfen* (governs the dative).
	Part. past, geholfen. Imperf.
	half.
Thou helpest, he helps.	Du hilfst, er hilft.
I help him to do it.	{ Ich helfe ihm darin.
I help you to write.	{ Ich bin ihm darin behülflich.
	{ Ich helfe Ihnen schreiben. (See
	Lesson XLII.)
I will help you to work.	{ Ich will Ihnen arbeiten helfen.
To cry out for help.	{ Um Hülfe schreien*.

To inquire after some one.	Sich nach Jemandem erkundigen
	(nach Jemandem fragen).
Will you have the goodness to	Wollen Sie die Güte haben, mir
pass that plate to me ?	diese Schüssel zu reichen ?
Will you pass that plate to me if	Wollen Sie mir gefälligst diese
you please ?	Schüssel reichen ?
To reach.	Reichen.
If you please.	{ Gefälligst.
	{ Wenn es Ihnen gefällig ist.
Complaisant, pleasing.	Gefällig.

As you please.  
At your pleasure.  
As you like.

} Wie es Ihnen gefällig ist.

To knock at the door.

An die Thür klopfen.

To happen.

{ Sich ereignen, sich zutragen \*  
(take haben for their aux-  
iliary).

Something has happened.

{ Vorfällen \*, geschehen \*, begegnen  
(take seyn).

What has happened ?

{ Es hat sich Etwas zutragen  
(ereignet).

A great misfortune has hap-  
pened.

{ Was ist vorgefallen (geschehen) ?

Nothing has happened.

{ Es ist ein großes Unglück geschehen.

A misfortune has happened to him.

{ Es ist Nichts vorgefallen.

I had an accident.

{ Es ist ihm ein Unglück begegnet.

{ Ich hatte einen Zufall.

To pour.

Gießen \*, schütten, einschen-  
ken.

To pour away.

Weggießen \*.

To shed.

Vergießen \*.

To shed tears.

{ Thränen vergießen \*. (Part. past,  
vergoßen. Imperf. vergoß.)

A tear.

Eine Thräne.

With tears in his, her, our, or my  
eyes.

Mit thränenden Augen.

I pour wine into a glass.

Ich gieße Wein in ein Glas.

I put corn into a sack.

Ich schütte Getreide in einen Sack.

I pour out some drink for that  
man.

Ich schenke diesem Manne zu trin-  
ken ein.

I pour away the wine, for it is  
good for nothing.

Ich gieße den Wein weg; denn er  
taugt Nichts.

As to, as for, with respect to.

{ † Was anbetreffen \* (anbe-  
troffen, anbetraf).

{ † Was anbelangen.

As to me, I do not know what to  
say.

{ † Was mich anbetrifft (anbe-  
langt), so weiß ich nicht, was ich  
sagen soll.

*To meet with.*

† Antreffen\* governs the Acc.  
Part. past, getroffen. Imperf.  
traf.

Where have you met with him?

† Wo haben Sie ihn angetroffen?

I do not know what to do.

† Ich weiß nicht, was ich thun soll.

I do not know where to go to.

† Ich weiß nicht, wohin ich gehen  
soll.

He does not know what to answer.

† Er weiß nicht, was er antworten  
soll.

We do not know what to buy.

† Wir wissen nicht, was wir kaufen  
sollen.

To unbosom one's self to some  
one.

Sich Jemandem vertrauen.

To trust some one.

Jemandem trauen or vertrauen.

To distrust one.

{ Einem mißtrauen.

{ Einem nicht trauen.

Do you trust that man?

Trauen (or vertrauen) Sie diesem  
Manne?

I do trust him.

Ich traue (or vertraue) ihm.

He trusts me.

Er traut (or vertrauet) mir.

We must not trust every body.

Wir müssen nicht einem Jeden  
trauen.

To laugh at something.

Ueber etwas lachen.

Do you laugh at that?

Lachen Sie darüber?

I do laugh at it.

Ich lache darüber.

At what do you laugh?

Worüber lachen Sie?

To laugh at, to deride some one.

Jemanden auslachen (or ver-  
lachen).

I laugh at (deride) you.

Ich lache Sie aus (verlache Sie).

*Full.*

Boll.

A full glass.

Ein volles Glas.

A full glass of wine.

Ein Glas voll Wein (ein dolles Glas  
Wein).

A book full of errors.

! Ein Buch voller Fehler.

*The means,*

To afford (to have the means).

das Mittel.

Can you afford to buy a horse?

Die Mittel haben\*.

Haben Sie die Mittel, ein Pferd zu  
kaufen?

I can afford it.

Ich habe die Mittel dazu (ich habe sie).

I cannot afford it.

Ich habe sie nicht.  
die Dame.

The lady,

*To taste, to like, to relish.*

Schmecken.

How do you like this wine?

Wie schmeckt Ihnen dieser Wein?

I like it well.

Er schmeckt mir gut.

I don't like it.

Er schmeckt mir nicht.

## EXERCISES.

### 197.

Do your scholars learn their exercises by heart?—They will rather tear them than learn them by heart.—What does this man ask me for?—He asks you for the money which you owe him.—If he will repair to-morrow morning to my house, I will pay him what I owe him.—He will rather lose his money than repair thither.—Charles the Fifth, who spoke fluently several European languages, said that we should (man müsse) speak Spanish with the gods, Italian with our (seiner) mistress (die Geliebte, Obs. Lesson LV.), French with our (seinem) friend (masc.), German with soldiers, English with geese (die Gänse), Hungarian (ungarisch) with horses, and Bohemian (böhmisch) with the devil (der Teufel).—Why does the mother of our old servant shed tears? What has happened to her?—She sheds tears because the old clergyman, her friend, who was so very good to her (der ihr so viel Gutes gethan hat), died a few days ago.—Of what illness did he die?—He was struck with apoplexy.—Have you helped your father to write his letters?—I have helped him.—Will you help me to work when we go to town?—I will help you to work, if you will help me to get a livelihood.—Have you inquired after the merchant who sells so cheap?—I have inquired after him; but nobody could tell me what has become of him.—Where did he live when you were here three years ago?—He lived then in Charles Street, No. 55.—How do you like this wine?—I like it very well; but it is a little sour.

### 198.

How does your sister like those apples?—She likes them very well; but she says that they are a little too sweet.—Will you have the goodness to pass that plate to me?—With much pleasure.—Shall (soll) I pass these fishes to you?—I will thank you to pass them to me.—Shall I pass the bread to your sister?—You will oblige (verbinden\*) by passing it to her.—How does your mother like our food?—She likes it very well; but she says that she has eaten enough.—What dost thou ask me for?—Will you be kind

enough to give me a little bit of (von) that mutton?—Will you pass me the bottle, if you please?—Have you not drunk enough?—Not yet; for I am still thirsty.—Shall I give (einschenken) you some wine?—No, I like cider better.—Why do you not eat?—I do not know what to eat.—Who knocks at the door?—It is a foreigner.—Why does he cry?—He cries because a great misfortune has happened to him.—What has happened to you?—Nothing has happened to me.—Where will you go to this evening?—I don't know where to go to.—Where will your brothers go to?—I do not know where they will go to; as to me, I shall go to the theatre.—Why do you go to town?—I go thither in order to purchase some books. Will you go thither with me?—I will go with you; but I do not know what to do there.—Must I sell to that man on credit?—You may sell to him, but not on credit; you must not trust him, for he will not pay you.—Has he already deceived any body?—He has already deceived several merchants who have trusted him.—Must I trust those ladies?—You may trust them; but as to me, I shall not trust them; for I have often been deceived by the women, and that is the reason why I say, we must not trust every body.—Do those merchants trust you?—They do trust me, and I trust them.


## 199.

Whom do those gentlemen laugh at?—They laugh at those ladies who wear red gowns (das Kleid) with yellow ribbons.—Why do those people laugh at us?—They laugh at us because we speak badly.—Ought we to (muß man) laugh at persons who speak badly?—We ought not to laugh at them; we ought, on the contrary, to listen to them, and if they make blunders (Fehler), we ought to correct them to them.—What are you laughing at?—I am laughing at your hat; how long (seit wann) have you been wearing it so large?—Since (seitdem) I returned from England.—Can you afford to buy a horse and a carriage?—I can afford it.—Can your brother afford to buy that large house?—He can afford it.—Will he buy it?—He will buy it, if it pleases him.—Have you received my letter?—I have received it with much pleasure.—I have shown it to my German master, who was surprised at it, for there was not a single fault in it.—Have you already received Jean Paul's and Wieland's works?—I have received those of (von) Wieland: as to those of Jean Paul, I hope (so hoffe ich) to receive them next week. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## EIGHTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

## Acht und achtzigste Section.

Who is there?	Wer ist da?
It is I.	Ich bin es.
Is it you?	Sind Sie es?
It is not I.	Ich bin es nicht.
It is you.	Sie sind es.
It is he, it is she.	Er ist es, sie ist es.
Are they your brothers?	Sind es Ihre Brüder?
They are not my brothers.	Es sind meine Brüder nicht.

 Appositional phrases<sup>1</sup> are in German always put in the same case as the principal noun. Ex.

## NOMINATIVE.

Lycurgus, the Spartan legislator.	Lycurg, der Gesetzgeber Sparta's.
Religion, the daughter of heaven, is the faithful companion of men.	Die Religion, diese Tochter des Himmels, ist die treue Gefähr- tinn der Menschen.

## GENITIVE.

The duty of a father, the natural tutor of his children, is to pro- vide for them.	Des Vaters, des natürlichen Vor- mundes seiner Kinder, Pflicht ist es, für sie zu sorgen.
--	---

## DATIVE.

That honour is due to my friend who is a brave man.	Diese Ehre gebührt meinem Freunde, einem braven Manne.
I gave the father, this honest old man, the model of his family, that advice.	Ich habe dem Vater, diesem recht- schaffenem Greise, dem Muster seiner Familie, den Rath gegeben.
That happened under Constantine the Great, the first Christian emperor.	Dies geschah unter Constantin dem Großen, dem ersten christlichen Kaiser.

## ACCUSATIVE.

It concerns my friend, the coun- sellor N.	Es betrifft meinen Freund, den Rath N.
I have known the king, that bene- factor of his people.	Ich habe den König, diesen Wohl- thäter seines Volkes gekannt.


<sup>1</sup> We call a phrase *appositional* when it serves to explain and deter-  
mine the principal noun.

The duty,  
the companion,  
the tutor (the guardian),  
the model,  
the family,  
the people,  
honest,  
faithful (true),

die Pflicht;  
der Gefährte;  
der Vormund (plur. Vormünder);  
das Muster;  
die Familie;  
das Volk;  
rechtschaffen;  
treu.

To thee, my dearest friend, I give  
this ring.

Dir, meinem liebsten Freunde, gebe  
ich diesen Ring.

 B. In German the pronoun must be in the same gender, number, and case, with the substantive.

Of me, who am his nearest relation,  
he requests nothing.

Von mir, seinem nächsten Verwandten,  
verlangt er Nichts.

Is it they who speak?

Sind sie es, die sprechen?


It is they.

Sie sind es.

It is I who speak.

{ Ich bin es, der spricht.

{ Ich bin es, der ich spreche.

 C. When a personal pronoun is followed by a relative pronoun, it may or may not be repeated after the latter; but if it is not repeated, the verb which follows the relative pronoun must stand in the third person, though the personal pronoun be of the first or second person.

It is you who laugh.

{ Sie sind es, der Sie lachen; or,  
{ Sie sind es, der lacht.

It is thou who hast done it.

{ Du bist es, der Du es gethan hast; or,  
{ Du bist es, der es gethan hat.

It is you, gentlemen, who have  
said that.

Sie sind es, meine Herren, die das  
gesagt haben.

To look like (to appear).

Aussehen \* wie.

How does he look?

Wie sieht er aus?

He looks gay (sad, contented).

Er sieht lustig (traurig, zufrieden)  
aus.

This beer looks like water.

Dieses Bier sieht aus wie Wasser.

You look like a doctor.

Sie sehen wie ein Arzt aus.

Our fellow creatures.

+ Unseres Gleichen.

He has not his equal, or his match.

+ Er hat seines Gleichen nicht.

*To resemble some one.*

{ Jemandem gleichen \*. Part.  
past, geglichen. Imperf. gleich.  
Jemandem ähnlich sehen \* or  
seyn \*.



He resembles me.  
I resemble your brother.  
I resemble him.

Er sieht mir ähnlich.  
Ich gleiche Ihrem Bruder.  
Ich bin ihm ähnlich.

*Each other.*

We resemble each other.  
They do not resemble each other.  
The brother and the sister love each other.  
Are you pleased with each other?  
We are (so).

Einander (an indeclinable pronoun <sup>1</sup>).  
Wir gleichen einander.  
Wir sehen einander ähnlich.  
Sie sehen einander nicht ähnlich.  
Der Bruder und die Schwester lieben einander.  
Sind Sie mit einander zufrieden?  
Wir sind es.

I am well.  
To drink to some one.  
To drink some one's health.  
I drink your health.

Ich bin gesund.  
Jemandem zutrinken \*.  
Jemandes Gesundheit trinken \*.  
Auf Jemandes Gesundheit trinken \*.  
Ich trinke Ihre Gesundheit.  
Ich trinke auf Ihre Gesundheit.

To make some one's acquaintance.  
To become acquainted with some-body.

Bekanntschaft mit Jemandem machen.  
Jemanden kennen lernen.

I have made his acquaintance.

Ich habe seine Bekanntschaft gemacht.  
Ich habe Bekanntschaft mit ihm gemacht.

I have become acquainted with him.

Ich habe ihn kennen gelernt.

Are you acquainted with him (her)?

Sind Sie mit ihm (ihr) bekannt?

Do you know him (her)?

Kennen Sie ihn (sie)?

I am acquainted with him (her).

Ich bin mit ihm (ihr) bekannt.

I know him (her).

Ich kenne ihn (sie).

He is an acquaintance of mine.

Er ist mein Bekannter.

She is my acquaintance.

Sie ist meine Bekannte.

He is not a friend, he is but an acquaintance.

Er ist kein Freund, er ist nur ein Bekannter.

<sup>1</sup> *Einander* indicates that the action expressed by the verb is reciprocal between several persons or things, and is employed for all cases and genders.

*Obs.* So denotes the consequence of a preceding proposition. (See B. Lesson LXXXIII.)

As thou hast not done thy exercises well, thou must do them again.

As he did not come I sent for him.

Again, once more.

As,

Weil Du Deine Aufgaben nicht gut gemacht hast, so mußt Du sie noch einmal machen.

Da er nicht kam, (so) ließ ich ihn rufen. (Lesson LXXXIII.)

Noch einmal.

Da, weil.

## EXERCISES.

### 200.

Where have you become acquainted with that lady?—I have become acquainted with her at the house of one of my relations.—Is it thou, Charles, who hast soiled my book?—It is not I, it is your little sister who has soiled it.—Who has broken my fine inkstand?—It is I who have broken it.—Is it you who have spoken of me?—It is we who have spoken of you, but we have said of you nothing but good (Gutes).—Why does your cousin ask me for money and books?—Because he is a fool; of me, who am his nearest relation and best friend, he requests nothing.—Why did you not come to dinner (zum Mittagessen)?—I have been hindered, but you have been able to dine without me.—Do you think that we shall not dine, if you cannot come?—How long did you wait for me?—We waited for you till a quarter past seven, and as you did not come, we dined without you.—Have you drunk my health?—We have drunk yours and that of your parents.—A certain man liked much wine, but he found in it (daran) two bad qualities (die Eigenschaft). “If I put water to it (hinein),” said he, “I spoil it, and if I do not put any to it, it spoils me.”—How does your uncle look?—He looks very gay; for he is much pleased with his children.—Do his friends look as gay as he?—They, on the contrary, look sad, because they are discontented.—My uncle has no money, and is very contented, and his friends who have a great deal of it, are scarcely ever so.—Do you like your sister?—I like her much, and as she is very complaisant towards me, I am so towards her; but how do you like yours?—We love each other, because we are pleased with each other.

### 201.

Does your cousin resemble you?—He does resemble me.—Do your sisters resemble each other?—They do not resemble each other; for the eldest (die Älteste) is idle and naughty (unartig), and the youngest assiduous and complaisant towards every body.—Who knocks at the door?—It is I, will you open it?—What do

you want?—I come to ask you for the money which you owe me, and the books which I lent you.—If you will have the goodness to come to-morrow, I will return both to you.—Do you perceive yonder house?—I do perceive it, what house is it?—It is an inn (*das Birthehaus*); if you like we will go into it to drink a glass of wine; for I am very (*sehr*) thirsty.—You are always thirsty when you see an inn.—If we enter it I shall drink your health.—Rather than go into an inn I will not drink.—When will you pay what you owe me?—When I have money; it is useless to ask me for some to-day, for you know very well that there is nothing to be had of him who has nothing.—When do you think you will have money?—I think I shall have some next year.—Will you do what I shall tell you?—I will do it, if it is not too difficult.—Why do you laugh at me?—I do not laugh at you but at your coat.—Does it not look like yours?—It does not look like it; for mine is short and yours is too long, mine is black and yours is green. (See Lesson XXXVI.)

## EIGHTY-NINTH LESSON.

## Neun und achtzigste Lektion.

To get into a scrape.	Sich Handel zuziehen *.
To get out of a scrape.	Sich heraus helfen *.
	Sich aus der Schlinge ziehen *.
	Sich von Etwas los machen.
I got out of the scrape.	Ich habe mir heraus geholfen.
	Ich habe mich aus der Schlinge gezogen.
	Ich bin gut davon gekommen.
The snare,	die Schlinge ;
always,	immer.
That man always gets into bad scrapes ; but he always gets out of them again.	Dieser Mann zieht sich immer schlimme Handel zu ; aber er hilft sich immer wieder heraus.

*Betwæen.*

	Zwischen (governs the dat and acc.)
The appearance,	das Ansehen ;
The sight, the face,	das Gesicht ;
the mien, the look,	die Miene ;
the countenance, the physiognomy.	die Gesichtsbildung.
To have the appearance.	Das Ansehen haben *.
To appear.	Scheinen *. Imperf. schien.
To look.	Aussehen *.
To look well.	Gut aussehn *.
To look good.	Gut zu seyn scheinen *.

You (appear) look very well.	Sie sehen sehr gut aus.
She looks angry.	Sie sieht verdrießlich aus.
She appears to be angry.	Sie scheint böse (verdrießlich) zu seyn.
They appear to be contented.	Sie scheinen zufrieden zu seyn.
They look contented (pleased).	Sie sehen vergnügt aus.

To look pleased with some one.	Jemandem ein freundliches Gesicht machen.
To receive one kindly.	Einen freundlich empfangen *.
Friendly, kindly.	Freundlich.

To look cross at some one.  
When I go to see that man, instead  
of receiving me with pleasure,  
he looks displeased.

A good looking man.  
A bad looking man.  
Bad looking people or folks.  
To imagine.

Jemandem ein böses Gesicht machen.  
Wenn ich diesen Mann besuche,  
macht er mir ein böses Gesicht,  
anstatt mich freundlich aufzu-  
nehmen.  
Ein Mann von gutem Ansehen.  
Ein Mann von schlechtem Ansehen.  
Leute von schlechtem Ansehen.  
Sich einbilden (governs the dative).

That man, whom you see, seems  
desirous of approaching us.

Der Mann, den Sie sehen, scheint  
sich uns (dative) nähern zu wollen.

To visit, to go to see some one.  
To pay some one a visit.  
To frequent a place.  
To frequent societies.  
To associate with some one.

Jemanden besuchen.  
Jemandem einen Besuch machen.  
Einen Ort besuchen.  
Gesellschaften besuchen.  
Mit Jemandem umgehen \*.

It is all over with me!

It is all over.

What is done cannot be altered  
(a proverb).

{ Es ist um mich geschehen!  
Ich bin verloren!  
Es ist darum geschehen!  
Geschehene Dinge sind nicht zu än-  
dern (Sprichwort).

The spite, the displeasure.  
the grief, the sorrow.

To vex, to spite some one.  
To hurt some one's feelings.  
You have vexed (spited) that man.

You have hurt that man's feelings.

der Verdruss;  
der Kummer.  
Jemandem Verdruss machen.  
Jemanden kränken.  
Sie haben diesem Manne Verdruss  
gemacht.  
Sie haben diesen Mann gekränkt.

The place,  
I know a good place to swim in.

To swim.

der Ort, die Stelle.  
Ich weiß eine gute Stelle zu schwim-  
men.  
Schwimmen \*. Part. past. ge-  
schwommen. Imperf. schwamm

To experience.  
To endure (experience).

Erfahren \*. Imperf. erfuh  
Erdulden.

<i>To feel (experience).</i>	Empfinden *. Imperf. empfand.
I have experienced a great deal.	Ich habe viel erduldet (empfun- den, erfahren).
I have experienced a great many misfortunes.	Ich habe viel Unglück gehabt.
<i>To suffer.</i>	Leiden * (gelitten, litt).
To feel a pain in one's head or foot.	† Am Kopfe oder am Fuße leiden *.
I felt a pain in my eye.	† Ich habe am Auge gelitten.
<i>To neglect.</i>	Vernachlässigen.
<i>To miss (to neglect).</i>	Versäumen.
You have neglected your promise.	Sie haben Ihr Versprechen vernach- lässigt.
You have neglected to come to your lesson.	Sie haben, versäumt zur Stunde (zur Section) zu kommen.
<i>To yield.</i>	Weichen * <sup>1</sup> takes seyn. Part.
To yield to some one.	past, gewichen. Imperf. wich.
To yield to something.	Jemandem nachgeben *.
To yield to necessity.	{ Sich in Etwas (accus.) schicken.
We must yield to necessity.	{ Sich zu Etwas bequemen.
	{ Es bei Etwas bewenden lassen *.
	{ Sich in die Nothwendigkeit schicken.
	{ Man muß sich in die Nothwendigkeit schicken.
<i>To spring.</i>	Springen *. Part. past, gesprungen.
<i>To jump (hop).</i>	Imperf. sprang.
<i>To blow up, to burst.</i>	Hüpfen.
<i>To omit.</i>	Sprengen.
To spring up from below.	Auslassen *. Imperf. ließ.
To spring forward.	Von unten herauf springen *.
To spring backward.	Vorwärts springen.
The child hopped joyfully around me.	Zurück springen.
	Das Kind hüpfte freudig um mich herum <sup>2</sup> .

<sup>1</sup> Weichen, to steep, and erweichen, to soften, to mollify, are active and regular verbs, and consequently take haben \* for their auxiliary.

<sup>2</sup> Hüpfen, to jump, to hop, to frisk, is generally used in speaking of animals that spring, and of children.

The besiegers let the bastion blow up.	Die Belagerer ließen die Bastion sprengen.
The copier has omitted a few lines.	Der Abschreiber hat einige Zeilen ausgelassen.
To spring upon some one or something.	Auf Jemanden oder Etwas los springen *, los stürzen, los rennen *.
	Ueber Jemanden oder Etwas herfallen *.
The cat springs upon the rat.	Die Katze springt auf die Ratte los.
To leap on horseback.	Sich auf das Pferd schwingen * (geschwungen, schwang).
<hr/>	
To run.	Kennen * (gerannt, rannte).
To swing.	Schwingen * (geschwungen, schwang).
<hr/>	
To still greater ill luck.	Zu noch größerem Unglück.
To still greater good luck.	Zu noch größerem Glück.
To my still greater ill luck I have lost my purse.	Zu noch größerem Unglück, habe ich meine Börse verloren.

## EXERCISES.

## 202.

Is it right to laugh thus at every body?—If I laugh at your coat, I do not laugh at every body.—Does your son resemble any one?—He resembles no one.—Why do you not drink?—I do not know what to drink; for I like good wine, and yours looks like vinegar.—If you wish to have some other I shall go down into the cellar (Lesson LXXV.) to fetch you some.—You are too polite, sir, I shall drink no more to-day.—Have you known my father long?—I have known him long, for I made his acquaintance when I was yet at (auf) school. We often worked for one another, and we loved each other like brothers.—I believe it, for you resemble each other.—When I had not done my exercises he did them for me, and when he had not done his I did them for him.—Why does your father send for the physician?—He is ill, and as the physician does not come he sends for him.

## 203.

Is that man angry with (auf with the accus.) you?—I think he is angry with me, because I do not go to see him; but I do not like to go to his house: for when I go to him, instead of receiving me with pleasure, he looks displeased.—You must not believe that he is angry with you, for he is not so bad as he looks.—He *is the best man in (von) the world*; but one must know him in

order to appreciate (*schätzen*) him.—There is (*es ist*) a great difference (*der Unterschied*) between (dative) you and him: you look pleased with all those who come to see you, and he looks cross with them.—Why do you associate (*gehen Sie—um*) with those people?—I associate with them because they are useful to me.—If you continue to associate with them you will get into bad scrapes, for they have many enemies.—How does your cousin conduct himself?—He does not conduct himself very well; for he is always getting into some bad scrape (or other).—Do you not sometimes get into bad scrapes?—It is true that I sometimes get into them, but I always get out of them again.—Do you see those men (*Scute*) who seem desirous of approaching us?—I do see them, but I do not fear them; for they hurt nobody.—We must go away, for I do not like to mix with people whom I do not know.—I beg of you not to be afraid of them, for I perceive my uncle among them.—Do you know a good place to swim in?—I do know one.—Where is it?—On that side of the river, behind the wood, near the high-road (*die Landstraße*).—When shall we go to swim?—This evening if you like.—Will you wait for me before the city gate?—I shall wait for you there; but I beg of you not to forget it.—You know that I never forget my promises. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)



## NINETIETH LESSON.

## Neunzigste Section.

By all means (obstinately).  
To follow.

To pursue.  
I have followed him.

Mit aller Macht und Gewalt.  
Folgen, nachgehen \* (govern the  
dative).  
Verfolgen (governs the accus.).  
Ich bin ihm nachgegangen.

To lose one's wits.

The sense, the wit, the intellect,  
That man has lost his wits, for he  
does not know what he is doing.

That man wishes by all means to  
lend me his money.

Den Verstand verlieren \*.  
Imperf. verlor.  
der Verstand.  
Dieser Mann hat den Verstand ver-  
loren, denn er weiß nicht, was er  
thut.  
Dieser Mann will mir mit aller Ge-  
walt sein Geld leihen.

*Obs. A.* The neuter of the demonstrative pronoun *dieses* (cas, may  
in the singular relate to substantives of any gender or number, and  
even to a whole proposition.

Is that the lady of whom you  
spoke to me?  
That is a bad man.  
Which are the pens with which  
you write so well?

Ist das die Dame, von der Sie mit  
mir gesprochen haben?  
Das ist ein böser Mann.  
Welches sind die Federn, mit denen  
Sie so gut schreiben?

*Obs. B.* The neuter of the interrogative pronoun, *welches*, *which*,  
may equally relate to substantives of any gender or number.

Which is the best pronunciation? | Welches ist die beste Aussprache?

What a beautiful book!

| Welch ein schönes Buch!

*Obs. C.* *Welch*, when it expresses admiration, may be followed by  
the indefinite article. It remains then invariable.

What a great man!  
What fine weather!  
What good people they are!  
What a happiness!

Welch ein großer Mann!  
Welches schöne Wetter!  
Welche gute Leute sind das!

How fortunate!  
lucky!

} Welch ein Glück or welches Glück!

*Perhaps.*  
I shall perhaps go thither.

*Vielleicht.*  
Ich werde vielleicht hingehen.

*Obs. D. How before an exclamation is translated by wie, wieviel, welch. Ex.*

How good you are!  
How foolish he is!  
How foolish she is!  
How rich that man is!  
How handsome that woman is!  
How much kindness you have for me!  
How happy you are!  
How much I owe you!  
How much I am obliged to you!

Wie gut sind Sie!  
Wie dumm ist er!  
Wie dumm ist sie!  
Wie reich ist dieser Mann!  
Wie schön ist diese Frau!  
Welche Güte Sie für mich haben!  
Was sind Sie so glücklich!  
Wieviel ich Ihnen nicht schuldig bin!  
Wie sehr bin ich Ihnen nicht verbunden!

How many obligations I am under to you.

Was ich Ihnen nicht danke!  
Wieviel ich Ihnen nicht zu danken habe!

How many (what a multitude of) people!

Welche Menschenmenge! Welche Menge Volks!

The multitude, the great number.

die Menge.

To be under obligations, to be obliged to some one for something.

Jemandem für Etwas verbunden seyn \*.

To be indebted to some one for something.

Jemandem Etwas danken or zu danken haben \*.

To owe something to some one.

I am indebted to him for it.

Das habe ich ihm zu danken.

*To thank.*

To thank some one for something.  
I thank you for the trouble you have taken for me.

Danken (governs the dative).

Jemandem für Etwas danken.

Ich danke Ihnen für die Mühe, die Sie sich für mich gegeben haben

What is more grand?

Was ist größer?

What can be more cruel?

Was ist grausamer?

What can be more wicked?

Was ist gottloser?

Can anything be more beautiful?

Kann Etwas schöner seyn?

To run up.

Herbeilaufen \*.

To hasten up.

Herbeieilen.

To run to the assistance of some one.

Jemandem zu Hülfe eilen.

To save, to deliver.	Retten.
To hasten.	Eilen.
To plunder (to rob).	Plündern.
Many men had run up; but instead of extinguishing the fire they set themselves to plundering.	Viele Leute waren herbeigeeilt, allein anstatt das Feuer zu löschen, fingen die Elenden zu plündern an.
To begin something.	Etwas anfangen *. Imperf. sing.
To set about something.	Sich an Etwas (acc.) machen.
<hr/>	
Have they been able to extinguish the fire?	Hat man das Feuer löschen können?
Have they succeeded in extinguishing the fire?	Ist es ihnen gelungen, das Feuer zu löschen?
<hr/>	
The watch indicates the hours.	Die Uhr zeigt die Stunden an.
To indicate.	Anzeigen.
<hr/>	
To quarrel.	Sich zanken.
To chide, to reprove some one.	Jemanden auszanken or ausschelten* (gescholten, schalt).
To scold some one.	Mit Jemandem zanken.
The quarrel,	der Zank, die Zänkerei.
<hr/>	
To dispute, to contend about something.	Ueber Etwas streiten* (gestritten, stritt).
About what are those people disputing?	Worüber streiten diese Leute?
They are disputing about who shall go first.	Sie zanken sich, wer zuerst gehen soll.

### OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

The present participle is formed from the infinitive, by adding the letter *b*. Ex. Lieben, to love; present part. liebend, loving; arbeiten, to work; present part. arbeitend.

The present participle in German is used in the attributive sense like an adjective. Ex. Ein sterbender Vater, a dying father; der lachende Frühling, the smiling spring; die nahende Stunde, the approaching hour; das zitternde Kind, the trembling child. But it cannot be used as a predicate. We cannot say with the English: the boy is reading.<sup>1</sup> This must be expressed by the present tense, as der Knabe liest<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> In sublime style, principally in poetry, it may be used adverbially. Ex. Zitternd vor jedem Schatten, lebt der Furchtsame in ewiger Angst, trembling at each shade the fearful lives in constant anxiety. Ihm in die Knie einfallend begann der edle Achilles, interrupting him, the noble Achilles began.

veral words, formed originally from verbs, have lost the nature

In English the present participle is used to express *cause, reason, condition, and time*. But this is not the case in German. For in all such instances the present participle is translated by the following conjunctions with the verbs expressed by the English participles: *als*, when, as; *nachdem*, after; *da*, as; *indem*, as, whilst; *weil*, because. Ex.

Being lately at your brother's house I gave something to his children.

Having eaten supper she went to bed.

Having no money I cannot lend you any.

Knowing that you are my friend, I beg of you to do me that favour.

In speaking one learns to speak, and in writing to write.

Being ill I cannot work.

Als ich neulich bei Ihrem Bruder war, gab ich seinen Kindern Etwas.

Nachdem<sup>2</sup> sie zu Nacht gegessen hatte, ging sie zu Bette.

Da ich kein Geld habe, so kann ich Ihnen keins leihen.

Da ich weiß, daß Sie mein Freund sind, so bitte ich Sie, mir diesen Gefallen zu thun.

Indem man spricht, lernt man sprechen, und indem man schreibt, schreiben.

Weil ich krank bin, kann ich nicht arbeiten.

*Obs. E.* These examples show that each of the conjunctions *als*, *nachdem*, *da*, *indem*, *weil*, has its peculiar signification, and that there is necessarily a difference in their application: 1st, *als* refers to a definite event of a past time; 2d, *nachdem* states that an action was finished when another action commenced; 3d, *da* implies a logical cause from which an inference is drawn; 4th, *indem* is used to state that an event is simultaneous with another event; 5th, *weil* expresses a real reason why a thing is or takes place.

*Obs. F.* The present participle may, in English, be converted into a substantive by a preceding article, as the reading, the writing, the speaking. This cannot be done in German, where the infinitive must be employed, as: *das Lesen, das Schreiben, das Sprechen*. As an adjective however, but not as an abstract substantive, the present participle may elliptically be turned into a substantive, as: *der Lesende*, one that reads; *der Schreibende*, one that writes; *der Sprechende*, one that speaks

of present participles, and are used as adjectives only, both in the attributive and predicate sense; they are: *bringend*, pressing; *drückend*, oppressive; *cinnehmend*, captivating; *fließend*, fluent; *hinreißend*, overpowering; *fränkend*, mortifying; *reizend*, charming. Ex. *Ihre Sitten sind sehr cinnehmend*, her manners are very captivating; *die Noth ist bringend*, the necessity is pressing; *die Last ist drückend*, the burden is oppressive; *diese Beleidigung ist fränkend*, this insult is mortifying; *seine Rede ist fließend*, his speech is fluent; *sie ist reizend*, she is charming.

<sup>2</sup> *Nachdem* can only be employed with the pluperfect of the indicative.

has happened to you lately.—Very willingly, but on condition (mit dem Bedinge or unter der Bedingung) that you will listen to me attentively (aufmerksam) without interrupting (unterbrechen\*) me.—We will not interrupt you, you may be sure of it.—Being lately at the theatre, I saw *The speaking picture* and *The weeping woman* performed. This latter play (das letztere Stück) not being very (sonderlich) amusing to me, I went to the concert, where the music (die Musik) caused me a violent headache. I then left (verlassen\*) the concert, cursing (verwünschen) it, and went straight (gerade) to the mad-house (das Narrenhaus), in order to see (besuchen) my cousin.

## NINETY-FIRST LESSON.

## Ein und neunzigste Lektion.

*Towards, against.**Against.*

	Gegen	} govern the accus.
	Wider	

Gegen denotes the direction of two things turned towards each other, and is used for *towards* and *against*; wider on the contrary denotes hostility, and is only used for *against*. Ex.

To take the field against the enemy.

What have you against me?

You speak against yourself.

To swim against the stream.

The love of a father towards his children.

I have nothing against that.

Gegen (or wider) den Feind zu Felde ziehen \*.

Was haben Sie gegen (or wider) mich?

Sie reden gegen (or wider) sich selbst.

Gegen den Strom schwimmen \*.

Die Liebe eines Vaters gegen (not wider) seine Kinder.

Ich habe Nichts dagegen.

*Self, selves.*

I myself.

Thou thyself, he himself.

We ourselves, you yourselves.

They themselves.

He himself has told it me.

Selbst or selber (is indeclinable).

Ich selbst.

Du selbst, er selbst.

Wir selbst, Ihr (Sie) selbst.

Sie selbst.

Er selbst hat es mir gesagt.

*Obs. A.* The pronoun preceding *self* is not translated into German. But the personal pronoun preceding *selbst* is declined.

He has given it to me (not to another person).

They themselves have come to me.

We have given it to them (not to others).

Er hat es mir selbst gegeben.

Sie selbst sind zu mir gekommen.

Wir haben es ihnen selbst gegeben.

The day before.  
the preceding day,

The day before Sunday is Saturday.

The day before (the preceding day) was Friday.

Der Tag vorher.

Der vorhergehende Tag.

Der Tag vor Sonntag heißt Samstag.

Der Tag vorher (der vorhergehende Tag) war ein Freitag.

Again (anew).  
Once more (again).  
He speaks again.  
I must hear him again.

Von neuem, wieder.  
Noch einmal.  
Er spricht wieder.  
Ich muß ihn von neuem hören.

*Obs. B.* The adverb *wieder* must not be mistaken for the inseparable particle *wider* (Lesson XXVII.), nor for the preposition *wider*, *against*. It answers to the English word *again*. Ex. *wiedertommen* \*, to come again; *wiederanfangen* \*, to begin again. It must not be mistaken for *zurück*, back again, which as in English denotes retrogression. Ex. *Zurückkommen* \*, to come back again.

The light.	das Licht.
To blow.	Blasen * (geblasen, blies).
To blow out.	Ausblasen *.
To flee.	Fliehen * (geflohen, floh).
	Entfliehen *.
To run away.	Entlaufen *.
	Davon laufen *.
Why do you run away?	Warum laufen Sie weg (davon)?
I run away because I am afraid.	Ich laufe davon (weg), weil ich mich fürchte (or weil ich Furcht habe).
To make one's escape.	
To run away, to flee.	Die Flucht nehmen * (or ergreifen *).
To take to one's heels.	
He has fled from the battle.	Er ist aus der Schlacht entflohen or entlaufen.
The thief has run away.	Der Dieb ist entlaufen (davon or wegelaufen).

To catch, to lay hold of, to seize.	Ergreifen * (ergriffen, ergriff).
To translate.	Uebersetzen <sup>1</sup> .
To translate into German.	Auf deutsch übersetzen.
To translate from French into German.	Aus dem Französischen ins Deutsche übersetzen.
To translate from one language into another.	Aus einer Sprache in die andere übersetzen.

To introduce.	Einführen.
I introduce him to you.	Ich führe ihn bei Ihnen ein.

<sup>1</sup> In *übersetzen*, to translate, the accent being on the root of the verb, *über* is inseparable, and consequently its past participle is *übersezt*, not *übergeſetzt*. (See Lesson XLVII.)

*Since or from.*

| Von—an, seit.

From that time.

{ Von diesem Augenblicke an.  
 Seit dieser Zeit.  
 Von dieser Zeit an.

*Obs. C.* Compound prepositions must be divided, and the case which the preposition governs placed between the two component parts, as:

From my childhood.

| Von meiner Jugend an.

From morning until evening.

| Vom Morgen bis auf den Abend.

From the beginning to the end.

{ Vom Anfange bis zum Ende.  
 Von Anfang bis zu Ende.

To produce (to yield, to profit).

Einbringen \*.

To destroy.

Zerstören.

To reduce.

Herabsetzen.

To limit.

Einschränken.

To diminish (to lessen).

Verkleinern.

To reduce the price.

Den Preis herabsetzen.

To reduce (to bring down) the price to a crown.

Den Preis bis auf einen Thaler herunter bringen \*.

The merchandise,

die Waare.

The price of the merchandise falls.

† Die Waare schlägt ab.

The yard, the ell,

die Elle.

To deduct.

† Nachlassen \*.

Having not overcharged you, I cannot deduct anything.

† Da ich Sie gar nicht übersezt habe, so kann ich Nichts nachlassen.

To overcharge.

} übersetzen (inseparable).

To ask too much.

By the year (or a year),

jährlich;

by the day (or a day),

täglich;

by the month (or a month),

monatlich.

By no means.

Gar nicht.

Not at all.

Ganz und gar nicht.

How much does that employment yield you a year?

Wieviel bringt Ihnen dieses Amt jährlich ein?

## EXERCISES.

206.

On entering the hospital (das Hospital) of my cousin, I was struck with horror at seeing several madmen (der Narr, gen. en) who came up (nahe) to me jumping and howling (heulen).—



What did you do then?—I did the same (es eben so machen) as they, and they began to laugh (anfangen\* zu lachen) as they were withdrawing (sich zurückziehen or wegbegeben\*).—When I was yet little, I once (einft) said to my father, “I do not know (verstehen\*) commerce, and I do not know how to sell; let me play.” My father answered me, smiling (lächeln), “In dealing one learns to deal, and in selling to sell.” “But, my dear father,” replied I, “in playing one learns also to play.” “You are right,” said he to me; “but you must first (vorher) learn what is necessary and useful.”

Do you already know what has happened?—I have not heard anything.—The house of our neighbour has been burnt down.—Have they not been able to save anything?—They were very fortunate in saving the persons that were in it; but out of (von) the things that were (sich befinden\*) there, they could save nothing.—Who has told you that?—Our neighbour himself has told it me.—Why are you without a light?—The wind blew it out, when you came in.—What is the day before Monday called?—The day before Monday is Sunday.—Why did you not run to the assistance of your neighbour whose house has been burnt down?—I could not run thither, for I was ill and in bed.—What is the price of this cloth?—I sell it at three crowns and a half the ell.—I think (finden\*) it very dear. Has the price of cloth not fallen?—It has not fallen: the price of all goods has fallen, except (ausgenommen) that of cloth.—I will give you three crowns for it.—I cannot let you have it for (um) that price, for it costs me more.—Will you have the goodness to show me some pieces (das Stück, plur. e) of English cloth?—With much pleasure.—Does this cloth suit you?—It does not suit me.—Why does it not suit you?—Because it is too dear; if you will lower the price, I shall buy twenty yards of it (davon).—Having not asked too much, I cannot take off anything.

## 207.

You learn French; does your master let you translate?—He lets me read, write, and translate.—Is it useful to translate in learning a foreign language?—It is useful to translate when you nearly know the language you are learning; but while (wenn) you do not yet know anything, it is entirely useless.—What does your German master make you do?—He makes me read a lesson; afterwards he makes me translate French exercises into German on (über with the accus.) the lesson which he has made me read; and from the beginning to the end of the lesson he speaks German to me, and I have to answer him in the very (selbst) language which he is teaching me.—Have you already learnt much in that manner?—You see that I have already learnt something, for I have hardly been learning it four months, and I

already understand you when you speak to me, and can answer you.—Can you read it as well?—I can read and write as well as speak it.—Does your master also teach English?—He does teach it.—Wishing to make his acquaintance, I must beg of you to introduce me to (bet) him.—As you wish to make his acquaintance, I shall introduce you to him.—How many exercises do you translate a day?—If the exercises are not difficult, I translate (from) three to (bis) four every day, and when they are so, I translate but one.—How many have you already done to-day?—It is the third which I am translating; but to-morrow I hope to be able to do one more, for I shall be alone.—Have you paid a visit to my aunt?—I went to see her two months ago, and as she looked displeased, I have not gone to her any more since that time.—How do you do to-day?—I am very unwell.—How do you like that soup?—I think (finden\*) it is very bad; but since I have lost my appetite I don't like anything.—How much does that employment yield to your father?—It yields him more than four thousand crowns.—What news do they mention (sagen)?—They say that the Turks have taken the field against the Russians.—Every one will find in himself the defects which he remarks in others: the defects of others are before (us), our own behind us. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## NINETY-SECOND LESSON.

## Zwei und neunzigste Section.

## PRESENT OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

I may have, thou mayest have, he (she, it) may have.	Ich habe, Du habest, er (sie, es) habe.
We may have, you may have, they may have.	Wir haben, Ihr habet, sie haben.

I may be, thou mayest be, he (she, it) may be.	Ich sey, Du seiest (or seyst), er (sie, es) sey.
We may be, you may be, they may be.	Wir seyen (or seyn), Ihr seye (or seyb), sie seyen (or seyn).

I may become, thou mayest be- come, he (she, it) may become.	Ich werde, Du werdest, er (sie, es) werde.
We may become, you may become, they may become.	Wir werden, Ihr werdet, sie wer- den.

I may praise, thou mayest praise, he (she, it) may praise.	Ich lobe, Du lobest, er (sie es) lobe.
We may praise, you may praise, they may praise.	Wir loben, Ihr lobet, sie loben <sup>1</sup> .

*Obs. A.* The present of the subjunctive differs, in regular verbs, from the present of the indicative only in the third person singular, which rejects the letter t. All German verbs are regular in the present of the subjunctive, which is formed from the infinitive.

<sup>1</sup> In conjugating their verbs, learners would do well to prefix a conjunction to each person of the subjunctive, not because a conjunction should necessarily precede that mode, but because it is advisable to get into the habit of placing the verb after the conjunction, particularly in compound verbs. They may use for that purpose one of the conjunctions *daß*, *wenn*. Ex. *Daß ich abschreibe*, that I may copy; *wenn ich abschreibe*, if I copied; *wenn ich abgeschrieben hätte*, if I had copied; *daß ich abschreiben werde*, that I shall copy, &c. These examples show that when the phrase begins with a conjunction (Lesson XLIX.) the separable particle is not detached from the verb in simple tenses, and in the past participle gives way to the syllable *ge*.

*Obs. B.* The letter *e*, which is often omitted in the present of the indicative (*Obs. A.*, Lesson XXXVI.), must always be retained in the present of the subjunctive.

He who desires to be honoured on account of his riches, has also a right to require a mountain to be honoured that contains gold.	Wer verlangt, daß man ihn seines Reichthums wegen verehrt, der hat auch Recht zu verlangen, daß man einen Berg verehrt, der Gold in sich hat.
---	---

### IMPERFECT OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

In regular verbs the imperfect of the subjunctive does not differ from that of the indicative. In irregular verbs it is formed from the imperfect indicative by softening the radical vowels and adding an *e*².

The imperfect of the subjunctive is used after the conditional conjunction *wenn*, *if*, expressed or understood.

If I had money.	Wenn ich Geld hätte (or hätte ich Geld).
If I saw him.	Wenn ich ihn sähe (or sähe ich ihn).
If he did it.	Wenn er es thäte (or thäte er es).
Were he to lose his money	Wenn er sein Geld verlöre.
Were he to beat his dog.	Wenn er seinen Hund schläge.
If you were rich.	Wenn Sie reich wären (or wären Sie reich).

*Obs. C.* As soon as *wenn* is not conditional it requires the indicative mode. *Ex.*

If he is not ill, why does he send for the physician?	Wenn er nicht krank ist, warum läßt er den Doctor kommen?
---	---

*Obs. D.* Instead of *wenn* the imperfect subjunctive of the verb *sollen* is often used at the beginning of a sentence, as *should* in English. (See Circumscribing Auxiliaries, Meth. Part II. p. 110, et seqq.)

Should you still receive my letter to-day, I beg you will call on me instantly.	Sollten Sie meinen Brief noch heute erhalten, so bitte ich Sie, augenblicklich zu mir zu kommen.
Should he be hungry, something must be given him to eat.	Sollte es ihn hungern, so müßte man ihm Etwas zu essen geben.

² From this rule must be excepted the sixteen irregular verbs which compose the first class in our list. These having already an *e* in the imperfect indicative, do not add one in the subjunctive. Several of them do not soften the radical vowel, but become regular again in the imperfect subjunctive, as: *kennen*\*, to know; *nennen*\*, to name, to call; *rennen*\*, to run; *senden*\*, to send; *wenden*\*, to turn.

## OF THE CONDITIONAL OR POTENTIAL TENSES.

The conditional tenses are formed from the imperfect subjunctive of the verb *werden* \*, which is : *ich würde*, I should or would become, and, as in the future tenses (Lessons LXXXIII. and LXXXIV.), the present of the infinitive for the conditional present, and the past of the infinitive for the conditional past. The imperfect of the subjunctive may be used instead of the conditional present, and the pluperfect of the subjunctive for the conditional past. Ex.

I should do it.  
He would have done it.

We would go thither.  
You would go thither.  
They would go thither.  
Thou wouldst thank me once.  
At one time, one day (once).

*Ich würde es thun (or ich thäte es).  
Er würde es gethan haben (or hätte es gethan).*

*Wir würden dahin gehen.  
Ihr würdet hingehen.  
Sie würden hingehen.  
Du würdest mir einst danken.  
Einst, eines Tages.*

*Obs. E.* The imperfect of the subjunctive or conditional tense may be employed either before or after conditional propositions, as in English. Ex.

I would buy it if I had money enough.  
If I had money enough I would buy it.

Had I money enough I would pay for it.  
Had I money I would give you some.

If I went thither I should see him.

Were I to give it him, he would keep it.

If I gave it to him, he would not return it to me.

Had you come a little sooner (or, if you had come a little sooner) you would have seen my brother (or, you might have seen my brother).

*Ich kaufte es (or ich würde es kaufen), wenn ich Geld genug hätte.*

*Wenn ich Geld genug hätte, so würde ich es kaufen (or so kaufte ich es).*

*Hätte ich Geld genug, so bezahlte ich es (or so würde ich es bezahlen).*

*Hätte ich Geld (or wenn ich Geld hätte), so würde ich Ihnen welches geben (or so gäbe ich Ihnen welches).*

*Wenn ich hinginge, so würde ich ihn sehen.*

*Gäbe ich es ihm, er würde es (or so würde er es) behalten.*

*Wenn ich es ihm gäbe, so würde er es mir nicht wiedergeben.*

*Wären Sie einen Augenblick eher gekommen (or wenn Sie einen Augenblick eher gekommen wären), so würden Sie meinen Bruder gesehen haben (or so hätten Sie meinen Bruder gesehen).*

If he knew what you have done, he would scold you. | Wenn er wüßte, was Sie gethan haben, so würde er Sie ausschelten.

If there were any wood, he would make a fire. | Wenn Holz da wäre, so würde er Feuer anmachen.

If I had received my money, I would have bought a pair of new shoes. | Wenn ich mein Geld bekommen hätte, so würde ich mir ein Paar neue Schuhe gekauft haben.

*Obs. F.* The imperfect subjunctive of the verbs können \*, wollen \*, mögen \*, dürfen \*, is often employed to express various feelings, (see Circumscribing Auxiliaries, Meth. Part II. p. 107, et seqq.) as :

1st, Können, fear or desire. Ex.

He might fall.

Er könnte fallen.

I might (could) do it.

Ich könnte es thun.

2d, Wollen, solicitation. Ex.

Would you have the goodness ?

Wollten Sie die Güte haben ?

Would you be so good ?

Wollten Sie so gütig seyn ?

Wouldst thou do me the favour ?

Wolltest Du mir die Gefälligkeit erweisen ?

3d, Mögen, desire, either with or without the adverb gern. Ex.

I should like to know.

{ Ich möchte wissen.  
Ich möchte gern wissen.

4th, Dürfen, politeness, either in the present of the indicative or the imperfect of the subjunctive. Ex.

May I ask you for the knife ?

Darf (or dürfte) ich Sie um das Messer bitten ?

May I beg of you to tell me ?

Darf (or dürfte) ich Sie bitten, mir zu sagen ?

Would you learn German, if I learnt it ?

Würden Sie deutsch lernen, wenn ich es lernte ?

I would learn it, if you learnt it.

Ich würde es lernen, wenn Sie es lernten.

Would you have learnt English, if I had learnt it ?

Würden Sie englisch gelernt haben, wenn ich es gelernt hätte ?

I would have learnt it, if you had learnt it.

Ich würde es gelernt haben, wenn Sie es gelernt hätten.

Would you go to Germany, if I went thither with you ?

Würden Sie nach Deutschland reisen, wenn ich mit Ihnen dahin reise ?

I would go thither, if you went thither with me.

Ich würde dahin reisen, wenn Sie mit mir dahin reiseten.

Would you have gone to Germany, if I had gone thither with you?	Würden Sie nach Deutschland gereist seyn, wenn ich mit Ihnen dahin gereist wäre?
Would you go out, if I remained at home?	Würden Sie ausgehen, wenn ich zu Hause bliebe?
I would remain at home, if you went out.	Ich würde zu Hause bleiben (or ich bliebe zu Hause), wenn Sie ausgingen.
Would you have written a letter, if I had written a note?	Würden Sie einen Brief geschrieben haben, wenn ich ein Billet geschrieben hätte?

The spectacles,	die Brille (is in German used in the singular);
a pair of spectacles,	eine Brille;
the old man,	der alte Mann, der Greis;
the optician,	der Opticus.

To go (or come) to fetch.	Abholen.
To keep one's bed (one's room).	Das Bett (das Zimmer) hüten.

The plate,	der Teller;
the son-in-law,	der Schwiegersohn;
the daughter-in-law,	die Schwiegertochter;
the progress,	die Fortschritte (plural);
the step (the pace),	der Schritt;
really,	wirklich.

## EXERCISES.

### 208.

Would you have money, if your father were here?—I should have some, if he were here.—Would you have been pleased, if I had had some books?—I should have been much pleased, if you had had some.—Would you have praised my little brother, if he had been good?—If he had been good I should certainly (gewiß) not only have praised, but also loved, honoured, and rewarded him.—Should we be praised, if we did our exercises?—If you did them without a fault, you would be praised and rewarded.—Would my brother not have been punished, if he had done his exercises?—He would not have been punished, if he had *done them*.—Would your sister have been praised, if she had not *been skilful*?—She would certainly not have been praised, if she *had not been very skilful*; and if she had not worked from

morning until evening.—Would you give me something, if I were very good?—If you were very good, and if you worked well, I would give you a fine book.—Would you have written to your sister, if I had gone to Dresden?—I would have written and sent her something handsome, if you had gone thither.—Would you speak, if I listened to you?—I would speak, if you listened to me, and if you would answer me.—Would you have spoken to my mother, if you had seen her?—I would (have) spoken to her, and have begged of her to send you a handsome gold watch (die Uhr), if I had seen her.

## 209.

One of the valets de chambre (der Kammerbiener) of Louis the XIV. (Ludwigs des XIV.) requested that prince, as he was going to bed, to recommend (empfehlen \*) to the first president (der Oberpräsident) a law-suit (der Prozeß) which he had against his father-in-law (welchen er mit seinem Schwiegervater führte), and said, in urging him (in Jemanden bringen \*): "Alas (Ach)! sire (Ihre Majestät), you have but to (dürfen nur) say one word." "Well (Gut)," said Louis XIV., "it is not that which embarrasses me (das ist es nicht was mich ansetzt); but tell me, if thou wert in thy father-in-law's place, and thy father-in-law in thine, wouldst thou be glad if I said that word?"

If the men should come, you would be obliged to give them something to drink.—If he could do this he would do that.—A peasant having seen (welcher gesehen hatte) that old men used spectacles in reading, went to an optician and asked for a pair. The peasant then took a book, and having opened it, said the spectacles were not good. The optician put another pair of the (von den) best which he could find in his shop upon his nose; but the peasant being still unable to read, the merchant said to him: "My friend, perhaps you cannot read at all?" "If I could," said the peasant, "I should not want your spectacles."—I have always flattered myself, my dear brother, that you loved me as much as I love you; but I now see, that I have been mistaken. I should like to know why you went a walking without me.—I have heard, my dear sister, that you are angry with me, because I went a walking without you. I assure you that had I known that you were not ill, I should have come for you; but I inquired at your physician's about your health, and he told me that you had been keeping your bed the last eight days.

## 210.

A French officer having arrived (see Obs. H. Lesson XC.) at the court of Vienna (am Wiener Hof), the empress Theresa (die Kaiserin Theresia) asked him, if (ob) he believed that the princess of (von) N. whom he had seen the day before, was (wäre) really the hand-



somest woman in (von) the world, as was said? "Madam," replied the officer, "I thought so yesterday."—How do you like that meat?—I like it very well.—May I (Darf or dürfte ich) ask you for a piece of (von) that fish?—If you will have the goodness to pass me your plate, I will give you some.—Would you have the goodness to pour me out some drink?—With much pleasure.—Cicero seeing his son-in-law, who was very short (klein) arrive with a long sword at his side (an der Seite), said: "Who has fastened (gebunden) my son-in-law to this sword." (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## NINETY-THIRD LESSON.

## Drei und neunzigste Section.

*To propose.*

I propose going on that journey.

## Sich vornehmen\*.

Ich nehme mir vor, diese Reise zu machen.

*To endeavour.*

I endeavour to do it.

I endeavour to succeed in it.

## { Sich bemühen.

{ Sich bestreben (trachten).

Ich bemühe mich, es zu thun.

Ich suche, es dahin zu bringen.

*To aspire after something.*

He aspires to places of honour.

The honour,  
the riches,  
the title,

## Nach Etwas trachten.

Er trachtet nach Ehrenstellen.

die Ehre;  
der Reichthum;  
der Titel.I should not have complained of what he has done, if it had injured only me; but *in doing it*, he has plunged many families into misery.

Since you are happy, why do you complain?

Ich würde mich über das, was er gethan hat, nicht beklagt haben, wenn es nur mir geschadet hätte; aber, er hat viele Familien dadurch ins Elend gestürzt.

Da Sie doch glücklich sind, warum beklagen Sie sich denn?

*Obs. A.* In German a good many words, as: denn, doch, wohl, &c. are used for the sake of euphony. Such words cannot possibly be rendered in English. Ex

What do you (wish to say) mean by that?

Since you have nothing to tell him, why do you wish to see him?

Who has made the best use of his money?

To injure.

To plunge (to precipitate).

The use,

Was wollen Sie denn damit sagen?

Da Sie ihm doch Nichts zu sagen haben, warum wollen Sie ihn denn sehen?

Wer hat wohl den besten Gebrauch von seinem Gelde gemacht?

Schaden.

Stürzen.

der Gebrauch.

You would oblige me much, if you would do me **this favour**.

If you would render me **this service**, you would oblige me much.

To oblige.

To render a service to some one.

The obligation,

To tie (attach).

I tie the horse to the tree.

Sie würden mich sehr verbinden, wenn Sie mir diese Gefälligkeit erweisen wollten.

Wenn Sie mir diesen Dienst leisten wollten, so würden Sie mich sehr verbinden.

Verbinden \*, verpflichten.

Jemandem einen Dienst leisten.

die Verbindlichkeit.

Binden \*.

Ich binde das Pferd an den Baum.

He is the most honest man that has ever been seen.

I want a horse that must be taller than this.

I am sorry that she is ill.

I am glad that you are come.

I am astonished that he has not done his exercises.

He will marry her though she is not rich.

I will wait until he returns.

In case that should happen, let me know it.

Das ist der ehrlichste Mann, den man je (jemals) gesehen hat.

Ich muß ein Pferd haben, das (welches) größer ist als dieses.

Es ist (thut) mir leid, daß sie krank ist.

Es ist mir lieb, daß Sie gekommen sind.

Ich wundere mich, daß er seine Aufgaben nicht gemacht hat.

Er wird sie heirathen, ob sie gleich nicht reich ist.

Ich will warten, bis er zurückkommt.

Im Falle es geschieht, so lassen Sie mich's wissen.

## OBSERVATIONS ON THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Obs. B.* In German the subjunctive, being only used to express doubt or incertitude, is not governed by any particular words. It has more affinity to the English subjunctive than to that of any other language, and more than would at first be supposed. We sometimes however prefer the subjunctive where the English use the potential *should* or *would*, though we could in this case even use either the potential or the subjunctive. Ex.

I *should* do it, if it *were* possible.

*Were* I in your place, or if I *were* in your place.

*Had* he the treasures of Cræsus, or if he *had* the treasures of Cræsus.

Ich würde es thun, wenn es möglich wäre.

Wäre ich an Ihrer Stelle, oder wenn ich an Ihrer Stelle wäre.

Hätte er die Schätze des Cræsus, oder wenn er die Schätze des Cræsus hätte.

That man *would be* happier, if he  
*left off* gambling.

He *would have been* happier, if he  
*had left off* gambling.

If you *knew* how ill I am, you  
*would not be* astonished to find  
me in bed.

He *would not have done* it, *had he*  
*foreseen* the result.

I *should think* myself ungrateful,  
*did I not consider* you as my  
benefactor.

The French *would not have gained*  
the battle, if they *had not had*  
superior numbers.

Dieser Mann würde glücklicher  
seyn, wenn er das Spielen ließe.

Er würde glücklicher gewesen  
seyn, wenn er das Spielen ge-  
lassen hätte.

Wenn Sie wüßten (or wüßten  
Sie), wie krank ich bin, so wür-  
den Sie nicht erstaunt seyn (so  
wären Sie nicht erstaunt), mich  
im Bette zu finden.

Er würde es nicht gethan haben,  
hätte er den Erfolg voraus  
gesehen.

Ich würde mich für unbankbar  
halten, sähe ich Sie nicht als  
meinen Wohlthäter an.

Die Franzosen würden die Schlacht  
nicht gewonnen haben (or  
hätten die Schlacht nicht ge-  
wonnen), wenn sie nicht eine so  
große Uebermacht von Leuten ge-  
habt hätten.

*Obs. C.* In English the potential *should* or *would* is used to express  
a wish relating to a future time, and the subjunctive to express a wish  
relating to a past time. In both instances the Germans use the sub-  
junctive. *Ex.*

I wish you *would do* it.

I wish you *would go* thither.

I wish you *had done* it.

I wish you *had gone* thither.

I *should have wished* to see him,  
*had it been* possible.

I *should like* to read, if I *had* only  
time.

Ich wünschte, Sie thäten es, or  
daß Sie es thäten.

Ich wünschte, Sie gingen hin, or  
daß Sie hingingen.

Ich wünschte, Sie hätten es ge-  
than, or daß Sie es gethan  
hätten.

Ich wünschte, Sie wären hinge-  
gangen, or daß Sie hingegan-  
gen wären.

Ich hätte gewünscht, ihn zu  
sehen, wäre es möglich gewesen.

Ich läse gern, wenn ich nur Zeit  
hätte.

*Obs. D.* Some expressions require sometimes the indicative and  
sometimes the subjunctive according to the manner in which the sen-  
tence is formed. *Ex.*

However rich he may be.

{ Indic. Er mag so reich seyn, wie er will.  
Subj. Er sey so reich, wie er wolle.

Whatever your power may be.

{ Indic. Ihre Gewalt mag so groß seyn, als sie will.  
Subj. Ihre Gewalt sey noch so groß.

*Obs. E.* In German we never employ the indicative.

1. In conditional propositions with or without the conjunction *wenn, if.* (See preceding Lesson.) *Ex.*

If I could I would do it.

Wenn ich könnte, so thäte ich es;  
or könnte ich, so thäte ich es.

If she were amiable he would marry her.

Wenn Sie liebenswürdig wäre (or wäre sie liebenswürdig), so heirathete er sie.

2. In exclamations and wishes. *Ex.*

If I had friends!

Hätte ich Freunde!

If I were rich!

Wäre ich reich!

May heaven grant it!

Der Himmel gebe es!

God forbid!

Gott behüte!

I could not have thought it!

Hätte ich's doch nicht geglaubt!

3. After the verbs *erzählen, to relate; fragen, to ask; sagen, to say; and others, which relate indirectly either to what we have said ourselves, or to what we have heard said by other persons.* *Ex.*

He related to me, that he had suffered shipwreck, and had lost all his fortune.

Er erzählte mir, daß er Schiffbruch gelitten, und sein ganzes Vermögen verloren hätte.

He asked me whether I was not such a one, whether I had no money, why I did not know how to write.

Er fragte mich, ob ich nicht der und der wäre, ob ich kein Geld hätte, warum ich nicht schreiben könnte.

Thou art master of the cross-bow, Tell,

Du bist ein Meister auf der Armbrust, Tell,

They say that thou canst cope with any shot?

Man sagt, du nimmst es auf mit jedem Schützen?

(Schiller's *Wilhelm Tell*.)

I told him he had made a mistake; but he thought that was impossible, as he had looked it over three times.

Ich sagte ihm, daß er sich geirrt hätte; er meinte aber, das wäre nicht möglich, weil er es dreimal durchgesehen hätte.

A wise man said, The reason why a man has but one mouth and two ears is, that he may speak little and hear a good deal.

Ein Weiser sagte, der Mensch habe deswegen einen Mund und zwei Ohren, damit er weniger spreche, und mehr höre.

*Obs. F.* Mr., Mrs., and Miss Such a one, are often translated by *der* und *der* for the masculine, *die* und *die* for the feminine, *das* und *das* for the neuter.

He said he would marry Miss Such a one.

Er sagte, er werde<sup>1</sup> das und das Fräulein heirathen.

To suffer shipwreck.

Schiffbruch leiden<sup>2</sup>.

Possible,

möglich;

impossible,

unmöglich.

*Whether.*

| *Ob.*

*Obs. G.* *Ob* is only used in indirect questions, or before sentences which express doubt or possibility. *Ex.*

I do not know whether he is at home.

Ich weiß nicht, ob er zu Hause ist.

I did not know whether you would be glad of it.

Ich wußte nicht, ob es Ihnen lieb seyn würde.

The question is, whether he will do it.

Es ist die Frage, ob er es wird thun wollen.

*Obs. H.* *Ob* is a component of the following conjunctions: *obgleich*, *obgleich*, *obwohl*, *obgleich*, *obgleich*, though, although. These conjunctions ought to be considered as two separate words, for the subject or even the case of the verb may be placed between them. *Ex.*

I shall buy that horse, though it is not an English one.

Ich werde dieses Pferd kaufen, ob es gleich kein Engländer ist<sup>2</sup>.

Though he is my cousin, he nevertheless does not come to see me.

Ob er gleich (or schon) mein Vetter ist, so kommt er doch nicht zu mir.

Although he has promised it to me, I do not rely upon it.

Obgleich er es mir versprochen hat, so zähle ich doch nicht darauf.

Although he is poor, he does nevertheless a great deal of good.

Ob er schon (or gleich, zwar, wohl) arm ist, so thut er doch viel Gutes.

<sup>1</sup> *Werde* is here in the future of the subjunctive. (See the following Lesson.)

<sup>2</sup> When the subject or case of the verb is not a personal pronoun, it is not usually placed between these two words. *Ex.* *Obgleich* dieses Pferd kein Engländer ist, so werde ich es doch kaufen, although this horse is not an English one, I shall nevertheless buy it. *Obgleich* diesem Mann Nichts widerfahren ist, so beklagt er sich doch, though nothing has happened to this man, he is nevertheless complaining.

However, nevertheless,	doch ;
the folly,	die Thorheit, die Narrheit ;
the character,	der Charakter (plur. e), die Gemüthsart ;
bashful, timid,	blöße ;
fearful (timid),	furchtsam ;
natural,	natürlich ;
polite (civil), impolite (uncivil),	höflich ; unhöflich.

## EXERCISES.

## 211.

Well (nun), does your sister make any progress?—She would make some, if she were as assiduous as you.—You flatter me.—Not at all (ganz und gar nicht), I assure you that I should be highly satisfied, if all my pupils worked like you.—Why do you not go out to-day?—I would go out if it were fine weather.—Shall I have the pleasure of seeing you to-morrow?—If you wish it I will come.—Shall I still be here when you arrive (bei Ihrer Ankunft)?—Will you have occasion (Gelegenheit) to go to town this evening?—I do not know, but I would go now if I had an opportunity (die Gelegenheit).—You would not have so much pleasure, and you would not be so happy, if you had not friends and books.—Man would not experience so much misery (so viel Elend) in his career (auf seiner Laufbahn), and he would not be so unhappy, were he not so blind.—You would not have that insensibility (die Gefühllosigkeit) towards the poor, and you would not be so deaf to (taub gegen) their supplication (die Bitte), if you had been yourself in misery for some time.—You would not say that, if you knew me well.—Why has your sister not done her exercises?—She would have done them, if she had not been prevented.—If you worked more, and spoke oftener, you would speak better.—I assure you, Sir, that I should learn better, if I had more time.—I do not complain of you, but of your sister.—You would have had no reason (Ursache) to complain of her, had she had time to do what you gave her to do.—What has my brother told you?—He has told me that he would be the happiest man in the (von der) world, if he knew the German language, the most beautiful of all languages.

## 212.

I should like to know why I cannot speak as well as you.—I will tell you: you would speak quite as well as I, if you were not so bashful. But if you had studied your lessons more carefully (besser), you would not be afraid to speak: for in order to speak well one must know; and it is very natural, that he who does not know well what he has been learning should be timid.—

You would not be so timid as you are (*als Sie sind*), if you were sure to make no faults.—There are some people who laugh when I speak.—Those are impolite people; you have only to laugh also, and they will no longer laugh at you. If you did as I (do) you would speak well. You must study a little every day, and you will soon be no longer afraid to speak.—I will endeavour to follow your advice, for I have resolved (*sich vornehmen* \*) to rise every morning at six o'clock, to study till ten o'clock, and to go to bed early.—Democritus and Heraclitus (in German as in English *Heraclitus*, &c.) were two philosophers of a (von) very different character: the first laughed at (*über* with the accus.) the follies of men, and the other wept at them.—They were both right, for the follies of men deserve (*verdienen*) (both) to be laughed and wept at.—My brother told me that you had spoken of me, and that you had not praised me.—We should have praised you, if you had paid us what you owe us.—You are wrong in complaining of my cousin, for he did not intend to hurt your feelings.—I should not have complained of him, if he had only hurt my feelings; but he has plunged into misery a whole family.—You are wrong in associating with that man. He only aspires after riches. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)



## NINETY-FOURTH LESSON.

## Hier und neunzigste Section.

To be thoroughly acquainted with a thing.	Mit einer Sache (genau) bekannt (or vertraut) seyn *.
To make one's self thoroughly acquainted with a thing.	Sich mit einer Sache bekannt (or vertraut) machen.
I understand this business.	Ich bin mit dieser Sache vertraut (or bekannt).
Acquainted, intimate, familiar,	bekannt; vertraut.
I am acquainted with that.	+ Ich bin damit bekannt (vertraut).

A species (a kind),	eine Art <sup>1</sup> , eine Gattung.
What kind of fruit is that?	{ Was für eine Art Frucht ist dies?
The kernel (of an apple, a pear, an almond, &c.),	{ Was für eine Frucht ist dies?
The stone,	der Kern.
kernel-fruit,	der Stein;
stone-fruit,	das Kernobst;
	das Steinobst.

It is a kernel-fruit.	Es ist eine Kernfrucht.
To gather fruit.	Obst brechen *.
The dessert,	der Nachtiſch.
To serve up the dessert.	den Nachtiſch auftragen *.
The fruit,	{ das Obst,
the plum,	die Frucht <sup>2</sup> ;
the anecdote,	die Pflaume;
the soap,	die Anekdote;
the roast meat,	die Seife;
	der Braten.

<sup>1</sup> The plural of collective nouns is generally formed by adding *Arten*, *kinds*, *species*, to the singular. Ex. die Obstarten, fruit (i. e. various sorts of fruit); die Getreidearten, corn (i. e. various kinds of corn). (See Introductory Book, *Obs. C.* page 34.)

<sup>2</sup> Die Frucht is the fruit of trees and plants. Ex. die Feldfrüchte, the fruit of the fields. Frucht is also employed figuratively: Ex. Die Frucht seiner Arbeit, the reward of his labour. Obst is only used in speaking of apples, pears, plums, and similar fruit. Hence das Kernobst, kernel-fruit; das Steinobst stone-fruit.

To dry (to wipe).  
 To cease (to leave off).  
 I leave off reading.  
 She leaves off speaking.

Abtrocknen.  
 Aufhören.  
 † Ich höre auf zu lesen.  
 † Sie hört auf zu sprechen.

To avoid.  
 To avoid some one.  
 To avoid something.  
 To escape (avoid a misfortune).

The punishment,  
 To avoid death he ran away.

The flight, the escape,

Meiden \*.  
 Vermeiden (gemieden, mied).  
 Jemanden meiden \*.  
 Etwas vermeiden \*.  
 Einem Unglück entgehen \* or entrin-  
 nen \* (entronnen, entrann).  
 die Strafe.  
 Um dem Tode zu entgehen, nahm e  
 die Flucht.  
 die Flucht.

To do without a thing.

Can you do without bread ?

I can do without it.

I do without bread.

Do you do without read ?

I do without it.

There are many things which we  
 must do without.

Eine (or einer Sache) entbehren  
 (governs the gen. or the acc.).  
 Sich behelfen \* ohne Etwas \*.  
 Können Sie sich ohne Brod be-  
 helfen ?  
 Können Sie das Brod (des Brodes)  
 entbehren ?  
 Ich kann es entbehren.  
 Ich behelfe mich ohne Brod.  
 Behelfen Sie sich ohne Brod ?  
 Ich kann es entbehren.  
 Wir müssen Vieles entbehren.

It is said that he will set out  
 to-morrow.

Man sagt, er werde morgen abrei-  
 sen.  
 Man sagt, daß er morgen abreisen  
 werde.

### FUTURE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

The futures of the subjunctive differ from those of the indicative only in the second and third persons singular, which are: *werdest* and *werde*, instead of *wirfst* and *wird*. Ex.

Thou wilt praise.  
 He will praise.

Du werdest loben.  
 Er werde loben.

\* Entbehren is employed in the sense of *to be without* and *to do without*; sich behelfen \* in the sense only of *to do without*.

## 215.

Will you relate something to me?—What do you wish me to relate to you?—A little anecdote, if you like.—A little boy asked (*forbarn*) one day at table (*bei Tische*) for some meat; his father said that it was not polite to ask for any, and that he should wait until some was given to him. The poor boy seeing every one eat, and that nothing was given to him, said to his father: “My dear father, give me a little salt, if you please.” “What will you do with it?” asked the father. “I wish to eat it with the meat (*ich will es zu dem Fleisch essen*) which you will give me,” replied (*versetzen*) the child. Every body admired (*bewundern*) the little boy’s wit; and his father perceiving that he had nothing, gave him meat without his asking for it.—Who was that little boy that asked for meat at table?—He was the son of one of my friends.—Why did he ask for some meat?—He asked for some because he had a good appetite.—Why did his father not give him some immediately?—Because he had forgotten it.—Was the little boy wrong in asking for some?—He was wrong, for he ought to have waited.—Why did he ask his father for some salt?—He asked for some salt, that (*damit*) his father might perceive that he had no meat, and that he might give him some. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## NINETY-FIFTH LESSON.

## Fünf und neunzigste Section.

To execute a commission.

Einen Auftrag ausrichten, vollziehen\*, besorgen.

I have executed your commission.

Ich habe Ihren Auftrag gut ausgerichtet (vollzogen, besorgt).

I have received with the greatest pleasure, the letter which you addressed to me, dated the 6th instant.

1 2  
Ich habe Ihr unterm sechsten an  
3 4  
mich gerichtetes Schreiben mit  
dem größten Vergnügen erhalten.

☞ When the adjective precedes the noun (Lesson XX.) all words relating to it are placed before the adjective, or the participle used adjectively, in the following order: 1st, The article or pronoun; 2nd, All words relating to the adjective or the participial adjective; 3rd, The adjective or participial adjective; and finally, 4th, The noun. Ex.

A man polite towards everybody.

1 2 3  
Ein gegen Jedermann höflicher  
4  
Mensch.

A father who loves his children.

1 2 3 4  
Ein seine Kinder liebender Vater.

You have to study the twentieth Lesson, and to translate the exercises relating to it.

Sie haben die zwanzigste Section  
1 2 3  
zu studiren, und die dazu gehö-  
4  
rigen Aufgaben zu übersetzen<sup>1</sup>.

Have you executed my commission?

Haben Sie meinen Auftrag ausgerichtet?

I have executed it.

Ich habe ihn ausgerichtet.

To do one's duty.

Seine Schuldigkeit thun\*.

To fulfil one's duty.

Seine Pflicht erfüllen.

To do one's task.

Seine Arbeiten machen.

<sup>1</sup> This kind of construction, wherein the noun stands separated more or less from its article, is more frequently made use of in elevated style than in conversation.

That man always does his duty.	Dieser Mann thut immer seine Schulbigkeit.
That man always fulfils his duty.	Dieser Mann erfüllt immer seine Pflicht <sup>2</sup> .
Have you done your task?	Haben Sie Ihre Arbeiten gemacht?

To rely upon something.	} Sich auf Etwas verlassen*.
To depend upon something.	
He depends upon it.	
I rely upon you.	
You may rely upon him.	Er verläßt sich darauf.
	Ich verlasse mich auf Sie.
	Sie können sich auf ihn verlassen.

To suffice, be sufficient.	Genügen, hinreichen, genug seyn*.
To be contented with something.	Sich mit Etwas begnügen.
Is that bread sufficient for you?	{ Ist Ihnen dieses Brod genug?
It is sufficient for me.	
Will that money be sufficient for that man?	Ist dieses Brod für Sie genug?
It will be sufficient for him.	Es genügt mir.
Little wealth suffices for the wise.	Wird dieses Geld diesem Manne genügen?
Was this man contented with that sum?	Es wird ihm genügen.
	Wenig genügt dem Weisen.
	Hat sich dieser Mann mit dieser Summe begnügt?
Has this sum been sufficient for that man?	{ War diese Summe für diesen Mann hinreichend?
It has been sufficient for him.	War diese Summe diesem Manne genug?
He would be contented if you would only add a few crowns.	Er hat sich damit begnügt.
	Er würde sich begnügen, wenn Sie nur noch einige Thaler hinzufügen wollten.

To add.	Hinzufügen.
To build.	Bauen.

To embark, to go on board.	Sich einschiffen.
The sail,	das Segel.
To set sail.	Unter Segel gehen*.
To set sail for.	Segeln nach.
To sail for America.	Nach Amerika Segeln.

<sup>2</sup> Pflicht is that which our own conscience obliges us to; *Σχολή*, Zeit, expresses the orders given us by our superiors, and is derived from *die Schuld*, the obligation, debt.

With full sails.  
 To sail with full sails.  
 He embarked on the sixteenth of  
 last month.  
 He sailed on the third instant.

Mit vollen Segeln.  
 Mit vollen Segeln fahren \*.  
 Er hat sich am sechzehnten (oder den  
 sechzehnten) letzten Monats einge-  
 schifft.  
 Er ist den dritten (oder am dritten)  
 dieses unter Segel gegangen.

That is to say (*i. e.*).  
 Et cætera (etc.), and so on, and so  
 forth.

Das heißt (nämlich).  
 Und so weiter (abbreviated u. s. w.).

Otherwise, differently.  
 In another manner.  
 If I knew that, I would behave  
 differently.  
 If I had known that, I would have  
 behaved differently.  
 To behave.

Anders.  
 Auf eine andere Art.  
 Wenn ich das wüßte, würde ich mich  
 anders benehmen.  
 Wenn ich das gewußt hätte, so würde  
 ich mich anders benommen haben.  
 Sich benehmen \*.

Else (otherwise).  
 If not.  
 Mend, else (if not) you will be  
 punished.  
 I cannot do it otherwise.

Sonst.  
 Wo nicht.  
 Bessern Sie sich, sonst (wo nicht)  
 wird man Sie strafen.  
 Ich kann es nicht anders machen.

## OF THE IMPERATIVE.

The second person singular of the imperative, being formed from the second person singular of the indicative, is only irregular when the latter is so. Ex. *Geben* \*, to give; second person of the indicative, *du gibst*, thou givest; imperative, *gib*, give thou. *Helfen* \*, to help; second person of the indicative, *du hilfst*, thou helpest; imperative, *hilf*, help thou.

From this rule must be excepted: 1st, The following verbs: *haben* \*, to have; second person, *du hast*, thou hast; imperative, *habe*, have thou; *seyn* \*, to be; second person, *du bist*, thou art; imperative, *sey*, be thou; *werden* \*, to become; *du wirst*, thou becomest; imperative, *werde*, become thou; *wissen* \*, to know; second person, *du weißt*, thou knowest; imperative, *wisse*, know thou; *wollen* \*, to will; *du willst*, thou wilt; imperative, *wolle*. 2nd, Verbs which, in the second person of the indicative present, change the letter *a* into *ä*. In the imperative they resume the radical vowel. Ex. *Laufen*, to run; *du läufst*, thou runnest; imperative, *lauf*, run thou.

if I were not very hungry.—When did your brother embark for America?—He sailed on the thirtieth of last month (*letzten Monats*).—Do you promise me to speak to your brother?—I do promise you, you may depend upon it.—I rely upon you.—Will you work harder for next lesson than you have done for this?—I will work harder.—May I rely upon it?—You may (*können es*).

## 217.

Have patience, my dear friend, and be not sad; for sadness alters (*ändern*) nothing, and impatience makes bad worse (*ärger*). Be not afraid of your creditors; be sure that they will do you no harm.—You must have patience, though you have no mind for it (*haben*); for I also must wait till I (*man*) am paid what is due to me.—As soon as I have money, I will pay all that you have advanced (*ausslegen*) for me. Do not believe that I have forgotten it, for I think of (*denken an* \*) with the accus.) it every day. I am your debtor (*der Schuldner*), and I shall never deny (*leugnen*) it.—Do not believe that I have had your gold watch, or that Miss Wilhelmine has had your silver snuff-box, for I saw both in the hands of your sister when we were playing at forfeits (*Pfänder spielen*).—What a beautiful inkstand you have there! pray lend it me.—What do you wish to do with it?—I wish to show it to my sister.—Take it, but take care of it, and do not break it.—Do not fear.—What do you want of (*von*) my brother?—I want to borrow some money of him.—Borrow some of somebody else.—If he will not lend me any, I will borrow some of somebody else.—You will do well.—Do not wish (for) what you cannot have, but be contented with what Providence (*die Vorsehung*) has given you, and consider (*bedenken* \*) that there are many men who have not what you have.—Life (*das Leben*) being short, let us endeavour to make it (*es uns*) as agreeable (*angenehm*) as possible. But let us also consider that the abuse (*der Missbrauch*) of pleasure (in the plur. in German, *Vergnügungen*) makes it bitter (*bitter*).—Have you done your exercises?—I could not do them, because my brother was not at home.—You must not get your exercises done by (*von*) your brother, but you must do them yourself. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## NINETY-SIXTH LESSON.

## Sechß und neunzigste Section.

To be a judge of something.  
 Are you a judge of cloth?  
 I am a judge of it.  
 I am not a judge of it.  
 I am a good judge of it.  
 I am not a good judge of it.

+ Sich auf Etwas verstehen \*.  
 + Verstehen Sie sich aufs Tuch?  
 + Ich verstehe mich darauf.  
 + Ich verstehe mich nicht darauf.  
 + Ich verstehe mich sehr gut darauf.  
 + Ich verstehe mich nicht sehr gut darauf.

To draw.  
 To chalk.  
 The drawing,  
 the drawer,  
 To draw from nature, from life.  
 To draw a landscape from nature.

Zeichnen.  
 Nachzeichnen (Kalkiren).  
 die Zeichnung;  
 der Zeichner.  
 Nach der Natur, nach dem Leben  
 zeichnen.  
 Eine Landschaft nach der Natur  
 zeichnen.

To manage or to go about a thing.  
 How do you manage to make a fire without tongs?  
 I go about it so.  
 You go about it in a wrong way.  
 I go about it in a right way.  
 How does your brother manage to do that?  
 Skilfully, dexterously, cleverly.

Awkwardly, unhandily.  
 He should have managed the thing better than he has done.  
 You should have managed the thing differently.  
 They ought to have managed it as I have done.  
 We ought to have managed it differently from what they did.

Es anfangen \*.  
 Wie fangen Sie es an, ohne Zange Feuer anzumachen?  
 Ich fange es so (or auf diese Weise) an.  
 Sie fangen es nicht gut an.  
 Ich fange es gut an.  
 Wie fängt Ihr Bruder es an, um dieses zu thun?  
 Geschickt (auf eine geschickte oder feine Art).  
 ungeschickt.  
 Er hätte es besser anfangen sollen.  
 Sie hätten es anders anfangen müssen.  
 Sie hätten es machen sollen, wie ich.  
 Wir hätten es anders machen sollen als sie.



<i>To forbid.</i>	Verbieten *. Part. past, verboten. Imperf. verbot.
forbid you to do that.	Ich verbiete Ihnen, dieses zu thun.
<i>To lower.</i>	Niederlassen *, herunter lassen *.
To cast down one's eyes.	Die Augen niedererschlagen *.
The curtain rises, falls.	Der Vorhang geht auf, fällt.
The stocks have fallen.	† Der Wechselcours ist gefallen (steht niedriger).
The day falls in.	† Der Tag neigt sich.
It is drawing towards night, or night is coming on.	Es wird Nacht.
It grows dark.	
It grows late.	Es wird spät.
To stoop.	Sich bücken.
<i>To feel.</i>	Fühlen.
<i>To smell.</i>	Riechen * (gerochen *, roch).
He smells of garlic.	Er riecht nach Knoblauch.
To feel some one's pulse.	Er tastet den Puls fühlen.
To consent to a thing.	{ In Etwas willigen (or einwilligen). Seine Einwilligung zu Etwas ge- ben *.
I consent to it.	{ Ich willige darein. Ich gebe meine Einwilligung dazu.
To hide, to conceal.	{ Verbergen * (verborgen, verbarg). Verstecken.
Indeed.	In Wahrheit.
In fact.	In der That (wirklich, wahrhaftig).
The fact,	die That ;
true,	Wahr (recht) ;
genuine,	wahrhaft ;
He is a true man.	Er ist ein wahrhafter Mann.
This is the right place for this picture.	Das ist der wahre (rechte) Platz für dieses Gemälde.
As I live !	† So wahr ich lebe !
To think much of some one.	Auf Jemanden viel halten *.
To esteem some one.	Jemanden schätzen.
I do not think much of that man.	Ich halte nicht viel auf diesen Mann.
I think much of him (I esteem him much).	Ich halte viel auf ihn (ich schätze ihn sehr).

*To permit, to allow.*  
The permission,  
I permit you to go thither.

*To command, to order.*

*Obs.* When the third person plural is employed in the imperative instead of the second, the personal pronoun always follows the verb, but never when the second person is employed. Ex.

Order it to be done.

Be virtuous.

Will you permit me to go to the market?

To hasten, to make haste.

Make haste, and return soon.

Erlauben.

die Erlaubniß.

Ich erlaube Ihnen hinzugehen (or dahin zu gehen).

Befehlen \* (befohlen, befohl).

Befehlen Sie, daß man es thue.

Seid tugendhaft.

Wollen Sie mir erlauben, auf den Markt zu gehen?

Eilen, sich sputen.

Eilen Sie und kommen bald wieder.

I had done reading when your brother entered.

You had lost your purse when I found mine.

To step in, to enter.

Ich hatte zu lesen aufgehört, als Ihr Bruder herein trat.

Sie hatten Ihre Börse verloren, als ich die meinige fand.

Hereintreten (getreten, trat).

*To be ashamed.*

To be ashamed of some one or something.

I am ashamed of my impatience.

To copy, to transcribe.

To decline.

The substantive,

To transcribe fairly.

The adjective, the pronoun, the verb, the preposition,

The dictionary, the grammar,

Sich schämen.

Sich Jemandes oder einer Sache schämen.

Ich schäme mich meiner Ungeduld.

Abschreiben \*.

Decliniren.

das Hauptwort.

{ Reinlich abschreiben \*.

{ Ins Reine schreiben \*.

das Beiwort; das Fürwort; das Zeitwort; das Vornwort.

das Wörterbuch; die Sprachlehre (die Grammatik).

Do good to the poor, have compassion on the unfortunate, and God will take care of the rest.

To do good to some one.

To have compassion on some one.

Compassion, pity,  
the rest,

He has no (feelings of) compassion.  
For pity's sake.

Thut den Armen Gutes, und hab Mittheiden mit den Unglücklichen, so wird der liebe Gott für das Uebrige sorgen.

Jemandem Gutes thun \*.

Mittheiden mit Jemandem haben \*.

das Mittheiden;

das Uebrige.

+ Er hat kein Mittheiden.

+ Aus Mittheiden.

## EXERCISES.

218.

What must we do in order to be happy?—Always love and practise virtue (~~thet und thet die~~—immer ~~and~~), and (so) you will be happy both in this and the next life. Since we wish to be happy, let us do good to the poor, and let us have compassion on the unfortunate; let us obey our masters, and never give them any trouble; let us comfort the unfortunate, love our neighbour as ourselves, and not hate those that have offended us; in short (~~kurz~~), let us always fulfil our duty, and God will take care of the rest.—My son, in order to be loved, you must (~~muß man~~) be laborious and good. Thou art accused (~~beschuldigen~~) of having been idle and negligent in thy affairs. Thou knowest, however (~~ie doch~~), that thy brother has been punished for (~~weil~~) having been naughty. Being lately in town, I received a letter from thy tutor, in which he strongly complained of thee. Do not weep; now go into thy room, learn thy lesson, and be (a) good (boy), otherwise thou wilt get (in the present) nothing for dinner.—I shall be so good, my dear father, that you will certainly (~~gerne~~) be contented with me.—Did the little boy keep his word?—Not quite, for after having said that, he went into his room, took his books, sat down at the table (~~sich an den Tisch setzen~~), and fell asleep (~~einschlafen~~\*). He is a very good boy when he sleeps, said his father, seeing him some time after (~~darauf~~).

219.

Are you a judge of cloth?—I am a judge of it.—Will you buy some yards (for) me?—Give me the money, and (so) I shall buy some (for) you.—You will oblige me.—Is that man a judge of cloth?—He is not a good judge of it.—What are you doing there?—I am reading the book (in dem Buche) which you lent me.—You are wrong in always reading it (immer darin zu lesen).—What do you wish me to do?—Draw this landscape; and when you have drawn it, you shall decline some substantives with adjectives and pronouns.—How do you manage to do that?—I manage it so.—Show me how you manage it.—What must I do for my lessons of to-morrow (die morgende Stunde)?—Transcribe your exercises fairly, do three others, and study the next lesson.—How do you manage to get goods without money?—I buy on credit.—How does your sister manage to learn German without a dictionary?—She manages it thus.—She manages it very dexterously.—But how does your brother manage it?—He manages it very awkwardly: he reads, and looks for (~~auffuchen~~) the words in the dictionary.—He may learn in this manner (~~auf diese Weise~~) twenty years without knowing how to make a single sentence (~~der Satz~~).

Why does your sister cast down her eyes?—She casts them down because she is ashamed of not having done her task.—Let us breakfast in the garden to-day: the weather is so fine, that we ought to take advantage of it (es benutzen).—How do you like that coffee?—I like it very much (vortrefflich).—Why do you stoop?—I stoop to pick up the handkerchief which I have dropped.—Why do your sisters hide themselves?—They would not hide themselves, if they did not fear to be seen.—Whom are they afraid of?—They are afraid of their governess (die Erzieherinn), who scolded them yesterday because they had not done their tasks.—An emperor, who was irritated at (aufgebracht gegen) an astrologer (der Sternbeuter), asked him: “Wretch, what death (welchen Todes) dost thou believe thou wilt die?”—“I shall die of a fever,” (Lesson LXXXV.) replied the astrologer. “Thou liest,” (page 249) said the emperor; “thou wilt die this instant (in diesem Augenblick) a violent (gewaltsam) death.” As he was going to be seized (ergreifen wollen\*), he said to the emperor, “Sire (gnädigster Herr), order some one to feel my pulse, and it will be found that I have a fever.” This sally (dieser gute Einfall) saved his life.—Do not judge (richteten), you who do not wish to be judged! Why do you perceive the mote (der Splitter) in your brother's eye, you who do not perceive the beam (der Balken) which is in your own eye?—Would you copy your exercises if I copied mine?—I would copy them if you copied yours.—Would your sister have transcribed her letter if I had transcribed mine?—She would have transcribed it.—Would she have set out if I had set out?—I cannot tell you what she would have done if you had set out. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

To want amusement.	}	Lange Weile haben*.
To get or be tired.		
How could I get tired in your company?		Wie könnte ich bei Ihnen lange Weile haben?
Firstly (at first),		
secondly, &c.		
		erstens ;
		zweitens, u. s. w.

To have reason to.		Ursache haben *—zu.
He has reason to be sad.		Er hat Ursache traurig zu seyn.
He has much sorrow.		Er hat viel Verdruß (Kummer).

*Obs. B.* When any one is thanked for a thing, he must answer in German :—

You have no reason for it.		† Sie haben nicht Ursache.
----------------------------	--	----------------------------

To look upon or into.		Gehen auf or nach.
The window looks into the street.		Das Fenster geht auf die (nach der) Straße.
The back door looks into the garden.		Die Hintertür geht nach dem Garten.

To drown.	{	Ertränken (active verb).
		Ertrinken* (neuter verb). Part.
		past, ertrunken. Imperf. er-
		trank.
To be drowned.	{	Ersaufen* (neuter verb). Part.
		past, ertrunken. Imperf. erhoff.

To jump out of the window.	{	Aus dem Fenster springen*.
		Zum Fenster hinaus springen*.
To throw out of the window.	{	Aus dem Fenster werfen*.
		Zum Fenster hinaus werfen*.

To shoot (meaning to kill by shooting).		Erschießen*.
To blow out some one's brains.	{	Jemandem eine Kugel vor den Kopf schießen*.
		Jemandem eine Kugel durch das Gehirn jagen.
To shoot one's self with a pistol.		Sich mit einer Pistole erschießen*
He has blown out his brains.		Er hat sich erschossen.

He has blown out his brains with a pistol.	Er hat sich mit einer Pistole er- schossen.
I am drowning.	Ich ertrinke.
He jumped out of the window.	Er ist aus dem Fenster gesprungen.

---

To get paid.	+ Sich bezahlen lassen *.
To suffer one's self to be prevailed upon.	+ Sich bitten lassen *.
To get one's self invited to dine.	+ Sich zum Mittagessen einladen lassen *.

---

Get paid.	+ Lassen Sie sich bezahlen !
Let us set out.	Lassen Sie uns (or wir wollen) ab- reisen.
Let us breakfast.	Lassen Sie uns (or wir wollen) frühstücken.
Let him give it me.	Daß er mir es gebe, or er gebe es mir.
Let him be there at twelve o'clock.	Daß er um zwölf Uhr da sey, or er sey um zwölf Uhr da.
Let him send it me.	Daß er mir es sende, or er sende es mir.
He may believe it.	Daß er es glaube, or er glaube es.

---

To be at one's ease.	Behagen, behaglich oder bequem seyn * (impers. v. gov. dat.).
To be uncomfortable.	Unbehaglich, unbequem oder genirt seyn *.
I am very much at my ease upon this chair.	Es ist mir auf diesem Stuhle sehr behaglich.
You are uncomfortable upon your chair.	Es ist Ihnen nicht behaglich (oder unbehaglich) auf Ihrem Stuhle.
We are uncomfortable in that boarding-house.	Es behagt uns in diesem Kosthause (dieser Pension) nicht.

---

To make one's self comfortable.	Sich's bequem machen.
To put one's self out of the way.	Sich bemühen.
Make yourself comfortable.	Machen Sie sich's bequem.
Do not put yourself out of the way.	Bemühen Sie sich nicht.
Do as if you were at home.	Thun Sie, als wenn Sie zu Hause wären.

---

Go and tell him that I cannot come to-day.	Geht und saget ihm, daß ich heute nicht kommen kann.
He came and told us he could not come.	Er kam und sagte uns, daß er nicht kommen könnte.

*To prefer.*

I prefer the useful to the agreeable.	Vorziehen * (gezogen, zog). Ich ziehe das Nützliche dem Angenehmen vor.
---------------------------------------	--

*Obs. C.* When an adjective is used substantively in the masculine or feminine gender, a noun is always understood, e. g. der Reiche, the rich, meaning der reiche Mann; die Schöne, the beautiful woman, meaning die schöne Frau.

Few words to the wise (proverb).	Gelernten ist gut predigen (Sprichwort).
----------------------------------	--

*Obs. D.* An adjective used substantively without a noun being understood is always put in the neuter gender, e. g. das Große, the great; das Erhabene, the sublime; das Äußere, the exterior; das Innere, the interior.

What he likes best is hunting and fishing.	Sein Liebstes ist die Jagd und das Fischen.
Where strength and gentleness unite,	Denn wo das Strenge mit dem Zarten,
There the tone sounds full and clear.	Wo Starkes sich und Milbes paarten,
	Da gibt es einen guten Klang.
	(Schiller in his Lied von der Glocke, the Song of the Bell)
Severe, tender, mild (gentle).	Strenge, zart, milde.

*To be welcome.*

You are welcome every where.	Willkommen seyn *. Sie sind überall willkommen.
------------------------------	--

He will arrive in a week	Er wird in acht Tagen (einer Woche) ankommen.
It took him a week to make this journey.	Er hat diese Reise in acht Tagen gemacht.

*Obs. E.* Past and future tenses require the preposition *in* with the dative.

He will have finished his studies in three months.	Er wird seine Studien in einem Vierteljahre vollendet haben.
He finished his studies in a year.	Er hat seine Studien in einem Jahre vollendet.

## EXERCISES.

## 221.

Have you already seen my son?—I have not seen him yet, how is he?—He is very well; you will not be able to recognise him, for he has grown very tall in a short time.—Why does this man give nothing to the poor?—He is too avaricious (*geizig*); he does not wish to open his purse for fear of losing his money.—What sort of weather is it?—It is very warm; it is long since we had any rain (*es hat lange nicht geregnet*): I believe we shall have a storm (*ein Gewitter bekommen*). It may be (*das kann wohl seyn*).—The wind rises (*sich erheben* \*), it thunders already; do you hear it?—Yes I do hear it, but the storm is still far off (*weit entfernt*).—Not so far as you think; see how it lightens.—Bless me (*mein Gott*), what a shower (*welch ein entsetzlicher Regen ist das*)!—If we go into some place we shall be sheltered from the storm.—Let us go into that cottage then; we shall be sheltered there from the wind and the rain.—I have a great mind to bathe (*baden*) to-day.—Where will you bathe?—In the river.—Are you not afraid of being drowned?—Oh no! I can swim.—Who taught you (*es*)?—Last summer I took a few lessons at the swimming-school (*die Schwimmschule*).—Where shall we go to now? Which road shall we take?—The shortest will be the best.—We have too much sun, and I am still very tired; let us sit down under the shade of this tree.—Who is that man that is sitting under the tree?—I do not know him.—It seems, he wishes to be alone; for when we offer (*wollen* \*) to approach him, he pretends to be asleep.—He is like your sister: she understands German very well; but when I begin to speak to her, she pretends not to understand me.

## 222.

Have you seen Mr. Jæger?—I have seen him; he told me that his sisters would be here in a short time, and desired me to tell you so.—When they have arrived, you may give them the gold rings which you have bought; they flatter themselves that you will make them a present of them: for they love you without knowing you personally.—Has my sister already written to you?—She has written to me, I am going to answer her.—Shall I ( *soll ich*) tell her that you are here?—Tell her; but do not tell her, that I am waiting for her impatiently.—Why have you not brought your sister along with you?—Which one?—The one you always bring, the youngest (*die jüngste*).—She did not wish to go out, because she has the tooth-ache.—I am very sorry for it; for she is a very good girl.—How old is she?—She is nearly fifteen years old.—She is very tall for her age (*das Alter*).—How old are you?—I am twenty-two.—Is it possible! I thought you were not yet twenty.



Will you drink a cup of (die Tasse) tea?—I thank you, I do not like tea.—Do you like coffee?—I do like it, but I have just drunk some.—Do you not get tired here?—How could I get tired in this agreeable society?—As to me I always want amusement.—If you did as I do, you would not want amusement; for I listen to all those who tell me anything. In this manner I learn (erfahren\*) a thousand agreeable things, and I have no time to get tired; but you do nothing of that kind, that is the reason why you want amusement.—I would do every thing like (wie) you, if I had no reason to be sad.—I have heard just now that one of my best friends has shot himself with a pistol, and that one of my wife's best friends has drowned herself.—Where has she drowned herself?—She has drowned herself in the river which is behind her house. Yesterday at four o'clock in the morning she rose without saying a word to any one, leaped out of the window which looks into the garden, and threw (stürzen) herself into the river where she was drowned.—Let us always seek the friendship (die Freundschaft) of the good and avoid (fliehen\*) the society of the wicked; for bad society corrupts (verberben) good manners (die Sitten, fem. plur.).—What sort of weather is it to-day?—It snows continually (noch immer), as it snowed yesterday, and according to all appearances (allem Anscheine nach) will also snow to-morrow.—Let it snow, I should like it to snow still more, and to freeze also, for I am always very well when it is very cold.—And I am always very well when it is neither cold nor warm.—It is too windy (gar zu windig) to-day, and we should do better if we stayed at home.—Whatever weather it may be, I must go out, for I promised to be with my sister at a quarter past eleven, and I must keep my word. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## NINETY-EIGHTH LESSON.

## Acht und neunzigste Section.

Notwithstanding, in spite of.

Notwithstanding that.

In spite of him (her, them).

Notwithstanding his promise.

{ ungeachtet (governs the gen.).  
 Wider (governs the accus.).  
 Dessen ungeachtet.  
 Wider seinen (ihren) Willen.  
 Seines Versprechens ungeachtet.

Even.

He has not money enough even  
to buy bread.

Sogar.

Er hat sogar nicht Geld genug, um  
Brod zu kaufen.

To manage.

Do you manage to finish your  
work every Saturday night?Do you manage to have your  
work done every Saturday  
night?

{ Es dergestalt machen, daß.  
 Es so einrichten, daß.  
 Es so machen, daß.  
 Machen Sie es so, daß Sie alle  
Samstag Abend mit Ihrer Ar-  
beit fertig werden?  
 Richten Sie es so ein, daß Sie  
jeden Samstag Abend mit Ihrer  
Arbeit fertig werden?  
 Richten Sie es so ein (oder machen  
Sie es so), daß Sie alle Sam-  
stag Abend mit Ihrer Arbeit  
fertig sind (oder Ihre Arbeit  
fertig haben)?

Try to do that to oblige me.

I manage to go thither.

{ Bestreben Sie sich, dieses zu thun,  
um mich zu verbinden.  
 Ich richte es so ein, daß ich hin-  
gehen kann.

To have done.

Will you soon have done work-  
ing?

I shall soon have done.

{ Fertig seyn.  
 Sind Sie bald mit Ihrer Arbeit  
fertig?  
 Ich werde bald damit fertig seyn.

To keep warm.  
 To go always neat.  
 To be (to keep) on one's guard.  
 To take care (be careful).  
 To keep on one's guard against  
 some one.  
 Take care that you do not fall.

To beware of somebody or something.  
 Keep on your guard against that  
 man.  
 If you do not take care of that  
 horse it will kick you.

Take care.

Sich warm halten \*.  
 Sich immer reinlich halten \*.  
 Sich hüten, sich vorsehen \*.  
 Sich in Acht nehmen \*.  
 Sich vor Jemandem in Acht nehmen \* (or hüten).  
 Nehmen Sie sich in Acht (hüten Sie sich), daß Sie nicht fallen.  
 Sich vor Jemandem oder vor Etwas hüten (or in Acht nehmen \*).  
 Hüten Sie sich vor diesem Manne.  
 Wenn Sie sich vor diesem Pferde nicht in Acht nehmen, so wird es Sie stoßen.  
 Sehen Sie sich vor.

I fear he will come.  
 I do not doubt but he will come.  
 The bad weather hinders us from  
 taking a walk.  
 I shall prevent you from going  
 out.  
 I shall not set out till every thing  
 is ready.  
 The enemy is stronger than you  
 thought.  
 I shall certainly come, unless I am  
 taken ill.  
 To be taken ill (to fall sick).  
 Very little more, and I would  
 do it.

Ich fürchte, daß er komme.  
 Ich zweifle nicht, daß er kommt.  
 Das schlechte Wetter verhindert, daß  
 wir spazieren gehen.  
 Ich werde schon verhindern, daß Sie  
 ausgehen.  
 Ich werde nicht abreisen, bis Alles  
 fertig ist.  
 Der Feind ist stärker, als Sie ge-  
 glaubt haben.  
 Ich werde gewiß kommen, es sey  
 denn, daß ich krank würde.  
 Krank werden \*.  
 Es fehlt wenig, daß ich es thue.

It is in your power to obtain me  
 that situation.  
 He is quite different from what he  
 was two years ago.  
 You do not act any more as you  
 have done.  
 Before you undertake anything tell  
 me of it.

† Es steht nur bei Ihnen, daß ich  
 diese Stelle bekomme.  
 Er ist ganz anders, als er vor zwei  
 Jahren war.  
 Sie handeln nicht mehr so, wie (or  
 sie handeln anders, als) Sie  
 gethan haben.  
 Ehe Sie Etwas unternehmen, sagen  
 Sie es mir.

Did any body know how to tell a story in a more natural (more artless) manner than Lafontaine?

Hat Jemand auf eine natürlichere (ungekünsteltere) Art zu erzählen gewußt, als Lafontaine?

A thought,  
an idea,  
a sally,  
To be struck with a thought.  
A thought strikes me.  
That never crossed my mind.  
To take it into one's head.  
He took it into his head lately to rob me.  
What is in your head?

ein Gedante (masc.);  
eine Idee;  
ein Einfall (masc.).  
Einen Einfall haben \* (einfallen \*).  
Es fällt mir Etwas ein.  
Ich habe einen Einfall.  
So Etwas ist mir nie eingefallen.  
† Sich einfallen lassen \*.  
† Er ließ sich neulich einfallen, mich zu bestehlen.  
† Was fällt Ihnen ein?

In order that, in order to.  
He works in order to be one day useful to his country.

Auf daß or damit.  
Er arbeitet, damit er seinem Vaterlande einst (eines Tages) nützlich werde.

The native country, the fatherland,  
One day, once,

das Vaterland.  
eines Tages, einst.

To be born.  
Where *were* you born?  
I *was* born in this country.  
Where *was* your sister born?  
She *was* born in the United States of North America.  
Where *were* your brothers born?  
They *were* born in France.

Gebürtig seyn \*.  
† Wo sind Sie gebürtig?  
† Ich bin in diesem Lande gebürtig.  
† Wo ist Ihre Schwester gebürtig?  
† Sie ist in den vereinigten Staaten von Nordamerika gebürtig.  
† Wo sind Ihre Brüder gebürtig?  
† Sie sind in Frankreich gebürtig?

Around, round.  
All around, round about.

Herum (umher).  
Rund herum (rund umher).

The dish went around the whole company till it came back to the landlord.  
We sailed around England.

Die Schüssel ging bei der ganzen Tischgesellschaft herum, bis sie wieder zum Wirth zurück kam.  
Wir segelten um England herum.

They went about the town to look  
at the curiosities.

Sie gingen in der Stadt umher, um  
ihre innern Merkwürdigkeiten zu  
betrachten.

To go around the house.

Um das Haus herum gehen \*.

To go about the house.

In dem Hause umher gehen \*.

To express one's self.

Sich ausdrücken.

To make one's self understood.

Sich verständlich machen.

To have the habit.

Die Gewohnheit haben \*.

To accustom.

Gewöhnen.

To accustom one's self to some-  
thing.

Sich an Etwas (accu.) gewöhnen.

Children must be accustomed early  
to labour.

Kinder müssen bei Zeiten an die  
Arbeit gewöhnt werden.

To be accustomed to a thing.

Eine (accus.) Sache gewöhnt  
seyn \*.

Einer Sache (gen.) gewöhnt seyn \*.

An eine Sache (accus.) gewöhnt  
seyn \*.

I am accustomed to it.

Ich bin es gewöhnt.

I cannot express myself in German,  
for I am not in the habit of  
speaking it.

Ich kann mich im Deutschen nicht gut  
ausdrücken, weil ich nicht zu spre-  
chen gewöhnt bin (oder: weil ich  
im Sprechen nicht geübt bin).

You speak properly.

+ Sie reden wie sich's gehört.

To chatter.

Plaudern.

To prate.

Schwätzen.

A prating man.

ein Plauderer, Schwätzer.

A prating woman.

eine Schwätzerinn.

To practise.

üben.

I practise speaking.

+ Ich übe mich im Sprechen.

To associate (to converse) with  
some one.

Mit Jemandem umgehen .

I associate (converse) with him.

Ich gehe mit ihm um.

## EXERCISES.

224.

Have you been learning German long?—No, Sir, I have only  
been learning it these six months.—Is it possible! you speak  
tolerably (ziemlich) well for so short a time.—You jest (scherzen),  
I do not know much (of it) yet.—Indeed, you speak it well al-  
ready.—I think you flatter me a little.—Not at all; you speak

it properly.—In order to speak it properly, one must know more (of it) than I know.—You know enough (of it) to make yourself understood.—I still make many faults.—That is (thut) nothing; you must not be bashful; besides (überbieß) you have made no faults in all you have said just now.—I am still timid, because I am afraid of being laughed at (man möchte sich über mich lustig machen).—It would be very unpolite to laugh at you. Who would be (benn) so unpolite as to laugh at you?—Do you not know the proverb?—What proverb?—He who (Lesson XXXI.) wishes to speak well, must begin by speaking badly. Do you understand all I am telling you.—I do understand and comprehend (begreifen\*) it very well; but I cannot yet express myself well in German, because I am not in the habit of speaking it.—That will come in (mit der) time.—I wish it (may) with all my heart.

Good morning, Miss.—Ah (Et)! here you are at last. I have been waiting for you with impatience.—You will pardon me, my dear, I could not come sooner (eher).—Sit down, if you please.—How is your mother?—She is better to-day than she was yesterday.—I am glad of it.—Were you at the ball yesterday?—I was there.—Were you much amused (sich belustigen)?—Only so so.—At what o'clock did you return home?—At a quarter past eleven.

## 225.

Do you sometimes see my brother?—I do see him sometimes; when I met him the other day (neulich), he complained of you. "If he had behaved better, and had been more economical (sparsam)," said he, "he would have had no debts (Schulden, plur.) and I would not have been angry with him."—I begged of (bitten\*) him to have compassion on you, telling him that you had not even money enough to buy bread. "Tell him, when you see him," replied he to me, "that notwithstanding his bad behaviour towards me, I pardon him. Tell him also," continued he, "that one should not laugh (spotten) at those to whom (Lessons XVI. and LXII.) one is under obligations. Have the goodness to do this, and I shall be much obliged to you," added he in going away.—Why do you associate with that man?—I would not associate with him, if he had not rendered me great services.—Do not trust him, for if you are not on your guard, he will cheat you.—Take care of that horse, otherwise it will kick you.—Why do you work so much?—I work in order to be one day useful to my country. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## NINETY-NINTH LESSON.

## Neun und neunzigste Section.

He is too fond of me to do such a thing.	† Er liebt mich zu sehr, als daß er dieses thun sollte.
I will rather die than do that.	† Ich will lieber sterben, als daß ich dieses thun sollte or als dieses thun.
She loved him so much, that she even wished to marry him.	Sie liebte ihn so sehr, daß sie ihn sogar heirathen wollte.
He cannot have said that unless he is a fool.	† Er kann dieses nicht gesagt haben, es sey denn, daß er ein Narr ist.

To get married (to enter into matrimony).	{	Sich verheirathen.
To marry somebody.		Sich verheirathen or vermählen.
To marry (meaning to give in marriage).		Jemanden heirathen.
My cousin, having given his sister in marriage, married Lady Pommern.		Verheirathen (verheirathen).
Is your cousin married?		Nachdem mein Vetter seine Schwester verheirathet hatte (Lesson XC.), heirathete er Fräulein von Pommern.
No, he is still a bachelor.		Ist Ihr Herr Vetter verheirathet?
To be a bachelor.		† Nein, er ist noch ledig.
		† Ledig seyn *.

<i>Embarrassed, puzzled, at a loss.</i>	Verlegen.
The embarrassment, the puzzle,	die Verlegenheit.
You embarrass (puzzle) me.	Sie setzen mich in Verlegenheit.
You puzzle (perplex) me.	Sie machen mich verlegen.

The marriage,	die Heirath, die Ehe.
He asks my sister in marriage.	Er verlangt meine Schwester zur Ehe.

To take measures.	Maßregeln nehmen * (or ergreifen *).
I shall take other measures.	Ich werde andere Maßregeln ergreifen (or nehmen).

Goodness ! how rapidly does time pass in your society.

The compliment,  
You are paying me a compliment to which I do not know what to answer.

Mein Gott ! wie verstreicht die Zeit in Ihrer Gesellschaft.  
das Kompliment (plur. e <sup>1</sup>).  
Sie machen mir da ein Kompliment, worauf ich Nichts zu antworten weiß.

The least blow makes him cry (weep).

Der kleinste Schlag macht ihn weinen (bringt ihn zum Weinen).

*To frighten.*

*To be frightened.*

Thou art frightened, he is frightened.

Be not frightened.

The least thing frightens him (her, them).

At what are you frightened ?

To be frightened at something.

Erschrecken (a regular active verb).

Erschrecken \* (a neuter irregular verb) (erschrocken, erschraf).

Du erschrickst, er erschrickt.

Erschrecken Sie nicht.

Das Geringsste erschreckt ihn (sie).

Worüber erschrecken Sie ? (See Obs. C. Lesson LIV.)

Ueber Etwas (acc.) erschrecken \*.

*To depend on, upon.*

That depends upon circumstances.

That does not depend upon me.

It depends upon him to do that.

O ! yes, it depends upon him.

That man lives at every body's expense.

The expense (cost),

At other people's expense (or charge).

Abhängen\*—von.

Ankommen\*—auf.

Das hängt von den Umständen ab.

Das hängt nicht von mir ab.

Es hängt von ihm ab, dieses zu thun.

O ! ja, das hängt von ihm ab (kommt auf ihn an).

Dieser Mann lebt auf Jedermanns Unkosten.

die Unkosten (is never used in the singular).

Auf Anderer Unkosten.

<sup>1</sup> Neuter nouns, derived from foreign languages and terminating in ent, take e in the plural, except the two words : das Parlament, the parliament, das Regiment, the regiment ; which, like all other neuter nouns, take er in all the cases plural. (See *Introductory Book*, pages 25, 26, 28.)



<b>The fault,</b>	die Schuld.
It is not my fault.	{ † Ich bin nicht Schuld daran.
	{ Es ist nicht meine Schuld.
Do not lay it to my charge.	{ † Geben Sie mir die Schuld nicht.
Do not accuse me of it.	Wer kann dafür?
Who can help it?	{ † Wer ist Schuld daran?
Whose fault is it?	{ Wessen Schuld ist es?
I cannot help it.	{ Ich kann Nichts dafür.
	{ Ich kann es nicht ändern.

<b>The delay,</b>	der Aufschub.
He does it without delay.	Er thut es ohne Aufschub.
I must go (must be off).	† Ich will machen, daß ich fort- komme.
Go away! begone!	† Machen Sie, daß Sie fortkom- men!

<b>To be astonished (surprised).</b>	Erstaunen, erstaunt seyn*.
I am surprised at it.	{ Ich erstaune darüber.
	{ Ich bin darüber erstaunt.
An extraordinary thing happened which surprised every body.	{ Es ereignete sich etwas Außeror- dentliches, worüber Jedermann erstaunte (erstaunt war).
Many things have passed which will surprise you.	{ Es ist Vieles geschehen, worüber Sie erstaunen werden.
	{ Es hat sich Vieles ereignet, worüber Sie erstaunen werden.
Many days will pass before that takes place.	{ Mehrere Tage werden hingehen, ehe dieses geschieht.
	{ Es werden mehrere Tage hingehen, ehe dieses geschieht.

<b>To jest.</b>	Scherzen.
<b>The jest,</b>	der Scherz.
You are jesting.	Sie scherzen.
He is no joker (cannot take a joke).	Er läßt nicht mit sich scherzen.

<b>To beg some one's pardon.</b>	Jemanden um Verzeihung bitten*.
I beg your pardon.	Ich bitte Sie um Verzeihung.
To pardon.	Verzeihen* (verziehen, verzieh).

The watch goes too fast.  
The watch goes too slow (loses).  
My watch has stopped.

*To stop.*

Where did we leave off?

Where did we stop?

We left off at the fortieth Lesson,  
page 140.

*To wind up a watch.*

*To regulate a watch.*

Your watch is twenty minutes too  
fast, and mine a quarter of an  
hour too slow.

It will soon strike twelve.

Has it already struck twelve?

*To strike (beat).*

Thou striketh, he strikes.

Die Uhr geht vor (or zu früh).

Die Uhr geht nach (or zu spät).

Meine Uhr ist stehen geblieben.

Stehen bleiben \*.

† Wo sind wir stehen geblieben?

† Wo sind wir geblieben?

Wir sind bei der vierzigsten Lektion

Seite 140 stehen geblieben?

Eine Uhr aufziehen \*.

Eine Uhr stellen.

Ihre Uhr geht zwanzig Minuten zu  
früh (vor), und die meinige eine  
Viertelstunde zu spät (nach).

Es wird gleich zwölf schlagen.

Hat es schon zwölf geschlagen?

Schlagen \* (Imperf. schlug).

Du schlägst, er schlägt.

Till I see you again.

I hope to see you again soon.

} † Auf baldiges Wiedersehen<sup>2</sup>.

*To fail, to want, to ail.*

What ails you?

What is the matter with you?

You look so melancholy.

| Fehlen.

} Was fehlt Ihnen?

| Sie sehen so schwermüthig aus.

On condition, or provided.

I will lend you money, provided  
you will henceforth be more  
economical than you have hi-  
therto been.

Henceforth.

Economical.

{ Unter der Bedingung, daß.

Mit dem Bedinge, daß.

Ich will Ihnen Geld leihen, unter  
der Bedingung, daß Sie in Zu-  
kunft sparsamer seyn, als Sie  
bisher gewesen sind.

In Zukunft.

Sparsam or haushälterisch.

To renounce gambling.

The game (sport, play),

| Dem Spiele entsagen.

das Spiel.

To follow advice (counsel).

{ Einem Rathe folgen.

{ Einen Rath befolgen.

<sup>2</sup> This is the way in which Germans who are intimately acquainted generally express themselves when separating. It answers to the French: *au plaisir de vous revoir*, or simply *au revoir*.

## EXERCISES.

226.

What o'clock is it?—It is half-past one.—You say it is half-past one, and by (auf with the dat.) my watch it is but half-past twelve.—It will soon strike two.—Pardon me, it has not yet struck one.—I assure you, it is five-and-twenty minutes past one, for my watch goes very well.—Bless me! how rapidly time passes in your society.—You make me a compliment to which I do not know what to answer.—Have you bought your watch in Paris?—I have not bought it, my uncle has made me a present of it (damit).—What has that woman entrusted you with?—She has entrusted me with a secret of a (von einem) great count who is in a great embarrassment about the marriage of one of his daughters.—Does any one ask her in marriage?—The man who demands her in marriage is a nobleman of the neighbourhood (aus der Nachbarschaft).—Is he rich?—No, he is a poor devil who has not a farthing (der Heller).—You say you have no friends among your schoolfellows (der Mitschüler); but is it not your fault? You have spoken ill of them (von ihnen), and they have not offended you. They have done you good, and nevertheless you have quarrelled with them (page 332). Believe me, he who has no friends deserves (verdienen) to have none.

227.

*Dialogue (das Gespräch) between a Tailor and his Journeyman* (der Gesell, gen. en).—Charles, have you taken the clothes to the Count Narissi?—Yes, Sir, I have taken them to him.—What did he say?—He said nothing but that (außer daß) he had a great mind to give me a box on the ear (die Ohrfeige), because I had not brought them sooner.—What did you answer him?—Sir, said I, I do not understand that joke: pay me what you owe me; and if you do not do so instantly, I shall take other measures. Scarcely (kaum) had I said that, when he put his hand to his sword (nach dem Degen greifen \*), and I ran away (die Flucht nehmen \*).

228.

At what are you astonished?—I am astonished to find you still in bed.—If you knew how (wie) sick I am, you would not be astonished at it.—Has it already struck twelve?—Yes, madam, it is already half-past twelve.—Is it possible that it is so late?—That is not late, it is still early.—Does your watch go well (recht)?—No, miss, it goes a quarter of an hour too fast.—And mine goes half an hour too slow.—Perhaps it has stopped.—In fact, you are right.—Is it wound up?—It is wound up, and yet (dennoch) it does not go.—Do you hear, it is striking one o'clock.—Then I will regulate my watch and go home.—Pray (ich bitte)

stay a little longer (noch ein wenig)!—I cannot, for we dine precisely at one o'clock (mit dem Schläge eins).—(Adieu), till I see you again.

## 229.

What is the matter with you, my dear friend? why do you look so melancholy?—Nothing ails me.—Are you in any trouble (haben Sie irgend einen Kummer)?—I have nothing, and even less than nothing, for I have not a farthing, and owe a great deal to my creditors. Am I not very unhappy?—When a man is well and has friends he is not unhappy.—Dare I ask you a favour?—What do you wish?—Have the goodness to lend me fifty crowns.—I will lend you them with all my heart, but on condition that you will renounce gambling, and be more economical than you have hitherto been.—I see now, that you are my friend, and I love you too much not to follow your advice.

John!—What is your pleasure, sir?—Bring some wine.—Presently, sir.—Henry!—Madam?—Make the fire.—The maid-servant has made it already.—Bring me some paper, pens and ink. Bring me also some sand (der Streusand) or blotting-paper (das Löschpapier), sealing-wax (der Siegelack) and a light (Licht).—Go and tell my sister not to wait for me, and be back again at twelve o'clock, in order to carry my letters to (auf) the post.—Very well, madam. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

To my liking.	Nach meinem Belieben (Gefallen).
To every body's liking.	Nach Jedermanns Belieben (Wohlgefallen).
Nobody can do anything to his liking.	Niemand kann ihm Etwas recht machen.

The question is, it turns upon.	{ Es handelt sich um. Es kommt darauf an zu.
It does not turn upon your pleasure, but upon your progress.	Es handelt sich nicht um Ihr Vergnügen, sondern um Ihre Fortschritte.
You play, sir, but playing is not the thing, but studying.	Sie spielen, mein Herr; aber Sie sollen nicht spielen, sondern studiren.
What is going on?	{ Um was (worum) handelt sich's? Worauf kommt es an?
The question is to know what we shall do to pass the time agreeably.	{ Es kommt darauf an zu wissen, was wir thun werden (conversational style: Wir müssen wissen, was wir thun sollen), um unsere Zeit angenehm hinzubringen od. zuzubringen.
I propose (intend) joining a hunting party.	Ich nehme mir vor, einer Jagdpartie beizuwohnen.

On purpose.	Mit Fleiß, vorseßlich.
I beg your pardon, I have not done it on purpose.	Ich bitte Sie um Verzeihung, ich habe es nicht vorseßlich (mit Fleiß) gethan.

A game at chess,	eine Partie Schach.
A game at billiards,	eine Partie Billard.
To play upon the violin.	Auf der Violine spielen.
To play the violin.	Die Violine od. Violin spielen.
To play for something.	Um Etwas spielen.
To play upon the harpsichord.	Auf dem Klavier (das Klavier) spielen.
To play upon the flute.	Auf der Flöte (die Flöte) blasen *.
To play at cards.	Karten spielen.
The game of chess,	das Schachspiel;
the card,	die Karte;
the playing at cards (the card-playing),	das Kartenspiel;
the pack of cards,	das Spiel Karten.

*Obs.* The name of the instrument is put in the accusative when we wish to express, with the verb *spielen*, that a person knows how to play; but when we wish to express that he is actually playing, it requires the preposition *auf* with the dative. Ex. *die Violine spielen*, to play the violin; *auf der Violine spielen*, to play upon the violin. The names of games are employed without an article, and the rest is as in English.

<i>To blow.</i>	Blasen * (geblasen, blies).
Thou blowest he blows.	Du blästest, er bläset.
<hr/>	
To hold one's tongue, To stop speaking, to be silent.	} Schweigen * (geschwiegen, schwieg).
Do you hold your tongue? I do hold my tongue.	
After speaking half an hour, he held his tongue.	Schweigen Sie? Ich schweige. Nachdem er eine halbe Stunde geredet hatte, schwieg er.

<i>To suspect.</i>	Vermuthen.
I suspect what he has done.	Ich vermuthe, was er gethan hat.
He does not suspect what is going to happen to him.	Er vermuthet nicht, was ihm widerfahren wird.
Do you intend to make a long stay in town?	Gedenken Sie, sich lange in der Stadt aufzuhalten?
I do not intend to make a long stay there.	Ich gedenke, mich nicht lange da aufzuhalten.
To make a stay.	Sich aufhalten *.
The stay, the sojourn.	der Aufenthalt.

<i>To think.</i>	Denken * (gedacht, dachte).
To think of some one or of something.	An Jemanden oder an Etwas denken *.
Of whom do you think?	An wen denken Sie?
Of what do you think?	Woran denken Sie? (See Rule, Lesson LXVI.)

## EXERCISES.

## 230.

Sir, may I ask you where the earl of B. lives?—He lives near the castle (Lesson LXX.) on the other side (jenseit) of the river.—Could you tell me which road I must take to go thither?—You must go along the shore (längs dem Gestade hin), and you will come to a little street on the right, which will lead you straight (gerade) to his house (auf das Haus zu). It is a fine house, you

will find it easily (letdt).—I thank you, sir.—Does the count N. live here?—Yes, sir, walk in (sich herein bemühen), if you please.—Is the count at home? I wish to have the honour to speak to him.—Yes, sir, he is at home; whom shall I have the honour to announce (melden)?—I am from B., and my name is F.

Which is the shortest way to the arsenal (das Zeughaus)?—Go down this street, and when you come to the bottom, turn to the left and take the cross-way; you will then enter into a rather narrow (enge) street, which will lead you to a great square, where you will see a blind alley.—Through which I must pass?—No, for there is no outlet (der Ausgang). You must leave it on the right, and pass under the arcade which is near it.—And then?—And then you must inquire further.—I am very much obliged to you.—Do not mention it (Es hat nicht Ursache).

## 231.

Are you able to translate a French letter into German?—I am (es).—Who has (es) taught you?—My German master has enabled me to do it.—You are singing, gentlemen, but it is not a time for singing; you ought to be silent, and to listen to what you are told.—We are at a loss.—What are you at a loss about?—I am going to tell you: it is a question with us how we shall pass our time agreeably.—Play a game at billiards or at chess.—We have proposed joining a hunting party: do you go with (us)?—I cannot, for I have not done my task yet; and if I neglect it, my master will scold me.—Every one according to his liking; if you like staying at home better than going a hunting, we cannot hinder you.—Does Mr. K. go with us?—Perhaps.—I should not like to go with him, for he is too great a talker, excepting that he is an honest man.

What is the matter with you? you look angry.—I have reason to be angry, for there is no means of getting money now.—Have you been at Mr. A's.?—I have been at his house; but there is no possibility of borrowing any from him. I suspected that he would not lend me any; that is the reason why I did not wish to ask him; and had you not told me to do so, I should not have subjected myself (sich aussetzen) to a refusal (die abschlägige Antwort).

## 232.

I suspected that you would be thirsty, and that your sister would be hungry; that is the reason why I brought you hither. I am sorry however that your mother is not here. I am astonished (es befremdet mich) that you do not drink your coffee.—If I were not sleepy I would drink it.—Sometimes (mal) you are sleepy, sometimes cold, sometimes warm, and sometimes something else is the matter with you (ist Ihnen etwas Anders).—I believe that you think too much about (an) the misfortune that

has happened to your friend (fem.).—If I did not think about it, who would think about it?—Of whom does your brother think?—He thinks of me; for we always think of each other when we are not together (beisammen).

I have seen six players (der Spieler) to-day, who were all winning at the same time (zu gleicher Zeit).—That cannot be, for a player can only win when another loses.—You would be right if I were speaking of people that had played at cards or billiards; but I am speaking of flute and violin players (der Flöten- und Violinspieler).—Do you sometimes practise (machen) music?—Very often, for I like it much.—What instrument do you play?—I play the violin, and my sister plays the harpsichord.—My brother, who plays the bass (der Baß), accompanies (begleiten) us, and Miss Stolz sometimes applauds us (Jemandem Beifall zuflatschen).—Does she not also play some musical instrument (das musikalische Instrument)?—She plays the harp (die Harfe), but she is too proud (stolz) to practise music with us.—A very (sehr) poor town went to considerable expense (der beträchtliche Aufwand) in feasts and illuminations (mit Freudenfesten und Erleuchtungen) on the occasion of its prince passing through (bei der Durchreise ihres—).—The latter seemed himself astonished (erstaunt) at it.—“It has only done,” said a courtier (der Hofmann), “what it owed (to your majesty).”—“That is true,” replied (versetzen) another, “but it owes all that it has done.” (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)



## FIFTH MONTH.

## Fünfter Monat.

## HUNDRED AND FIRST LESSON.

## Hundert und erste Section.

*Either—or.*

Entweder — oder. (Lesson LXIII.)

He either has done it, or will still do it.

Er hat es entweder gethan, oder wird es noch thun.

*Obs. A.* It has been noticed in many parts of this work, that certain conjunctions correspond with others that generally follow them. These conjunctions are :

Entweder is followed by: oder (Lesson LXIII.), either—or.

Je <sup>1</sup>, . . . je, or besto, the—the.

Nicht allein, } . . . { sondern auch (Lesson LXIII.), not only—  
Nicht nur, } but also.

Obgleich, } (Less. XCIII.) { so—doch, or gleichwohl, or nichts desto weniger,  
Ob schon, } though—nevertheless.  
Obwohl, }

So, . . . so, however—still.

Sowohl, . . . { als, or als auch (Lesson LXIII.), as well—  
as.

Weder, . . . { noch (Lessons IX. and LXIII.), neither—  
nor.

Wenn, . . . so, if—so.

Wenn gleich, } . . . { so—doch, though—yet or nevertheless.  
Wenn schon, }

Zwar, . . . { aber, or allein or gleichwohl or jedoch, though  
—nevertheless, or but.

<sup>1</sup> Je unites two comparatives.

<sup>2</sup> Wenn is not only combined with gleich and schon, but also with anders, jedoch, auch, selbst, and nur. Ex. Wenn anders, if otherwise; wenn jedoch, if however; wenn auch or wenn selbst, if even; wenn nur, if only. All these compound conjunctions must be considered as two separate words, between which the subject and even the case of the verb (when a personal pronoun) may be placed. The same observation applies to the combination of ob with other words. (See Lesson XCIII.

*Obs. H.* and Note 2.)

Prepositions either govern the genitive, or the dative, or the accusative, or finally the dative and accusative.

The sooner the better.

The greater our pleasures, the more we feel how transitory they are.

*Obs. B.* *Desto* may be placed in the first member of the phrase, in which case *je* begins the second. *Ex.*

A work of art is the more beautiful the more perfect it is.

She is not only handsome, but she is rich also.

Not only his idleness, but also his indiscretion makes him contemptible.

Though this young lady is not very handsome, she is nevertheless very amiable.

However handsome she may be, still she is not amiable.

You as well as your sister.

She is as handsome as she is amiable and rich.

They had neither bread, nor meat, nor arms, nor money.

If he does not pay you for the horse, tell me.

Though I should have money, still I would give him none.

Indeed I do not know him yet, but he seems to be docile.

Though I wrote to him, nevertheless he has not answered me.

Die Verhältnißwörter (Präpositionen) regieren entweder den Genitiv, oder den Dativ, oder den Accusativ, oder endlich den Dativ und Accusativ.

*Je* eher, *je* lieber.

*Je* größer unsere Freuden sind, desto mehr empfinden wir ihre Vergänglichkeit.

Ein Kunstwerk ist desto schöner, je vollkommener es ist.

(Sulzer.)

Sie ist nicht nur schön, sondern auch reich.

Nicht nur seine Faulheit, sondern auch seine Unbescheidenheit macht ihn verächtlich.

Obgleich dieses Fräulein nicht sehr schön ist, so ist sie doch sehr liebenswürdig.

So schön sie auch seyn mag, so ist sie doch nicht liebenswürdig.

Sowohl Sie, als Ihr Fräulein Schwester.

Sie ist sowohl schön, als liebenswürdig und reich.

Sie hatten weder Brod, noch Fleisch, noch Waffen, noch Geld.

Wenn er Ihnen das Pferd nicht bezahlt, so sagen Sie es mir.

Wenn ich gleich Geld hätte, so gäbe ich ihm doch keins.

Zwar kenne ich ihn noch nicht, aber er scheint mir folgsam.

Ich habe ihm zwar geschrieben, gleichwohl hat er mir nicht geantwortet.

I wish he had not done it.

Ich wünschte, er hätte es nicht gethan.

Ich wünschte, daß er es nicht gethan hätte.

*Obs. C.* The conjunction *daß* may be omitted; but then the verb immediately follows its subject.

I wish you would go with me.	{ Ich wollte, Sie gingen mit mir. Ich wollte, daß Sie mit mir gingen.
I hope that your sister will marry my brother.	{ Ich hoffe, Ihr Fräulein Schwester wird meinen Bruder heirathen. Ich hoffe, daß Ihr Fräulein Schwester meinen Bruder heirathen wird.
Suppose we had neither bread, nor wine, nor money.	{ Gesezt, wir hätten weder Brod, noch Wein, noch Geld. Gesezt, daß wir weder Brod, noch Wein, noch Geld hätten.
Would to God that all great lords loved peace!	{ Wollte Gott, alle große Herren liebten den Frieden! Wollte Gott, daß alle große Herren den Frieden liebten!

<i>By virtue of.</i>	Kraft (governs the genitive).
By virtue of his employment (his office) he must act thus.	Er muß Kraft seines Amtes so handeln.

<i>According to (by virtue of).</i>	Vermöge (governs the genitive).
According to your order I must speak thus.	Vermöge Ihres Befehls, muß ich so sprechen.

<i>Instead of.</i>	Anstatt or statt (governs the genitive).
He sent his daughter instead of his son.	Anstatt seines Sohnes schickte er seine Tochter.
He has adopted him.	{ † Er hat ihn an Kindes Statt <sup>3</sup> aufgenommen.
Go thither instead of me.	Statt meiner gehe Du hin.

<i>In consequence of (according to).</i>	Laut (governs the genitive).
According to his letter, he ought to arrive here on the 18th of this month.	Laut seines Briefes, muß er den 18ten dieses hier eintreffen.

To exclaim.	Ausrufen* (Imperf. tief).
To make uneasy.	Beunruhigen.

<sup>3</sup> The word *Statt*, lieu, place, when thus separated from an *must* be considered as a substantive.

To be uneasy (to fret).  
 Why do you fret (are you un-  
 easy)?  
 I do not fret (am not uneasy).  
 Compose yourself!

Beunruhigt (besorgt) seyn \*.  
 Warum sind Sie beunruhigt (be-  
 sorgt)?  
 Ich bin nicht besorgt (beunruhigt)  
 Beruhigen Sie sich!

To alter, to change.  
 That man has altered a great deal  
 since I saw him.  
 To alter a coat.

Sich verändern.  
 Dieser Mann hat sich sehr verändert,  
 seitdem ich ihn nicht gesehen habe.  
 Einen Rock umändern.

To recommend.  
 To take leave (to commend one's  
 self).  
 Farewell, adieu!  
 I have the honour to bid you  
 adieu.

Empfehlen \*.  
 Sich empfehlen \*.  
 Ich empfehle mich Ihnen!  
 † Ich habe die Ehre, mich Ihnen zu  
 empfehlen.

*Obs. D.* This and leben Sie wohl, farewell, is the general salute of  
 the Germans when leaving each other.

Farewell (adieu)!  
 To bid one's friends adieu.  
 The recommendation (respects,  
 compliments),  
 Present my compliments to him  
 (to her).  
 Remember me to him (to her).

Leben Sie wohl!  
 Seinen Freunden Lebewohl sagen.  
 die Empfehlung.  
 } Machen Sie ihm (ihr) meine Emp-  
 fehlung.

To enjoy.  
 Enjoy all the pleasures that virtue  
 permits.  
 The past,  
 the present,  
 the presence,  
 In his presence.  
 The future,  
 the loss,  
 the loss of time,  
 Not to fail.  
 Pray present my compliments (my  
 respects) to your sister.

Genießen \* (governs the acc.).  
 Genießen Sie alle Vergnügungen,  
 welche die Tugend erlaubt.  
 die Vergangenheit, das Vergangene;  
 das Gegenwärtige;  
 die Gegenwart;  
 In seiner Gegenwart.  
 das Zukünftige;  
 der Verlust;  
 der Zeitverlust.  
 Ausrichten, nicht ermangeln.  
 Ich bitte Sie, Ihrem Fräulein  
 Schwester gütigst meine Empfeh-  
 lung zu machen.

If you please.

I shall not fail.

{ Wenn es Ihnen gefällig ist, or  
simply gefälligst.  
Wenn Sie so gut seyn wollen, or  
simply gütigst.  
{ Ich werde es ausrichten.  
Ich werde nicht ermangeln.

## EXERCISES.

### 233.

I have the honour to wish you a good morning. How do you do?—Very well, at your service (Ihnen aufzuwarten).—And how are they all at home (befindet man sich bei Ihnen zu Hause)?—Tolerably well, thank God (Gott sey Dank). My sister was a little indisposed (unpäßlich), but she is better (wieder hergestellt); she told me to give you her best compliments (sie läßt sich Ihnen bestens empfehlen).—I am glad (es ist mir lieb) to hear that she is well. As for you, you are health itself; you cannot look better (Sie könnten nicht besser aussehen).—I have no time to be ill: my business would not permit me.—Please to sit down (belieben Sie sich niederzulassen), here is a chair.—I will not detain you from your business (von den Geschäften abhalten \*); I know that a merchant's time is precious (daß einem Kaufmanne die Zeit kostbar ist).—I have nothing pressing (nichts Eiliges) to do now; my courier is already dispatched (meine Post ist schon abgefertigt).—I shall not stay (sich aufhalten \*) any longer. I only wished in passing by (im Vorbeigehen), to inquire about (sich erkundigen nach) your health.—You do me much honour.—It is very fine weather to-day. If you will allow me, I shall have the pleasure of seeing you again this afternoon (nach Tisch), and if you have time we will take a little turn together (so gehen wir ein wenig mit einander spazieren).—With the greatest pleasure. In that case I shall wait for you.—I will come for you (Sie abholen) about (gegen) seven o'clock.—Adieu then (also), till I see you again.—I have the honour to bid you adieu.

### 234.

The loss of time is an irreparable (unerseßlich) loss. A single minute cannot be recovered (wiedererlangen) for all the gold in the world.—It is then of (von) the greatest importance (die Wichtigkeit) to employ well the time, which consists only of minutes (aus Minuten bestehen \*) of which we must make good use (die man wohl benutzen muß).—We have but the present; the past is no longer any thing, and the future is uncertain. A great many people (sehr viele Menschen) ruin themselves (sich zu Grunde richten), because they wish to indulge themselves too much (weil sie sich allzu gütlich thun wollen). If most (die meisten) men knew how to content

themselves (*sich begnügen*) with what they have they would be happy, but their greediness (*die Gierigkeit*) very often makes them unhappy. In order to be happy, we must (*muß man*) forget the past, not trouble ourselves about (*sich bekümmern um*) the future, and enjoy the present.—I was very dejected (*traurig*) when my cousin came to me. “What is the matter with you?” he asked me. “Oh (*ach*)! my dear cousin,” replied I, “in losing that money, I have lost every thing.” “Do not fret,” said he to me, “for I have found your money.”

## 235.

As soon as Mr. Flausen sees me he begins to speak French, in order to practise it (*um sich zu üben*), and overwhelms me with politeness (*mit Höflichkeit überhäufen*), so that I often do not know what to answer (*was ich ihm antworten soll*). His brothers do the same (*es eben so machen*). However they are very good people; they are not only rich and amiable, but they are also generous (*großmüthig*) and charitable (*wohlthätig*). They love me sincerely (*aufrecht*), therefore I love them also, and consequently (*folglich*) shall never say anything to their disadvantage (*Nachtheiliges von ihnen*). I should love them still more if they did not make so much ceremony (*die Umstände*); but every one has his faults (*der Fehler*), and mine is to speak too much of their ceremonies.

## 236.

Have the enemies surrendered (*sich ergeben*\*)?—They have not surrendered, for they did not prefer life to death; and though they had neither bread, nor water, nor arms, nor money, they determined to die rather than surrender.—Why are you so sad?—You do not know what makes me uneasy, my dear friend (*fem.*).—Tell me, for I assure you that I share (*theilen*) your sufferings (*das Leiden*) as well as (*eben sowohl als*) your pleasures (*die Freude*).—Though I am sure that you partake of (*Theil an einer Sache nehmen*\*) my sufferings, I cannot, however, tell you now (*in diesem Augenblick*) what makes me uneasy; but I will tell you when an opportunity offers (*gelegentlich oder bei Gelegenheit*). Let us speak of something else now. What do you think of the man who spoke to us yesterday at the concert?—He is a man of much understanding (*ein sehr verständiger Mann*), and not at all wrapt up in his merits (*von seinen Verdiensten eingenommen seyn*\*). But why do you ask me that?—To speak of something.—It is said (*man sagt*): contentment surpasses riches (*Zufriedenheit geht über Reichthum*); let us then always be content. Let us share with each other (*mit einander theilen*) what we have, and live all our life-time (*unser ganzes Leben*) inseparable (*ungetrenntlich*) friends. You will always be welcome (*willkommen*) at my house, and I hope to be equally so (*es auch*) at yours.—If I saw you happy I

should be equally so, and we should be more contented than the greatest princes, who are not always so. We shall be happy, when we shall be perfectly (vollkommen) contented with what we have ; and if we do our duty as we ought (gehörig), God will take care of the rest (so wird der liebe Gott für das Uebrige sorgen). The past being no longer any thing, let us not be uneasy about the future, and enjoy the present.

## 237.

Behold, ladies, those beautiful (herrlich) flowers, with their colours so fresh and bright (mit ihren so frischen und glänzenden Farben) ; they drink nothing but water. The white lily has the colour of innocence (die Unschuld) ; the violet indicates gentleness (die Sanftmuth) ; you may (man kann) see it in Louisa's eyes. The forget-me-not (das Vergissmännchen) has the colour of heaven, our future (künftig) dwelling (die Wohnung, repeat the genitive), and the rose (die Rose), the queen of flowers, is the emblem (das Sinnbild) of beauty (die Schönheit) and of joy (die Freude).—You (man) see all that personified (verwirklicht) in seeing the beautiful Amelia (Amalie).—How beautiful is the fresh verdure (das junge frische Grün) ! It is salutary (wohl thun \*) to our eyes, and has the colour of hope (die Hoffnung), our most faithful (treu, repeat the genitive) friend (fem.), who never deserts (verlassen \*) us, not even in death (im Tode).—One word more, my dear friend.—What is your pleasure ?—I forgot to tell you to present my compliments to your mother. Tell her, if you please, that I regret (bebauern) not having been at home when lately she honoured (beehren) me with her visit.—I thank you for her (ihretwegen), I shall not fail.—Farewell then. 'See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## HUNDRED AND SECOND LESSON.

*Hundert und zweite Section.*

## OF THE ADVERB.

WE have hitherto shown, by numerous examples for the practice of learners, the place which the adverb is to occupy in a sentence. Let us now determine the place of the adverb by standard rules.

As the adverb modifies the signification of the verb, it should always be near it, particularly the negative *nicht*, which, if misplaced, would entirely change the meaning of a phrase. Ex.

I have not the honour to know you.	Ich habe nicht die Ehre, Sie zu kennen.
------------------------------------	---

And:

I have the honour not to know you.	Ich habe die Ehre, Sie nicht zu kennen.
------------------------------------	---

*Rules.*

1st. The adverb precedes the adjective, the meaning of which it modifies. Ex. Ein wahrhaft guter Mann, a truly good man; eine wirklich gute Gelegenheit, a truly good opportunity; ein sehr artiges Kind, a very good child.

2d. It follows the imperative and precedes the infinitive to which it relates. Ex. Reden Sie laut, speak aloud; sprechen Sie nicht so schnell, do not speak so quickly; schreiben Sie langsam, so werden Sie schön schreiben, write slowly, and you will write well; ich bitte Sie, nicht zu schnell zu schreiben, pray, do not write too fast.

3d. It follows the simple tense of the verb, but precedes it when the sentence depends on a conjunction. Ex. Ich sage es Ihnen frei heraus, I tell it you frankly; ich verstehe Sie nicht, weil Sie zu schnell sprechen, I do not understand you, because you speak too fast (Lesson LXXI.); er kommt um zehn Uhr Morgens<sup>1</sup> von da zurück, he returns from there at ten o'clock in the morning (Lesson XLIX.); wenn Sie langsam redeten, so würde ich Sie verstehen, if you spoke slowly I should understand you.

---

<sup>1</sup> Um zehn Uhr Morgens, is an adverbial phrase; and all sorts of adverbial expressions, or compound adverbs, as they may be called, follow the rules of simple adverbs.



4th. In compound tenses it precedes the past participle. Ex. Er hätte laut gelesen, wenn Sie ihn öfter dazu angehalten hätten, he would have read aloud, if you had oftener engaged him to do so; ich bin schon da gewesen, I have already been there (Lesson XLIII.); ich habe ihn vorgestern gesehen, I saw him the day before yesterday.

5th. It follows the case of the verb, but precedes it when it is a partitive, or joined to an indefinite article. Ex. Ich sah ihn gestern, I saw him yesterday; er hat es mir so eben gegeben, he has just now given it me; ich will ihn Ihnen morgen schicken, I will send it you to-morrow (Lesson XXX.); hast Du manchmal Halstücher ausbessern lassen? hast thou sometimes had cravats mended? ich habe manchmal welche ausbessern lassen, I have sometimes had some mended (Lesson XLVI.); haben Sie je einen Elephanten gesehen? have you ever seen an elephant? ich habe nie einen gesehen, I have never seen one; er hatte diesen Morgen kein Geld, he had no money this morning; er trägt gern einen großen Hut, he likes to wear a large hat.

6th. It precedes the case of the verb, when governed by a preposition. Ex. Ich will ihn morgen zu Ihnen schicken, I will send him to you to-morrow (Lesson XXX.); sind Sie lange bei meinem Vater geblieben? have you stayed long with my father (Lesson XLIX.); ich bin eine Stunde lang bei ihm geblieben, I have stayed with him a full hour (Lessons XLIX. and L.); wir sprachen so eben von Ihnen, we have just spoken of you; können Sie heute zu mir kommen? can you come to me to-day?

## PLACE OF THE NEGATIVE nicht.

### Rules.

1st. It likewise follows the simple tense and the case of the verb when there is one, but precedes the infinitive and the past participle. Ex. Ich verstehe diesen Mann nicht, I do not understand that man; der Mann hat den Koffer nicht, the man has not the trunk; der junge Mensch hat ihn nicht, the young man has it not (Lesson XI.); Sie essen nicht, you do not eat; ich habe ihn nicht gehabt, I have not had it (Lesson XLIV.); er will nicht arbeiten, he does not wish to work; ich habe ihn nicht gesehen, I have not seen him; ich habe sie nicht gekannt, I have not known them (Lesson XLVI.); ich höre Sie, aber verstehe Sie nicht, I hear, but do not understand you (Lesson XLVIII.); ich gebe es ihm nicht, I do not give it him; sie lieben sich nicht, they do not love each other; ich schmeichle mir nicht, I do not flatter myself; sie ähneln einander nicht ähnlich, they do not resemble each other. (Lesson LXXXVIII.)

**Obs. A.** When the negative sentence is preceded or followed by

an affirmative one, *nicht* precedes the case of the verb; but if the affirmative sentence contains another nominative with *aber*, the negative follows the general rule. Ex. *Ich habe nicht diesen, sondern jenen*, I have not the latter, but the former; *er hat dieses, aber nicht jenes*, he has the latter, but not the former (Lesson XIII.); *ich habe Ihren Hut nicht, aber mein Bruder hat ihn*, it is not I who have your hat, but my brother.

*Obs. B.* A negative, not depending on the nominative of the verb, precedes the word the sense of which it modifies. Ex. *Er arbeitet den ganzen Tag nicht*, he does not work during the whole day; and *man arbeitet nicht den ganzen Tag*, one does not work all day.

2d. The case of the verb being governed by a preposition, *nicht* like other adverbs (Rule 6, above) precedes it. Ex. *Er ist nicht zu Hause*, he is not at home (Lesson XXVIII.) *ich fürchte mich nicht vor ihm*, I do not fear him. (Lesson LXXII.)

3d. It follows the adverbs of time, but precedes all other adverbs, as adverbs of quality, of place, &c. Ex. *Ich arbeite heute nicht*, I do not work to-day; *er schreibt nicht schön*, he does not write well; *er ist nicht da*, he is not there; *ich gehe nicht dahin*, I do not go thither.

4th. It follows the adverb *noch*. Ex. *Ich bin noch nicht da gewesen*, I have not yet been there; *ich bin noch nicht bei ihm gewesen*, I have not yet been at his house. (Lesson XLIII.) The following sentences, however, must be distinguished from each other: *wollen Sie noch nicht Etwas essen?* will you not eat anything yet? and *wollen Sie nicht noch Etwas essen?* will you not eat anything more? In the latter sentence *nicht* modifies the signification of *noch Etwas*.

*Obs. C.* The negative precedes the word *auch*, when the sentence is both interrogative and negative, but follows it when the sentence is simply negative. Ex. *Bin ich nicht auch da gewesen?* have I not also been there? *und ich auch nicht*, nor I neither; *und er auch nicht*, nor he neither.

---

To pretend to be ill.

This boy always pretends to be ill; but when we sit down to dinner he is generally well again.

{ † *Sich für krank ausgeben* \*.  
† *Sagen man sey krank*.

Dieser Knabe gibt sich immer für krank aus; allein wenn man zu Tische gehet, so ist er gewöhnlich wieder hergestellt (wieder gesund).

---

*To be said.*

He is said to have suffered shipwreck near the coast of Sicily. Out of all his property, he is said to have saved nothing but an empty portmanteau.

† Sollen \*.

† Er soll an der Küste von Sicilien Schiffbruch gelitten haben.  
† Er soll von allen seinen Habseligkeiten Nichts, als einen leeren Reisefackel gerettet haben.

## OF TENSES.

1st. The present tense is frequently substituted for the imperfect, to enliven the narrative and excite attention. This is sometimes done in English, but not so often as in German. Ex.

Imagine my horror! Yesterday I went with my child to the gate of the town, to see the ascent of the balloon. We were soon surrounded by the crowd, when suddenly I lost sight of my child, and it was not till an hour afterwards that I found it, trampled under foot, and nearly crushed to death.

I now ascend the mountain; a deep valley unfolds itself to my delighted eyes; a limpid stream murmurs among the verdant shrubs; sheep are grazing at my feet, and I behold the last rays of the setting sun breaking through the deep foliage of the distant wood.

Denkt Euch meinen Schrecken! ich gehe gestern mit meinem Kinde bei dem Aufsteigen des Luftballs vor das Thor, komme mit ihm ins Gedränge, verliere es aus meinen Augen, und finde es erst nach einer Stunde beinahe zerdrückt und zertreten wieder (for: ich ging, kam, verlor and fand).

Jetzt erklimme ich den Berg; ein tiefes Thal eröffnet sich meinem forschenden Auge; zwischen zarten Gebüschern rieselt ein klarer Bach, zu meinen Füßen weiden Lämmer, und durch den fernen Wald brechen sich die letzten Strahlen der sinkenden Sonne.

2d. The present tense is employed for the future, when that time is indicated by another word in the sentence. Ex.

We set out to-morrow for Berlin, but I shall be back within a week, and I shall then certainly come to see you.

I shall be back in a moment.

Morgen reisen wir nach Berlin; in acht Tagen komme ich aber wieder, und dann besuche ich Dich gewiß (for werden wir reisen, werde ich wiederkommen, &c.).

Ich komme gleich wieder.

We scale the castle this very night,

I have the keys, we kill

The guards, and deliver thee from  
thy prison

Dies Schloß ersteigen wir in dieser  
Nacht,

Der Schlüssel bin ich mächtig. Wir  
ermorden

Die Hüter, reißen Dich aus Deiner  
Kammer.

(Schiller's Maria Stuart.)

1st. The imperfect has already been touched upon in Lesson LIX. It is the historical tense of the Germans. Ex.

Scipio Africanus was in the habit of saying, he never was less idle than when he had nothing to do; and in fact his busiest time was that which he spent in solitude. For it was there he meditated over his great enterprises and his future deeds. In the bosom of retirement, he traced plans for the happiness of his country; and there, far from the intercourse of his fellow-citizens, he devoted his thoughts to the promotion of their welfare.

Scipio, der Afrikaner, sagte, er wäre nie weniger ohne Beschäftigung, als wenn er Nichts zu thun hätte. Wirklich war er auch nie mehr beschäftigt, als in der Einsamkeit; denn hier sann er seinen wichtigen Unternehmungen und Geschäften nach; hier im Schoße der Ruhe entwarf er Pläne zum Wohl seines Vaterlandes, und hier, entfernt aus dem Kreise seiner Mitbürger, unterhielt er sich einzig und allein mit dem Glücke derselben.

2d. It is used to narrate an action or event of which the narrator was an eye-witness, or to express an action in reference to another which was either simultaneous with, or antecedent to it. (Lesson LIX.)

Yesterday a child was drowned while I was on the bridge.

He granted my request because he found it just.

I was playing with my pupil, when the news was brought to me.

Gestern ertrank ein Kind, als ich auf der Brücke stand.

Er gewährte meine Bitte, weil er sie gerecht fand.

Ich spielte mit meinem Zöglinge, als man mir die Nachricht brachte.

1st. The perfect tense is used to express an action or event as perfectly ended without any reference to another circumstance, and when the narrator was not an eye-witness of it. Ex.

Were you yesterday at the concert?

Has the army been beaten?

Has anybody been drowned?

Were you ever in Vienna?

Sind Sie gestern im Concert gewesen?

Ist die Armee geschlagen worden?

Ist Jemand ertrunken?

Sind Sie je in Wien gewesen?

2d. The imperfect may even be used when the narrator has not witnessed the event ; but then he must take care to add to his narrative a phrase like : *sagte er, he said ; sagt man, it is said, &c.* Ex.

They say, that there was the day before yesterday a great feast in the town.

Borgestern, sagt man, war ein großes Fest in der Stadt.

They say there was a battle on the 25th of last month.

Den fünf und zwanzigsten vorigen Monats, heißt es, fiel eine Schlacht vor.

*Obs. D.* We have already seen (Lesson XXXVI.) that we cannot say with the English, I am writing, I do write ; both of which must be expressed by the only present *ich schreibe, I write ;* nor, I was writing, I did write, both of which must be expressed by the only imperfect *ich schrieb, I wrote.* (Lesson LIX.) Expressions such as the following : *When you come to learn, he is to write, to go, I am to have it, &c.,* cannot be translated literally into German. In such cases we use the future when mere futurity, and the verb *sollen* when necessity or a wish is to be expressed. Ex.

When you come to learn French.

Wann Sie französisch lernen werden.

He is to write.

Er wird schreiben.

Am I to go thither ?

Soll ich hingehen ?

He is to go thither.

Er soll hingehen.

Am I to have this book ?

Soll ich dieses Buch haben ?

Am I to give you a pen ?

Soll ich Ihnen eine Feder geben ?

I was to speak for them all.

Ich sollte für Alle sprechen.

He was to arrive on the 20th.

Er sollte den 20ten ankommen.

*Obs. E.* At the end of a phrase we sometimes omit the auxiliary of the perfect and pluperfect tenses, when the phrase that follows it begins with another auxiliary. Ex.

Though I have never been in Paris, I am nevertheless acquainted with all that is going on there.

Ob ich gleich nie zu Paris gewesen bin, bin ich doch von Allem unterrichtet, was daselbst vorgeht ;

or,

Ob ich gleich niemals zu Paris gewesen, so bin ich doch von Allem unterrichtet, was daselbst vorgeht.

As he did not answer me, I wrote  
to him no more.

The enemy having been beaten, it  
is to be hoped that the war will  
be at an end.

Da er mir nicht geantwortet (hat),  
habe ich ihm nicht mehr geschrie-  
ben.

Nachdem der Feind geschlagen wor-  
den (ist), ist zu hoffen, daß der  
Krieg geendigt seyn wird.

## EXERCISES.

### 238.

Have you seen your niece?—Yes; she is a very good girl, who writes well, and speaks German still better: therefore she is honoured and loved by every one.—And her brother, what is he doing?—Do not speak to me of him, he is a naughty (böse) boy, who writes always badly, and speaks German still worse: he is therefore loved by nobody. He is very fond of dainties (der gute Bissen); but he does not like books. Sometimes he goes to bed at broad day-light (bei hellem Tage), and pretends to be ill; but when we sit down to dinner, he is generally better again. He is to study physic (die Arzneikunst); but he has not the slightest inclination for it (gar keine Lust dazu).—He is almost always talking of his dogs, which he loves passionately (leidenschaftlich).—His father is extremely (außerordentlich) sorry for it. The young simpleton (der Blödsinnige) said lately to his sister: "I shall enlist (Soldat werden \* oder sich anwerben lassen \*) as soon as peace is proclaimed (öffentlich bekannt machen oder publiciren)."

### 239.

My dear father and my dear mother dined yesterday with some friends at (in, dat.) the King of Spain (von Spanien).—Why do you always speak French, and never German?—Because I am too bashful.—You are joking; is a Frenchman ever bashful?—I have (a) keen appetite: give me something good to eat.—Have you any money?—No, sir.—Then I have nothing to eat for you.—Will you not let me have some on credit? I pledge (verpfänden) my honour.—That is too little.—What, sir!

My dear friend, lend me a ducat (der Ducat, gen. en).—Here are two instead of one.—How much I am obliged to you! I am always glad when I see you, and I find my happiness in yours.—Is this house to be sold?—Do you wish to buy it?—Why not?—Why does your sister not speak?—She would speak if she were not always so absent (zerstreut).—I like pretty anecdotes (die Anekdote); they season (würzen) conversation (die Unterhaltung) and amuse (belustigen) every body. Pray, relate me some.—Look, if you please, at page 490 of the book (in dem Buche) which I lent you, and (so) you will find some.—To-morrow I shall set out for

Hanau ; but in a fortnight (in vierzehn Tagen) I shall be back again, and then I shall come to see you and your family.—Where is your sister at present ?—She is in Berlin, and my brother is in Leipzig.—This little woman is said to be going to marry the counsellor N., your friend ; is it true ?—I have not heard of it.—What news is there of our great army ?—It is said to be lying (stehen \*) between the Rhine and the Weser.—All that the courier told me seeming very probable (wahrscheinlich), I went home immediately, wrote some letters, and departed for Paris. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## HUNDRED AND THIRD LESSON.

## Hundert und dritte Section.

To begin to laugh, to weep, to cry, &c.

To pledge.

To pawn.

To destroy by fire and sword.

To look out of the window.

I do not know whether this society will admit me.

After ten o'clock you will not find me at home.

The weather is clearing up.

My hand is asleep.

To smell of garlick.

To smell of wine.

The sermon is over.

That is the question.

He has nearly fallen.

I did not find a living soul.

*To meet with.*

You have the wrong key.

He is now on the road.

Give me a clean plate, if you please.

Zu lachen, zu weinen, zu schreien, u.s.w. anfangen \*.

Verpfänden.

Versetzen.

Mit Feuer und Schwert verheeren.

Aus dem Fenster sehen \*.

Ich weiß nicht, ob diese Gesellschaft mich wird haben wollen.

† Nach zehn Uhr treffen Sie mich nicht mehr zu Hause.

Das Wetter heitert sich auf.

† Meine Hand ist eingeschlafen.

Nach Knoblauch riechen \*.

Nach Wein stinken \*.

Die Predigt ist aus.

Es ist die Frage (es kommt darauf an).

† Er wäre beinahe gefallen.

Ich habe keine lebendige Seele angetroffen.

Antreffen \*. (Part. past, getroffen. Imperf. traf.)

Sie haben den unrichten Schlüssel.

Er ist jetzt auf dem Wege.

Geben Sie mir gefälligst einen reinen Teller.

## VARIOUS WAYS OF TRANSLATING THE VERB, TO PUT.

To put one's hand into one's pocket.

To put one's son to school.

To put one out to apprenticeship (to bind one apprentice).

To put to account.

To put to flight.

In die Tasche greifen \*.

Seinen Sohn auf die Schule thun \* (bringen \*).

Jemanden in die Lehre thun \*.

In Rechnung ziehen \*.

In die Flucht jagen (oder schlagen \*).



To *put* one's hat on.  
To *put* an end.

Seinen Hut aufsetzen.  
Ein Ende machen.

#### VARIOUS WAYS OF TRANSLATING THE VERB, TO SET.

To *set* pen on paper (to take the pen in hand).

Die Feder ergreifen \*.

To *set* sail.

Unter Segel gehen \* (absegeln).

To *set* in order (to regulate, settle).

In Ordnung bringen \*.

To *set* something on fire.

Etwas anzünden (anstecken).

To *set* to work.

Sich an die Arbeit machen.

#### IDIOMATICAL EXPRESSIONS DEPENDING

##### 1st, On the use or omission of an article.

I have read Schiller.

Ich habe den Schiller gelesen.

He broke *his* neck.

Er hat den Hals gebrochen.

Nature is the best instructress.

Die Natur ist die beste Lehrerin.

Man is mortal.

Der Mensch ist sterblich.

Human life is short.

Das menschliche Leben ist kurz.

Vice plunges its followers into perdition.

Das Laster stürzt seine Anhänger ins Verderben.

Eloquence is powerful.

Die Beredsamkeit ist mächtig.

Poetry is enchanting.

Die Dichtkunst ist bezaubernd.

Government.

Die Regierung.

History teaches us experience.

Die Geschichte lehrt uns Erfahrung.

Saint Paul.

Der heilige Paulus.

Most of his contemporaries.

Die meisten seiner Zeitgenossen.

In town.

In der Stadt.

To go to church.

In die Kirche gehen \*.

The East Indies.

Ostindien.

The West Indies.

Westindien.

Before *the* conclusion of the drama.

Vor Endigung des Schauspiels.

##### 2d, On the use of a pronoun.

I take the liberty of writing to you.

Ich nehme mir die Freiheit, an Sie zu schreiben.

How goes it? How do you do?

Wie geht's Ihnen?

Very well.

Es geht mir sehr wohl.

I have bought a hat.

Ich habe mir einen Hut gekauft.

Let us go on a party of pleasure.

Wir wollen uns heute ein Vergnügen verschaffen.

He is quite at home.

Er macht sich's bequem.

He is very conceited.

Er bildet sich viel ein.

I have it in *my* hands.

Ich habe es in Händen.

I have it before *my* eyes.

Ich habe es vor Augen.

I consent *to it*, (willingly, or with pleasure).

Ich bin es zufrieden.

### 3rd, On the use of a verb.

Who has *said* mass to-day?

I *am with you* in a moment.

We shall *have* a storm.

Wer hat heute die Messe gelesen?

Ich komme gleich.

Wir werden ein Ungewitter bekommen.

How *is* that?

I do not *scruple* to do it.

Wie geht das zu?

Ich trage kein Bedenken, es zu thun.

What do you *think* of it?

They will not *dissuade* me from it.

Was halten Sie davon?

Ich lasse mir das nicht ausreden.

To *buy* a lottery ticket.

To *be born*.

To *bring forth*.

To *doubt* (to call in question).

To *lay* the cloth.

To *set down* (to compose).

In die Lotterie setzen.

Zur Welt kommen\*.

Zur Welt bringen\*.

In Zweifel ziehen\*.

Den Tisch decken.

Schriftlich aufsetzen.

### 4th, On the use of a preposition.

How *is* your health?

To land, to go ashore.

His affairs are in a bad state.

I bet six crowns.

I forgive you.

To esteem one's self happy.

To make an enemy of some one.

Wie steht's um Ihre Gesundheit?

Ans Land treten\*.

Es sieht übel mit ihm aus.

Ich wette um sechs Thaler.

Ich halte es Ihnen zu gut.

Sich für glücklich schätzen.

Sich Jemanden zum Feinde machen.

I fear to be burdensome to you.

Ich fürchte, Ihnen zur Last zu fallen.

### OBSERVE ALSO THE FOLLOWING IDIOMS.

To prescribe milk-diet.

To copy fair.

Of one's own accord.

We shall not live to see it.

It is all over with me.

My head turns round (is giddy).

I faint.

I thought you were a German by birth.

To live on bad terms with some one.

Die Milchkur verordnen.

Ins Reine schreiben\* (rein abschreiben\*).

Aus freien Stücken.

Wir werden es nicht erleben.

Es ist um mich geschehen.

Es wird mir schwindlich.

Ich bekomme eine Ohnmacht.

Ich hielt Sie für einen gebornen Deutschen.

Uneinig mit Jemandem leben.

To follow an unprofitable trade.	Sich mit brodlosen Künsten abgeben *.
This seems reasonable.	Das läßt sich hören (scheint vernünftig).
To lose one's reputation.	Seinen guten Namen verlieren *.

<i>By means of.</i>	Mittelft or vermittelt (govern the genitive).
He has succeeded by means of your assistance.	Bermittelft Ihres Beistandes ist es ihm gelungen.
We reached the shore by means of a boat.	Wir kamen mittelft (vermittelft) eines Rahnes ans Ufer.

<i>Towards (to meet).</i>	Entgegen (governs the dative).
We went to meet his father.	Wir gingen seinem Vater entgegen.

<i>Against (in opposition to).</i>	Zuwider.
Never act against the laws.	Handle nie den Gesezen zuwider.

<i>Opposite.</i>	Gegenüber.
My house is opposite his.	Mein Haus steht dem seinigen gegenüber.

*Obs.* The prepositions entgegen, zuwider, and gegenüber are always placed after the case which they govern.

<i>Next to (after).</i>	Nächst (governs the dative).
Next to you I like him best.	Nächst Ihnen ist er mir der Liebste.

<i>Together with (besides, including).</i>	Nebst, sammt (govern the dative).
He lost the ducat together with the crowns, sold the garden including the house.	Er verlor den Ducaten sammt den Thalern, verkaufte den Garten nebst dem Hause.

If I were now to question you as I used to do at the beginning of our lessons, what would you answer?	Wenn ich Sie jetzt fragte, wie ich in unsern ersten Sectionen zu thun pflegte (wie ich anfangs zu thun pflegte), was würden Sie antworten?
---	--

We found these questions at first rather ridiculous; but full of confidence in your method,	Wir fanden anfangs diese Fragen etwas lächerlich; allein voll Vertrauen auf Ihre Lehrt,
---	---

we answered as well as the small quantity of words and rules we then possessed allowed us.

We were not long in finding out that those questions were calculated to ground us in the rules, and to exercise us in conversation, by the contradictory answers we were obliged to make.

We can now almost keep up a conversation in German.

This phrase does not seem to us logically correct.

We should be ungrateful if we allowed such an opportunity to escape without expressing our liveliest gratitude to you.

In all cases, at all events.

The native,  
the insurmountable difficulty,  
this energetic language,  
the acknowledgment,  
the gratitude, the acknowledgment,

beantworteten wir dieselben, so gut es uns der kleine Vorrath von Wörtern und Regeln (Prinzipien), den wir alsdann hatten, gestattete (erlaubte).

Wir haben bald darauf gemerkt, daß diese Fragen berechnet waren, uns durch die widersprechenden Antworten, die wir gezwungen waren, darauf zu machen, die Prinzipien (Regeln) einzuschärfen, und uns in der Unterhaltung zu üben.

Jetzt können wir uns beinahe vollkommen auf deutsch (im Deutschen) unterhalten.

Dieser Satz scheint uns nicht logisch richtig.

Wir wären undankbar, wenn wir eine so schöne Gelegenheit vorbeigehen ließen, ohne Ihnen unsere lebhafteste Dankbarkeit zu bezeugen.

Auf jeden Fall.

der Eingeborne;  
die unüberwindliche Schwierigkeit;  
diese energische (kraftvolle) Sprache;  
die Erkenntlichkeit<sup>1</sup>;  
die Dankbarkeit.

## EXERCISES.

### 240.

Will you drink a cup of coffee?—I thank you, I do not like coffee.—Then you will drink a glass of wine?—I have just drunk some.—Let us take a walk.—Willingly; but where shall we go to?—Come with me into my aunt's garden; we shall there find a very agreeable society.—I believe it (das glaube ich gern); but the question is whether this agreeable society will admit me.—You are welcome every where.—What ails you, my friend?—How do you like (wie schmeckt Ihnen) that wine?—I like it very well (herrlich); but I have drunk enough (zur Genüge oder genug) of

<sup>1</sup> Erkenntlichkeit is derived from erkennen, to acknowledge. Dankbarkeit expresses both gratitude and acknowledgment.

it.—Drink once more.—No, too much is unwholesome (*ungefähr*); I know my constitution (*die Natur*).—Do not fall.—What is the matter with you?—I do not know; but my head is giddy; I think I am fainting.—I think so also, for you look almost like a dead person.—What countryman are you?—I am a Frenchman.—You speak German so well, that I took you for a German by birth.—You are jesting.—Pardon me, I do not jest at all.—How long have you been in Germany?—A few days.—In earnest?—You doubt it, perhaps, because I speak German; I knew it before I came to Germany.—How did you learn it so well?—I did like the prudent starling (*der Staar*).

Tell me, why are you always on bad terms with your wife (*die Frau*)? and why do you engage in unprofitable trades? It costs so much trouble (*Es kostet so viel Mühe*) to get an employment (*bis man ein—bekommt*), and you have a good one, and neglect it (*es hintenansetzen oder vernachlässigen*). Do you not think of the future?—Now allow me to speak also (*jetzt lassen Sie mich auch reden*). All you have just said seems reasonable, but it is not my fault (*es ist nicht meine Schuld*), if I have lost my reputation; it is that of my wife (*meine Frau ist Schuld daran*): she has sold my finest clothes, my rings, and my gold watch. I am full of debts (*voll Schulden seyn* \*), and I do not know what to do (*was ich anfangen oder thun soll*).—I will not excuse (*entschuldigen*) your wife; but I know that you have also contributed (*beitragen* \*) to your ruin (*das Verderben*). Women are generally good when they are left so.

## 241.

## DIALOGUE.

*The Master.* If I were now to ask you such questions as I did at the beginning of our lessons, (*viz.*) Have you the hat which my brother has? am I hungry? has he the tree of my brother's garden? &c., what would you answer?

*The Pupils.* We are obliged (*gezwungen*) to confess that we found those questions at first rather ridiculous; but full of confidence in your method, we answered as well as the small quantity of words and rules we then possessed allowed us. We were, in fact, not long in finding out that these questions were calculated to ground us in the rules, and to exercise us in conversation, by the contradictory answers we were obliged to make. But now that we can almost keep up a conversation in the energetic language which you teach us, we should answer: It is impossible that we should have the same hat which your brother has, for two persons cannot have one and the same thing. To (*auf* with accus.) the second question we should answer, that it is impossible for us

to know whether you are hungry or not. As to the last, we should say: that there is more than one tree in a garden; and in telling us that he has the tree of the garden, the phrase does not seem to us logically correct. At all events, we should be ungrateful if we allowed such an opportunity to escape, without expressing our liveliest gratitude to you for the trouble you have taken in arranging those wise combinations (*kluge Wege einschlagen* \* oder Combinationen machen), to ground us almost imperceptibly (*beinahe unmerklich*) in the rules, and exercise us in the conversation of a language which, taught in any other way, presents (*darbieten* \*) to foreigners, and even to natives, almost insurmountable difficulties. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## HUNDRED AND FOURTH LESSON.

## Hundert und vierte Lektion.

To avoid death with which he was threatened he took to flight.	Um dem Tode zu entgehen, der ihm bevorstand (womit er bedrohet war), nahm (ergriff) er die Flucht.
I warrant you (I answer for it). So goes the world.	† Ich stehe Ihnen dafür. † So geht es in der Welt.
But must not one be a fool to remain in a place bombarded by Hungarians?	Aber müßte man nicht ein Narr seyn, wenn man an einem von Ungaren bombardirten Orte bleiben wollte?
The deuce take the Hungarians who give no quarter!	† Daß die Ungaren, welche keine Gnade geben (welche gar nicht schonen), beim Henker wären!
Will you be my guest? Will you dine with me?	Wollen Sie mein Gast seyn? Wollen Sie mit mir essen?
To invite some one to dinner.	{ Jemanden zu Gast bitten *. Jemanden zum Mittagessen einladen *.
I have ordered your favourite dish.	† Ich habe Ihre Lieblingspeise zubereiten lassen.
There is nothing like a good piece of roast meat. The roast meat, the guilty, the innocent, a good (jovial) companion, the husband,	Es geht Nichts über ein gutes Stück Braten. der Braten, das Gebratene; der Schuldige; der Unschuldige; ein lustiger Bruder; der Mann (Ehemann).
To be disgusted with a thing.	{ Einen Ekel an einer Sache haben *. Einer Sache (genitive) überdrüssig seyn *.
Who hazards gains. Nothing venture nothing have.	† Frisch gewagt ist halb gewonnen. (Sprichwort.)

To strike (in speaking of lightning).

The lightning has struck.

The lightning struck the ship.

While my brother was on the open sea a violent storm rose unexpectedly; the lightning struck the ship which it set on fire, and the whole crew jumped into the sea to save themselves by swimming.

He was struck with fright, when he saw that the fire was gaining on all sides.

He did not know what to do.

He reflected in vain.

In vain.

To reflect (to hesitate).

He hesitated no longer.

I have not heard of him yet.

My friend who was present told me all this.

What would have become of me?

† Einschlagen \*.

† Es hat eingeschlagen.

† Der Donner schlug ins Schiff.

Als mein Bruder auf der offenen See (oder auf dem hohen Meere) war, erhob sich (kam unvermuthet) ein heftiger Sturm; der Donner schlug ins Schiff, das er anzündete, und das ganze Schiffsvolk sprang (stürzte sich) ins Meer, um sich mit Schwimmen zu retten.

Er wurde von Schrecken befallen (erschraf heftig), als er sah, daß das Feuer auf allen Seiten um sich griff.

† Er wußte nicht, wozu er sich entschließen sollte.

{ Er mochte nachsinnen, wie er wollte.

{ Er sann vergeblich nach.

Vergeblich, vergebens, umsonst.

Sich besinnen \* (Part. past, besonnen).

† Er besann sich nicht lange.

Ich habe noch keine Nachricht von ihm erhalten.

Mein Freund, welcher zugegen war hat mir alles dieses erzählt.

{ Wie wäre es mir ergangen?

{ Was wäre aus mir geworden?

### A FEW MORE IDIOMS.

It is a fortnight (a week) since I was out.

Will you not go out to-day?

I would not importune you.

He has nothing to live upon.

I board and lodge him.

Zwölfzehn (acht) Tage lang bin ich nicht ausgegangen.

Sie werden doch heute ausgehen?

Ich will Ihnen nicht beschwerlich fallen.

Er hat Nichts zu leben.

Ich gebe ihm freien Tisch und Wohnung.



The mystery will be discovered.

They are going to lay the cloth.  
He lives high (feasts, eats, and  
drinks well).

Have you done ?

That is his business.

To do one's best.

He has assisted me.

We must not be too particular.

He is not to be blamed for not  
doing it.

The book is out of print; it was  
published by N.

Will you please to take a plain  
supper with us ?

The general has been defeated and  
the army routed.

Die Sache wird schon an den Tag  
kommen.

Man wird bald den Tisch decken.  
Er ißt und trinkt gut.

Sind Sie fertig ?

Da mag er zusehen.

Sein Aeußerstes thun \*.

Er ist mir zur Hand gegangen.

Wir müssen es so genau nicht neh-  
men.

Es ist ihm nicht zu verdenken, daß  
er es nicht thut.

Das Buch ist vergriffen; es war bei  
N. verlegt.

Wollen Sie mit einem einfachen  
Abendessen bei uns fürlieb (oder  
vorlieb) nehmen ?

Der Feldherr ist aufs Haupt ge-  
schlagen, und die Armee ist über  
den Haufen geworfen worden.

The angel,  
the master-piece,  
her physiognomy,  
the expression,  
her shape,  
the action,  
the look,  
the contentment,  
the respect,  
the admiration,  
the charm, the grace,  
the demeanour, the manners,  
thin (slender),  
fascinating (engaging),  
ravishingly,  
uncommonly well,  
perfectly well,

Her look inspires respect and  
admiration.

der Engel;  
das Meisterstück;  
ihre Gesichtsbildung;  
der Ausdruck;  
ihre Gestalt;  
die Handlung;  
der Anblick;  
die Zufriedenheit;  
die Ehrfurcht;  
die Bewunderung;  
die Anmuth;  
das Benehmen;  
schlanke;  
einnehmend;  
zum Entzücken;  
ganz vortrefflich;  
vollkommen.  
Ihr Anblick flößt Ehrfurcht und  
Bewunderung ein.

Allow me, my lady, to introduce to you Mr. G., an old friend of our family.

I am delighted to become acquainted with you.

I shall do all in my power to deserve your good opinion.

Allow me to introduce to you Mr. B., whose brother has rendered such eminent services to your cousin.

How happy we are to see you at our house!

Erlauben Sie, gnädige Frau, daß ich Ihnen Herrn von G. als einen alten Freund meines Hauses vorstelle.

Ich freue mich sehr, mein Herr, Ihre Bekanntschaft zu machen.

Ich werde alles Mögliche thun, um mich Ihrer Gewogenheit würdig zu machen.

Erlauben Sie, meine Damen, daß ich Ihnen Herrn von B. vorstelle, dessen Bruder Ihrem Vetter so große Dienste geleistet hat.

Wie sehr sind wir erfreut, Sie bei uns zu sehen!

## EXERCISES.

### 242.

Why do you hide yourself?—I am obliged to hide myself, for it is all over with me if my father hears that I have taken to flight; but there was no other means (kein anderes Mittel übrig oder nicht anders möglich seyn\*) to avoid death, with which I was threatened.—You have been very wrong in leaving (verlassen\*) your regiment, and your father will be very angry (sehr böse oder zornig seyn\*) when he hears of it, I warrant you.—But must one not be a fool to remain in a place bombarded by Hungarians?—The deuce take the Hungarians, who give no quarter!—They have beaten and robbed (ausplündern) me, and (never) in my life have I done them any harm.—So goes the world, the innocent very often suffer for the guilty.—Did you know Mr. Zweifel?—I did know him, for he often worked for our house.—One of my friends has just told me that he has drowned himself, and that his wife has blown out her brains with a pistol. (Lesson XCVII.) I can hardly believe it; for the man whom you are speaking of was always a jovial companion, and good companions do not drown themselves.—His wife is even said to have written on the table before she killed herself: "Who hazards gains; I have nothing more to lose, having lost my good husband. I am disgusted with this world, where there is nothing constant (beständig) except (als) inconstancy (die Unbeständigkeit)."

### 243.

Will you be my guest?—I thank you; a friend of mine has invited me to dinner: he has ordered my favourite dish.—What dish is it?—It is milk-meat.—As for me (was mich anbelangt), I do not like milk-meat: there is nothing like a good piece of roast

beef or veal (~~Stein~~ oder Kalbsbraten).—What has become of your youngest brother?—He has suffered shipwreck in going to America.—You must give me an account of that (*erzählen Sie mir doch das*).—Very willingly. Being on the open sea, a great storm arose. The lightning struck the ship and set it on fire. The crew jumped into the sea to save themselves by swimming. My brother knew not what to do, having never learnt to swim. He reflected in vain; he found no means to save his life. He was struck with fright when he saw that the fire was gaining on all sides. He hesitated no longer, and jumped into the sea.—Well (nun), what has become of him?—I do not know, having not heard of him yet.—But who told you all that?—My nephew, who was there, and who saved himself.—As you are talking of your nephew (*da Sie gerade von Ihrem Neffen sprechen*), where is he at present?—He is in Italy?—Is it long since you heard from him?—I received a letter from him to-day.—What does he write to you?—He writes to me that he is going to marry a young woman who brings (*zubringen*\*) him a hundred thousand crowns.—Is she handsome?—Handsome as an angel; she is a master-piece of nature. Her physiognomy is mild and full of expression; her eyes are the finest in (*von*) the world, and her mouth is charming (*allerliebste*). She is neither too tall nor too short: her shape is slender; all her actions are full of grace, and her manners very engaging. Her look inspires respect and admiration. She has also a great deal of wit (*der Verstand*); she speaks several languages, dances uncommonly well, and sings ravishingly. My nephew finds in her but one defect (*der Fehler*).—And what is that defect?—She is affected (*macht Ansprüche*).—There is nothing perfect in the world. How happy you are (*was sind Sie so glücklich*)! you are rich, you have a good wife, pretty children, a fine house, and all you wish (*for*).—Not all, my friend.—What do you desire more?—Contentment; for you know that he only is happy who is contented. (See end of Lesson XXXVI.)

## HUNDRED AND FIFTH LESSON

## Hundert und fünfte Section.

## GENERAL REMARKS ON GERMAN CONSTRUCTION.

THE fundamental principle of German construction is this; the word which, after the subject, expresses the principal idea, is always placed after those words which only express accessory ideas. It has the advantage of attracting and of keeping up and increasing the attention to the end of the phrase.

The word which least defines the subject is placed at the beginning of the sentence, then come those words which define it in a higher degree, so that the word which most determines the meaning of the phrase is at the end.

According to this we place the words in the following order :

1st, The adverb of negation *nicht*, when it relates to the verb of the subject. Ex. Mein Vater beantwortet meinen Brief nicht, his father does not answer my letter.

2nd, The other adverbs relating to the verb of the subject. Ex. Sie schreiben Ihren Brief nicht gut, you do not write your letter well.

3rd, The preposition with the case it governs, or in its stead the adverbs of place, *da*, *hier*, and their compounds, *daher*, *dahin*, as well as the demonstrative adverbs compounded of *da* and *hier*, as, *damit*,

*davon*, *hiervon*, *darauf*, *darüber*, &c. Ex. Er antwortete nicht höflich auf meinen Brief, he did not answer my letter politely. Er antwortete nicht schnell darauf, he did not answer it quickly.

*Obs.* When the verb of the subject has several cases with their prepositions, that which defines it the most exactly follows all the others, the determination of time always preceding that of place. Ex. Er trat wegen seiner Unschuld mit fröhlichem Gesichte vor das Gericht (which defines most exactly), On account of his innocence he appeared before his judges with a joyful countenance. Der Gefühllose blieb an diesem Tage (time), auf der schönsten Flur (place), bei aller Schönheit der reizenden Natur (place) dennoch ohne alle Empfindung (which defines *ohne*).

exactly), the insensible man remained on that day without the least emotion, though in the most beautiful field and surrounded by all the beauty of charming nature.

4th, The predicate of the subject. Ex. Ich bin nicht immer mit seiner

Antwort zufrieden, I am not always satisfied with his answer.

5th, The separable particles of compound verbs, as well as all those words which are considered as separable particles, inasmuch as they complete the sense of the verb (*Obs. A, Lesson LXIX.*), as: auswendig lernen, to learn by heart; in Acht nehmen\*, to take care; in

Mittage essen\*, to dine, &c. Ex. Barum ging er nicht öfter mit Ihnen

aus? why did he not go out with you oftener?

6th, The verb in the infinitive. Ex. Er kann Ihnen nicht immer schnell auf Ihren Brief antworten, he cannot always answer your letter quickly.

7th, The past participle or the infinitive, when they form with the auxiliary a compound tense of the verb. Ex. Er hat mir nicht immer höflich darauf geantwortet, he has not always answered it politely. Er wird Ihnen nicht immer so höflich auf Ihren Brief antworten.

\*.\* These remarks apply to the natural order of ideas; but the German language is so much subject to inversions, that we must sometimes deviate from them, according to the stress which we wish to put on certain words, or the strength and importance we wish to give them in the sentence. See the following

## RECAPITULATION OF THE RULES OF SYNTAX OR CONSTRUCTION.

1st, When the adjective which precedes the noun is accompanied by some words that relate to, or define it, they are placed immediately before it. Ex. Eine gegen Jedermann höfliche Frau, a woman polite towards everybody. Ihr Sie herzlich liebendes Kind, your child that loves you from all his heart. (*Lesson XCV.*)

2nd, Personal pronouns, when not in the nominative, as well as reflective pronouns (*Lesson LXXII.*), are placed after the verb. Ex. Ich liebe Dich, I love thee. Er liebt mich, he loves me. Ich wünschte

Ihnen einen guten Morgen, I wish you a good morning. Meine Schwester befindet sich wohl, my sister is well.

*Obs. A.* When the accusative is a personal pronoun, it precedes the dative, if not, it follows it. Ex. Geben Sie meinem Bruder das Buch? do you give the book to my brother? Ich gebe es ihm, I do give it to him. Machen Sie Ihrer Frau Gemahlinn meine Empfehlung, present my compliments to your lady. Ich gab es dem Vater, I gave it to the father. (Lesson XXX.) But if we wish to put a particular stress on the dative, we must place it after the accusative. Ex. Er erzählte die ganze Geschichte seiner Frau, he told his wife the whole history. Here the whole strength of the sentence falls on the words seiner Frau.

*Obs. B.* When the case of the verb is a genitive, it is always preceded by the accusative, whether a personal pronoun or not. Ex. Ich versichere Sie meiner Hochachtung, I assure you of my esteem. Man hat den Gefangenen des Verbrechens überwiefen, the prisoner has been convicted of the crime. (Lesson LXVI.)

3rd, The infinitive and past participle are always preceded by their cases, or in other words, the infinitive and past participle always stand at the end of the sentence. Ex. Ich werde morgen aufs Land gehen, I shall go into the country to-morrow. Er ist gestern dahin gegangen, he went thither yesterday. Ich werde Ihnen das Buch geben, I shall give you the book. Er hat es mir gesagt, he has told it me. (Lessons XXVI. and XLIV.)

*Obs. A.* When two or several infinitives, two past participles, or a past participle and an infinitive depend on each other, the first in Eng-

lish becomes the last in German. Ex. Sie können ihn sprechen hören.  
 2 1 1 2 3  
 you may hear him speak; ich werde heute nicht spazieren gehen können,  
 3 2 1 1 2  
 I shall not be able to go a walking to day; sein Haus ist verkauft worden,  
 2 1  
 his house has been sold. (Lesson LXXIII.)

*Obs. B.* The two infinitives or participles, &c., not depending on each other, follow the English construction. Ex. Man muß Gott lieben  
 2 1 2  
 und verehren, we must love and honour God; sie wird geliebt und gelobt,  
 1 2  
 she is loved and praised. (Lesson LXXIII.)

4th, The verb of the subject, in compound tenses the auxiliary, is removed to the end when the phrase begins, (a) with a conjunction,

know whether I am asleep or awake; and all compound conjunctions such as: *obgleich*, *obſchon*, *wenngleich*, *wennſchon*, though. Ex. *Bin ich gleich (ſchon) nicht reich* (for *ob* or *wenn* *ich* *gleich* *nicht* *reich* *bin*), so *bin* *ich* *doch* *zufrieden*, though I am not rich, I am nevertheless contented.

*Obs.* Adverbs of comparison, such as, *wie*, *as*; *gleichwie*, the same as; *nicht nur*—ſondern auch, not only—but also, &c., make the nominative of the second member go after the verb, but not that of the first (this observation is included in *Rule 6*, above). Ex. *Wie* (or *gleichwie*) *das Meer vom Winde bewegt wird*, also *wird* *ein Mann von den Leidenschaften bewegt*, as the sea is agitated by the winds, so a man is agitated by his passions.

8th, Some conjunctions, when beginning a sentence, make the nominative go after its verb, as: *doch*, however; *dennoch*, nevertheless; *gleichwohl*, notwithstanding; *deſſen ungeachtet*, for all that; *nichts deſto weniger*, nevertheless; *hingegen*, im *Gegentheil*, on the contrary. (This rule is included in *Rule 5*.) Ex. *Deſſen ungeachtet haben Sie niemals meinen Wunsch erfüllen wollen*, for all that you were never willing to accomplish my desire; *doch ſchrieb er*, *er könnte nicht kommen*, however he wrote that he could not come.

9th, The subject follows its verb when the phrase is interrogative or ejaculatory. Ex. *lernen Ihre Herren Brüder deutsch?* do your brothers learn German? *Wie glücklich ſind Sie!* or *Wie ſind Sie ſo glücklich!* how happy you are! (*Lessons XXXIV. and XC.*)

*Obs.* When the subject is a personal or an interrogative pronoun, the construction of the interrogative sentence is the same as in English. Ex. *Iſt er zu Hauſe?* is he at home? *Sind Ihre Fräulein Schwestern in dem Garten?* are your sisters in the garden? *Wer iſt da?* who is there? *Was haben Sie geſehen?* what have you done? *Welcher Knabe hat dieſe Bücher gekauft, und wem hat er ſie verehrt?* which boy has bought those books, and to whom has he given them? *Was für einen Wagen haben Sie gekauft?* what carriage have you bought?

10th, The subject not only stands after the verb, but also after all the words relating to it, when the sentence begins with the indefinite pronoun *eſ*. Ex. *Eſ lehrt uns die Erfahrung*, experience teaches us. *Eſ ereignet ſich nicht alle Tage eine ſo gute Gelegenheit*, there is not every day such a good opportunity.

11th, In inversions where the subject stands after its verb, it may take its place either after or before the other cases, if they are personal pronouns, and if the subject is a substantive. Ex. *Heute gibt mein Lehrer mir ein Buch*, or *heute gibt mir mein Lehrer ein Buch*, to-day my master will give me a book. *Gestern gab mein Lehrer eſ mir*, or *geſtern gab eſ mir mein Lehrer*, my master gave it me yesterday. *Ob er gleich*

ganz entstellte war, erkannte ihn doch sein Sohn, or erkannte sein Sohn ihn doch, though he was quite disfigured, nevertheless his son recognised him.

12th, But if the subject is likewise a personal pronoun, or if the other cases are substantives, it must precede. Ex. Gestern gab er es mir (not es mir er), yesterday he gave it me. Daher liebt der Schüler den Lehrer (not liebt den Lehrer der Schüler), therefore the pupil loves his master. Dessen ungeachtet erkannte der Sohn den Vater (not den Vater der Sohn), nevertheless the son recognised his father.

## EXERCISES.

### 244.

A stranger having sold some false jewels (der falsche Edelstein) to a Roman empress (die römische Kaiserinn), she asked (fordern von) her husband to (make) a signal example (of him) (die auffallende Genugthuung). The emperor, a most excellent and clement prince (der ein sehr gnädiger und milder Fürst war), finding it impossible to pacify (beruhigen) her, condemned the jeweller to be thrown to the wild beasts (zum Kampfe mit den wilden Thieren). The empress resolved to be present (Zeuge) with her whole court (der Hofstaat) at the punishment of the unfortunate man (seines Todes). As he was led into the arena (auf den Kampfplatz geführt werden), he expected to die (sich auf den Tod gefaßt machen); but instead (statt governs the genitive) of a wild beast a lamb (das Lamm) came up to him and caressed him (welches ihm liebte). The empress, furious (äußerst aufgebracht) at the deception (sich zum Besten gehalten zu sehen), complained bitterly of it (sich bitter deswegen beklagen) to (bei) the emperor. He answered: "I have punished the criminal (der Verbrecher) according(nach) to the law of retaliation (das Wiedervergeltungsrecht). He deceived (betrogen \*) you, and he has been deceived in his turn (wieder)."

### 245.

The bakers of Lyons, having gone to Mr. Dugas (zu Jemandem kommen \*), the provost (der Stadtrichter), to ask him (Jemanden bitten \*) to raise the price of bread (das Brod aufschlagen zu lassen), he answered that he would take their petition into consideration (er wolle den Gegenstand ihrer Bitte untersuchen). As they took leave (weggehen \*), they contrived to slip (ließen sie unbemerkt) a purse containing (mit) two hundred louis d'ors (der Louis d'or) on the table.—When they returned, in the



full conviction (nicht zweifeln) that the purse had been a powerful advocate in their favour (wirksam für eine Sache sprechen \*), the provost said to them: "Gentlemen, I have weighed (abwägen) your reasons (der Grund) in the scale of justice (die Waagschale der Gerechtigkeit), and I have found them wanting (nicht vollständig). I have not thought it expedient (ich hielt nicht dafür), by a fictitious raising of price (unter einer ungegründeten Erhöhung) to make the public (das Publikum) suffer: I have, however (übrigens), distributed (vertheilen) your money to (unter with accus.) the two hospitals of the town, for I concluded (ich glaubte) you could not intend it for any other purpose (der Gebrauch). Meanwhile (ich habe eingesehen) as you are able to give such alms (solche Almosen zu geben), it is evident you are no losers (verlieren \*) by your trade (das Gewerbe)."

## 246.

## THE PHYSICIAN TAKEN IN (betrogen).

A physician of (in) Dublin, who was rather old (welcher schon ziemlich bejahrt war), but who was very rich, and in extensive practice (in großem Rufe stehen \*), went one day to receive a considerable (ziemlich groß) sum of money in bank notes and in gold. As he was returning home with (beladen mit) this sum, he was stopped (anhalten \*) by a man who appeared out of breath (außer Athem), owing to the speed with which he had run (weil er zu schnell gelaufen war). This man asked him (und der ihn bat) to come to see his wife, whom a violent diarrhoea retained in bed dangerously ill (an einem heftigen Strome gefährlich krank darnieder liegen \*); he added that it was urgent she should have immediate advice (daß schnelle Hülfe sehr nothwendig wäre), and at the same time promised the physician his guinea fee (eine Guinee für einen Besuch).

The physician, who was very avaricious (geizig), was pleased at the prospect of gaining his guinea (eithe sie zu verdienen); he directed (sagen zu) the man to lead the way (Jemandem den Weg zeigen), and promised to follow. He was led to a house situated (stehen \*) in a remote (entlegen) street, and made to ascend to the third story (in das dritte Stockwerk), where he was admitted into a room, the door of which was immediately (alsobald) locked (verschließen \*). The guide (der Führer) then presenting (darreichen) a pistol with one hand, and with the other an empty (leer) purse,

which was open, spoke as follows (hierauf rebete der Führer den erschrockenen Arzt folgender Maßen an, indem, &c.).

"Here is my wife: yesterday she was seized with a violent diarrhoea (an einem heftigen Bauchflusse leiden \*), which has reduced her to the state (in den Zustand versetzen) in which you (now) see her; you are one of our most eminent (geschickt) physicians, and I know you are better able than any one to cure her. I am besides (überdies) aware that you possess the best remedy for her; haste then to employ (anwenden) it, unless you prefer swallowing (verschlucken) the two leaden pills (die Pille) contained in this instrument." The doctor made a horrible face (das abschœuliche Gesicht), but obeyed. He had several bank notes and a hundred and twenty-five guineas rolled up (in Rollen); he placed the latter (die letzteren) into the purse, as he had been desired (gebuldig), hoping thus to save his bank notes.

But the thief (der Gauner) was up to this, and was perfectly aware of his having them in his pocket (wußte, daß er sie in der Tasche hatte). "Wait," said he, "it would not be fair (billig) that you should have performed (verrichten) so miraculous a cure (die Kur) without remuneration (vergebens); I promised you a guinea for your visit; I am a man of honour (der Mann von Ehre), and here it is; but I know that you carry about your person (bei sich haben) several little recipes (das Recept, plur. e) most efficacious (sehr wirksam) as preventives against the return (die Rückkehr) of the disorder (das Uebel) you have just removed (heilen); you must be so kind as to leave them with me." The bank notes immediately took the same road as the guineas had done. The thief, then keeping his pistol concealed beneath his cloak (der Mantel), accompanied the doctor into the street (hierauf führte der Gauner, indem—wieder zurück), requesting him to make no noise. He stopped him (stehen lassen \*) at the corner (an der Ecke) of a street, and forbidding (verbieten \*) him to follow, suddenly (plötzlich) disappeared, to seek, in a distant part of the town (das entlegene Stadtviertel), another habitation (die Wohnung).

## DIALOGUE (die Unterredung)

*Between a Father and Mother on the happiness (das Wohl) of their children.*

*Countess.* Forgive me for having disturbed (wecken lassen \*) you so early; but I wanted to speak to you on matters of importance.

*Count.* You alarm (beunruhigen) me.... I see that you have been crying; what has happened, my dear (theuer)?

*Countess.* I own I am a little agitated (unruhig); but I have nothing unpleasant (Unangenehmes) to communicate (mittheilen); on the contrary.

*Count.* From your emotion (die Bewegung), I should guess Emily to be the cause of it (daß von—die Rede ist).

*Countess.* It is true.... My sister came this morning with a proposal (eine Heirath vorschlagen \*) for her.

*Count.* Well?

*Countess.* The gentleman who asks her (in marriage) is endowed with (besitzen \*) all the advantages (der Vorzug) of birth (die Geburt) and fortune (das Glück). His merit is acknowledged (anerkennen \*) by all. He is thirty; his person agreeable; he loves Emily, and even refuses the fortune (die Aussteuer) which we should give her, stating his affection to be secured by her only (verlangt nur sie).

*Count.* But how comes it that you are not overjoyed at this (außer sich vor Freude seyn \*)? I am very anxious (vor Begierde brennen) to learn his name.

*Countess.* You know him; he often comes here, and you like him exceedingly (sehr).

*Count.* Pray gratify (befriedigen) my curiosity.

*Countess.* It is the Count of Moncalde....

*Count.* The Count of Moncalde! a foreigner; but he probably (wahrscheinlich) intends to settle (sich niederlassen \*) in France?....

*Countess.* Alas! he has declared that he can promise nothing (keine Verpflichtung eingehen \*) on that score (die Hinsicht); this is informing us (erklären) clearly (deutlich) enough, that he intends to return to his own country.

*Count.* And you would nevertheless accept him for your daughter?

*Countess.* I have known him (Umgang mit Jemandem haben\*) for four years. I am thoroughly acquainted with his disposition (der Charakter). There cannot be a more virtuous (tugendhaft) or estimable (schätzenswerth) man. He is very clever and agreeable (voll Geist und Annehmlichkeit seyn\*), has much good feeling, (gefühlvoll), is well informed (unterrichtet), and perfectly devoid of affectation (unaffectirt). He is a passionate admirer of talent (einen leidenschaftlichen Geschmack für Talente haben\*); in short (mit einem Worte) he possesses every quality (die Eigenschaft) that can answer my daughter's happiness (glücklich machen). How can I reject him (sie ihm versagen)? Surely, my love (mein Freund), you do not think me so selfish (eines solchen Egoismus fähig halten\*).

*Count* (taking her hand) (sie bei der Hand fassend). But can I consent to a sacrifice (das Opfer) that would make you for ever (auf immer) unhappy? Besides (überdies) I never could bring myself to part from Emily.—She is my daughter; more than that even, her amiable disposition is your work. In Emily I find your sense (der Geist) and your virtues. No, I cannot part (sich trennen) from her. I am looking forward with so much delight (sich eine so süße Vorstellung von dem Vergnügen machen) to her entrance into the world (sie in die große Welt eingeführt zu sehen)! I am in much hopes of her shining in it (ein Zeuge ihres guten Erfolgs zu seyn). How gratifying (wie theuer) to me will be the praise (das Lob) bestowed (ertheilen) on her!—for I am convinced (da ich das Bewußtseyn habe), that to your care of her (die Sorgfalt) alone, my love, she will be indebted for whatever success she may obtain. After having devoted (widmen) the best years of your life to her education, can you now give her up, and see her torn from (entreißen\* with dative) your arms and her country; can you consent thus to lose in one moment the fruit of (von) fifteen years of anxiety (Mühe und Arbeit)?

*Countess.* I have laboured for her happiness, and (have) not (sought) to educate (bringen\*) a victim to my own vanity. I beseech you, consider (bedenken\*) also the great and unhopèd-for advantages of the match (die Verbindung) now in agitation (welche man uns anbietet). Think of the smallness (die Mittelmäßigkeit) of her fortune. Consider the excellence and amiable disposition, the

high birth and immense (unermesslich) fortune of her future husband!—It is true, I shall be separated from Emily, but she will never forget me. . . . this thought will be my consolation, and without fear for her future life (über das Schicksal Emilie's beruhigt), I shall be able to bear any other trial (Alles ertragen).

*Count.* But will Emily herself be able to bring herself to leave you?

*Countess.* She has always been accustomed to obey the dictates of reason (die Vernunft vermag Alles über sie). I am willing to believe this will cost her some effort (Freilich wird es ihr schwer fallen; ich finde sogar ein Vergnügen darin, es zu denken); but if she does not dislike (Jemandem missfallen \*) the temper and person of Mr. de Moncalde, I can answer (über sich nehmen \*) for her compliance (sie zu bewegen), however painful (schwierig) the sacrifice (zu diesem Opfer). In short, I entreat (beschwören) you to intrust entirely to me (ganz mir zu überlassen) the care of her happiness (die Sorgfalt für ihr Glück).

*Count.* Well (Gut!), since you wish it, I will give my consent. You have, indeed, my dear, earned (erwerben \*) for yourself a right (das Recht) to dispose of your daughter (über ihr Schicksal zu entscheiden), which I will not dispute (streitig machen). I know you will sacrifice (aufopfern) yourself for the sake of one so dear to you (für diesen so theuern Gegenstand).—I foresee (voraussehen \*) that I shall not have your fortitude (der Muth), but I admire, and can no longer withstand (widerstehen \*) (your arguments).—Still (jedoch) think, what sorrow (wievielummer) you are preparing for yourself (sich bereiten); how shall I myself support your grief and my own, your tears and those of Emily?

*Countess.* Do not fear (besürchten) that I should cloud (beunruhigen) your life by useless (überflüssig) repinings (die Klage). How could I give myself up to sorrow, when my greatest consolation will be the hope of alleviating (mildern) your grief?

*Count.* Ah, you alone are every thing to me! You know it well. . . . friendship, admiration, and gratitude are the ties (die Bande, plur.) that bind (fesseln) me to you. The influence (die Herrschaft) you have acquired (erlangen) over my mind (über mich) is so thoroughly justified (rechtfertigen) by your virtues, that, far from denying (verläugnen), I glory in it (seinen Ruhm darin setzen sie anerkennen).—It is to you I owe every thing: my reason, my sentiments (das Gefühl), my principles (der Grundsatz) and my hap-

piness. In you I find the most amiable as well as the most indulgent (nachſichtig) of friends, the wisest (weiſe) and most useful adviser (die nützlichſte Rathgeberinn). Be, then, the arbiter of my children's destiny (die Schiedsrichterinn über das Schickſal—) as you are that of my own. But, at any rate (wenigſtens) let us attempt (Alles verſuchen) to persuade the count of Moncalde to settle (ſich niederlaſſen) in France.... He seemed so struck (gerührt) by your affection (die Zärtlichkeit) for Emily, and to feel for you such sincere attachment (Anhänglichkeit), that I cannot yet believe his intention (die Abſicht) to be to separate you from your child. I cannot think his decision unalterable (daß er in dieſer Hinſicht unerbittlich ſeyn werde).

*Countess.* No, do not let us flatter ourselves. He is a firm and decided character (ſein—iſt feſt und entſchloſſen). He has positively (beſtimmt) told my sister that it would be vain to attempt to exact from him a promise (ihm die Bedingung verſchreiben zu wollen) of residing in France. His resolution is irrevocably (unwiderſtandlich) taken to return to Portugal.

*Count.* You grieve (betrüben) me.... But I repeat to you, the fate of Emily is in your hands. Whatever it may cost me, you shall be absolute mistress (die unumſchränkte Gebieterinn) of it. I shall consent to whatever you decide on (ich werde es nicht widerrufen). Do you intend speaking to-day (noch heute) (on the subject) to Emily?

*Countess.* After dinner.... But it is late; it is time to dress.... I have not yet seen my sons to-day; let us go and see them.

*Count.* I wanted to consult (um Rath fragen) you on (wegen) something connected with (angehen\*) them. I am dissatisfied with their tutor (der Hofmeister). Another has been proposed (vorſchlagen\*) me, I should wish you to speak to him; I am told he speaks English perfectly; I cannot judge myself of the latter.

*Countess.* I will tell you if he really understand it well....

*Count.* How?.... but you have never learnt English....

*Countess.* I beg your pardon, I have been studying it for the last year, to be able to teach Henrietta, who had asked me to give her (Jemanden um Etwas erſuchen) an English master. In general (im Durchſchnitt) masters teach so carelessly (mit ſo vieler

Nachlässigkeit) that, however excellent they may be, two years of their lessons (der Unterricht) are not worth three months (das Vierteljahr) of those (von dem) given by a mother.

*Count.* What a (wonderful) woman you are!.... Thus till your children's education is completed, you will spend part of your life with masters. Half of it (die eine Hälfte) you devote (anwenden) to study (sich zu unterrichten), and the other half in teaching what you have learnt.... Yet in spite of such numerous occupations, whilst you thus multiply (vervielfältigen) your duties, you spare time to devote (widmen) to your friends and to the world (die Gesellschaft). How do you manage (es anfangen)?

*Countess.* It is always possible to find time for the fulfilment of duties that are pleasing to us (die einem theuer sind).

*Count.* You always surprise me (beständig in Erstaunen setzen) I own.... Ah, if your children do not make you happy, what mother could ever expect from hers a reward of her affection! .... And our dear Emily may be for ever lost to you!.... I cannot bear (ertragen\*) the thought of it!—Shall you see your sister again to-day? Shall you give her your answer for the count of Moncalde?

*Countess.* He requested a prompt decision (eine schnelle und bestimmte).... I shall accordingly give (ertheilen) him the answer, since you allow it, as soon as I have questioned Emily on the subject (Emiliens Gefinnungen prüfen).

*Count.* I am certain Emily will refuse (auschlagen\*) him.

*Countess.* I think as you do; but is it not enough (hinreichend seyn\*) that she has no aversion (abgeneigt seyn\*) to the count of Moncalde, and that she feels (hegen) for him the esteem he so justly deserves?....

*Count.* Well, I see we must submit (sich entschließen\*) to this sacrifice (die Aufopferung).... Speak to your daughter.... Speak to her alone; I should never have courage to support (aussetzen\*) such an interview (die Unterredung).... I feel I should only spoil all your work.

## DIALOGUE.

*Emily. Agatha.*

*Agatha.* I was looking for you.... But, dear Emily, what is the matter?

*Emily.* Have you seen mamma (die Mutter)?

*Agatha.* No, she is gone out; she is gone to my aunt's.

*Emily.* And my father?

*Agatha.* He has shut himself up (sich einschließen \*) in his study (das Kabinett).... but surely, Emily, they are thinking of your marriage (die Verheirathung); I guess (errathen \*) as much (et) from your agitation (an Deiner Verwirrung).

*Emily.* Ah, dearest sister, you little dream (nie wirst Du den Namen desjenigen errathen) who is my intended (dem man mich bestimmt)!.... Agatha, dearest Agatha, how much I pity you, if you love me as well as I love you!

*Agatha.* Good heavens (gerechter Himmel)! Explain (erklären) yourself more clearly (deutlich).

*Emily.* I am desired (man befiehlt mir) to marry the Count of Moncalde, and he is to take (mit sich führen) me to Portugal.

*Agatha.* And you intend to obey?... Could you leave us?... Is it possible my mother even should consent?

*Emily.* Alas! (leider) dear Agatha, it is but too true.

*Agatha.* No, I never can believe it.... it is impossible you ever can (Du darfst nicht) obey.

*Emily.* What are you saying? Do you think I should oppose my mother's wishes (kann ich meiner Mutter widerstehen)?

*Agatha.* But do you think she herself will ever consent to such a separation?

*Emily.* She only considers (in Betrachtung ziehen \*) what she calls my interest (der Vortheil); she entirely forgets herself. Alas! she also forgets that I could enjoy (genießen \*) no happiness she did not witness (von welchem sie nicht Zeuge seyn würde)!

*Agatha.* Dear sister, refuse your consent (nicht dazwillingen)!

*Emily.* I have given my word.

*Agatha.* Retract (zurücknehmen \*) it.... out of affection to my mother herself; your unfortunate obedience (der Gehorsam)



Äußerung) of the general indignation (des allgemeinen Unwillens) (his conduct had excited) was added (verbinden \*) the threat (die Drohung) of giving the informer (der Angeber) a sound beating, and of throwing him out of window (zum Wagen hinaus), and of instituting legal proceedings against him (Jemanden gerichtlich belangten). In short (kurz), all seemed to concur (sich erschöpfen) in forming schemes (der Entwurf) for taking exemplary vengeance on the offender (an dem Schuldigen eine auffallende Rache). The latter remained perfectly unmoved (sich ganz still verhalten \*), and only remarked once in extenuation (sich mit der Äußerung entschuldigen), that a man could have nothing dearer to him than himself (Jeder sey sich selbst der Nächste und der Theuerste); and when the coach reached the end of its journey (als man am Ziele der Reise war), he suddenly (unversehens) disappeared (verschwinden \*), before his fellow-travellers could accomplish (ins Werk setzen) any one (eine einzige) of their intended measures (die vorgeschlagenen Maßregeln) against him.

As to the unfortunate young lady, it is easy to imagine (sich vorstellen) that she passed a sad and sleepless night (die Nacht höchst traurig und schlaflos zubringen \*). To her joy and astonishment (das Erstaunen), she received the next day the following letter :

“ Madam,—You must yesterday have hated (verabscheuen) as an informer the man who now sends you, besides the sum you then advanced him (vorschießen \*), an equal (gleich) sum, as interest thereof (als Zinsen), and a trinket (das Juwel) of at least the same value (der Werth) for your hair (zu Ihrem Haar Schmucke). I hope this will be sufficient (hinreichend) to silence (milbern) your grief, and I will now explain (sagen) in a few words what must appear mysterious in my conduct (den geheimen Grund meines Betragens). After having spent (sich aufhalten \*) ten years in India (Indien), where I amassed (zusammen bringen \*) a hundred thousand pounds, I was on my way home with letters on my bankers (der Wechselbrief) to that amount (auf die ganze Summe), when we were attacked (angefallen werden \*) yesterday by the highwaymen. All my savings (die reichlichen Ersparnisse) must have inevitably been sacrificed (es wäre um—geschehen gewesen), had the shabbiness (die Kargheit) of our fellow-travellers (der Reisegefährten) exposed us to a search from

(von Seiten) these unprincipled spoilers (der Räuber). Judge (urtheilen) for yourself, if the idea of returning to India thoroughly empty handed (mit völlig leeren Händen), could be supportable (erträglich) to me. Forgive me, if this consideration (die Betrachtung) led (vermögen\*) me to betray your confidence (das Vertrauen verrathen\*) and to sacrifice (opfern) a small (mäßig) sum, though not my own, to save my whole fortune. I am under the greatest obligation to you. I shall be happy to testify (Beweise geben von) my gratitude in any way in my power, and I request you to consider (legen Sie übrigens keinen Werth auf) these trifles as only the expressions (die geringen Zeichen) of my readiness (durch welche ich mich beifere) to serve you."

# APPENDIX.

## NUMBERS—VERBS—PREPOSITIONS.

### THE NUMBER.

#### Das Zahlwort.

THE adjective serves also to determine the signification of the noun by adding to it an idea of number ; hence *das Zahlwort*, the numerical word. Ex.

*Zehn Bäume*, ten trees ; *acht Birnen*, eight pears ; *sechs Häuser*, six houses ; *den zweiten Buchstaben*, the second letter ; *britter Aufzug*, third act ; *vierter Auftritt*, fourth scene.

The numbers are divided into six classes, viz.

- |                                   |                          |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Cardinal or primitive numbers. | Haupt- oder Grundzahlen. |
| 2. Ordinal numbers.               | Ordnungszahlen.          |
| 3. Distributive numbers.          | Vertheilungszahlen.      |
| 4. Augmentative numbers.          | Vermehrungszahlen.       |
| 5. Fractional numbers.            | Bruchzahlen.             |
| 6. Collective numbers.            | Sammelzahlen.            |

#### 1. CARDINAL NUMBERS.

They are indeclinable, and are used to answer the question *wieviel* ? how many ? (See Lesson XXI.)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>eins</i> , one.                              | 12. <i>zwölf</i> , twelve.   |
| 2. <i>zwei</i> , two.                              | 13. <i>dreizehn</i> , thirteen.  |
| 3. <i>drei</i> , three.                            | 14. <i>vierzehn</i> , fourteen.  |
| 4. <i>vier</i> , four.                             | 15. <i>funfzehn</i> (better than <i>fünfzehn</i> ),<br>fifteen.              |
| 5. <i>fünf</i> , five.                             | 16. <i>sechzehn</i> (for <i>sechszehn</i> ), six-<br>teen.                   |
| 6. <i>sechs</i> , six.                             | 17. <i>siebzehn</i> (better than <i>sieben-</i><br><i>zehn</i> ), seventeen. |
| 7. <i>sieben</i> , seven.                          | 18. <i>achtzehn</i> , eighteen.  |
| 8. <i>acht</i> , eight.                            | 19. <i>neunzehn</i> , nineteen.  |
| 9. <i>neun</i> , nine.                             |  |
| 10. <i>zehn</i> <sup>1</sup> , ten.                |  |
| 11. <i>elf</i> (better than <i>eilf</i> ), eleven. |  |

<sup>1</sup> From the first ten numbers are formed all the others up to ninety-nine.

20. *zwanzig*<sup>2</sup>, twenty.  
 21. *ein und zwanzig*, twenty-one.  
 22. *zwei und zwanzig*, twenty-two<sup>3</sup>, &c.  
 30. *dreißig*, thirty.  
 40. *vierzig*, forty.  
 50. *funfzig* (better than *fünfzig*), fifty.  
 60. *sechzig* (for *sechßzig*), sixty.  
 70. *siebzig* (better than *siebenzig*), seventy.  
 71. *ein und siebzig*, seventy-one.  
 72. *zwei und siebzig*, seventy-two, &c.  
 80. *achtzig*, eighty.  
 81. *ein und achtzig*, eighty-one, &c.  
 90. *neunzig*, ninety.  
 91. *ein und neunzig*, ninety-one.  
 92. *zwei und neunzig*, ninety-two, &c.

100. *hundert*, a or one hundred.  
 101. *hundert und eins*, a or one hundred and one. (See Note 1, Lesson L.)  
 102. *hundert und zwei*, a or one hundred and two.  
 159. *hundert neun und funfzig*, a or one hundred and fifty-nine.  
 200. *zwei hundert*, two hundred.  
 991. *neun hundert ein und neunzig*, nine hundred and ninety-one.  
 1000. *taufend*, a or one thousand.  
 10,000. *zehn tauſend*, ten thousand.  
 100,000. *hundert tauſend*<sup>4</sup>, a or one hundred thousand.  
 1,000,000. *eine Million*, a million.  
 2,000,000. *zwei Millionen*, two millions, &c.

*Obs. A.* *Zwei*, two, and *drei*, three, are declined, in taking in the Genitive *er* and in the Dative *en*; but when they are preceded or followed by a word determining the case these terminations are useless. Ex.

One cannot serve two masters at the same time.

By means of three letters.

He told these three gentlemen.

*Man kann nicht zweien Herren zugleich dienen.*

*Mitteltſt dreier Briefe.*

*Er hat dieſen drei Herren geſagt.*

*Obs. B.* Uncertainty with respect to two cardinal numbers, is expressed by *bis*, *to*, and *oder*, *or*. Ex.

Five or six weeks.

From four to five feet long.

During two or three days.

*Fünf bis ſechs Wochen.*

*Vier bis fünf Fuß lang.*

*Zwei oder drei Tage lang.*

*Obs. C.* By the addition of *er* to a cardinal number a masculine substantive is formed. Ex.

A man forty years old.

| *Ein Vierziger.*

<sup>2</sup> The tens from twenty to ninety are formed by the addition of *zig* to the units, except *dreißig*, thirty, where *ßig* is added.

<sup>3</sup> The units always precede the tens: *zwei und zwanzig*, not *zwanzig zwei*.

<sup>4</sup> Often the word *mal*, time, is added after the units of hundreds of thousands. Ex. 600,000, *ſechs mal hundert tauſend*, instead of *ſechs hundert tauſend*.

A sexagenarian.

Ein Sechziger.

A man seventy years of age.

Ein Siebziger.

*Obs. D.* Some words, denoting weight, measure, or quantity, do not admit of the plural after a cardinal number (see *Obs. D. Lesson LXVII.*), as the following :

The man (meaning a soldier).

Der Mann.

A quire (of paper).

Das Buch.

The dozen.

Das Duzend.

The foot (measure).

Der Fuß (Schuh).

Half an ounce.

Das Loth.

The pot or quart (measure).

Das Maß.

A ream (of paper).

Das Ries.

The pound.

Das Pfund.

The pair.

Das Paar.

The piece.

Das Stück.

An inch.

Der Zoll.

Exceptions are :

1. Feminine words terminating in *e*, as :

The ell, the minute.

Die Elle, die Minute.

The hour, the week.

Die Stunde, die Woche.

2. The following words :

The day, the century, the head.

Der Tag, das Jahrhundert, der Kopf.

3. All the names of coins, as :

Twelve deniers make a grosh.

Zwölf Pfennige machen einen Groschen.

*Obs. E.* The fractions of an hour are always joined to the hour that follows. (See Lessons XXXIV and XXXV.) Ex.

It is a quarter past one.

Es ist ein Viertel auf zwei.

It is half past twelve.

Es ist halb eins.

It wants a quarter to one.

Es ist drei Viertel auf eins.

It is ten minutes past one.

Es ist zehn Minuten auf zwei.

## 2. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

They are used to answer the question *der, die, das wievielte?* which in numerical order (in Latin *quotus*)? They are declined like adjectives. (See Lesson XXIII.) Ex.

Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	
Erster,	erste,	erstes.	First.
der,	die,	das erste.	The first.
ein erster,	eine erste,	ein erstes.	A first.

*Plural for all genders.*

Die Ersten.

The first.

Der Zweite, the second ;  
 der Dritte, the third ;  
 der Vierte, the fourth ;  
 der Fünfte, the fifth ;  
 der Sechste, the sixth ;  
 der Zehnte, the tenth ;  
 der Elfte, the eleventh ;  
 der Neunzehnte, the nineteenth ;  
 der Zwanzigste, the twentieth ;  
 der Ein und zwanzigste, the twenty-  
 first ;

der Zwei und zwanzigste, the twenty-second ;  
 der Drei und zwanzigste, the twenty-third ;  
 der Dreißigste, the thirtieth ;  
 der Hundertste, the hundredth ;  
 der Hundert und erste, the hundred and first ;  
 der Tausendste, the thousandth ;  
 &c.

*Obs.* Ordinal numbers are employed :

1. To mark the date. Ex.

We have to-day the first of June.  
 London, June the first.

Wir haben heute den ersten Juni.  
 London<sup>s</sup>, den ersten Juni.

In marking the date from the birth of Christ, however, cardinal numbers are employed. Ex.

In the year one thousand eight  
 hundred and thirty-nine.

Im Jahre ein tausend, acht hundert  
 neun und dreißig. (See Lesson  
 XXIII.)

2. After proper names, as in English. Ex.

Henry the fourth.  
 Lewis the fourteenth.  
 Charles the first.

Heinrich der Vierte.  
 Ludwig der Vierzehnte.  
 Karl der Erste.

### 3. DISTRIBUTIVE NUMBERS.

These numbers are real adverbs, and are therefore indeclinable.

Erstens (better than erstlich), firstly ;  
 zweitens, secondly ;

drittens, thirdly ;  
 viertens, fourthly, &c.

*Obs. A.* To these numbers belong those which we may call *variatives*. They are formed from the genitive of cardinal numbers and *lei*, an ancient word meaning kind, species. They are employed to answer the question *wie vielerlei* ? how many kinds ? Ex.

---

<sup>s</sup> Understood : wir haben, oder : wir schreiben.

Einerlei, of one kind;  
 zweierlei, of two kinds;  
 dreierlei, of three kinds;  
 hunderterlei, of a hundred kinds;  
 tausenderlei, of a thousand kinds;

allerlei (or allerhand), of all kinds;  
 keinerlei, of no kind;  
 mancherlei, of various kinds;  
 vielerlei, of many kinds.

**Obs. B.** To these numbers also belong those which we may name *partitive* numbers. They are used to answer the question *wieviel jedes Mal?* how many each time? **Ex.**

Je<sup>6</sup> eins und eins, } one  
 or simply: eins und eins, } at a  
 or: einzeln, } time;  
 je zwei und zwei, } two at a  
 or: zwei und zwei, } time;  
 zu zweien, two together;

zu dreien, three together;  
 zu hundertern, by hundreds;  
 zu tausenden, by thousands;  
 paarweise<sup>7</sup>, by pairs, in couples;  
 dugendweise, by dozens, &c.

#### 4. AUGMENTATIVE NUMBERS.

They are formed by compounding cardinal numbers with the syllables, *fach*, *fältig*, *mal*. *Fach* is a substantive signifying division, compartment, and *fältig* is derived from *die Falte*, the fold; *mal* means time. These numbers are used to answer the questions: *wie vielfach?* *wie vielfältig?* *wie vielmal?* **Ex.**

Einfach, einfältig<sup>8</sup>, simple;  
 zweifach, zweifältig (doppelt), two-  
 fold (double);  
 dreifach, dreifältig, threefold,  
 (treble);

vierfach, vierfältig, fourfold;  
 hundertfach, hundertfältig, a hun-  
 dredfold;  
 tausendfach, or fältig, a thousand-  
 fold; &c.

Einmal, once;  
 zweimal, twice;  
 dreimal, thrice or three times;

hundertmal, a hundred times;  
 tausendmal, a thousand times;  
 &c.

<sup>6</sup> Je is an adverb, signifying *ever*, *at a time*.

<sup>7</sup> Weise is a substantive meaning *manner*, joined to collective numbers (see 6th class hereafter).

Einfältig is generally used in the signification of *silly*, *stupid*.

## 5. FRACTIONAL NUMBERS.

They are formed from ordinal numbers and the termination *tel*, which is derived from the substantive *der Theil*, the part. They are all neuter substantives, with the exception of *die Hälfte*, derived from the word *halb*, half. Ex.

<i>Die Hälfte</i> , the half;	<i>das Fünftel</i> , the fifth part;
<i>das Drittel</i> , the third part;	<i>das Sechstel</i> , the sixth part,
<i>das Viertel</i> , the fourth part (a quarter);	&c.

*Obs. A.* The English numbers accompanied by the word *half* are formed in German from the ordinal numbers combined with the word *halb*. They are not declined, and require the substantive which follows them in the plural. (See *Obs. C.* Lesson LXVII.) Ex.

One hour and a half.	<i>Anderthalb Stunden.</i>
Two crowns and a half.	<i>Dritthalb Thaler</i> (zwei und ein halber Thaler).
One pound and a half.	<i>Anderthalb Pfund</i> *, ein und ein halbes Pfund.

*Obs. B.* The following also belong to the fractional numbers :

Three pounds and three quarters.	<i>Drei und drei Viertel Pfund.</i>
Six months.	<i>Ein halbes Jahr.</i>
Three months (a quarter).	<i>Ein Vierteljahr.</i>
A quarter of a yard.	<i>Eine Viertelle.</i>
Nine months (three quarters).	<i>Drei Vierteljahr.</i>
Eighteen months.	<i>Anderthalb Jahr</i> <sup>10</sup> .

## 6. COLLECTIVE NUMBERS.

They are substantives denoting a fixed number, as :

The pair, <i>das Paar</i> ;	the number of sixty, <i>das Sechß</i> ;
the dozen, <i>das Duzend</i> ;	the hundred, <i>das Hundert</i> ;
the number of fifteen, <i>die Mandel</i> ;	the thousand, <i>das Tausend</i> .

\* See *Obs. D.* of cardinal numbers.

<sup>10</sup> See the same.



## IRREGULAR VERBS.

THE irregularity of a verb is generally remarked to take place, 1. in the singular of the present tense indicative of a few verbs; 2. in the past participle; 3. in the imperfect indicative and subjunctive; and 4. in the second person singular of the imperative.

We divide the irregular verbs into two classes :

I. The first class contains only sixteen irregular verbs. They have the regular terminations of the past participle and of the imperfect, *i.e.* *t* in the past participle, and *te* in the imperfect, but change the radical vowel. Ex.

Bringen, to bring; past part. gebracht; imperf. brächte.

We have given the conjugation of these sixteen irregular verbs at the head of our general list.

II. The second class comprehends all the other irregular verbs. In the past participle they keep the termination *en* of the infinitive, and in the imperfect they change the radical vowel without taking the syllable *te*. Ex.

Lesen, to read; past part. gelesen; imperf. las.

Before the learner proceeds to the List of the Irregular Verbs he will find the following observations of essential importance.

A. It is in the first class only that several of these verbs are irregular at the same time in all the persons of the singular of the indicative. They are :

Dürfen, to dare;	Sing. of the Pres. Indic.	ich darf, du darfst, er darf.
Können, to be able;	„ „ „ „	ich kann, du kannst, er kann.
Wünschen, to wish;	„ „ „ „	ich mag, du magst, er mag.
Müssen, to be obliged;	„ „ „ „	ich muß, du mußt, er muß.
Wissen, to know;	„ „ „ „	ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß.
Wollen, to be willing;	„ „ „ „	ich will, du willst, er will.

Those of the second class are always regular in the first person singular<sup>1</sup>, but they are often irregular in the second and third persons, and then they change the letter *a* or *e* of the radical syllable—the former into *ä*, the latter into *i*. Ex.

*Rathen*, to advise; Sing. of the Pres. Indic. *ich rathe*, *du rätst*, *er rät*.

*Sprechen*, to speak; „ „ „ „ *ich spreche*, *du sprichst*, *er spricht*.

**B.** The past participle of irregular verbs is always preceded by the syllable *ge*<sup>2</sup>, the same as the regular verbs, except the past participle of those noticed in *Obs. A. Lesson XLVII*.

Some verbs are regular when they are used in an active or transitive signification, and irregular when they are employed in a neuter or intransitive signification. Ex. *Weichen*, to yield, and its compounds, as: *abweichen*, to deviate, *ausweichen*, to avoid, are irregular; but *weichen*, to soften, to mollify, and *erweichen*, to touch, to mollify, are regular. The same may be said of the following verbs:

*Intransitive and Irregular.*

*Welchen* \*, to fade.

*Pflegen* \*, to foster.

*Schaffen* \*, to create.

*Schleifen* \*, to grind.

*Transitive and Regular.*

*Welchen*, to bleach.

*Pflegen*, to be accustomed.

*Schaffen*, to procure.

*Schleifen*, to demolish.

It will be necessary for the learner to remark that there are only two irregular verbs the imperfects of which begin with another letter than the infinitive, viz. *essen*, to eat, and *seyn*, to be. The former has in the imperfect *aß*, and the latter *war*.

<sup>1</sup> Except the auxiliary verb *seyn*, to be, which is irregular in all the persons singular and plural.

<sup>2</sup> The verb *essen*, to eat, takes in the past participle, for the sake of euphony, an additional *g*, as: *geessen*, eaten, instead of *geessen*.

## I. FIRST CLASS OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS (See Note, page 451).

Containing the sixteen verbs which have *t* in the past participle, and *te* in the imperfect of both moods, like the regular verbs, but change the radical syllable; except *sollen* and *wollen*, which are regular in the past participle and imperfect of the two moods.

The verbs marked with an asterisk (\*) are also conjugated according to the regular form, when they have an active or transitive signification.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT of the Indicative, 1st, 2nd, and 3rd persons, singular.	IMPERFECT.		PARTICIPLE PAST.	IMPERATIVE, 2nd person of the singular.
		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
Brennen, to burn	. . .	brannte *	brennte	gebrannt *	
Bringen, to bring	. . .	brachte	brächte	gebracht	is wanting
Denken, to think	. . .	dachte	dächte	gedacht	habe
Dürfen, to dare	ich darf, du darfst, er darf	durfte	dürfte	gedurft	
haben, to have	ich habe, du hast, er hat	hatte	hätte	gehabt	
kennen, to know	. . .	kannte	könnte	gekannt	könne
können, to be able	ich kann, du kannst, er kann	könnte	könnte	gekonnt	möge
mögen, to be allowed	ich mag, du magst, er mag	mochte	möchte	gemocht	is wanting
müssen, to be obliged	ich muß, du mußt, er muß	mußte	mußte	gemußt	
nennen, to name	. . .	nannte	nennte	genannt	
rennen, to run	. . .	rannte	rennte	gerannt	
senden, to send	ich soll, du sollst, er soll	sandte *	sendete	gesandt *	is wanting
sollen, to be obliged	. . .	sandte *	sandte	gesandt *	
wenden, to turn	ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß	wandte	wendete	gewandt *	wisse
wissen, to know	ich will, du willst, er will	wußte	wußte	gewußt	wolle
wollen, to be willing	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	

## GENERAL LIST

## AND CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS,

Containing, besides the sixteen verbs of the first class, all those which keep in the participle past the termination of the infinitive<sup>3</sup>, and in the imperfect change the radical vowel into *a*, *ie*, *i*, *o*, or *u*, without taking *te*.  
The words in *italics* are those which are used in poetry.

*Note.* The persons and tenses not mentioned are regular, or are formed from those mentioned; derived and compound verbs are conjugated like their primitives.

<sup>a</sup> The verbs marked with an asterisk (\*) are also conjugated according to the regular form, when they have an active or transitive signification.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT Indicative, 2nd and 3rd persons singular.	IMPERFECT		PARTICIPLE PAST.	IMPERATIVE 2nd person singular.
		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
<i>Baden</i> , to bathe	du <i>badst</i> , er <i>badt</i>	<i>bad</i>	<i>biste</i>	<i>gebaden</i>	<i>bad</i> *
<i>Befehlen</i> , to command	du <i>befiehlst</i> , er <i>befiehlt</i>	<i>befiehl</i>	<i>befähle</i> ( <i>beföhle</i> )	<i>befohlen</i>	<i>befiehl</i>
<i>Sich befehlen</i> <sup>4</sup> , to apply one's self.	. . . . .	<i>befiehe</i>	<i>befähle</i>	<i>befohlen</i>	
<i>Beginnen</i> , to begin	. . . . .	<i>beginne</i>	<i>beginne</i> ( <i>beginne</i> )	<i>begonnen</i>	
<i>Beißen</i> , to bite	. . . . .	<i>biß</i>	<i>bisse</i>	<i>gebissen</i>	
<i>Verbergen</i> , to conceal	du <i>birgst</i> , er <i>birgt</i>	<i>berg</i>	<i>berge</i>	<i>geborgen</i>	<i>berg</i>
<i>Verstehen</i> , to burst	. . . . .	<i>barst</i> ( <i>borst</i> )	<i>barste</i> ( <i>börste</i> )	<i>geborsten</i>	<i>birg</i> <i>birst</i> or <i>birste</i>

<sup>3</sup> Except the verb *thun*, to do, the participle past of which is *gethan*.

<sup>4</sup> *Sich befehlen*, to apply one's self, is regular.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT Indicative, 2nd and 3rd persons singular.	IMPERFECT		PARTICIPLE PAST.	IMPERATIVE, 2nd person singular.
		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
<i>Sich besinnen, to recollect</i>	.	befann	befänne (besönnne)	befonnen	
<i>Betrügen, to deceive</i>	.	betrog	betröge *	betrogen *	
<i>Bewegen, to move, to induce</i>	.	bog	böge	gebogen	
<i>Biegen, to bend</i>	reg. or <i>du beugst, er beugt</i>	bot	böte	geboten	reg. or <i>beug</i>
<i>Bieten, to bid</i>	.	band	bände	gebunden	
<i>Binden, to bind</i>	.	bat	bäte	gebeten	
<i>Witten, to beg</i>	du <i>bitst, er bittet</i>	blies	bliese	geblasen	blase
<i>Wissen, to know</i>	.	blieb	bliebe	geblieben	
<i>Wissen, to remain</i>	du <i>brätest, er brät</i>	briet	briete	gebraten	brate
<i>Braten, to roast</i>	du <i>brichst, er bricht</i>	brach	bräche	gebrochen	brich
<i>Brachen, to break</i>	.	brannte *	brennte	gebrannt *	
<i>Brinnen, to burn (see first class)</i>	.	brachte	brächte	gebracht	
<i>Bringen, to bring (see first class)</i>	.	badhte	badhte	gebracht	
<i>Brüthen, to think (see first class)</i>	.	bung	bänge	gebungen	
<i>Bringen, to bargain, to hire</i>	du <i>brischst, er brischt</i>	brösch, brach	brösche, brätsche	gebrösch	brisch
<i>Bringen, to thrash</i>	.	brang	bränge	gebrungen	
<i>Bringen, to urge</i>	ich <i>darf, du darfst, er darf</i>	durste	dürste	geburst	is wanting
<i>Dürfen, to dare (see first class)</i>	du <i>empfangst, er empfängt</i>	empfang	empfinde	empfangen	empfang
<i>Empfangen, to receive</i>	du <i>empfehlst, er empfiehlt</i>	empfehl	empfehle	empfohlen	empfehl
<i>Empfehlen, to feel, to perceive</i>	.	empfanb	empfände	empfangen	
<i>Erbsen, to grow pale; (fig. to die)</i>	.	erblich	erbliche	erblichen	
<i>Erbsen, to choose, to elect</i>	.	erfor	erföre	erfören	erfisch
<i>Erbsen, to become extinct</i>	du <i>erlischtst, er erlischt</i>	erlosch	erlösch	erloschen	
<i>Erbsen, to resound</i>	.	erscholl	erschalle	erschollen	erschrid *
<i>Erbsen, to be frightened</i>	du <i>erschrickst, er erschrickt *</i>	erschrock	erschücke	erschrocken *	
<i>Erbsen, to consider</i>	du <i>isstst, er isst or ißt</i>	erwog	erwäge	erwogen	isß
<i>Erbsen, to eat</i>		aß	äße	gegessen	

	bu fällst, er fällt	fiel	fielen	gefallen	fiel
gallen, to fall	bu fängst, er fängt	fing	fingen	gesungen	fange
gängen, to catch	bu fängst, er fängt	focht	föchten	gefochten	ficht
gessen, to fence, to fight.		fiel	fiele	gefallen	
ginden, to find	bu fichtst, er ficht *	flocht	föchte	gefunden	ficht, flicht
glichten, to twist, to plait	reg. or <i>du fleugst, er flucht</i>	flog	föge	geflogen	reg. or <i>flieg</i>
glichen, to fly	reg. or <i>du fuchtest, er flucht</i>	floh	föhe	geflohen	reg. or <i>fluch</i>
glichen, to flee	reg. or <i>du fuchtest, er flucht</i>	floss	föfle	geflossen	reg. or <i>fluss</i>
glichen, to flow	bu friffst, er frisst	frass	fräße	gefressen	friß
gessen, to eat (in speaking of brutes), to eat greedily		fror	före	gefroren	
grieren, to freeze		gohr *	göhr *	gegöhren	
gähren, to ferment	bu gebierst, er gebiert	gebar	gebäre	geboren	gebäre
gebären, to bring forth	bu gibst, er gibt	gab	gäbe	gegeben	gib
geben, to give	reg. or <i>du gebuestest, er ge- beut</i>	gebot	geböte	geboten	reg. or <i>ge- beut</i>
gebieten, to command (like bieten)		geböh	geböhe	geböhren	
gedeihen, to prosper		ging	ginge	gegangen	
gehen, to go, to walk		gelang	gelänge	gelungen	
geingen, to succeed (verb impers. gov. Dative)	bu giltst, er gilt	galt	gälte (gölte)	gegolten	gilt
geissen, to be worth		genas *	genäße *	genesen *	
genesen, to recover, to grow well					

to comply with, which is regular. When the verb *fahren* signifies *to move any thing by a carriage*, it is active and takes *haben* for its auxiliary; when it signifies *to ride in a carriage*, it takes *sein*. Ex. Der Kutscher hat mich *gefahren*, the coachman drove me; wir sind auf das Land *gefahren*, we went to the country in a carriage.

*gebieten* is derived from *bleichen*, to bleach, to whiten in the sun, which is regular.  
The use of this verb is antiquated; it is however still used in the same style and in poetry, but not in the present tense.  
This verb is derived from *löchen*, to extinguish, which is in itself as well as *auslöchen*, to extinguish, to efface.  
All regular derivatives of *sehen* are irregular, except *willsahren*,

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT Indicative, 2nd and 3rd persons singular.	IMPERFECT		PARTICIPLE PAST.	IMPERATIVE, 2nd person singular.
		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
Genießen, to enjoy	reg. or <i>du geneusst, er geneusst</i> es geschieht	genieß	genösse	genossen	reg. or <i>ge- nuss</i>
Geschähen, to happen (verb impers.)	.	geschah	geschähe	geschähen	
Gewinnen, to win, to gain	.	gewann	gewänne (gewön- ne)	gewonnen	
Gießen, to pour	reg. or <i>du giessest, er giesst</i>	goss	gösse	gegossen	reg. or <i>guss</i>
Gleichen, to be like <sup>9</sup>	.	glich	gläche	geglichen	
Gleiten, to glide, to slip <sup>10</sup>	.	glitt *	glitte *	gegittten *	
Glücken, to shine or faintly	.	glomm	glömme	geglommen	
Graben, to dig	du grabst, er gräbt	grab	gräbe	gegraben	grabe
Greifen, to lay hold of, to seize	ich habe, du hast, er hat	griff	griffe	gegriffen	
haben, to have (see first class)	du hast, er hat	hatte	hätte	gehabt	habe halte (halt)
halten, to hold	.	hielt	hielte	gehalten	
hängen, to hang, to be sus- pended <sup>11</sup>	.	hing	hänge	gehungen	
hauen, to hew	.	hieb *	hiebe *	gehauen	.
heben, to lift, to heave	.	hob	höbe (hübe)	gehoben	
heissen, to be called, to bid	.	hieß	hiesse	geheissen	hül
helfen, to help	du hilfst, er hilft	half	hälfe (hülfe)	geholfen	
helfen, to chide, to scold	.	hiff *	hiffe *	gehiffen	
kennen, to know, to be acquainted with (see first class)	.	kannte	kennete	gesehen	
klettern, to climb	.	kletterte	kletterte	geklettert	
klingen, to sound	.	klang	klänge	geklingen	

können, to be able, can (see first class)	ich kann, du kannst, er kann	konnte	könnte	gekonnt	könne
können (see können)	reg. or <i>du krenneshst, er krenneshst</i>	konnte	könnte	gekonnt	könne
können, to choose, to elect	.	For	For	gekonnt	lassen
lassen, to load	.	laden *	laden *	gekonnt	lassen
lassen, to let, to leave, to permit	du lässtest, er lässt	ließ	ließ	gekonnt	lassen
lassen, to run	du lässtest, er lässt	ließ	ließ	gekonnt	lassen
lassen, to suffer <sup>12</sup>	.	litt	litt	gekonnt	lassen
lassen, to lend	.	lieh	lieh	gekonnt	lassen
lesen, to read	du liestest, er liestest or liest	las	las	gekonnt	lassen
liegen, to lie, to be situated <sup>13</sup>	.	lag	lag	gekonnt	lassen
liegen, to lie, to utter a false-hood	reg. or <i>du leugst, er leugt</i>	log	log	gekonnt	lassen
malen, to grind <sup>14</sup>	.	reg. or, not so good, muhl	reg. or, not so good, muhle	gemahlen	malen
malen, to avoid	.	mied	mied	gemahlen	malen
malen, to milk	.	moß *	moß *	gemahlen	malen
malen, to measure	du missest, er misst	maß	maß	gemessen	malen
malen, to like, to be allowed, to be able, may (see first class)	ich mag, du magst, er mag	mochte	mochte	gemocht	malen
malen, to be obliged, must (see first class)	ich muß, du mußt, er muß	mußte	mußte	gemußt	malen
nehmen, to take	du nimmst, er nimmt	nahm	nahm	genommen	nehmen
nennen, to name (see first class)	.	nannte	nannte	genannt	nennen
pfeifen, to whistle	.	piff	piff	gepiffen	pfeifen

<sup>9</sup> The verb *gleichen*, to make even, is regular.

<sup>10</sup> *Begleiten*, to accompany, is regular.

<sup>11</sup> This verb must not be mistaken for *hängen*, to hang, to suspend, which is active and regular.

<sup>12</sup> *Bereiben*, to disgust, to make aversive, is regular.

<sup>13</sup> This verb must not be mistaken for *legen*, to lay, to place, which is active and regular.

<sup>14</sup> *Malen*, to paint, without an *n*, is regular.



INFINITIVE.	PRESENT Indicative, 2nd and 3rd persons singular.	IMPERFECT		PARTICIPLE PAST.	IMPERATIVE, 2nd person singular.
		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
pflegen, to foster, to cherish <sup>15</sup> preisen, to extol, to praise quellen, to spring forth rächen, to avenge	. . . du quiffst, er quillt . . .	pflög pries* quoll . . .	pflöge prieße* quölle . . .	gepflogen gepriesen gequollen reg. or (not so good) gerochen	quill  rathe
raten, to advise, to guess reiben, to rub reißen, to tear reiten, to ride (on horseback) rennen, to run fast (see first class) riechen, to smell ringen, to wrestle, to wring rinnen, to run, to flow, to co- agulate	du rätst, er rät .	rieth rieb riß ritt rannte roch rang rann  rief . . . soll sog schuf schrieb sahen  schalt schor schob schob	riethe riebe riße ritte rennte röche ränge ränne (rönne)  riefe . . . sölle söge schäfe schiede schiene  schänte (schönte) schöre schöbe schölle	gerathen gerieben gerissen geritten gerannt gerochen gerungen geronnen  gerufen gesalzen* gehoffen  gesogen geschaffen geschieden geschienen  gescholten geschoren geschoben geschossen	reg. or <i>rath</i>        kaufe (kau)
rufen, to call salzen*, to salt saufen, to drink (in speaking of brutes) saugen, to suck <sup>16</sup> schaffen, to create <sup>17</sup> schiden, to separate <sup>18</sup> schinen, to seem, to appear, to shine schelten, to scold scheren, to shear schieben, to shove schießen, to shoot	. . . . . . du sauffst, er sauft . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . du schiltst, er schilt reg. formerly du schierst, er schierst . . . . . .	rief soll sog schuf schrieb sahen  schalt schor schob schob	riefe . . . sölle söge schäfe schiede schiene  schänte (schönte) schöre schöbe schölle	gerufen gesalzen* gehoffen  gesogen geschaffen geschieden geschienen  gescholten geschoren geschoben geschossen	kaufe (kau)        schilt reg. formerly schier

	bu schlaiffst, er schlaift	schlauff *	schlauffe *	geschunden	schlaufe (schlaf)
schlafen, to sleep	bu schlaiffst, er schlaift	schlaiff	schlauffe	geschlafen	schlaufe
schlagen, to beat, to strike <sup>19</sup>	bu schlaiffst, er schlaift	schlug	schläge	geschlagen	reg. or schlauss
schleichen, to sneak, to slide	.	schlich	schliche	geschlichen	
schleifen, to grind, to sharpen <sup>20</sup>	.	schliff	schleife	geschliffen	
schleissen, to slit, to split, to tear	.	schliss	schleisse	geschliffen	
schleissen, to shut	reg. or du schleusst, er schleusst	schloß	schlösse	geschloffen	
schlingen, to twine, to swallow	.	schlang	schlänge	geschlungen	
schmalzen, to add fat or butter	.	.	.	geschmalzen	
schmeissen, to sling	.	schmiss	schmisse	geschmissen	
schmelzen, to melt <sup>21</sup>	bu schmilzest, er schmilzt	schmolz	schmolze	geschmolzen	schmilz
schneuben*, to snuff, to blow,	.	schnob	schnöbe	geschnoben	
schneiben, to breathe	.	schneib	schneibe	geschneiben	
schneiben, to cut	.	schnitt	schnitte	geschnitten	
schrauben, to screw	.	schraub*	schraubte	geschraubt	
schreiben, to write	.	schrieb	schriebe	geschrieben	
schreien, to cry	.	schrie	schreie	geschrien	
schreiten, to stride	.	schritt	schritte	geschritten	
schreiten, to fester	.	schwor	schwöre	geschworen	
schweigen, to be silent <sup>22</sup>	.	schwiege	schwäge	geschwiegen	
schwollen, to swell <sup>23</sup>	bu schwillst, er schwillt	schwoll	schwölle	geschwollen	schwoll
schwimmen, to swim	.	schwamm	schwamme	geschwommen	
schwimmen, to vanish, to de-crease	.	schwand	schwände	geschwunden	
schwippen, to swing	.	schwang	schwänge	geschwungen	

<sup>19</sup> schlagen, to be accustomed, to be wont, is regular.

<sup>20</sup> schlingen, to suckle, is regular.

<sup>21</sup> schmeissen, in the signification of to procure, to get, is regular, as also anschaffen, to purchase, to buy; abschaffen, to dismiss.

<sup>22</sup> schweigen, to be silent, is regular.

<sup>23</sup> The active verb schwellen, to swell, is regular.

<sup>19</sup> The verbs rat[sch]lagen, berath[sch]lagen; to consult, to consider, are regular.

<sup>20</sup> schleifen, to drag along, to pull down, to demolish, is regular.

<sup>21</sup> schmelzen, to dissolve, to liquefy, is active and regular.

<sup>22</sup> schweigen, to silence, is active and regular.

<sup>23</sup> The active verb schwellen, to cause to swell, is regular.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT Indicative, 2nd and 3rd persons singular.	IMPERFECT		PARTICIPLE PAST.	IMPERATIVE, 2nd person singular.
		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
Schwören, to swear	du schwörst, er sieht	schwör (schwört)	schwöre (schwüre)	geschworen	siehe (sieh)
Sehen, to see	ich bin, du bist, er ist. Pl. wir sind, ihr seid, sie sind	sah sahst *	sähe sähest	gesehen	sey
Senden, to send (see first class)		war	wäre	gewesen	
Seyn, to be					
Sieden, to boil, to seethe <sup>24</sup>		sott	sötte	gekott	
Singen, to sing		sang	sänge	gesungen	
Sinken, to sink		sank	sänke	gesunken	
Sinnen, to meditate, to think		sann	sänne	gesonnen	
Sitzen, to sit		sas	säße	gessen	
Sollen, to be obliged, to be bid (see first class)	ich soll, du sollst, er soll	.	.	.	is wanting.
Spalten, to split <sup>25</sup>		spie	spie	gespalten	
Spinnen, to spin		spinn (spinn)	spinne (spinne)	gespinnen	
Spitzen, to split		spitz	spitze	gespitzt	
Spreden, to speak	du sprichst, er spricht	sprach	sprache	gesprochen	sprich
Sprengen, to sprout	z. or <i>auspreussend</i> , er spreusst	sprang (sprung)	spränge (spränge)	gesprungen	reg. or <i>spreuss</i>
Springen, to spring					
Stechen, to sting, to prick	du stichst, er sticht	stach	stäche	gestochen	stich
Stehen, to be fixed, to stick <sup>26</sup>		saß	stäte	gestochen	stich
Stehen, to stand		stand (stund)	stände (stünde)	gestanden	steh
Stehlen, to steal	du stiehlst, er stiehlt	stahl (stoh)	stähle (stöhle)	gestohlen	stiehl
Steigen, to mount, to ascend		stieg	stiege	gestiegen	stieg
Sterven, to die, to lose life	du stirbst, er stirbt	starb	stärbe (stürbe)	gestorben	stirb
Stieben, to be scattered, to fly off like dust		stob	stöbe	gestoben	
Stinken, to stink	du stuchst, er stucht	stank	stänke	gestunken	stuche (stuch)
Stoßen, to push		stieß	stieße	gestoßen	stoße (stoß)

			streich	streich	gestrichen
Streichen, to stroke, to rub	.	.	streich	streich	gestrichen
Streiten, to contend, to quarrel, to strive	.	.	streich	streich	gestrichen
Tragen, to do	ich trage, du trägst, er trägt	.	trag	trage	getragen
Tragen, to carry, to wear, bear	du trägst, er trägt	.	trag	trage	getragen
Triffen, to hit, to meet with	du triffst, es trifft	.	traf	trife	getroffen
Treiben, to drive	.	.	trat	träte	getrieben
Treten, to tread	du trittst, er tritt	.	trat	träte	getreten
Triefen, to drop	reg. or du treufst, er treufst	.	troff *	tröffe *	getroffen *
Trügen, to deceive (see trügen)	.	.	trank (trunt)	tränke (trünke)	getrunken
Trinken, to drink	.	.	trog	tröge	getrogen
Trügen, to deceive	.	.	verblüch	verblüche	verblüchen
Verbleichen, to grow pale, to fade, fig. to die (see erbleichen)	.	.	verdarb	verdarbe (verdarbe)	verdorben
Verderben, to be spoiled <sup>27</sup>	du verderbst, er verderbt	.	verdroß	verdröße	verdorben
Verdrücken, to vex (impers. verb gov. Accus.)	.	.	vergaß	vergäße	vergessen
Vergessen, to forget	du vergißest, er vergißt	.	vergüch	vergüche	vergessen
Vergleichen, to compare (see gleichen)	.	.	.	.	verglichen
Verhehlen, to conceal	.	.	verlor	verlöre	verhohlen *
Verlieren, to lose	.	.	vermoort *	vermöorre *	verloren
Vermitteln, to confuse, to perplex	.	.	.	.	vermoort *
Verzeihen, to pardon	.	.	verziech	verzieche	verziehen
Wachsen, to grow, to wax	du wachsest, er wächst	.	wuchß	wüchße	gewachsen
Wägen, to weigh, to balance (active)	.	.	wog *	wöge *	gewogen *

<sup>26</sup> The active verb *stehen*, to boil, is regular.  
<sup>27</sup> The active verb *spalten*, to cleave, is regular.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT Indicative, 2nd and 3rd persons singular.	IMPERFECT		PARTICIPLE PAST.	IMPERATIVE 2nd person singular.
		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
Waschen, to wash	bu wäschtst, er wäscht	wusch wob *	wüsch wöbe *	gewaschen *	wasche
Weben, to weave	. . . . .	wich	wiche	gewoben	
Yielden, to yield <sup>28</sup>	. . . . .	wies	wiese	gewiesen	
Zeigen, to show	. . . . .	wandte *	wende	gewandt *	
Umben, to turn <sup>29</sup> (see first class)	. . . . .	warb	wärbe (würbe)	geworben	wirb
Werben, to sue, to enlist	bu wirbst, er wirbt	wurde, warb	würde	geworben	werde
Werben, to become (see Lesson LXI.)	bu wirft, er wirft	warf	würfe (würfe)	geworfen	wirf
Werfen, to throw	. . . . .	wog	wöge	gewogen	
Wegen, to weigh (neuter <sup>30</sup> )	. . . . .	wand	wände	gewunden	
Winden, to wind	. . . . .	wort *	wörte *	geworren *	
Wirren, to entangle; like its derivative verwirren	. . . . .	wufte	wüfte	gewuht	wisse
Wissen, to know (see first class)	ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß	. . . . .	. . . . .	. . . . .	wolle
Wollen, to be willing (see first class)	ich will, du willst, er will	. . . . .	. . . . .	. . . . .	
Zeihen, to accuse (is used only in law terms)	. . . . .	zieh	ziehe	gegichen	
Ziehen, to draw	. . . . .	zog	zöge	gezogen	
Zwingen, to compel, to force	. . . . .	zwang	zwänge	gezwungen	

<sup>28</sup> In the sense of *to soften*, *to mollify*, *weiden*, is active and regular.

<sup>29</sup> The neuter verb *wenden* and the reflexive *sich wenden*, are irregular, but the active *wenden*, is regular.

<sup>30</sup> *Wegen*, to rock, is an active verb and regular.

**Obs.** It will be remembered that derived verbs and those compounded with inseparable and separable particles must be looked for in this list under their primitives. Ex. *Entwerfen*, to project, and *verwerfen*, to reproach with, under *werfen*, to throw; *verbieten*, to forbid, under *bieten*, to bid; *ausgehen*, to go out, under *gehen*, to go; *vorschreiben*, to prescribe, under *schreiben*, to write, &c.

## THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

The subject of a sentence is always in the Nominative; the object, upon which the action of the subject falls, is put in the Accusative. The Nominative or subject always follows the question *who? wer?* the Accusative or object the question *whom? wen?* Ex. *The man strikes the dog, der Mann schlägt den Hund.* Question: *who strikes? wer schlägt?* Answer: *the man, der Mann.* The man is the subject or Nominative. Question: *whom does the man strike? wen schlägt der Mann?* Answer: he strikes *the dog, er schlägt den Hund.* The dog is the object or Accusative. Charles writes a letter, *Karl schreibt einen Brief.* Karl is the subject or Nominative, *einen Brief* the object or Accusative.

The object of a sentence may be direct or indirect. It is direct when it is in the Accusative, but indirect when it stands in the Genitive or Dative.

The Genitive always answers the question *whose? or of what? wessen?* Ex. *Es ist der Garten des Königs, it is the garden of the king.* Question: *whose garden is it? wessen Garten ist es?* Answer: the king's, *des Königs.* *Es ist das Haus meines Freundes, it is the house of my friend.* Question: *whose house is it? wessen Haus ist es?* Answer: my friend's, *meines Freundes.* *Die Tapferkeit unserer Soldaten, the valour of our soldiers.* Question: *whose valour? wessen Tapferkeit?* Answer: our soldiers', *unserer Soldaten.*

The Dative always answers the question *to whom? wem?* Ex. *Der Vater gibt seinem Sohne das Buch, the father gives the book to his son.* Question: *to whom does the father give the book? wem gibt der Vater das Buch?* Answer: to his son, *seinem Sohne.* *Ich schrieb meiner Schwester einen Brief, I wrote a letter to my sister.* Question: *to whom did I write a letter? wem schrieb ich einen Brief?* Answer: to my sister, *meiner Schwester.* *Er wurde der Königin vorgestellt, he was presented to the queen.* Question: *to whom was he presented? wem wurde er vorgestellt?* Answer: to the queen, *der Königin.*

## I.

## VERBS GOVERNING THE NOMINATIVE.

A.) The following verbs cannot govern any case but the Nominative; when they have a predicate, it is also put in the Nominative.

*Seyn, to be.* *Sein Bruder war ein großer Held, his brother was a great hero.*

**Werden**, to become. Er wurde ein reicher Mann, he became a rich man.

**Bleiben**, to remain. Er blieb stets mein getreuer Freund, he always remained my faithful friend.

**Heißen**, to be called. Mein ältester Bruder heißt Karl, my eldest brother's name is Charles.

**Scheinen**, to seem. Der Tag schien mir eine Stunde, das Jahr ein Tag, the day seemed to me an hour, the year a day.

**B.)** Some passive verbs, the active of which requires two accusatives, as :

**Genannt werden**, to be named. Er kann ein braver Mann genannt werden, he may be named a brave man.

**Gescholten werden**, to be abused. Er wurde ein Betrüger gescholten, he was abused as a cheat.

**Geschimpft werden**, to be insulted. Er wird eine feige Kiemme geschimpft, he is insulted as a coward.

## II.

### VERBS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE.

**A.)** The following verbs require the person in the Accusative and the thing in the Genitive.

**Anklagen**, to accuse. Man klagte ihn des Diebstahls an, they accused him of theft.

**Belehren**, to instruct, to inform. Er hat mich eines Bessern belehrt, he has set me right.

**Berauben**, to rob. Man hat ihn seines Vermögens beraubt, they have robbed him of his fortune.

**Beschuldigen**, to accuse. to charge. Man hat ihn des Hochverraths beschuldigt, they have accused him of high treason.

**Entbinden** or **entladen**, to release from. Ich entbinde or entlade Sie Ihres Eides, I release you from your oath.

**Entblößen**, to strip. Man hat ihn aller seiner Habe entblößt, they have stripped him of all his property.

**Entkleiden**, to deprive of. Der König entkleidete ihn seiner Würde, the king deprived him of his dignity.

**Entlassen**, to dismiss. Ich entlasse Sie meines Dienstes (also aus meinem Dienste), I dismiss you from my service.

**Entlebigen**, to free from, to disencumber. Ich entlebigte ihn dieser Last, I freed him of this burden.

Entsetzen, to discharge. Man hat ihn seines Amtes entsetzt, they discharged him from his office.

Entwöhnen, to wean. Sie entwöhnte das Kind der (also von der) Brust, she weaned the child (from her breast).

Ueberführen, } to convict. Man hat ihn eines Verbrechens überführt,  
Ueberweisen, } (überwiesen), they have convicted him of a crime.

Ueberheben, to spare, to save. Ich überhebe Dich dieser Mühe, I save you this trouble.

Ueberzeugen, to convince. Er hat mich dessen überzeugt<sup>1</sup>, he has convinced me of it.

Versichern, to assure. (See *Obs.* Lesson LXVI.) Ich versichere Sie meiner Hochachtung und meiner Liebe, I assure you of my esteem and my love.

Verweisen\* (des Landes), to banish (from the country). Man hat ihn des Landes<sup>2</sup> verwiesen, they have banished him from the country.

Würdigen, to deign, to think worthy. Er würdigte mich seines Vertrauens, he thought me worthy of his confidence.

B.) Many reflective verbs require the reflective pronoun in the Accusative and the object in the Genitive, as :

Sich annehmen, to interest one's self in. Er nahm sich des Kindes an, he interested himself in the child.

Sich bedienen, to make use of. Ich bediene mich dieser schönen Gelegenheit, I profit by this fine opportunity.

Sich befeßigen or befeisigen, to apply to, to attend to. Befleißige Dich der Tugend, apply thyself to virtue.

Sich seines Amtes, seiner Forderung begeben, to resign, to give up one's employment, one's pretension.

Sich bemächtigen, to take possession of. Man bemächtigte sich seiner Habe, they took possession of his property.

Sich bemätern, to make one's self master of, to seize. Man bemätern sich des Diebes, they seized the culprit.

Sich besinnen, to recollect. Ich besinne mich dieses Umstandes nicht, I do not recollect the circumstance.

Sich entäußern, to renounce, to alienate. Sie wollte sich ihres Erbtheils nicht entäußern, she did not wish to alienate her inheritance.

Sich des Weines enthalten, to abstain from wine.

Sich einer Sache entschlagen, to get rid of a thing.

<sup>1</sup> This verb is also employed with von, e. g. Ich bin von Ihrer Freundschaft überzeugt, I am convinced of your friendship.

<sup>2</sup> This verb is also used with the preposition aus, e. g. Jemanden aus dem Lande verweisen, to banish some one from the country.



Sich entsinnen, to remember, to recollect. Ich kann mich dessen nicht entsinnen, I cannot remember it.

Sich der Armen erbarmen, to have compassion on the poor.

Sich seines Versprechens (or an sein Versprechen) erinnern (Obs. D. Lesson LXXIII.), to remember one's promise.

Sich seines Zornes erwehren, to resist (to master) one's anger.

Sich freuen, to rejoice. Ich freue mich Deines Glücks (or über Dein Glück; Lesson LXXII.), I rejoice in your happiness.

Sich einer Antwort getrösten, to hope with confidence for an answer.

Sich seines Reichthums rühmen, to boast of one's riches.

Sich einer schlechten Handlung schämen, to be ashamed of a bad action.

Sich unterfangen, } to dare, to venture. Ich unterwinde mich dessen  
Sich unterwinden, } nicht, I do not venture it.  
Sich vermaßen, }

Sich eines solchen Glücks vermuthen, to expect such a happiness.

Sich einer Sache versehen, to be aware of a thing.

Sich einer Sache weigern, to refuse, to decline any thing.

C.) Several verbs govern either the Genitive or the Accusative, but with the former they denote a more general and absolute sense than with the latter, as :

Achten, to mind, to esteem. Ich achte seiner (or ihn), I esteem him.

Bedürfen, to be in want of. Wir bedürfen Ihrer (or Ihre) Hülfe, we are in want of your assistance.

Entbehren, to do without. Ich kann seiner (or ihn) nicht entbehren, I cannot do without him.

Erwähnen, to mention. Er erwähnte Ihrer (or Sie), he mentioned you.

Genießen, to enjoy. Genieße der (or die) Freuden dieses Lebens, enjoy the comforts of this life.

Pflegen, to foster, to take care of. Pflege seiner (or ihn), take care of him.

Schonen, to spare. Du mußt seiner (or ihn) schonen, thou must spare him.

Bergeffen, to forget. Bergeffen Sie meiner (or mich) nicht, do not forget me.

D.) The following govern the Genitive only :

Gedenken, to remember, to think of<sup>3</sup>. Er gedachte meiner, he thought of me.

<sup>3</sup> Denken, to think, governs the Accusative with the preposition an. Ich werde an Dich denken, I will think of you. (See *infra*, *Verbs governing Prepositions*.)

Harren, to wait for. Wir haben Deiner lang geharret, we have been waiting for you a long time.

Lachen, to laugh at. Ein Jeder lacht seiner Eitelkeit, every one laughs at his self-conceitedness <sup>4</sup>.

Spotten, to mock <sup>5</sup>. Spotten Sie meiner nicht, do not mock me.

Warten, to attend to. Er wartet seines Amtes, he attends to his office.

E.) The verb *seyn*, to be, also requires the Genitive in the following expressions :

Gewohnt seyn, to be accustomed. Er ist dessen nicht gewohnt, he is not accustomed to it.

Der Meinung seyn, to be of opinion.

Guten Muthes, guter Laune seyn, to be of good heart, in spirits.

Willens seyn, to intend, to purpose.

Des Todes seyn, to die. Er ist des Todes, he is a dead man.

Guter Hoffnung seyn, to be in the family-way.

Obs. The verbs always govern the same case as the participles used as adjectives.

F.) Verbs employed in relation to an indefinite time also require the Genitive, unless they are followed by a preposition, as :

Des Morgens, des Abends spazieren gehen, to take a walk in the morning, in the evening.

Des Nachts <sup>6</sup> (bei Nacht or die Nacht hindurch) arbeiten, to work at night.

Des Vormittags abreisen, to depart in the forenoon.

Des Nachmittags spazieren reiten, to take a ride in the afternoon.

Des Tages (bei or am Tage) arbeiten, to work during the day.

Sonntags und Montags geht die Post ab, the mail starts on Sunday and Monday.

Mein Freund kommt sechsmal des Jahrs (or im Jahre), zweimal des Monats (or im Monat), einmal die Woche (Accusative), my friend comes six times a year, twice a month, once a week. (See Lesson XXXIII. and Obs. B. Lesson LVI.)

Obs. The use of the genitive case was formerly much more frequent than it is at present ; and instead of *iß von dem Brode*, eat of the bread ; *trinke von dem Weine*, drink of the wine, we find in ancient authors, *iß des Brodes*, *trink des Weines*.

<sup>4</sup> Lachen also governs the Accusative with the preposition *über*.

<sup>5</sup> Spotten also governs the Accusative with the preposition *über* ; and *verspotten*, to deride, the Accusative alone.

<sup>6</sup> Nacht, though a feminine noun, adds here *s* in the genitive.

## III.

## VERBS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

Besides the Accusative of the object, many transitive verbs govern the Dative of the person.

*Semandem Etwas geben*, to give something to some one.

*Semandem Etwas sagen, melden, schreiben*, to say, to announce, to write something to some one.

The same occurs with the following verbs :

*befehlen*, to order ;  
*berichten*, to report ;  
*bezahlen*, to pay ;  
*bieten*, to offer ;  
*borgen*, to lend ;  
*bringen*, to bring ;  
*erlauben*, to permit ;  
*erlassen*, to remit ;  
*gebieten*, to command ;  
*geloben*, to promise ;  
*gestatten*, to permit ;  
*gewähren*, to grant ;  
*glauben*, to believe ;  
*gönnen*, not to envy ;  
*klagen*, to complain ;

*leihen*, to lend ;  
*leisten*, to afford, to render ;  
*liefern*, to deliver ;  
*nehmen*, to take away  
*offenbaren*, to reveal ;  
*opfern*, to sacrifice  
*rathen*, to advise ;  
*rauben*, to rob ;  
*reichen*, to reach, to hand to ;  
*schenken*, to present ;  
*senden*, to send ;  
*stehlen*, to steal ;  
*weihen*, to consecrate ;  
*widmen*, to dedicate ;  
*zeigen*, to show.

To these must be added verbs compounded with *ab*, *an*, *bei*, *ent*, *vor*, *wider*, *zu*, as :

*abbitten*, to beg pardon ;  
*abfordern*, to demand from ;  
*abkaufen*, to buy of ;  
*abrathen*, to dissuade ;  
*abschlagen*, to refuse ;  
*absprechen*, to deny ;  
*abzwingen*, to force from ;  
*anbieten*, to offer ;  
*andeuten*, to notify ;  
*anbieten*, to attribute ;  
*ankündigen*, to announce ;  
*anrathen*, to advise ;

*anzeigen*, to advertise ;  
*beibringen*, to impart ;  
*beilegen*, to attribute ;  
*beimeffen*, to impute ;  
*entreißen*, to snatch from ;  
*entziehen*, to take from ;  
*vorlesen*, to read to ;  
*vorsingen*, to sing to ;  
*vorwerfen*, to reproach with ;  
*widerrathen*, to dissuade ;  
*zusagen*, to promise ;  
*zuschreiben*, to impute.

*Examples.*

Jemandem seinen Fehler abbitten, to beg pardon of a person for a fault.  
 Ich ließ ihm den Degen abfordern, I ordered the sword to be demanded from him.

Ich bot ihm Geld an, I offered him money.

Es war unmöglich ihm dieses beizubringen, it was impossible to impart this to him.

Er entriß mir den Stock, he snatched the stick from me.

Ich las ihm das Buch vor, I read the book to him.

Man wird ihm ein Lied vorsingen, a song will be sung to him, &c.

The Dative case is also governed by

A.) Most neuter or intransitive verbs (these verbs never having an object in the Accusative), such as :

Jemandem angehören, to belong to some one.

Anstehen, to suit. Das steht mir nicht an, this does not suit me.

Aufwarten, to wait on. Ich werde morgen die Ehre haben, Ihnen aufzuwarten, I shall have the honour to wait on you to-morrow.

Jemandem ausweichen, to give way to some one.

Begegnen, to meet. Ich bin Ihrem Herrn Bruder begegnet, I have met your brother.

Beistehen, to assist. Man muß den Armen beistehen, we must assist the poor.

Danken, to thank. Ich dankte ihr, I thanked her.

Dienen, to serve. Er diente seinem Vaterlande, he served his country.

Drohen, to threaten. Er drohte mir, he threatened me.

Entgehen, to escape, to avoid. Um dem Tode zu entgehen, nahm er die Flucht, in order to avoid death he took to flight.

Folgen, to follow. Ich werde Ihrem Rathe folgen, I shall follow your advice.

Gefallen, to please. Er gefällt mir sehr, he pleases me much.

Gehorchen, to obey. Kinder müssen ihren Eltern und ihren Lehrern gehorchen, children must obey their parents and their masters.

Jemandem gleichen, to be like some one.

Gleich kommen, to be equal. Ich kann ihm nicht gleich kommen, I cannot equal him.

Helfen, to help. Ich half ihm arbeiten, I helped him work.

Nachahmen, to imitate<sup>7</sup>. Nehmen Sie ihm nach, imitate him.

---

<sup>7</sup> Nachahmen requires the person in the Dative, but the thing in the Accusative. *Ex.* Er ahmt meine Handschrift nach, he imitates my handwriting.

Nachgehen<sup>8</sup>, to follow. Ich bin ihm nachgegangen, I have followed him.

Schmeicheln, to flatter. Schmeicheln Sie ihr nicht, do not flatter her.

Troßen, Troß bieten, to bid defiance. Ich troße der Gefahr, I brave (defy) the danger; ich biete meinen Feinden Troß, I bid my enemies defiance.

Widersprechen, to contradict. Ich wollte ihm nicht widersprechen, I did not wish to contradict him.

Zuhören, to listen to. Hören Sie ihr zu, listen to her.

Zusehen<sup>9</sup>, to look on. Ich sehe ihm zu, I look on him.

Zuvorkommen, to be beforehand, to anticipate. Er ist meinem Wunsch zuvor gekommen, he has anticipated my wish.

The same is the case with the following verbs :

Anhängen, to adhere to ;  
anliegen, to apply to, to solicit ;  
antworten, to answer ;  
beäagen, to please ;  
beifallen, }  
beipflichten, } to agree with a per-  
beistimmen, } son in opinion ;  
beitreten, }  
beikommen, to come near, to get  
at ;  
beispringen, to come quickly to  
one's assistance ;  
bekommen, to agree with (referring  
to health) ;  
bevorstehen, to impend ;  
einfallen, to occur to one's mind ;  
einkleuchten, to be clear, to appear  
evident ;  
entfliehen, to escape ;  
entsprechen, to answer to, to cor-  
respond to ;  
fehlen, to be wanting ;  
fluchen, to curse ;  
fröhnen, to do service without pay ;  
gebühren, to be due ;  
gelingen, to prosper ;

gehören, to belong to ;  
gelingen, to succeed ;  
genügen, to suffice ;  
gerathen, to be successful ;  
gereichen, to turn out ;  
geziemen, to be becoming ;  
huldigen, to do homage ;  
lohnem, to reward ;  
mangeln, to be wanting ;  
nützen, to be useful ;  
obliegen, to apply one's self to a  
thing, to be incumbent upon ;  
schaden, to hurt ;  
scheinen, to appear, to seem ;  
steuern, to check, to restrain ;  
trauen, to trust ;  
unterliegen, to succumb ;  
wehren, to prevent ;  
weichen, to give way, to yield ;  
widerstehen, to resist ;  
willfahren, to grant ;  
wohlwollen, to wish well ;  
zufallen, to fall to one's lot ;  
zugehören, to belong to ;  
zukommen, to be due ;  
zureben, to exhort.

<sup>8</sup> All intransitives compounded with nach govern the Dative, as : nachlaufen, to run after ; nachgeben, to yield.

<sup>9</sup> Anhören, to listen to, and ansehen, to look at, are active, and govern the Accusative.

*Obs. A.* Intransitive verbs which admit a passive voice are never construed with the nominative of the person, as in English. Ex.

Mir wird beigestanden (not ich werde), I am assisted.

Ihm wird geholfen (not er wird), he is aided.

Ihr wird gedankt (not sie wird), she is thanked.

Ihnen wird widerstanden (not Sie werden), you are resisted.

*B.)* Most reflective verbs, as: Sich einbilden, to imagine, to fancy.  
Du bildest Dir ein, thou fanciest, &c.

*C.)* Most impersonal verbs, as :

Es ist mir Angst, I am in fear.

Es scheint Dir, it seems to thee.

Wenn es Ihnen beliebt, if it pleases you.

Es hat mir geträumt, I have dreamt, &c.

*D.)* Verbs expressing advantage or disadvantage are generally construed with the dative of the person. Ex.

Der Schneider macht mir einen Rock, the tailor makes me a coat.

Der Schuster macht mir Schuhe, the shoemaker makes me shoes.

Man hat mir meinen Hut gestohlen, they have stolen my hat from me.

Dir scheint die Sonne, for thee the sun shines.

Dir lachen die Felder, to thee the fields smile.

Dir heulen die Winde, to thee the winds howl.

*Obs. B.* Instead of the Dative, the preposition für may be used with the Accusative. Ex.

Der Schneider macht für mich einen Rock, the tailor makes a coat for me, &c.

## IV.

## VERBS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

*A.)* All active or transitive verbs which in the passive voice govern the nominative. Ex.

*Active voice.*  
Ich schätze meinen Freund, I esteem  
my friend.  
Ich ehre die Wahrheit, I reverence  
truth.  
Er liebt das Kind, he loves the  
child.

*Passive voice.*  
Mein Freund wird von mir geschätzt.  
Die Wahrheit wird von mir ge-  
ehrt.  
Das Kind wird von ihm geliebt.

The same may be said of the following and other transitive verbs :

**Verändern**, to change. *Sie veränderten ihre Sitten, they changed their manners.*

**Auslachen**, to laugh at. *Lachen Sie mich nicht aus, do not laugh at me.*

**Verlangen**, to want. *Ich brauche mein Geld, I want my money.*

**Fragen**, to ask. *Fragen Sie den Lehrer, ob ich mich irre, ask the master whether I mistake.*

**Genießen**<sup>10</sup>, to enjoy. *Genießen Sie alle Vergnügungen, welche die Tugend erlaubt, enjoy all the pleasures that virtue permits.*

**Missbrauchen**, to abuse, to misuse. *Sie missbrauchen meine Güte, meine Geduld, you abuse my goodness, wear out my patience.*

**Spielen**<sup>11</sup>, to play. *Karten spielen, to play at cards; Klavier spielen, to play the harpsichord.*

**Tränken**, to give to drink. *Das Pferd tränken, to give the horse to drink.*

**Ueberreden** (Jemanden), to persuade some one. *Man wollte diesen Mann überreden, they wished to persuade this man.*

**Ueberleben**, to survive, to outlive. *Ich werde das nicht überleben, I shall not outlive this.*

**Verehren** (schenken), to present, to give. *Meine Schwester hat mir eine goldene Uhr verehrt, my sister has presented me with a gold watch.*

**Wärmen**, to warm. *Den Kaffee wärmen, to warm the coffee.*

**B.** All verbs compounded with the prefix *be*. **Ex.**

**Beantworten**<sup>12</sup>, to answer. *Ich habe seinen Brief beantwortet (or auf seinen Brief geantwortet), I answered his letter.*

**Benutzen**, to profit. *Ich habe Ihren Rath benutzt, I profited by your advice.*

**Bewachen**, to watch. *Der Hund bewacht das Haus, the dog watches over the house.*

**Beweinen**, to bewail. *Er beweinte den Tod seiner Gattinn, he bewailed the death of his lady.*

**Obs.** The following verbs, beginning with *be*, must be excepted, viz.

**Begegnen**, to meet, governs the Dative. (See page 467.)

**Behagen**, to please. (See page 468.)

**Beharren**, to persevere in.

<sup>10</sup> *Genießen* is also construed with the object in the Genitive. (See page 464.)

<sup>11</sup> *Spielen* is also construed with the preposition *auf* and the name of the instrument in the Dative. (See *Obs.* Lesson C.)

<sup>12</sup> *Antworten* requires the person in the Dative, and the thing with the preposition *auf* in the Accusative. **Ex.** *Ich werde Ihnen auf Ihren Brief antworten, I shall answer your letter.*

Bestehen, to insist upon, to consist of.

C.) Neuter verbs, when a determinate time or measure is expressed, or when the action does not pass over to the object, as :

Gehen, to go. Er ging eine Meile, he walked a mile.

Kämpfen, to fight. Einen guten Kampf kämpfen, to fight a good fight.

Reden, to speak. Ich rede eine verständliche Sprache, I speak an intelligible language.

Reiten, to ride. Ich reite den Schimmel und mein Vater den Fuchs, I ride the white and my father the chestnut horse.

Schlafen, to sleep. Er schläft den ganzen Tag, he sleeps the whole day.

Sitzen, to sit. Er saß eine Stunde, he sat an hour.

Wiegen, to weigh. Es wiegt einen Zentner, it weighs a hundredweight.

D. The verb *seyn* also requires the Accusative when a determinate time is expressed. Ex.

Er war diesen Morgen bei mir, he was this morning at my house.

Waren Sie vorigen Monat in Dresden? Were you at Dresden last month? &c.

E.) Most reflexive verbs, which ought to be considered as transitive verbs, the objective case of which refers to the same person as the nominative (Lesson LXXII.), as :

Ich freue mich, I rejoice.

Du schämst Dich, thou art ashamed.

Bemühen Sie sich nicht, do not give yourself the trouble, &c.

F.) Some impersonal verbs (see *Obs. A. and B.* Lesson LVIII.), as :

Es hungert mich, I am hungry.

Es friert ihn, he is cold, &c.

G.) The following verbs govern two accusative cases, one of the person and another of the object :

Heißen, to call, to order. Er heißt mich einen Narren, he calls me a fool. Wer hat Dich das geheißt? who has ordered you this?

Kennen, to name, to call. Ich nenne ihn meinen Freund, I call him my friend.

Schelten, } to scold, to give a bad name. Er schalt (schimpfte) ihn  
Schimpfen, } einen Betrüger, he called him a cheat.

For the verb *kleiden*, to fit, to clothe, see *Obs. B.* Lesson LXVIII.

For the verb *kosten*, to cost, see Lesson LXVII.

*Obs.* The verb *lassen*, to let, to get, to order, requires the person in



the Dative or Accusative, according to its object being direct or indirect. Ex.

Lassen Sie mir einen Brief schreiben, order a letter to be written to me.

Lassen Sie mich einen Brief schreiben, let me write a letter.

According to this we must say :

Er ließ mich seinen Unwillen empfinden, he made me feel his displeasure.

Er läßt mich seine Absicht merken, he makes me perceive his intention.

Lassen Sie mich doch das sehen, pray let me see that.

Ich werde es Dich fühlen lassen, I shall let you feel it.

Ich werde es Sie wissen lassen, I shall let you know it.

For the verb *lehren*, to teach, see *Obs. B. Lesson LXXIII.*

The verb *liebtofen*, to caress, to cherish, is by some authors construed with the Dative, by others with the Accusative of the person.

For the verbs which do not admit the particle *zu* before the Infinitive, see *Obs. B. Lesson XLII.*

## THE PREPOSITION.

Das Vor- oder Verhältnißwort.

Prepositions are invariable. They are used to express the different relations between the words. *E. g.* Ich gehe mit meinem Bruder, I go *with* my brother. Er wohnt bei mir, he lives *with* me. Das Buch liegt auf dem Tische, the book lies *upon* the table. Sie reisen nach Deutschland, they go *to* Germany.

Prepositions are :

1. Either radical words, as : auf, upon ; mit, with.
2. Or derived words, as : außer, without, derived from aus ; nächst, next, derived from nahe, near ; zwischen, between, derived from zwei.
3. Or compound words, such as : anstatt, instead of, composed of an, on, near, at, and Statt, place, stead ; diesseit, on this side of, composed of diese Seite, this side ; jenseit, on the other side of, composed of jene Seite, that side. (*Obs. B. Lesson LII.*)
4. Or words taken from other parts of speech, such as : während, during, taken from währen, to last ; vermöge, by virtue of, taken from Vermögen, power, faculty.

Some prepositions govern always the same case, others sometimes one, sometimes another case.

## I.

## PREPOSITIONS WHICH ALWAYS GOVERN THE GENITIVE.

Anstatt or statt, instead of.	Oberhalb, above, on the upper part of.
Diesseit, on this side of.	Unterhalb, below, on the lower side of.
Jenseit, on the further side of.	Kraft, by the power of, in virtue of.
Halben or halber <sup>1</sup> , on account of.	Laut, according to, conformably to.
Außerhalb, without, on the outside of.	
Innerhalb, within, on the inner part of.	

<sup>1</sup> Halben is used when the case which it governs is preceded by an article or a pronoun ; otherwise halber is used, as may be seen in the examples hereafter

Mittelft or vermittelt, by means of.	Bermöge, by dint of, by the power of, by means of.
Ungeachtet, notwithstanding.	Während, during.
Unweit or unfern, near, not far from.	Wegen, because of, on account of.
	Um—willen, for the sake of.

*Obs. A.* *Halben* and *halber* are always put after the case which they govern. When *halben* is used with the genitive of personal pronouns, the letter *t* is substituted for the letter *r*; e. g. *meinethalben*, on my account; *seinethalben*, on his account; except: *unserthalben*, on our account, and *Eurethalben*, on your account, where the letter *t* is added. (See *Obs. Lesson LXXXII.*)

*B.* *Wegen* may precede or follow its case. *Ex.* *Wegen seines Fleißes* or *seines Fleißes wegen*, on account of his assiduity. This preposition unites with the genitives of the personal pronouns in the same way as *halben*, e. g. *Deinetwegen*, on thy account. (See *Obs. Lesson LXXXII.*)

*C.* *Um—willen* is divided, and the case which it governs is always put between the two component parts. *Ex.* *Um des Friedens willen*, for the sake of peace. This preposition is combined with the genitives of the personal pronouns like *halben* and *wegen*, e. g. *Um meinethalben*, for the sake of me.

*D.* *Ungeachtet* may precede or follow its case. *Ex.* *Ungeachtet seines Reichthums* or *seines Reichthums ungeachtet*, notwithstanding his riches.

#### EXAMPLES OF THE PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE.

*Statt meiner* gehe du hin, go thou thither instead of me. *An des Fürsten Statt*, instead of the prince. *Jemanden an Kindes Statt annehmen*, to adopt some one.

*Diesseit des Flusses*, on this side of the river. *Jenseit der Brücke*, on the other side of the bridge.

*Der Freundschaft halben*, on account of friendship. *Alters halber*, on account of old age. *Seiner Tugend halben*, on account of his virtue.

*Außerhalb der Stadt*, beyond town. *Er geht außerhalb der Mauern spazieren, und ich innerhalb derselben*, he walks outside of the walls of the town, and I inside of them. *Er war ober-*

- halb der Straße, und ich unterhalb derselben, he was on the upper part of the street, and I on the lower part of it.
- Er muß kraft seines Amtes so handeln, in virtue of his office he is obliged to act thus.
- Laut ihres Briefes, according to your letter.
- Vermittelt seines Beistandes, by means of his assistance.
- Ungeachtet seiner Geschicklichkeit or seiner Geschicklichkeit ungeachtet, notwithstanding his ability. Dessenungeachtet, notwithstanding this.
- Unweit der Stadt, not far from town.
- Vermöge des königlichen Befehls, by power of the royal command.
- Während des Krieges, during the war. Während meines Aufenthalts in Berlin, during my stay in Berlin.
- Man schätzt ihn wegen seines Fleißes, und liebt ihn seiner Tugend wegen, he is esteemed on account of his industry and beloved on account of his virtue.
- Thun Sie es um meines Freundes willen, do it for the sake of my friend.

## II.

## PREPOSITIONS WHICH GOVERN ONLY THE DATIVE.

Auß, out of.	Nebst, }	together with.
Außer, out of, on the outside of, except.	Gesamt, }	
Bei, close by, by, near, with.	Nach, after, to, in the direction of, towards, according to.	
Winnen, within <sup>2</sup> .	Nächst, next to.	
Entgegen, towards, so as to meet, opposed to, against, contrary to.	Unächst, next to, nearest to.	
Gegenüber, opposite to.	Seit, since.	
Gemäß, conformable with, according to.	Von, from, of, by (Latin <i>a, ab</i> ).	
Mit, with.	Von—an, }	from, since.
	Von—auf, }	
	Zu, to, at, on.	
	Gegenüber, against, in opposition to.	

*Obs. A.* Außer is construed with the Genitive in the following expression: außer Landes seyn, to be out of the country.

<sup>2</sup> Winnen is used only in reference to time, as may be seen by the examples which follow.

*B. Entgegen, gegenüber, gemäß, and zuwider, always stand immediately after the case which they govern. Ex. Er geht seinem Freunde entgegen, he goes to meet his friend. Er saß mir gegenüber, he sat opposite me. Das ist mir zuwider, that is contrary to me, I have an aversion to that. Ihrem Wunsche gemäß, according to your wish.*

EXAMPLES OF THE PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

Ich komme aus dem Garten, I come from (out of) the garden. Aus langer Erfahrung, from long experience. Was ist aus ihm geworden? what has become of him?

Er wohnt außer der Stadt, he lives out of town. Außer Ihnen fehlte Niemand, nobody was wanting except you.

Er ist bei mir, he is with me. Er steht bei mir, he stands by or near me. Bei der ersten Gelegenheit werde ich Sie besuchen, I shall go to see you on the first opportunity. Bei diesen Worten, at these words. Bei Seite legen, to put aside. Bei Tage, in the day-time. Bei Hofe seyn, to be at court.

Winnen acht Tagen soll dieses geschehen, this is to take place within eight days. Binnen dieser Zeit, within this time.

Ich wohne der Kirche gegenüber, I live opposite the church.

Jemanden mit offenen Armen empfangen, to receive any one with open arms (i. e. very amicably). Mit wem sprechen Sie? to whom do you speak? Mit Kugeln laden, to load with balls. Sind Sie mit ihm zufrieden? are you satisfied with him? Mit einem Sohne niederkommen, to be confined with a son. Was machen Sie mit diesem Gelde? what do you do with this money?

Die Mutter nebst ihrer Tochter, the mother together with her daughter. Der Hauptmann sammt seinen Soldaten, the captain together with his soldiers.

Ich gehe nach der Stadt, I go to town. Er fragt nach Ihnen, he inquires after you. Er handelt nach den Gesetzen, he acts according to the laws. Thun Sie das nach Ihrem Gefallen, nach Ihrer Gewohnheit, do this according to your pleasure, according to your habit<sup>3</sup>.

Nächst Dir ist er mir der Liebste, after you it is he whom I like best. Er saß nächst ihr or ihr zundächst, he sat very near her.

Er ist seit einem Monate hier, he has been here this month. (See Lesson LXVII. and Note 167, Key.) Ist es schon lange, seitdem

---

<sup>3</sup> In the signification of *according to*, nach may equally be placed after its case. Ex. Allem Anscheine nach, according to all appearances; meiner Ueberzeugung nach, according to my conviction; immer der Nase nach, always straightforward.

Sie meinen Bruder nicht gesehen haben? Is it long since you saw my brother<sup>4</sup>?

Der König von Frankreich, the king of France. Die Königin von England, the queen of England. Ich komme von meinem Schwager, meiner Schwägerin, I come from my brother-in-law, my sister-in-law. Ich habe Vieles von Ihnen gelernt, I have learnt a good deal of you. Von wem ist die Rede? of whom do you speak?

Von meiner Jugend an (auf), from my youth (upwards). Von diesem Augenblicke an, from that instant. (See Lesson XCI. Obs. C.)

Ich ging zu meinem Bruder, aber fand ihn nicht zu Hause, I went to my brother, but did not find him at home. Er wohnte zu Paris, he lived in Paris. (See Lessons XXVIII. and LVIII.)

Handle nie den Gesetzen zuwider, never act against the laws. (See Lesson CIII.)

## III.

## PREPOSITIONS WHICH GOVERN ONLY THE ACCUSATIVE.

Durch, through, by, by means of.	Dhne, } without.
Für, for.	Sonder, }
Gegen (gen) <sup>4</sup> , to, towards, against.	Um, for, around, about.
	Wider, against, in opposition to.

## EXAMPLES.

Er fuhr durch die Stadt, he drove through the town. Durch sein Geld verschaffte er sich Gönner und Freunde, by means of his money he procured protectors and friends. (See Lesson C.)

<sup>4</sup> Seit must not be mistaken for vor. We can say: er ist seit einem Jahre krank, tobt, he has been ill, dead this year; but not er ist seit einem Jahre gestorben, for that would signify, he has been dying all this year. We must therefore say: er ist vor einem Jahre gestorben, he died a year ago; er war vor (not seit) zwei Jahren hier, he was here two years ago.

<sup>5</sup> Gen is a contraction of gegen, and used only in poetry, e.g. Sie hoben die Augen gen Himmel, und flehten ihn um Hülfe, they lifted their eyes to heaven, and implored its aid.

Er ging für seinen Bruder in den Krieg, he went to the war for his brother. Für Sie war das eine Kleinigkeit, that was a trifle for you. (See Lessons LXIX. and LXXVIII.)

Gegen den Strom schwimmen, to swim against the stream. Das Haus liegt gegen Morgen, gegen Mittag, gegen Abend, the house is exposed to the east, to the south, to the west. Ich komme gegen Abend, I shall come towards evening. (See Lessons LXXV. and XCI.)

Was ist das Leben ohne einen Freund? what is life without a friend? Er kann nicht leben ohne Dich, ohne ihn, ohne Sie, he cannot live without thee, without him, without you. (See Lesson C.)

„Dann wirst Du sonder Furcht und Graun  
Dem Tod' entgegen sehn.“

(Höftr.)

“Then wilt thou contemplate death without fear or terror.”

Um die Kirche, um die Stadt gehen, to go round the church, round the town. Rings um mich blühte die Natur, nature bloomed around me. Es ist eine schöne Sache um den Fleiß, industry is a fine thing. Um den andern Tag, every second day. (See Lessons LIV., LXXVIII., LXXXII., and XCVIII.)

Was haben Sie wider meinen Freund? what have you against my friend? Du sündigst wider Gott, wider die Gesetze, wider Dein Gewissen, thou sinnest against God, against the laws, against thy conscience. (See Lesson XCI.)

#### PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING VARIOUS CASES.

I. The following prepositions govern the *Genitive* and the *Dative*.

Längs, } along.  
Entlang, }

Trotz, in spite of.

Zufolge, in consequence of.

#### EXAMPLES.

längs des Weges or längs dem Wege, along the road. Längs des Gestades or längs dem Gestade, along the shore. Er fuhr längs des Ufers hin, he went along the coast. Er rißte

*längs den Ufern des Rheines*, he travelled along the borders of the Rhine. (See Lesson C.)

In sublime style *entlang* is often employed with the Genitive or Accusative instead of *längs*. *Den Weg entlang*, along the road.

„Wir hatten schon den ganzen Tag gejagt  
Entlang des Baldgebirgs,“ u.s.w.

(Schiller.)

“We had already hunted the whole day  
Along the mountain forest,” &c.

*Trotz des schlechten Wetters*, or *trotz dem schlechten Wetter* ist er ausgegangen, he went out in spite of the bad weather. *Trotz aller* or *allen Gefahren*, in spite of all dangers.

*Obs.* In elliptical sentences *Trotz* is considered as a substantive and always construed with the Dative. Ex. *Trotz dem*, der mir widersteht, I bid defiance to him who shall resist me; instead of: *Trotz sey dem geboten*, u.s.w., I defy him, &c.

*Zufolge* governs the Genitive, when it precedes its case, and the Dative, when it follows it. Ex. *Er that dieses zufolge meines Auftrages*, or *meinem Auftrage zufolge*, he did this in consequence of my commission.

*Obs.* With personal pronouns this preposition always follows its case. Ex. *Ihnen zufolge*, according to you.

## II. Prepositions governing the *Dative* and *Accusative*.

They govern the Dative when rest or motion in a state of permanent locality (i.e. motion within a place) is implied; and the Accusative when motion or direction from one place or object to another is expressed. (See Lesson XXIX.)

An, on, near to, against.

Auf, upon.

Hinten, behind.

Neben, beside, at the side of.

Ueber, over, above, beyond.

Unter, under, beneath, among.

Zwischen, between.

Vor, before, ago (Latin *ante* or *coram*).

In, in (Latin *in*).



## OBSERVATIONS.

A. *An*, with the Accusative, expresses direction towards a person or object, but where there is no entrance. (See Lesson XXXII.)

B. *In*, with the Accusative, expresses direction into the centre or interior of a place. (See Lessons XXXI. and LXXXI.)

C. *Auf*, with the Accusative, expresses direction to the upper part of a place. Ex. *Auf das Dach steigen*, to mount upon the roof. *Auf* also governs the Accusative in the signification of *for*. Ex. *Er läßt sich auf den Winter einen neuen Rock machen*, he gets a new coat made *for* the winter. *Auf Jemanden warten*, to wait *for* some one. *Er hat mir das Buch nur auf eine Stunde geliehen*, he lent me the book only *for* an hour. *Er hat seine Abreise auf den ersten dieses Monats festgesetzt*, he fixed his departure *for* the first instant. *Vorrath auf viele Jahre*, store *for* many years. *Auf* is also employed with the Accusative when it may be explained by *in consequence of*, *according to*. Ex. *Auf Ihren Befehl*, at your command. *Auf sein Wort*, upon his word. *Auf Ihre Verantwortung*, upon your responsibility. Say also, *auf Regen folgt Sonnenschein*, *auf den Winter der Sommer*, rain is followed by sunshine, the winter by the summer; *ich komme auf den Herbst zu Ihnen*, I shall come to you in the autumn; and, *auf die Universität gehen*, to go to the university. (See Lesson XXXII.)

D. *Ueber* governs the Accusative when it signifies on the subject or matter of a thing. Ex. *Ueber eine Materie schreiben*, to write on a subject. *Er hat ein Buch über die Rechenkunst geschrieben*, he wrote a book on arithmetic. *Er predigte über das Evangelium*, he preached on the gospel. It is the same when this preposition expresses a moral superiority. Ex. *Das geht über meinen Horizont* or *über meinen Verstand*, that is above my reach. *Der Schüler geht nicht über den Meister*, the scholar is not above the master. (See Lesson LXXIX.)

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Dative.</i>	<i>An.</i>	<i>Accusative.</i>
Die Reihe ist an mir, it is my turn.		Die Reihe kommt an mich, my turn comes.
Er arbeitet an seinem Werke, he is occupied with his work.		Er geht an die Arbeit, he goes to work.
Er rächte sich an ihr, he revenged himself upon her.		Ich schrieb an ihren Vater, I wrote to her father.

<i>Dative</i>	<i>An (cont.).</i>	<i>Accusative.</i>
Sie haben schlecht an mir gehandelt, you behaved badly towards me.		Ich werde mich bedienen an Sie halten, I shall rely upon you concerning it.
Zweifeln Sie nicht an meiner Freundschaft, do not doubt my friendship.		Ich habe eine Bitte an Sie, I have a request to make to you.
Sie haben kein Recht an ihm, you have no right over him.		Er stieß sich an einen Stein, he knocked himself against a stone.
Ich nehme Theil an Ihren Leiden, I take part in your sufferings.		Ich denke immer an Dich, I think always of thee.
Sie starb an den Blattern, she died of the small pox.		Man gewöhnt sich leicht an eine Sache, one soon gets accustomed to a thing.
Es liegt nicht an mir, it does not depend upon me.		Erinnern Sie sich an Ihr Versprechen, remember your promise.

## Auf.

Auf mir ruht die ganze Last, the whole burden rests upon me.	Ich rechne auf den Beifall meines Vorgesetzten, I reckon upon the approbation of my superior.
Er ist auf der Jagd, auf der Reise, he is hunting, on a journey.	Er geht auf die Jagd, he goes to hunt.
Ich bestehe, beharre auf meiner Meinung, I persist in my opinion.	Es kommt auf Dich an, that depends upon thee.
Er hält sich kaum auf den Beinen, he can scarcely hold himself upon his legs.	Ich lege mich auf die Wissenschaften, I apply myself to the sciences.
Seyn Sie auf Ihrer Hut, be upon your guard.	Ich stütze mich auf Dich, I lean upon thee.

## Hinter.

Er steht hinter der Thür, he stands behind the door.	Stelle dich hinter die Thür, place thyself behind the door.
Er lacht hinter meinem Rücken, he laughs at me when my back is turned.	Wirf das Papier hinter den Schranz, throw the paper behind the press.

## Dative.

## Reben.

## Accusative.

Er saß neben mir, Dir, Ihnen,  
he sat near me, near thee, near  
you; er stand und ging neben  
mir, he stood and walked be-  
side me.

Er spazierte neben der Wahr-  
heit vorbei, he passed by truth  
(had no regard for truth).

Setzen Sie sich neben mich oder  
neben meinen Bruder, sit  
near me or near my brother;  
er setzte sich neben mich, Dich,  
Sie, he placed himself beside  
me, beside thee, beside you.

Man will den Sohn neben seinen  
Vater begraben, they wish to  
bury the son by the side of his  
father.

## Ueber.

Er wohnt über mir, he lives  
above me.

Er schlief über dem Tischen ein,  
whilst reading he fell asleep.

Das Gemälde hängt über der  
Thür, über dem Spiegel,  
the picture is placed over the  
door, over the looking-glass.

Es schwebt ein Gewitter über der  
Stadt, a storm has gathered  
over the town.

Sie liegen immer über den Bü-  
chern, you are quite a book-  
worm.

Er hält sich über mich auf, he  
makes game of me.

Ich habe die Aufsicht über Dich,  
I have control over thee.

Hänge das Gemälde über die  
Thür, über den Spiegel,  
place the picture over the door,  
over the looking-glass.

Der Segen komme über Dich,  
may a blessing come to thee.

Er setzt sich über Alles hinweg,  
he is above minding any thing.

## Unter.

Er steht unter mir, he is under  
me.

Unter der Larve der Freund-  
schaft, under the mask of friend-  
ship.

Die Vögel unter dem Himmel,  
the birds beneath the heavens.

Unter andern heißt es, amongst  
other things they say.

Behe dem Volke, das unter dem  
Joch eines Tyrannen lebt! woe  
to the people who live under  
— of a tyrant.

Ich rechne (zähle) ihn unter meine  
Freunde, I count him amongst  
my friends.

Der Wohlthätige theilt Geld unter  
die Armen, the generous man  
distributes money amongst the  
poor.

Unter die Augen kommen, to  
appear before one.

Unter die Leute bringen, to di-  
vulge.

Stelle Dich unter den Baum,  
place thyself under the tree.

*Dative.**Zwischen.**Accusative.*

Sie saß zwischen mir und dem Fremden, she sat between me and the stranger.

Seyen Sie Richter zwischen uns beiden, be judge between us.

Es ist ein großer Unterschied zwischen dem Dativ und dem Accusativ, there is a great difference between the Dative and the Accusative.

Er trat zwischen mich und ihn, he stepped between me and him.

Er setzte den Stuhl zwischen die beiden Tische, he placed the chair between the two tables.

Wenn die Erde zwischen die Sonne und den Mond tritt, so entsteht eine Mondfinsterniß, when the earth passes between the sun and the moon an eclipse of the moon takes place.

*Vor.*

Vor allen Dingen, above all things.

Ihr Bild schwebt mir stets vor den Augen, her picture is constantly before my eyes.

Er sitzt vor dem Hause, he sits before the house.

Er stand vor mir auf, he stood up before me; er nahm den Hut vor mir ab, he took off his hat to me.

Er verbarg sich vor seinem Feinde, he hid himself from his enemy.

Die Pferde vor den Wagen spannen, to put the horses to the carriage.

Hüte Dich, daß es nicht vor die Ohren Deines Vaters komme, take care that thy father does not hear of it.

Er stellte sich vor den Spiegel, he placed himself before the glass.

Er führte mich vor den Eingang des Hauses, he conducted me to the entrance of the house.

Er trat vor mich, vor Dich, vor Sie, he stepped before me, before thee, before you.

*In.*

Er ist im Garten, he is in the garden.

Er geht in der Stube auf und ab, he walks up and down the room.

Ich habe mich in ihm geirrt, I have been mistaken in him.

Sie stand in tiefen Gedanken, she stood in deep thought(s).

Ich gehe in den Garten, I go into the garden.

Sie geht in die Schule, she goes to school.

Sie slicht Blumen in den Kranz, she puts flowers in the garland (makes a garland of flowers).

Sie versiel in tiefe Gedanken, she fell into a profound meditation.

<i>Dative.</i>	<i>In (cont.).</i>	<i>Accusative.</i>
Ich lese die Antwort in Ihren Augen, I read the answer in your eyes.		Die Thränen traten ihr in die Augen, the tears came into her eyes.
Er wird in einem Monate abreisen, he will leave in a month.		Das fällt in die Augen, that strikes the eye.
Er hat es in einer Stunde fertig, he finished it in an hour.		Ich setze mein Vertrauen in Dich, in Sie, I place my confidence in thee, in you.

## COMPOUND PREPOSITIONS.

Compound prepositions must be divided, and the case which the preposition governs placed between the two component parts. (See Lesson XCI.) The most important of these prepositions are the following:

Auf — <i>loß</i> , upon.	Unter — <i>weg</i> , under.
Auf — <i>zu</i> , } towards.	Von — <i>an</i> , } from, since.
Nach — <i>zu</i> , }	Von — <i>auf</i> , }
Hinter — <i>her</i> , } after, behind.	Von — <i>aus</i> , } from.
Hinter — <i>drein</i> , }	Von — <i>her</i> , }
Ueber — <i>her</i> , upon.	Vor — <i>her</i> , before.
Ueber — <i>weg</i> , over.	Vor — <i>hin</i> , in front of.
Um — <i>her</i> , around.	Vor — <i>weg</i> , before — away.
Um — <i>willen</i> , for the sake of.	&c. &c.

## EXAMPLES.

Er stürzte auf mich *loß*, he sprang upon me.

Ich lief auf ihn *zu*, I ran towards him.

Wir gingen nach der Stadt *zu*, we walked towards the town.

Wir gingen hinter der Reiterei *her* (oder *drein*), we followed the cavalry.

Er fiel über mich *her*, he fell upon me.

Die Kugel ging über meinen Kopf *weg*, the ball passed over my head.

Sie standen um den Wagen *her*, they stood around the carriage.

Ich habe es um Ihres Herrn Bruders *willen* gethan, I did it for the sake of your brother. (See Lesson LXXXII.)

Das Wasser läuft unter der Brücke *weg*, the water flows under the bridge.

Von meiner Jugend *an* (*auf*), from my youth up; von nun *an*, henceforward; von diesem Augenblicke *an*, from that moment. (See Obs. C. Lesson XCI.)

Er schrieb mir von Berlin *aus*, he wrote to me from Berlin.

Von Alters *her*, from all antiquity.

Er ging vor mir *her*, he walked before me.

Er stellt sich vor den Wagen hin, he places himself in front of the carriage.  
 Sie liefen vor mir weg, they ran away before me.

## OBSERVATIONS.

A. When in English a relative pronoun is understood, the preposition may be put quite at the end of the sentence. This is not the case in German, where a transposition of the preposition is not allowed<sup>6</sup>.  
 Ex. Der Mann, von welchem ich sprach, the man I spoke of (for, the man of whom I spoke). Die Stellen, auf die er sich bezieht, the passages he refers to (instead of, to which he refers).

B. Nor is the preposition transposed with interrogative pronouns, as is often the case in English. Ex. Nach wem fragen Sie? whom do you inquire after? Für wen haben Sie dieses Buch gekauft? Whom did you buy this book for? Von wem haben Sie es bekommen? Whom did you receive it from?

C. When the same preposition belongs to several nouns, connected by one of the conjunctions und, and, oder, or, or not connected, it may either be repeated before each noun, or be placed only before the first.  
 Ex. Durch List, Betrug und Verrätherei, or: durch List, durch Betrug und durch Verrätherei, through cunning, fraud, and treachery. But when the substantives are connected by other conjunctions, the preposition must be repeated before each of them. Ex. Entweder durch Güte oder durch Gewalt, through goodness or force. Weder durch Güte noch durch Strenge, neither through mildness nor severity.

D. It is incorrect to use two prepositions one after another. Say therefore: ich komme vom Hause, I come from home, and never: von zu, u.f.w.

E. Some phrases require a preposition in German without demanding one in English, and *vice versa*.

## 1. The following are the same in English and in German.

He is *on* my side.

*On* both sides.

To be *on* the road, *on* the journey.

To go *on* a journey (to set out).

To lean *on* one's elbow.

*On* my word, *on* my honour.

To grow *out of* fashion.

To work *by* candlelight.

*By* moonlight.

Er ist auf meiner Seite.

Auf beiden Seiten.

Auf dem Wege, auf der Reise seyn.

Sich auf den Weg, auf die Reise machen or begeben.

Sich auf den Elbogen stützen.

Auf mein Wort, auf Ehre.

Aus der Mode kommen.

Bei Licht arbeiten.

Beim Mondschein.

<sup>6</sup> The preposition must however not be mistaken for a part of a separable compound verb, which in simple tenses must stand at the end of the sentence. Ex. Ich schlug die mir überschickten Geschenke aus, I refused the presents which were sent to me.

<i>Till</i> ten o'clock.	<i>Bis</i> zehn Uhr.
<i>Through</i> much entreaty (by dint of entreaties).	<i>Durch</i> vieles Bitten.
To live <i>in</i> Paris, <i>in</i> London, <i>in</i> Berlin.	<i>In</i> Paris, <i>in</i> London, <i>in</i> Berlin leben.
To put one's hand <i>into</i> one's pocket.	<i>In</i> die Tasche greifen.
To be <i>in</i> the theatre.	<i>Im</i> Theater seyn.
To have something <i>in</i> one's head.	Etwas <i>im</i> Sinne haben.
To put <i>in</i> practice (to execute).	<i>Ins</i> Werk setzen.
To keep <i>in</i> check.	<i>Im</i> Zaume halten.
<i>In</i> many respects.	<i>In</i> vielen Stücken.
<i>In</i> plenty, <i>in</i> quantity.	<i>In</i> Menge.
Leave me <i>in</i> peace.	Lassen Sie mich <i>in</i> Frieden.
Daphne was transformed <i>into</i> a laurel tree.	Daphne wurde <i>in</i> einen Lorbeerbaum verwandelt.
He threw his hat <i>in</i> the air.	Er warf seinen Hut <i>in</i> die Luft.
<i>In</i> jest ( <i>for</i> jest).	<i>Im</i> Scherze, <i>im</i> Spasse.
This drawing was done <i>with</i> a pen, <i>with</i> a pencil.	Diese Zeichnung ist mit der Feder, mit der Bleifeder gemacht.
This embroidery was done <i>with</i> a needle.	Diese Stickerei ist mit der Nadel gearbeitet worden.
<i>With</i> open arms.	Mit offenen Armen.
To point some one out <i>with</i> the finger.	Mit dem Finger auf Jemanden zeigen.
<i>With</i> all one's strength.	Mit aller Gewalt.
The man <i>with</i> the large nose.	Der Mann mit der großen Nase.
A cravat <i>with</i> lace.	Ein Halstuch mit Spitzen.
To advance <i>with</i> long steps.	Sich mit großen Schritten nahen.
To load <i>with</i> gifts, praise, favours.	Mit Gütern, Lobsprüchen, Gunstbezeugungen überhäufen.
He armed himself <i>with</i> a sword, a pistol, a lance, <i>with</i> patience, courage, &c.	Er bewaffnete sich mit einem Degen, einer Pistole, einer Lanze, mit Geduld, Muth, u.s.w.
A picture ornamented <i>with</i> diamonds, a watch set <i>with</i> pearls.	Ein mit Diamanten geschmücktes Portrait, eine mit Perlen besetzte Uhr. (See <del>227</del> Lesson XCV., and Notes 272 & 302. Key.)
To strike <i>with</i> the hand, to kick <i>with</i> the foot.	Mit der Hand, mit dem Fuße schlagen, stoßen.
To work <i>with</i> the head.	Mit dem Kopfe arbeiten.
It is all over <i>with</i> him.	Es ist aus mit ihm.
Away <i>with</i> this business.	Weg mit der Sache.

To assist one *with* deed and counsel.

*With* a good conscience.

To bear *with* patience.

I am very much pleased *with* this young man.

*After* two months.

*Without* my knowledge.

*Under* the date of the first instant.

I have heard it *from* several persons.

He comes *from* Paris.

*From* here to Vienna.

*From* time to time.

*From* house to house.

I come *from* home.

He came *from* my brother.

*From* morning till evening.

*From* the very bottom (fundamentally).

To summon *before* a court.

To go *to* bed, *to* table.

To invite *to* dinner.

To give occasion *to* something.

To invite *to* dinner or *to* supper.

To work one's self *to* death.

To take something *to* heart.

To have a right *to* something.

Success *to* you! (God speed you well!)

To be invited *to* a wedding.

To have a competency *to* live on.

Happiness *to* the king (long live the king!)

To fall *to* one's lot or share.

Jemandem mit Rath und That beistehen.

Mit gutem Gewissen.

Mit Geduld ertragen.

Ich bin mit diesem jungen Menschen sehr zufrieden.

Nach zwei Monaten.

Ohne mein Wissen.

Unter dem ersten dieses (Monats).

Ich habe es von mehreren Personen gehört.

Er kommt von Paris.

Von hier nach Wien.

Von Zeit zu Zeit.

Von Haus zu Haus.

Ich komme von Hause.

Er kam von meinem Bruder.

Vom Morgen bis auf den Abend.

Von Grund aus.

Vor Gericht belangen (fordern).

Zu Bette, zu Tische gehen.

Zu Tische laden.

Gelegenheit zu Etwas geben.

Zum Mittag- oder Abendbrod einladen.

Zu Gast bitten.

Sich zu Tode arbeiten.

Etwas zu Herzen nehmen.

Ein Recht zu Etwas haben.

Glück zu!

Zu einer Hochzeit gebeten werden.

Zu leben haben.

Glück zu dem Könige!

Zu Theil werden.

2. In the following phrases the German prepositions are not the same as in English.

The preposition ABOUT is rendered:

a.) by bei. Ex.

I have no money about me.

| Ich habe kein Geld bei mir.

b.) by gegen. Ex.

It was about night.

| Es war gegen Abend.



## c.) by in. Ex.

He is somewhere <i>about</i> the house.	Er ist irgenbwo im Hause.
What do they cry <i>about</i> the streets?	Was ruft man in den Straßen aus?

## d.) by mit. Ex.

To be <i>about</i> any thing.	Mit Etwas beschäftigt seyn.
-------------------------------	-----------------------------

## e.) by über. Ex.

There are divers opinions <i>about</i> it.	Es gibt da rüber verschiedene Meinungen.
He was jeered <i>about</i> his comical figure.	Man machte sich über seine komische Gestalt lustig.

## f.) by um. Ex.

His friends were <i>about</i> him.	Seine Freunde waren um ihn.
To take a turn <i>about</i> the town.	Einen Gang um die Stadt machen.

## g.) by wegen. Ex.

I shall speak to him <i>about</i> that business.	Ich werde wegen dieser Sache mit ihm sprechen.
--	--

The preposition ACCORDING TO is rendered :

## a.) by nach. Ex.

To dress <i>according to</i> the fashion.	Sich nach der Mode kleiden.
<i>According to</i> the eyesight.	Nach Augenmaß.
<i>According to</i> his wish.	Nach seinem Wunsche.
<i>According to</i> your orders.	Nach Ihrem Befehle.
<i>According to</i> his mind.	Nach seinem Sinne (Kopfe).
To live <i>according to</i> one's fancy.	Nach seinem Kopfe leben.

## b.) by various expressions. Ex.

<i>According to</i> custom.	Wie es der Gebrauch mit sich bringt.
To go <i>according to</i> the times.	Sich in Zeit und Umstände schicken.
<i>According as</i> you deserve.	Je nachdem Sie es verdienen.
<i>According as</i> they shall see occasion.	In so fern sie es schicklich oder rathsam finden werden.

The preposition AGAINST is rendered :

## a.) by an. Ex.

To dry a thing <i>against</i> the fire.	Etwas an dem Feuer trocknen.
The picture hangs <i>against</i> the wall.	Das Gemälde hängt an der Mauer.

## b.) by mit. Ex.

To do something <i>against</i> one's inclination.		Etwas mit Widerwillen thun.
---	--	-----------------------------

## c.) by vor. Ex.

To keep on one's guard <i>against</i> some one.		Sich vor Jemandem hüten.
---	--	--------------------------

The preposition **AMONGST** is rendered :

## a.) by mit. Ex.

Thou, Lord, art <i>amongst</i> them.		Du, Herr, bist mit ihnen
--------------------------------------	--	--------------------------

## b.) by unter. Ex.

To receive some one <i>amongst</i> the number of his friends.		Jemanden unter die Zahl seiner Freunde aufnehmen.
<i>Amongst</i> the number of the dead.		Unter der Zahl der Todten.
<i>Amongst</i> other employments.		Unter andern Geschäften.
He rushed <i>amongst</i> the naked swords.		Er stürzte sich unter die entblößten Schwerter.

The preposition **AT** is rendered :

## a.) by an. Ex.

There is some one <i>at</i> the door.		Es ist Jemand an der Thür.
To be <i>at</i> the window.		An dem (am) Fenster stehen.
<i>At</i> the end of the year.		Am Ende des Jahres.

## b.) by auf. Ex.

To be <i>at</i> the point of death.		Auf den Tod krank seyn.
<i>At</i> Easter, <i>at</i> Midsummer.		Auf Ostern, auf Johannis.
<i>At</i> my risk.		Auf meine Gefahr.
<i>At</i> my command.		Auf meinen Befehl.
<i>At</i> once.		Auf einmal, auf der Stelle.
<i>At</i> random.		Aufs Gerathewohl, auf gut Glück.

## c.) by bei. Ex.

They are <i>at</i> table.		Sie sind bei Tische.
To take some one <i>at</i> his word.		Jemanden beim Worte halten.
To be <i>at</i> hand.		Bei der Hand seyn.
<i>At</i> his departure.		Bei seiner Abreise.
<i>At</i> these words he wept.		Bei diesen Worten weinte er.

## d.) by für. Ex.

<i>At</i> a shilling a bushel.		Den Scheffel für einen Schilling.
--------------------------------	--	-----------------------------------

e.) by *ia*. Ex.

<i>At the battle of Lützen.</i>	<i>In der Schlacht bei Lützen.</i>
---------------------------------	------------------------------------

f.) by *mit*. Ex.

<i>At break of day.</i>	<i>Mit Tagesanbruch.</i>
<i>To sell at a loss.</i>	<i>Mit Schaben verkaufen.</i>

g.) by *über*. Ex.

<i>At the noise he awoke.</i>	<i>Ueber dem Lärm erwachte er.</i>
<i>At table.</i>	<i>Ueber Tisch.</i>

h.) by *um*. Ex.

<i>At what o'clock?</i>	<i>Um wieviel Uhr?</i>
<i>At six o'clock.</i>	<i>Um sechs Uhr.</i>
<i>At the sixth hour.</i>	<i>Um die sechste Stunde.</i>
<i>At midnight.</i>	<i>Um Mitternacht.</i>

i.) by *unter*. Ex.

<i>At the sound of the trumpets and kettle-drums.</i>	<i>Unter Trompeten- und Paukenschall.</i>
<i>At the sound of the cannon.</i>	<i>Unter Lösung der Kanonen.</i>

k.) by *von*. Ex.

<i>I was surprised at this news.</i>	<i>Ich bin von dieser Nachricht überrascht worden.</i>
--------------------------------------	--

l.) by *vor*. Ex.

<i>To lie at anchor.</i>	<i>Vor Anker liegen.</i>
--------------------------	--------------------------

m.) by *zu*. Ex.

<i>He lives at Paris.</i>	<i>Er wohnt zu Paris.</i>
<i>He is not at home.</i>	<i>Er ist nicht zu Hause.</i>
<i>At the commencement.</i>	<i>Zu Anfang.</i>
<i>At the same hour.</i>	<i>Zu derselben or zur selben Stunde.</i>
<i>At the same time.</i>	<i>Zu gleicher Zeit.</i>

The preposition *BESIDE* or *BESIDES* is rendered :

a.) by *außer*. Ex.

<i>There was nobody besides those two.</i>	<i>Außer diesen beiden war Niemand da.</i>
<i>Beside the miseries of war.</i>	<i>Außer den Unfällen des Krieges.</i>
<i>Besides that.</i>	<i>Außer diesem.</i>

b.) by *zu*. Ex.

<i>down beside me.</i>	<i>Setzen Sie sich zu mir.</i>
------------------------	--------------------------------

The preposition **by** is rendered :

a.) by an. Ex.

To perceive a thing <i>by</i> a person's countenance.	Jemandem Etwas an der Miene ansehen.
To know a person <i>by</i> his speech.	Jemanden an der Sprache erkennen.

b.) by mit. Ex.

He enriched himself <i>by</i> my losses.	Er hat sich mit dem bereichert, was ich verloren habe.
--	--

c.) by nach. Ex.

To sell <i>by</i> the ell, <i>by</i> weight.	Nach der Elle, dem Gewichte verkaufen.
--	--

d.) by um. Ex.

To increase <i>by</i> one half.	um die Hälfte vermehren.
Dearer <i>by</i> four crowns.	um vier Thaler theurer.

e.) by von. Ex.

He has seen this part played <i>by</i> Lekain and Talma.	Er hat diese Rolle von Lekain und von Talma spielen sehen.
He is esteemed <i>by</i> every one, and beloved <i>by</i> all those who know him.	Er wird von Jedermann geachtet und von Allen geliebt, die ihn kennen.
He is despised and hated <i>by</i> all good persons.	Er wird von allen ehrlichen Leuten verachtet und gehaßt.
Tired <i>by</i> the journey.	Von der Reise müde.

f.) by zu. Ex.

<i>By</i> half.	Zur Hälfte.
-----------------	-------------

The preposition **for** is rendered :

a.) by auf. Ex.

<i>For</i> ever.	Auf immer.
------------------	------------

b.) by mit. Ex.

To look <i>for</i> .	Mit den Augen suchen.
----------------------	-----------------------

c.) by um. Ex.

To buy <i>for</i> ready money.	um bares Geld kaufen.
<i>For</i> honour's sake.	Es ist um die Ehre zu thun.
To cry <i>for</i> vengeance.	um Rache schreien.

## d.) by unter. Ex.

You will not have it <i>for</i> less than ten crowns.	Sie werden es nicht unter zehn Thaler bekommen.
--	--

## e.) by vor. Ex.

To weep <i>for</i> joy. To be out of one's mind <i>for</i> joy (to be wild with joy).	Vor Freude weinen. Vor Freude außer sich seyn.
---	---

## f.) by zu. Ex.

To take the measure <i>for</i> a dress. To take <i>for</i> a wife.	Das Maß zu einem Kleide neh- men. Zur Frau nehmen.
---	--

The preposition **FROM** is rendered :

## a.) by an. Ex.

He hindered me <i>from</i> writing.	Er hinderte mich am Schreiben.
-------------------------------------	--------------------------------

## b.) by aus. Ex.

He is <i>from</i> Dresden. <i>From</i> France. <i>From</i> his own impulse. A quotation <i>from</i> Aristotle's Poetics. It is clear <i>from</i> Scripture. <i>From</i> hate. <i>From</i> mental conviction. <i>From</i> a nobler cause.	Er ist aus Dresden. Aus Frankreich. Aus eigenem Antriebe. Eine Stelle aus der Poetik des Aristoteles. Es ist klar aus der Schrift. Aus Haß. Aus innerlicher Ueberzeugung. Aus einer edleren Ursache.
--	--

## c.) by nach. Ex.

From his dress he seemed to have been a soldier. Two months <i>from</i> that time.	Seiner Kleidung nach schien er Soldat gewesen zu seyn. Nach zwei Monaten.
--	---

## d.) by vor. Ex.

He does not hide any thing <i>from</i> me.	Er verbirgt Nichts vor mir.
---	-----------------------------

The preposition **IN** is rendered :

## a.) by an. Ex.

I have (find, lose) <i>in</i> you ( <i>in</i> him) a faithful friend. To surpass some one <i>in</i> courage.	Ich habe (finde, verliere) an Ihnen (an ihm) einen getreuen Freund. Jemanden an Muth übertreffen.
--	---

## b.) by auf. Ex.

What is that called <i>in</i> German, <i>in</i>	Wie heißt das auf deutsch, auf
English?	englisch?
<i>In</i> the open field.	Auf freiem Felde.

## c.) by bei. Ex.

<i>In</i> the day-time.	Bei Tage (des Tags or während des Tags).
<i>In</i> the night.	Bei Nacht.
<i>In</i> broad day-light.	Bei hellem Tage.
To find some one <i>in</i> good health.	Jemanden bei guter Gesundheit antreffen.

## d.) by mit. Ex.

To arrive <i>in</i> a post-chaise.	Mit der Post kommen.
<i>In</i> one word.	Mit einem Worte.
To deal <i>in</i> something.	Mit Etwas handeln.
<i>In</i> golden letters.	Mit goldenen Buchstaben.

## e.) by nach. Ex.

<i>In</i> my opinion.	Nach meiner Meinung.
To observe time <i>in</i> dancing.	Nach dem Takte tanzen.

## f.) by um. Ex.

To vie with one <i>in</i> running.	Um die Wette laufen.
To be dressed <i>in</i> the fashion.	Sich nach der Mode kleiden.

## g.) by unter. Ex.

To sleep <i>in</i> the open air.	Unter freiem Himmel schlafen.
<i>In</i> the reign of Augustus.	Unter der Regierung des Augustus.
To cast something <i>in</i> one's teeth.	Jemandem Etwas unter die Nase reiben.

## h.) by vor. Ex.

To appear <i>in</i> court.	Vor Gericht erscheinen.
<i>In</i> former times.	Vor Zeiten.

## i.) by zu. Ex.

<i>In</i> this age (now-a-days).	Heut zu Tage.
To come <i>in</i> time.	Zu rechter Zeit kommen.
<i>In</i> your behalf.	Zu Ihrem Besten.
To have trust or confidence <i>in</i> some one.	Vertrauen zu Jemandem haben.
<i>In</i> reward, <i>in</i> recompense.	Zur Vergeltung (Belohnung).

The preposition **IN SPITE OF** is rendered :

a.) **by wider.** Ex.

*In spite of me.*

| Wider meinen Willen.

b.) **by zu.** Ex.

*In spite of you*

| Euch zum Troge.

*In spite of thee.*

| Dir zum Troge.

*In spite of your teeth.*

| Dir zum Kerger.

The preposition **OF** is rendered :

a.) **by an.** Ex.

The thing *of* itself.

| Die Sache an und für sich selbst.

What is the reason *of* it (what occasions it)?

| Woran liegt es?

b.) **by auf.** Ex.

To make much *of* any one (*of* any thing).

| Viel auf Jemanden (auf Etwas) halten.

c.) **by aus.** Ex.

To lose sight *of*.

| Aus den Augen verlieren.

d.) **by in.** Ex.

To take care *of* something.

| Etwas in Acht nehmen.

e.) **by nach.** Ex.

It makes ten crowns *of* our money.

| Es macht nach unserm Gelde zehn Thaler.

It makes, &c. *of* French money.

| Es macht nach französischem Gelde, u.s.w.

In the year one thousand five hundred and eleven *of* the creation of the world, *of* the building of Rome.

| Im Jahre ein tausend fünf hundert und elf nach der Erschaffung der Welt, nach der Erbauung der Stadt Rom.

f.) **by um.** Ex.

You have deserved well *of* your country.

| Sie haben sich um Ihr Vaterland verdient gemacht.

g.) **by von.** Ex.

He speaks always *of* the losses he has sustained.

| Er spricht immer von seinem Verluste.

Fear nothing *of* me.

| Fürchten Sie Nichts von mir.

The king *of* France.

| Der König von Frankreich.

— *the capital of* England.

| Die Hauptstadt von England.

Large <i>of</i> body and little <i>of</i> mind.	Groß von Körper und klein von Geist.
<i>Of</i> one's own accord (freely).	Von freien Stücken.
The fable <i>of</i> the wolf and the lamb.	Die Fabel vom Wolf und dem Lamm.
One <i>of</i> them.	Einer von ihnen.
London is south <i>of</i> York.	London liegt im Süden von York.
All that is left <i>of</i> him.	Alles was von ihm übrig ist.
<i>Of</i> right.	Von Rechts wegen.
That is a matter <i>of</i> course.	Das versteht sich von selbst.

## h.) by vor. Ex.

<i>Of</i> all things.	Vor allen Dingen.
<i>Of</i> old.	Vor Alters, vor diesem.
<i>Of</i> late.	Vor kurzem (neulich, kürzlich).

## i.) by zu. Ex.

The love <i>of</i> glory.	Die Liebe zum Ruhme.
To make a fool <i>of</i> some one.	Jemanden zum Narren machen

The preposition ON or UPON is rendered :

## a.) by an. Ex.

On what does it depend (what is the cause of it) ?	Woran liegt es ?
London is seated <i>upon</i> the Thames.	London liegt an der Themse.
<i>Upon</i> the frontiers.	An den Grenzen.
On the first day.	Am ersten Tage.

## b.) by aus. Ex.

<i>Upon</i> a mere suspicion.	Aus bloßem Verdacht.
-------------------------------	----------------------

## c.) by bei. Ex.

That depends <i>upon</i> you (that is your concern).	Es steht bei Ihnen.
<i>Upon</i> all occasions.	Bei allen Gelegenheiten.
<i>Upon</i> our lives.	Bei unserem Leben.
<i>Upon</i> his coming.	Bei seiner Ankunft.
<i>Upon</i> pain of death.	Bei Todesstrafe.
To be put <i>on</i> bread and water.	Bei Wasser und Brod.

## d.) by für. Ex.

On my part.	Für meinen Theil.
-------------	-------------------



## e.) by in. Ex.

To reflect <i>on</i> one's self.	In sich gehen.
<i>Upon</i> the whole, <i>upon</i> the whole matter.	Im Ganzen (nach Allem).
<i>On</i> the contrary.	Im Gegentheil.

## f.) by mit. Ex.

<i>On</i> purpose.	Mit Fleiß (vorsetzlich).
--------------------	--------------------------

## g.) by unter. Ex.

<i>Upon</i> condition.	Unter der Bedingung.
<i>On</i> this condition.	Unter dieser Bedingung.
<i>On</i> easy terms.	Unter leichten Bedingungen.
To be <i>on</i> one's way.	Unter Weges seyn.

## h.) by von. Ex.

He lives <i>upon</i> bread and milk.	Er lebt von Brod und Milch.
<i>Upon</i> which they live.	Wovon sie leben.

## i.) by zu. Ex.

To sit well <i>on</i> horseback.	Gut zu Pferde sitzen.
To travel <i>on</i> foot, <i>on</i> horseback.	Zu Fuße, zu Pferde reisen.
To throw <i>on</i> the ground.	Zu Boden (zur Erde) werfen.
<i>On</i> the right hand.	Zur Rechten.

The preposition **TILL** (for *to*) is rendered :

## a.) by bis auf. Ex.

<i>Till</i> this moment.	Bis auf diesen Augenblick.
--------------------------	----------------------------

## b.) by bis zu. Ex.

<i>Till</i> this day.	Bis zu dem heutigen Tage.
<i>Till</i> fifty years of age.	Bis zum fünfzigsten Jahre.

The preposition **THROUGH** is rendered :

## a.) by aus. Ex.

<i>Through</i> fear.	Aus Furcht.
<i>Through</i> thirst of gold.	Aus Goldburcht.

## b.) by vor. Ex.

<i>Through</i> fatigue I can walk no longer.	Ich kann vor Mattigkeit nicht mehr gehen.
He fell asleep <i>through</i> weakness.	Er schlief vor Mattigkeit ein.

The preposition *to* is rendered :

a.) by *an*. Ex.

To set the hand *to* the plough. | Hand an's Werk legen.

b.) by *auf*. Ex.

To go <i>to</i> the post.	Auf die Post gehen.
To put one's money out <i>to</i> interest.	Sein Geld auf Zinsen geben.
To pay attention <i>to</i> something.	Auf Etwas Acht geben.
Reply <i>to</i> my question.	Antworten Sie auf meine Frage.
<i>To</i> the hour, <i>to</i> the minute.	Auf die Stunde, auf die Minute.

c.) by *bis*. Ex.

A man of from twenty <i>to</i> thirty years of age.	Ein Mann von zwanzig bis dreißig Jahren.
<i>To</i> the height of four inches.	Bis zur Höhe von vier Zoll.
From top <i>to</i> toe.	Von Kopf bis zu Fuß.
<i>To</i> the bottom.	Bis auf den Grund.
<i>To</i> the value of a shilling a day.	Bis zum Belauf eines Schillings für den Tag.

d.) by *für*. Ex.

That is lost <i>to</i> me.	Dies ist für mich verloren.
A fervent charity <i>to</i> all men.	Eine inbrünstige Liebe für alle Menschen.
Keep your company <i>to</i> yourself.	Bleibe für Dich.

e.) by *gegen*. Ex.

'To be ungrateful <i>to</i> some one.	Undankbar gegen Jemanden seyn.
He complains <i>to</i> me.	Er beschwert sich gegen mich.

f.) by *in*. Ex.

To go <i>to</i> the theatre.	Ins Theater gehen.
To tell <i>to</i> one's face.	Jemandem ins Gesicht sagen.

g.) by *mit*. Ex.

His strength is equal <i>to</i> his courage.	Seine Stärke kommt mit seiner Tapferkeit überein.
--	---

h.) by *nach*. Ex.

The road <i>to</i> Paris, <i>to</i> the town.	Der Weg nach Paris, nach der Stadt.
The journey <i>to</i> France, <i>to</i> India, &c.	Die Reise nach Frankreich, nach Indien, u.s.w.

i.) by *vor*. Ex.

To take off one's hat <i>to</i> some one.	Den Hut <i>vor</i> Jemandem abnehmen.
To give audience <i>to</i> some one.	Jemanden <i>vor</i> sich lassen.

## k.) by various expressions.

I have no enmity <i>to</i> that.	Ich bin der Sache nicht abgeneigt.
There is no devil equal <i>to</i> the hypocrite.	Es gibt keinen größern Teufel als den Scheinheiligen.
The flower is sharp <i>to</i> the taste.	Die Blume hat einen scharfen Geruch.
This no prejudice <i>to</i> you.	Dies bringt Ihnen keinen Schaden.
That is nothing <i>to</i> me.	Dies geht mich Nichts an.
That is <i>to</i> herself.	Das geht sie an.
As <i>to</i> that.	Was dies betrifft.
It remains <i>to</i> know (it is yet <i>to</i> be known).	Es fragt sich noch.

The preposition **UNDER** is rendered :

a.) by *bei*. Ex.

<i>Under</i> the extremity of torture.	Bei dem höchsten Grade der Marter.
<i>Under</i> pain of death.	Bei Todesstrafe.
<i>Under</i> the present disposition of things.	Bei der gegenwärtigen Lage der Dinge.

b.) by *durch*. Ex.

To be <i>under</i> an oath.	Durch einen Eid gebunden seyn.
-----------------------------	--------------------------------

c.) by *mit*. Ex.

To return <i>under</i> protest.	Mit Protest zurückkehren.
To tread <i>under</i> foot.	Mit Füßen treten.

d.) by *von*. Ex.

To lie <i>under</i> a distemper.	Von einer Krankheit befallen seyn.
<i>Under</i> the favour of the night.	Begünstigt von der Nacht.

## e.) by various expressions. Ex.

He is <i>under</i> great affliction.	Er ist sehr bekümmert.
To be <i>under</i> an obligation.	Verbunden seyn.
<i>Under</i> age.	Unmündig.
He left an evidence <i>under</i> his own hand.	Er hinterließ ein eigenhändig geschriebenes Zeugniß.
<i>Under</i> promise of marriage.	Versprochen, verlobt.

The preposition *with* is rendered :

a.) by *an*. Ex.

He finds fault *with* it. | Er hat Etwas daran auszufetzen.

b.) by *auf*. Ex.

A duel is fought *with* swords, | Man schlägt sich (im Duell) auf  
sabres, pistols, &c. | den Degen, den Säbel, auf Pi-  
stolen, u.f.w.  
To be angry *with* one. | Auf Jemanden böse seyn.

c.) by *aus*. Ex.

He did it *with* a good intention. | Er hat es aus guter Absicht ge-  
than.

d.) by *bei*. Ex.

*With* the ancients. | Bei den Alten.  
*With* men. | Bei den Menschen.  
To be in favour *with* one. | Bei Jemandem in Gnade stehen.

e.) by *durch*. Ex.

To cure a disease *with* fasting. | Eine Krankheit durch Fasten hei-  
len.

f.) by *nebst*. Ex.

*With* other epithets of the like | Nebst anderen ähnlichen Beina-  
kind. | men.

g.) by *um*. Ex.

It is all over *with* him (he is un- | Es ist um ihn geschehen.  
done).

h.) by *von*. Ex.

He was seized *with* horror. | Er ward von Schrecken ergriffen.  
*With* all my heart. | Von ganzem Herzen.  
Surrounded *with* the sea. | Von der See umgeben.

i.) by *vor*. Ex.

To tremble *with* cold, with rage, | Vor Kälte, Zorn, u.f.w. zittern.  
&c. |  
To weep *with* sorrow. | Vor Kummer weinen.

k.) by *zu*. Ex.

It is enough to make one die | Es ist zum Todtlachen.  
*with* laughing.

## L. by all sorts of expressions. Ex.

To put up with or to be satisfied with.	Er duldet nichts.
They are all one with us.	Sie sind alle einer Meinung.
Did that business succeed with him?	Ist ihm die Sache gelungen?
Things do not go well with him.	Seine Sachen gehen schlecht.
It is with us as with the French.	Es geht uns nur den Franzosen.
That is of little avail with me.	Das hilft mir wenig.
It is a usual thing with him.	Es ist in sein Gewohnh.
He parted with all he had.	Er gab Alles hin, was er hatte.

3. The following expressions require a preposition in German without demanding one in English :

He is still alive.	Er ist noch am Leben.
As much as I possibly can.	So viel als mir ist.
Farewell, till we meet again.	Auf Wiedersehen.
A thought struck me.	Ich kam auf den Gedanken.
To walk backwards and forwards.	Ins und abgehen.
To consider a thing (out of consideration for a thing.)	Auf Gnade Rücksicht nehmen.
To laugh heartily.	Ins rechte Hülz lachen.
To learn a thing thoroughly.	Eine Sache aus dem Grunde lernen.
When the opportunity offers.	Bei Gelegenheit.
As far as Mannheim.	Bis Mannheim.
To consider proper.	Für gut halten.
To esteem one's self happy.	Sich für glücklich halten.
To declare some one innocent.	Jemanden für unschuldig erklären.
I believe you my friend.	Ich halte Sie für meinen Freund.
Near, afar off.	In der Nähe, in der Ferne.
Thoughtlessly, inconsiderately.	In den Tag hinein (unbedacht-samer Weise).
Sword in hand.	Mit dem Degen in der Hand.
His strength equals his courage.	Seine Stärke kommt mit seiner Tapferkeit überein.
To seize one's sword.	Nach dem Degen greifen.
To go home	Nach Hause gehen.
I let no one touch my books.	Ich lasse Niemanden über meine Bücher.
Several times successively, repeatedly.	Einmal über das andere.

To hug one, to embrace one.  
 To make some one lose his money.  
 To fine some one twenty crowns.

It is so much the better.

Every other day.  
 To set sail.  
 Mr. Riesenbergr.  
 To do something again (anew).  
 To abhor a thing.  
 To end.  
 He is burdensome to me.  
 To take as witness.  
 To profess the Christian religion.

To be elected pope.  
 That does not matter (no matter).

Jemandem um den Hals fallen.  
 Jemanden um sein Geld bringen.  
 Jemanden um zwanzig Thaler strafen.  
 Es ist um so viel (or es ist desto) besser.  
 Einen Tag um den andern.  
 Unter Segel gehen.  
 Herr von Riesenberg.  
 Etwas von neuem thun.  
 Einen Abscheu vor Etwas haben.  
 Zu Ende gehen.  
 Er ist mir zur Last.  
 Zum Zeugen nehmen.  
 Sich zur christlichen Religion bekennen.  
 Zum Papste erwählt werden.  
 Das hat Nichts zu sagen.

4. The following expressions demand a preposition in English without requiring one in German.

The father-in-law.  
 The mother-in-law.  
 The brother-in-law.  
 The sister-in-law.  
 In heaps, in crowds, in great number.  
 A friend of old.  
 Of late.  
 The best of men.  
 A doctor of physic, of law.

He is ten years of age.  
 The town of London.  
 He is a friend of mine.  
 Of set purpose.  
 Of necessity.  
 Of all things.  
 To go on horseback.  
 You bestowed many kindnesses on me.  
 On a sudden.  
 He is upon his departure (ready to set out).

Der Schwiegervater.  
 Die Schwiegermutter.  
 Der Schwager.  
 Die Schwägerinn.  
 Haufenweise.  
 Ein alter Freund.  
 Neulich, neuerlich, kürzlich.  
 Der beste Mensch.  
 Ein Doctor der Arzneikunde, der Rechte.  
 Er ist zehn Jahr alt.  
 Die Stadt London.  
 Er ist mein Freund.  
 Absichtlich.  
 Nothwendig.  
 Vornehmlich, hauptsächlich.  
 Reiten.  
 Sie haben mir viel Güte erwiesen.  
 Plötzlich.  
 Er ist reisefertig.

He took an office *upon* him.

To my knowledge.

To set pen *to* paper.

To be *with* child.

*With* all speed.

Er übernahm eine Stelle.

Meines Wissens.

Die Feder ergreifen.

Schwanger seyn.

Unverzüglich, eiligst.

The learner has only to study the preceding examples well, together with those we gave in the Government of the Verbs (see p. 461 et seqq.), to have a thorough knowledge of this part of speech.

## INDEX OF THE APPENDIX.

---

### A.

ABOUT, various ways of translating that preposition, 487.

ACCORDING TO, various ways of translating that preposition, 488.

ACCUSATIVE, or direct object. What is accusative, or direct object, and when is it used? See the Government of Verbs, 461.

AGAINST, various ways of translating this preposition, 488.

AMONGST, how to translate that preposition, 489.

AT, various ways of translating that preposition, 489.

### B.

BESIDES, how to translate this preposition, 490.

By, various ways of translating this preposition, 491.

### C.

CARESS, to, *liebfoſen*. Government of that verb, 472.

### D.

DATIVE or indirect object. What is dative or indirect object, and when is it used? See the Government of Verbs, 461.

### F.

FOR, how to translate that preposition into German, 491.

FROM, how to render this preposition into German, 492.

### G.

GENITIVE or indirect object. What is genitive or indirect object, and when is it used? See the Government of Verbs, 461.

GET, to, *laſſen* \*, government of that verb, Obs. 471.

GOVERNMENT of Verbs, 461. Verbs governing the nominative, *ibid.*; governing the genitive, 462, *et seqq.*; governing either the accusative or the genitive, 464; governing the dative, 466, *et seqq.*; governing the accusative, 469; governing two accusative cases, 471.

### I.

IN, various ways of translating this preposition into German, 492.

IN SPITE OF, how this preposition is rendered in German, 494.

### L.

*Laſſen* \*, to let, to get, to order; government of that verb, Obs. 471.

LET, to, *laſſen* \*; government of that verb, Obs. 471.

*Liebfoſen*, to caress, government of that verb, 472.

### N.

NOMINATIVE or Subject, what is the nominative or subject, and when is it used? See the Government of Verbs, 461.

NUMBER, the, *das Zahlwort*, 442. Cardinal numbers, *ibid.* Ordinal numbers, 444. Distributive numbers, 445. *Augmentative* numbers, 446. *Fractional* numbers, 447. *Collective numbers*,



## O.

OF, various ways of translating this preposition, 494.

ON or UPON, various ways of translating these prepositions, 495.

ORDER, to, lassen \*; Government of that verb, Obs. 471.

## P.

PREPOSITION, the, das Vor- oder Verhältnißwort, 473. Classification, *ibid.* Prepositions which always govern the genitive, *ib.*; prepositions which govern only the dative, 475. Prepositions which govern only the accusative, 477. Prepositions governing various cases, 478. Prepositions governing the genitive and the dative, *ib.* Prepositions governing the dative and accusative, illustrated by numerous examples, 479, *et seqq.* Compound prepositions, 484. Respective place of prepositions in English and in German, Obs. A. B. 485. Corresponding prepositions in English and in German, 485. How to translate certain English prepositions by others in German, 487, *et seqq.* Expressions requiring a preposition in German, and not in English, 500. Expressions requiring a preposition in English, and not in German, 501. Various ways of translating the English prepositions: ABOUT, ACCORDING TO, AGAINST, AMONGST, AT, BESIDE, BY, FOR, FROM, IN, IN SPITE OF, OF, ON or UPON, TILL, TO, UNDER, WITH. See these words.

## T.

THROUGH, how translated into German, 496.

TILL (for to), how translated into German, 496.

TO, various ways of translating that preposition, 497, 498.

## U.

UNDER, how to translate this preposition into German, 498.

UPON, way of translating this preposition into German, 495.

VERB, the. Neuter verbs governing the dative, 467, 468. Reflective verbs governing the accusative, 471. Reflective verbs requiring the reflective pronouns in the accusative and the object in the genitive, 463, 464. Reflective verbs governing the dative, 469. Impersonal verbs which govern the accusative, 471. Impersonal verbs governing the dative, 469. Irregular verbs, 448. Essential observations on the irregular verbs, 448, 449. First class of the irregular verbs, containing the sixteen verbs, which have *t* in the past participle, and *te* in the imperfect, 450. GENERAL LIST AND CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS, 451, *et seqq.* The government of verbs. See Government.

## W.

WHO? wer? The nominative or subject always follows this question. See the Government of Verbs, 461.

WHOM? wen? The accusative or direct object always follows this question. See the Government of Verbs, 461. To whom? wem? The dative or indirect object always follows this question, *ibid.*

WHOSE? wessen? The genitive or indirect object always follows this question. See the Government of Verbs, 461.

WITH, various ways of translating this preposition, 499.





